A HISTORY OF PERSIAN LITERATURE IN MODERN TIMES (A.D. 1500–1924)
SHÁH ‘ABBÁS THE GREAT

1920.9.17-044 (Brit. Mus.)
A HISTORY
OF PERSIAN LITERATURE
IN MODERN TIMES
(A.D. 1500-1924)

Vol. 4

BY

EDWARD G. BROWNE
M.A., M.B., F.B.A., F.R.C.P.

SIR THOMAS ADAMS'S PROFESSOR OF ARABIC
AND FELLOW OF PEMBROKE COLLEGE IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE

CAMBRIDGE
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS
1924
I DEDICATE THIS VOLUME TO MY MOTHER
IN TOKEN OF A GREAT DEBT OF GRATITUDE
AND LOVE

Firdawsi, Yūsuf u Zulaykhā (ed. Ethé, p. 240,
ll. 2421–2 and 2426).

Íraj Mírzá Jaláh‘l-Mamálik.
PREFACE

This volume concludes the task which I undertook more than twenty-two years ago, and which represents the labour of a lifetime, for ever since I began the study of Persian in the summer of 1880, being then only eighteen years of age, the desire to write a complete Literary History of Persia has increasingly possessed me. The first instalment, "from the earliest times until Firdawsí," carried the history down to the early days of the eleventh century of the Christian era, and was published in 1902; and the continuation, down to the Mongol Invasion in the middle of the thirteenth century, in 1906, both these volumes being published by Mr Fisher Unwin. Fourteen years elapsed ere the third volume, entitled *A History of Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion* (A.D. 1265-1502), saw the light. The reasons which led me to issue it in a form and under a title differing somewhat from its predecessors are explained on p. viii of the Preface, but essentially it constitutes the third volume of the *Literary History of Persia*, just as this, which deals with the last four centuries (A.D. 1500-1924), and is entitled, as foreshadowed in the same Preface (p. ix), *A History of Persian Literature in Modern Times*, is to be regarded as the fourth and last volume of the work.

Although I cannot regard this present volume as superior to its three predecessors in form or interest, and am fully aware of its defects, I think that it contains more new matter and represents more original research than the others. Owing to the opinion prevalent not only in Europe, but to a considerable extent in Turkey and India also, that poetry is the only department of Persian literature which merits much attention, and that little poetry worth reading has been produced since the time of Jâmi, the literature of the last four centuries has been very much neglected, and
PREFACE

the sources of which I have made use are almost exclusively Persian, and, until the nineteenth century is reached, when printing and lithography were gradually introduced into Persia, chiefly manuscript. In the formation of my Persian library I have always had regard to the requirements of my work rather than to mere beauty of illumination, illustration, or hand-writing, and I have been singularly fortunate in acquiring the very interesting collection of the late Sir Albert Houtum Schindler and a number of the rare and precious manuscripts collected by the late Hájji 'Abdu'l-Majid Belshah. To Mr A. G. Ellis I am indebted for the generous loan, often for a period of several years, of many rare books to which I could not otherwise have obtained access; while for constant and ungrudging help I am under the deepest obligations to his successor in the Oriental Book Department of the British Museum, Mr E. Edwards, as well as to Dr L. Barnett, the Head of that Department.

I wish that I could have profited more by the counsel of my Persian friends, especially Mírzá Muḥammad Khán of Qazwín and Hájji Mírzá Yaḥyá of Dawlátábád, during the progress of this work, but to my old acquaintance Ḥusayn Dánish Bey of the Ottoman Public Debt, a notable man of letters both in Persian and Turkish, I am indebted for many valuable and illuminating observations. Another old friend, Sayyid Ḥasan Taqí-záda, fortunately chanced to visit this country after an absence of some fourteen years while the last sheets of this book were passing through the Press, and he most kindly read through the proofs and favoured me with numerous observations and corrections which will be noticed under the Errata and Addenda. From well-read and intelligent Persians the European student of their language can learn many things not to be found in books, at any rate in books to which he has access, while their taste and judgement, even if at times he cannot wholly agree with them, are almost always suggestive and deserving of consideration. Only a few days ago I received
a visit from the learned Shaykh Kázim ad-Dujaylî, an Arabic-speaking Shî'a of 'Iráq who has recently joined the teaching staff of the London School of Oriental Studies, and I enquired of him what, in his opinion, were the best Arabic books on Shî'a doctrine. He at once named the five following works, none of which I had previously heard of, much less seen, though all have been printed or lithographed in Persia:

(2) Kitábu’l Qawânant, by al-Qummi.
(3) Kitábu Rasâ’ili’sh-Shaykh Murtada’ al-Ansâri.
(4) Jawâhiru’l-Kalâm, by Shaykh Muḥammad Ḥasan.
(5) Kitábu’l-Wasâ’il, by Ḥájjî Mîrzá Ḥusayn an-Núrî.

I will not attempt to thank individually all those who by their sympathy and interest have encouraged me in my book, or who by their skilful craftsmanship have given it form and substance. The writing of it has been a pleasure, and the completing of it is a source of thankfulness and satisfaction. Even its errors and imperfections will, I trust, by provoking criticism and stimulating research, serve to advance and extend our knowledge of the subject, and if, as I hope, I have been single-minded in this aim, I shall prefer the reasoned criticism of competent scholars to the undiscriminating praise of over-zealous friends, even as Sa’dí says:

"Thou who recountest my virtues, thou dost me harm in sooth: 
Such is my outward seeming, but thou hast not known the truth."

EDWARD G. BROWNE.

June 12, 1924.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preface</strong></td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART I</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AN OUTLINE OF PERSIAN HISTORY DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. Some general considerations on the Ṣafawī Dynasty</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. The Creation of the Ṣafawī Power to 930/1524. Shāh Isma'īl and his Ancestors</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Culmination and Decline of the Ṣafawī Power, from Shāh Ṭahmāsp (A.D. 1524–1576) to Shāh Ḥusayn (A.D. 1694–1722)</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. An Outline of the history of Persia during the last two centuries (A.D. 1722–1922)</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART II</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERSON VERSE DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Some general considerations on the later and especially the Religious Poetry of the Persians</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Poets of the Classical Tradition. Pre-Qájár period (A.D. 1500–1800)</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Poets of the Qájár period</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PART III</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERSON PROSE DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. The orthodox Shī'a Faith and its exponents, the Muḥa-</td>
<td>353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hidhs and Mullās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX. Prose writers until A.D. 1850</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X. The most modern developments (A.D. 1850 onwards)</td>
<td>458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDEX</strong></td>
<td>491</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
translators set to music and adapted to the piano.” [T.z.] (I find
that I possess the former work, which is entitled "Obrázím Per-
sidsago Narodnago Tvorčestva, but I cannot identify the latter.)

p. 338. “Two half-verses (mišrām) have been accidentally omitted after
l. 7. The two verses should run thus” [T.z.]:

عكس تو فئاداست در. آثينة عالم;

ز آنری همی زنچهبه گشته است پدیدار;

زنچهبه محالست ز تو دست بدارم;

تا آنکه بزنچهگی خود کنی اقرار

p. 355, l. 1. There is some difference of opinion as to the proper vocalization
of the place-name which I have written “Tanukábun.” Taqi-
záda thinks it should be “Tunukábun,” while Riđá-qulí Khán in
his Anjuman-árá-yi-Násiri gives it as “Tanakában.”

pp. 369-370. “The titles ‘Muhaqqiq-i-Ardabili’ and ‘Muqaddas-i-
Ardabili’ both belong to Mullá Aḩmad, so that the first line on
p. 370 should read “The same mujtahid of Ardabil, also entitled
Muhaqqiq,” etc.

p. 370, last line. “Hájji Mírzá Ḥasan-i-Shírází and Hájji Mírzá Ḥasan-
i-Ashtiyání are not to be mentioned in the same breath. The
former was to the latter as a king is to a petty local governor.”

[T.z.]

p. 373. “Áqá Jamál-i-Khwánsárí was the author of the well-known
book on the superstitions of Persian women entitled Kitáb-i-
Kulthúm Nana. His father, Áqá Ḥusayn-i-Khwánsárí, was called
Uståd-ul-Kull fel-Kull (‘the Master of All in All’), and, besides
many facetia, wrote glosses on the Shahid-i-thání’s commentary
on the Lum’a.” [T.z.]

p. 378, II. 19 et seqq. “Many similar catechisms (with such titles as
Risálá-i-amaliyya, Mus’ila, Nuhkba, and the like) have been com-
posed in the last century, and as many as a hundred may have been
printed. One of the best known is the Jami’u’sh-Shattát of Mírzá
Abu’l-Qásim ibnu’l-Ḥusayn ar-Riđáwí al-Qummí, author of the
Kitáb-i-Qawánín.” [T.z.] Concerning the last-named writer, see
Edwards’s Catalogue of Persian printed books, cols. 60 and 61.

p. 393, II. 8-9. “‘Alí Awaṣat succeeded his father Ḥusayn as Imám,
not ‘Alí Akbar, who, together with the infant ‘Alí Aṣghar, perished
at Karbalá.” [T.z.]
ERRATA AND ADDENDA

p. 407, l. 14. "The Jāmī'ī-'Abbāsī was completed in 20 chapters, and has been printed repeatedly, but the first five chapters are often published separately for the instruction of children in elementary religious duties." [T.s.] According to Edwards (op. cit., cols. 407–8) chapters vi–xx were subsequently added to Shaykh-i-Bahā'ī's unfinished work by Niẓām b. Ḥusayn-i-Sāwajī.

p. 407, fourth line from the end, and p. 435, l. 5. "The Abwāb-ul-Jamān was not by Mullā Muḥsin-i-Fayd, but, so far as I remember, by Mullā Husayn Wā'īz-i-Kāshifī, the author of the well-known Anwār-i-Suhaylī." [T.s.] The real author appears to have been Muḥammad b. Ḥafṣu'llāh Raffu'ud-Dīn, called 'Wā'īz-i-Qazwīnī' ('the Preacher of Qazwīn'). See Edwards, op. cit., cols. 405–6.

p. 410. Sayyid Muḥammad Bāqir of Rasht was only a third- or fourth-rate theologian, and Mullā Aḥmad-i-Nirāqī (p. 411) only of the second class. Much more important, though omitted here, are:

(i) Āqā-yi-Bihbihānī, the founder of the Uṣūlf and Mujtahidī School, who flourished at the end of twelfth century of the hijra.
(ii) Shaykh Ja'far-i-'Arab (also called al-Kabīr, 'the Great'), who was contemporary with Fath-ʿAlī Shāh.
(iii) Shaykh Muḥammad Ḥasan, author of the Jawāhir-ul-Kalām, a large work in six volumes on Shī'ī Jurisprudence (see p. ix supra).
(iv) Shaykh Murtaḍā al-Anṣārī, the founder of present-day Shī'ī Law, and the Master of all the mujtahids of the last seventy years with the exception of—
(v) Shaykh Ḥāfiz of Tīhrān, who was also of the first class."

p. 430. "Shaykh Ahmad al-Aḥṣā'ī was not an admirer and follower but a great enemy of Mullā Ṣadrā. Of modern Persian philosophers mention should have been made of Mīrzā Abu'l-Ḥasan-i-Jilwa, who died only some twenty years ago." [T.s.] I met him in Tīhrān in the winter of 1887–8. See my Year amongst the Persians, p. 149.

p. 435. "One of the best of Mullā Muḥsin's works is the Kalimāt-i-Muknīna ('Hidden Words'), of which mention should have been made here." [T.s.]

p. 441. "Dr Muḥammad of Kirmānshāh, called Kufwī, who died in 1326/1908, specialized in cardiac diseases, and first called attention
ERRATA AND ADDENDA

to a peculiar murmur (called in French ‘emplolement’) characteristic of embolism, on which he published a monograph in French. He also wrote several medical treatises on the Diseases of Women and Children in Persian.” [T.s.]

p. 454, l. 1. “For Írámádas-Dawla read Írámádas-Saltana.” [T.s.]


p. 486, end. “The articles to which reference is here made were not by Mirzá Muhammad Khán but by myself, writing under the pen-name of Muḥāṣṣīl (‘Student’).” [T.s.]²

p. 488. “To say ‘Mīrzá Kāzim-záda,’ ‘Sayyid Jamál-záda,’ ‘Taqī-záda Khán’ and the like is as contrary to Persian usage as to say in English ‘Sir Grey’ for ‘Sir Edward Grey’ and the like. Such titles as ‘Mīrzá,’ ‘Sayyid’ and Hājjī can only be prefixed, as ‘Khán,’ ‘Bēg’ and the like can only be suffixed, to personal names, such as Hāṣan, ‘Alī and Muḥammad, not to patronymics.” [T.s.]²

¹ I have been unable to find any trace of this alleged discovery or of the French term connoting it (which I think should be empliment), though I have consulted two eminent physicians on the subject.

² Taqī-záda’s letter was received in time to correct the two passages to which the two concluding notes refer, but I have allowed them to stand because the first specifies the true authorship of the articles in question, while the second lays down a rule of which I had hitherto been unaware.
PART I.

AN OUTLINE OF PERSIAN HISTORY
DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES
CHAPTER I.

SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS ON THE ŞAFAWĪ DYNASTY.

The rise of the Şafawī dynasty in Persia at the beginning of the sixteenth century of the Christian era was an event of the greatest historical importance, not only to Persia herself and her immediate neighbours, but to Europe generally. It marks not only the restoration of the Persian Empire and the re-creation of the Persian nationality after an eclipse of more than eight centuries and a half, but the entrance of Persia into the comity of nations and the genesis of political relations which still to a considerable extent hold good. Mr R. G. Watson in the brief retrospect with which he opens his excellent History of Persia from the beginning of the Nineteenth Century to the year 1858 shows a true appreciation of the facts when he takes this period as his starting-point, for in truth it marks the transition from mediaeval to comparatively modern times. The Arab conquest in the middle of the seventh century after Christ overthrew the Zoroastrian religion and the Sásánian Empire, and reduced Persia to the position of a mere province of the Caliphate, until the Caliphate itself was destroyed by the Mongols or Tartars in the middle of the thirteenth century. Both before and after this momentous event there were, it is true, independent or quasi-independent dynasties ruling in Persia, but these were generally of Turkish or Tartar origin, like the Ghaznavids, Saljúqs, Khwárazmsháhs, and Houses of Chingiz and Tímúr; or, if Persian like the Buwayhids, exercised control over a portion only of the old Persian Empire. To the

1 London: Smith and Elder, 1866.

1—2
Šafawī dynasty belongs the credit of making Persia "a nation once again," self-contained, centripetal, powerful and respected, within borders practically identical in the time of Shāh ʿAbbās the Great (A.D. 1587–1628) with those of the Sāsānian Empire. It was then that ʿIsfahān, whither he transferred the seat of government from Qazwin, became, as the Persian saying runs, "Half the world" (Nisf-i-Jahān), or "Medio mundo" as Don Juan of Persia has it, abounding in splendid buildings and skilful craftsmen, frequented by merchants from distant lands, and visited by diplomatic missions, not only from India, Transoxiana and Turkey, but from almost every European state from Russia to Spain and Portugal.

Yet, in spite of its importance and the abundant materials available, no good complete history of the Šafawī dynasty has yet been written. The outlines given by Sir John Malcolm and Sir Clements Markham in their histories of Persia are inadequate in scope and inaccurate in detail, and are based on very limited materials, and those not by any means the most authentic. The abundance and variety of the materials, the inaccessibility of many important sources of information, and the polyglot character of the documents concerned constitute serious obstacles to one who aspires to treat adequately of this period. The four most important contemporary Persian records of its earlier portion, down to the death of Shāh ʿAbbās the Great, are the Šafvatūš-Šafā, containing the biography of Shaykh Šafīyyu’d-Dīn, that celebrated saint of the thirteenth century from whom the dynasty derives its name; the Nasab-nāma-i-Silsila-i-Šafawīyya on the genealogy of the family, with valuable biographical details of its earlier representatives not to be found elsewhere; the

1 Of Krusinski's and Hanway's admirable accounts of the later Šafawī period I shall speak in chap. iii.
CH. I] CHIEF CONTEMPORARY HISTORIES

Ahsanu't-Tawārīkh, completed in A.D. 1577, only about a
year after the death of Shāh Ṭahmāsp, whose reign together
with that of his father and predecessor Shāh Isma‘īl, the
founder of the dynasty, it records; and the Ta'īrīkh-i-‘Ālam-
ārā-ya‘Abbāsī, an immense monograph on the reign of Shāh
‘Abbās the Great. Not one of these has been published¹,
much less translated, and all except the last are very rare
even in manuscript. Of the Nāmah-nāma and the ‘Ālam-ārā
I am fortunate enough to possess copies which formerly
belonged to the late Sir Albert Houtum-Schindler, while
the incomparable generosity of Mr A. G. Ellis placed at my
disposal manuscripts of the two other histories mentioned
above. And though the authors of later general
histories in Persian, such as Riḍā-qulī Khān in
his supplement to Mīrkhwānd's Rawdatu’s-Ṣafā, have made use of some of these works, they too
often not merely abridge but grievously distort the passages
they cite.

Of such wanton distortion the following is a good instance.
In July, A.D. 1599, Shāh ‘Abbās the Great sent to Europe
a mission accredited to the Courts of Russia,
Poland, Germany, France, Spain, England and
Scotland, and to the Pope of Rome and the
Seniory of Venice. This mission included
Husayn ‘Alī Beg² as Persian Envoy, with four Persian
gentlemen or "knights" (caballeros, as they are called in
Don Juan of Persia's narrative), fifteen Persian servants,
the celebrated Sir Anthony Sherley with fifteen English
attendants, two Portuguese friars, and five interpreters.

¹ Since this was written I have received through a Persian corre-
respondent a copy of the excellent lithographed edition of the Ṣafwatu’s-
Ṣafā published at Bombay in 1329/1911.
² Don Juan calls him (f. 120) "Uzen Aly Bech," but Antonio di
Govea has "Ussein Alibeg," which shows clearly that the first part of
the name is Husayn, not Uzūn, as I had at first supposed.
Travelling by way of the Caspian Sea and the Volga, they first visited Moscow, where they remained for five or six months; thence through Germany to Italy, where they were not permitted to go to Venice for fear of offending an Ottoman envoy who happened to be there at the time, but were well received at Rome, where they arrived in April, 1601, and remained for two months. Thence they proceeded by ship from Genoa to the south of France and so to Spain, where three of the four "Persian knights" adopted the Catholic faith and took the names of Don Philippe, Don Diego and Dón Juan of Persia.

Sir Anthony Sherley, whose relations with his Persian colleague had from the first been very strained, separated himself from the mission at Rome, but up to that point the independent accounts written by himself and some of his companions enable us to check Don Juan's narrative. Don Juan, however, having apostasized from Islám, dared not return to Persia to meet the fate of a renegade, so that for the tragic sequel we must turn to the Persian historians. In the ' Alam-ār-‘y-‘Abbāsī under the year 1022/1613-4 we find an account of the arrival at Isfahán of ambassadors from the King of Spain, accompanied by several Christian priests and a Persian envoy returning from Europe. The latter, who had incurred the Sháh's displeasure, was incontinently put to death in the most cruel manner, without being permitted any opportunity for explanation or apology; and the Sháh then explained to the Spaniards that he had dealt thus with him because of sundry reasonable and disrespectful acts of

1 See especially The Sherley Brothers...by one of the same House (Chiswick, 1828), pp. 22-35.
2 F. 230 of my MS. marked H. 14.
3 Although the envoy is here named Dengiz Beg Shámlú with the title of Yūs-bāshī (Captain), not Ḥusayn ‘Ali Beg, as in Don Juan's Narrative (f. 120), there can, I think, be little doubt as to their identity.
which he had been guilty during his mission, such as opening letters sealed with the royal seal and making known their contents; wearing mourning on the occasion of the Queen of Spain's death; and selling the credentials to the Pope with which he had been provided to a merchant who should impersonate him and derive what profit he could from the transaction. "But," the Sháh concluded, "the chief of his faults and the chief reason for his punishment was that he behaved so ill towards the attendants who accompanied him, and vexed them so much, that several of them adopted the Christian faith and remained in Europe in order to escape from his tyranny, so that zeal for Islám required his punishment, and thus he received his deserts."

Turning now to Rídá-qu'll Khán's supplement to the Rawdatu's-Sáfá, a general history of Persia compiled about A.D. 1858, we find an account of the same event obviously copied, with very slight modifications, from the 'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbási, but with one important and most wanton alteration, for Sháh 'Abbás is there represented as saying that the chief of his ambassador's faults was that several persons were disposed to embrace Islám and come to Persia, but the Persian envoy treated them so ill that they repented of their intention, returned to the Christian faith, and remained in that country. For this deliberate falsification of history I can only account by supposing that Rídá-qu'll Khán did not wish to encourage the idea that a Persian Muslim could possibly become a Christian; but the moral I wish to draw is that the later Persian historians must be used with great caution, and that every statement should, where possible, be traced to contemporary records.

Before leaving this subject, I must refer to an erroneous conjecture of Sir John Malcolm's arising from an inadequate use of the Persian sources. In the year 1002/1593–4, being the seventh year of Sháh 'Abbás's reign, Jalál, the Chief Astrologer, foretold dis-
aster to the occupant of the Throne, and advised that the Sháh should abdicate for a few days and substitute for himself some person worthy of death on whom the prediction of the stars might be fulfilled. This was accordingly done, and a man named Yúsufi was made king for three days, at the conclusion of which he was put to death, and Sháh 'Abbás resumed the Throne. Sir John Malcolm¹ says that this Yúsufi, “whom Persian authors take care to tell us was an unbeliever,” was “probably a Christian,” but this is an error; he belonged to a heterodox Muslim sect called Nuqtawiyya (“People of the Point”) who believed in metempsychosis and other heretical doctrines, and of whose appearance and destruction a full account is given by the 'Alam-árá-yi-'Abbási² and reproduced in the Rawdatu’s-Šafá. It is therefore essential, if a true history of the Šafawis is to be written, that we should go back to the original sources, and, as a preliminary, that these sources, at present existing only in manuscript, should be published.

The Persian histories, however, are only part of the material available for such a work: the numerous and in some cases excellent Turkish chronicles, published and unpublished, dealing with this period, and especially with the Turco-Persian wars which continued almost without intermission during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, constitute an indispensable supplement and corrective. Almost more important is Firidún Bey’s great collection of Turkish State Papers entitled Munsha’dí-Salátín, compiled some time before 991/1583 and published at Constantinople in two volumes³ in 1274/1858.

¹ History of Persia (London, 1815), vol. i, p. 527.
² Ff. 46b–47b of my Ms. H. 14.
³ When this was written, I possessed only the first volume, which contains 626 pp. and comes down to the year 966/1558. By the kindness of my friend Husayn Dánish Bey I have since acquired the second volume also.
The diplomatic correspondence contained in this valuable and insufficiently-appreciated book is arranged chronologically and is partly in Turkish, partly in Arabic, and partly in Persian. From the time of Tīmūr onwards much of it is concerned with contemporary Persian affairs, and of the last half of the first volume a large portion consists of letters interchanged between the Sulṭāns Bāyazīd II (A.D. 1482–1512), Sālīm I (A.D. 1512–1520), and Sulaymān I (A.D. 1520–1566) on the one hand, and Shāh Isma‘īl (A.D. 1500–1524) and his son and successor Shāh Tāhmāsp (A.D. 1524–1576) on the other. There are also valuable journals of certain campaigns, such as that which culminated in the Battle of Cháldirán, so disastrous to the Persians, on August 23, 1514, wherein the movements of the Ottoman army and the incidents of their outward and homeward marches are chronicled day by day. Other State Papers, both Persian and Turkish, which exist only in manuscript, have hitherto remained practically unexplored.

A third class of materials of which it is impossible to overestimate the importance consists of the writings of Europeans who visited Persia during this period on diplomatic, missionary or commercial business. Thanks to the liberal attitude of Shāh ‘Abbās the Great towards Christians, the number of these in his and the succeeding reigns was very large. The best general account of them and their works with which I have met is that given by the late M. Charles Schéfer, in the Introduction (pp. i–cxv) to his edition of l’Estat de la Perse en 1660 by le Père Raphaël du Mans, Superior of the Capuchin Mission at Iṣfahān, a man singularly qualified by

1 Some other very interesting State Papers from the Dastūrū’l-Inshā of Šarī ‘Abdu’llāh Efendi (d. 1079/1668) have also been published and annotated by the late M. Ch. Schéfer in his Chrestomathie Persane (Paris, 1885), vol. ii, pp. 218–239 and cv–x.

his high character and intellectual attainments, as well as by his prolonged sojourn of fifty years (A.D. 1644–1696) in Isfahán, to speak with authority. The works enumerated by M. Schefer⁴ are variously written in Dutch, English, French, German, Italian, Latin, Portuguese and Spanish, but many of the more important have appeared in two or three different languages. Of their authors (excluding the earlier Venetian envoys to the Court of Üzün Hasan, such as Caterino Zeno, Josepho Barbaro and Ambrosio Contarini, most of whom visited Persia during the latter half of the fifteenth century, and consequently before the rise of the Šafawí dynasty) the best known are Anthony Jenkinson, the Sherley brothers, Cartwright, Parry and Sir Thomas Herbert of the English, and of the others Antonio di Govea, Don Garcías de Silva Figuerosa, Olearius, Teixeira, Pietro della Valle, Tavernier, Thevenot, and last but not least Chardin and Pétis de la Croix. M. Schefer does not carry his survey beyond the seventeenth century, but the final downfall of the Šafawís before the Afgán onslaught in A.D. 1722 found an able historian in the Jesuit Père Krusinski, while letters from some of the Dutch merchants in Isfahán, a few of which have been published by H. Dunlop in his Persiè (Haarlem, 1912; pp. 242–7), serve to illuminate the tragic details of that disaster. From this time until the rise of the present Qájár dynasty towards the end of the eighteenth century comparatively few Europeans visited or resided in Persia, a fact due partly to the unsettled state of the country, and the consequent difficulties in the way of missionary or commercial enterprises, and partly to the

¹ To these we must not omit to add the Miratu‘l-Manálik ("Mirror of Kingdoms") of the gallant Turkish admiral Sídî ‘Alî Ra‘ís, who travelled overland from India to Turkey in A.D. 1554–6, and was received by Sháh Ťahmâsp at Qazwín. Vambéry's English translation of this book (Luzac, London, 1899) leaves a good deal to be desired.
changed political conditions. The object of the numerous
diplomatic missions from various European countries which
visited Persia during and immediately before the Şafawi
period was, in nearly all cases, to seek her cooperation in
combating the formidable power of the Ottoman Turks,
which was at its height during the period which began with
their conquest of Constantinople in A.D. 1453 and culminated
in the reigns of Sulṭāns Salīm “the Grim” and Sulaymān
“the Magnificent” (A.D. 1512–1566), of whom the former
conquered Egypt and the Holy Cities and assumed the title
of Caliph, while the latter only failed by the narrowest
margin to capture Vienna. So formidable did the Turkish
menace appear to European statesmen that Busbecq,
Ferdinand’s ambassador at the Court of Sulaymān, ex-
pressed himself in the following remarkable words: “’Tis
only the Persian stands between us and ruin. The Turk
would fain be upon us, but he keeps him back. This war
with him affords us only a respite, not a deliverance.” In
A.D. 1722 when the Şafawi dynasty, long degenerate, finally
collapsed, Persia was left for the moment a negligible
quantity, the Turks had ceased to be a menace to Europe,
and the bitter sectarian quarrel which lay at the root of two
centuries of Turco-Persian warfare gradually lost much of
its virulence, especially after the development of the more
conciliatory policy of the great Nādir Shāh. Under these
changed conditions the earlier European policy became at
once unnecessary and impossible.

From this brief survey of the sources whence our know-
ledge of the Şafawi dynasty is derived, we must now pass
to the consideration of its chief characteristics.
These, though clear enough in general outline,
present a series of very interesting problems

---

1 Creasy’s History of the Ottoman Turks (London, 1877), pp. 171–2
ad calc. Cf. Forster and Daniell’s Life and Letters of...Busbecq
which even yet cannot be regarded in all cases as definitely solved. These problems group themselves under the headings of Nationality, Religion, Art and Literature, and in this order we shall now proceed to consider them.

**Nationality:**

It has been said above that to the Šafawiši belongs the credit of making Persia, after the lapse of eight centuries and a half, “a nation once again.” This is true, but the nationalism which thus found expression was very different in several respects from the various forms of nationalism with which we are familiar at the present day. Language and race, which are the key-notes of the latter, played a very small part in it compared with religion. At no time was the mutual hatred of Turk and Persian more violent and bitter than during the eight years (A.D. 1512–1520) when Sultán Salím “the Grim,” and Sháh Isma’il, the founder of the Šafawi power, were the respective protagonists of the two nations. The despatches of this period, recorded by Firídún Bey, pass from the realm of diplomacy to that of vulgar abuse, and “rascally Red-heads” (*Awbásh-i-Qizil-básh*) is the politest expression wherewith the Turkish Sultán refers to his Persian foes. The cause of this intense hatred, equally adequate and obvious, will be discussed under the heading of “Religion,” but it did not extend to race or language. When America entered the late War it was stated in the newspapers that in certain towns the people, to give vent to their hatred of everything German, collected all the German books they could find and burned them. No Turk or Persian of the sixteenth century would have given expression to his feelings of hostility in so puerile a fashion. On the contrary, it is a remarkable fact that while Sultán Salím and Sháh Isma’il both possessed considerable poetic talent, the former wrote almost exclusively in Persian, and the latter, under the pen-
name of Khaḍā'ī, almost exclusively in Turkish. Ottoman hatred was directed against the heretical Qisīl-būš as misbelievers, not as Persians (Iran), while the Persian language (Fārsī) continued to hold its position as the polite idiom of literature and diplomacy. And though the ancient conflict between Iran and Turān was familiar to all educated Turks and Persians in the classical Shāh-nāma, or "Book of Kings," of Firdawsī, Salīm, in the following curious exordium to a despatch written in April, 1514 (Safar, 920)3, compares himself to the legendary Persian kings Firādūn, Kay-Khusraw and Dārā, while likening his Persian opponent Shāh Isma'il to the Turkish protagonist Afrāsiyāb:

[After the doxology] "But to proceed. This excellent address hath been issued on our part, we who are the Refuge of the Caliphate3, the slayer of the infidels and polytheists,

---

1 See E. J. W. Gibb's History of Ottoman Poetry, vol. ii, p. 261, for a brief account of Salīm's Persian Dīwān, of which a most sumptuous edition, based on numerous MSS., by the late Dr Paul Horn, was printed in Berlin as a gift to the late Sulṭān 'Abdu'l-Ḥamīd from the ex-Emperor of Germany in 1904. A number of Shāh Isma'il's Turkish poems are given in my MS. of the Sīsilatū'n-Nasab-i-Ṣaḥawīyya. See J.R.A.S. for July, 1921, p. 412, where other references are given.

2 See Firādūn Bey, vol. i, p. 381.

3 An interesting proof that, contrary to the views of Professor Nallino, the position of Caliph was already claimed by Sulṭān Salīm, as it certainly was by his son and successor Sulaymān.
the extirpator of the foes of the Faith, the humbler of the Pharaohs' pride, the tarnisher of the Kháqán's crowns, the King of those who fight and strive for Religion, whose pomp is as that of Firídún, whose Court is as that of Alexander, whose justice and equity is as that of Kay-Khusraw, that Dárá of noble descent, Sultán Salím Sháh, son of Sultán Báyázíd, son of Sultán Muḥammad Khán, to thee, who art the ruler of the Persians, the most mighty general and puissant leader, the Dáhhák of the time, the Dáráb of the combat, the Afrásiyáb of the age, the famous Amír Isma'íl."

On the other hand I have only found one verse wherein Sháh Isma'íl is definitely identified with the Persian as contrasted with the Shí'á cause. This verse occurs in the Aḥsanaʾ-Ṭawárīkh and runs:

"The illuminator of the crown and throne of the Kayáníns, The upholder of the star of the Káwayán."

For the rest, the seven tribes who formed the back-bone of the Qizil-básh army were, as their names Rúmlú, Shámlú, Mawšíllú, etc., sufficiently indicate, almost exclusively Turkish, as were the principal officers of the Safawí army, whose war-cry, as we learn

1 Literally, "he who rubs in the dust the noses of the Pharaohs," alluding to Sultán Salím's conquest of Egypt and overthrow of the Mameluke dynasty.
2 The Kháqán is the title given to the king of Túrán and the Turks. The word is, I believe, Mongol, and is identical with the alternative forms Qá'án and Khán.
3 Dáhhák is the Azhi-daháka or Dragon-king of the Avesta, represented in the Sháh-náma as an Arab usurper.
4 Under the year 908/1502–3, f. 479 of Mr A. G. Ellis's ms.
5 The second dynasty of the ancient legendary kings of Persia.
6 Káwa was the patriotic blacksmith who led the revolt against the foreign usurper Dáhhák, and whose leather apron became the national standard under the name of Dirafsh-i-Káwayán.
from the rare history of Shâh Isma'îl, was not “Long live Persia!” or the like, but, in the Turkish language, “O my spiritual guide and master whose sacrifice I am!”

More than a century after Isma‘îl’s death, when the capital had been transferred from the north of Persia to Isfahân, Turkish seems still to have been the language generally spoken at Court. These instances, to which might be added many more, will suffice to show how different was the spirit which animated the Şafawî revival (though it undoubtedly produced that homogeneity which is the basis of national sentiment) from the Nationalism of the modern Pan-Turansians and “Young Persians,” who put the extension and purification from foreign elements of the national language in the foremost place in their programme. At the present time the Turkish nationalists of Angora proclaim their new Caliph in Turkish instead of in the time-honoured Arabic, while Rídá Khán, the Persian military dictator, strives to introduce in his army a purely Persian military terminology.

**RELIGION.**

Although the Muhammadans, according to their own statements, are divided into seventy-two or seventy-three different sects, in later times at any rate, when certain controversies, such as those connected with Free Will and Predestination and the

---

Creation of the Qur'ān, have sunk into a subordinate position, it may fairly be said that the capital and cardinal division is into the People of the Sunnat and the People of the Shi'ā. Scattered communities of the latter are found in Asia Minor, Syria (where they are called Mutawalli, pl. Mattawa), India and other Muhammadān lands, but in Persia only is the Shi'ā doctrine not only that held by the great majority of the people, but also the State Religion. Before considering how it was raised to this position by the Šafawis about the year A.D. 1500, we must briefly consider its essential nature, and here we cannot do better than quote Shahristānī, the learned author of the Kitābu'l-Mīdal, or "Book of Sects," who died in the middle of the twelfth century, and who writes of them\(^1\) as follows:

"The Shi'ā.—They are those who took the side of (Shayā'ī) 'Alī in particular, declaring him to be Imam and Khalīfa by explicit written deed, public or secret, and believing that the Imāmate cannot quit his posterity; and that, should it do so, it is only by reason of wrong wrought by another, or prudential renunciation on his own part\(^2\). They assert that the Imāmate is not a question of expediency but of principle: it does not depend on popular choice, so that an Imām can be set up by their appointment, but is an essential of Religion which it is not permissible for even the Apostle of God to ignore or neglect, and which cannot be transferred or committed to the common people. They are united in their assertion as to the necessity of such explicit designation [of the Imām on the part of his predecessor] and the established innocence of the Imāms of all sins, small or great, and also


\(^2\) E.g. the second Imām, al-Hasan, elder son of 'Alī, ostensibly surrendered his rights "for prudential reasons" (tagiyya) to the Umayyad Mu'āwiyah, but he could not really divest himself of the sacred quality of Imām.
in their principles of recognition and repudiation, alike in word, deed and faith, save in cases of ‘prudent concealment’ (taqiyya), in which point, however, some of the Zaydís oppose them. As to the actual transmission of the Imámát, however, there is much discussion and difference of opinion, and at each such transmission and stage there is an argument, a doctrine and a schism. There are five [principal] divisions, the Kaysánis, the Zaydís, the Imámís, the Extremists (Ghulát) and the Isma‘íís, of whom some incline in their principles to the Mu‘tazila, some to the Sunna and some to Anthropomorphism (tashbíh).

Put in a briefer, clearer and more concrete form, this means that all the Shi‘a reject and repudiate the first three of the “Four Orthodox Caliphs” (al-Khulafa’-ur-Ráshidún), Abú Bakr, ‘Umar and ‘Uthmán, who were elected, and hold that ‘Alí, the cousin of the Prophet Muhammad and the husband of his daughter Fátima, should have succeeded him, and had in fact been nominated by him as his successor; and that after ‘Alí the succession continued in his family by Divine Right. But even within this family there was no place for election, each Imám specifically choosing and nominating his successor, as the Prophet had chosen and nominated ‘Alí. Amongst those who agreed in these general principles, however, there was plenty of room for disagreement as to details. Some of the Shi‘a were content that the Imám should be descended from ‘Alí, and were therefore ready to recognise Muḥammad ibnu‘l-Hanafiyya, “the son of the Ḥanafite woman”; others, including the “Sect of the Seven” or Isma‘ílís and the “Sect of the Twelve” or Imámís, with which last we are chiefly concerned, limited the succession to the children born to ‘Alí by his wife Fátima, the Prophet’s daughter. With the third Imám Ḥusayn, ‘Alí’s younger son by Fátima, a new factor came into operation, for, according to quite early and respectable historians, such as
al-Ya'qúbí⁹, a daughter of the last Sásánian king of Persia, Yazdigird III, was given to him in marriage and bore him a son named ‘Ali and entitled Zaynul-Ábidín, who was the Fourth Imám, and who combined in himself direct descent from the Prophet through his daughter Fátima and from the ancient Royal House of Persia. Small wonder that to him and his descendants the loyal devotion of the Persians was so freely rendered!

Thus we see that the quarrel between Sunní and Shi'á is by no means one of names and personalities only, but of the essentially antagonistic doctrines of Democracy and the Divine Right of Kings. The Arabs are, and always have been, in large measure democratic in their ideas, while the Persians have ever been disposed to see in their Kings divine or semi-divine beings. And if the idea of a humanly-elected head of the State be repugnant, how much more that of an Imám, or Vice-gerent of the Prophet, chosen by popular suffrage? Hence the Imámí and Isma'ílí sects of the Shi'á have always had their stronghold in Persia, though under the Sunní Turkish dynasties of the Gháznawís and Saljúqs they were kept in a state of subordination². They were more favoured under the Buwayhids and some of the Mongols, notably Gháznán and Khudá-banda (Uljáytú), but they first obtained unquestioned supremacy throughout the whole of Persia under the Šafawís.

Who, then, were these Šafawís, when did they so vehemently adopt the Shi'á doctrine, and how did they succeed in establishing their supremacy?

¹ He wrote about the end of the ninth Christian century, and his excellent history, edited by Houtsma, was published at Leyden in two vols. in 1883. See also vol. i of my Lit. Hist. of Persia, p. 229 and n. 2 ad calc.

² Abundant illustrations of this are furnished by such works of the Saljúq period as the Siyásat-námá and the Ráhífu's-Šudúr.
Şafawi is the adjective formed from Şaff, a notable Şūfī saint, named in full Şafiyyu’d-Dīn, who died in Gilān in A.D. 1334 at the age of 85 in the odour of sanctity, and who claimed to be descended in the twentieth degree from Mūsā Kāẓim the seventh Imām. That he was really a man of note in his own time is proved beyond doubt by the way in which his contemporary, the great statesman and historian Rashīdu’d-Dīn Faḍlullāh, speaks of him in his letters, and also by the fact that an immense biography of him, the Ṣafwatu’s-Ṣafā, was composed shortly after his death, largely from data supplied by his son Sadru’d-Dīn, which has been used directly or indirectly by all the historians of the great dynasty whereas he was the ancestor. Shāh Isma’īl, the actual founder of the dynasty, was sixth in descent from him, but I have found no evidence to prove that he himself adopted the violent Shi’a views characteristic of his descendants. The little evidence available points rather the other way, for in a letter written to Isma’īl’s son Shāh Tāhmāsp in A.D. 1529–30 by the Uzbek leaders, they say that, according to what they have heard, Shaykh Şafiyyu’d-Dīn was a good Sunni, and express their astonishment that Tāhmāsp “neither follows the example of His Holiness Murtadā ‘Alī, nor that of his forefather.” Khwāja ‘Alī, grandson of Şafiyyu’d-Dīn and great-great-grandfather of Shāh Isma’īl, is the first member of the House who shows a strong Shi’a bias and holds converse in his dreams with the Imāms, and his grandson Junayd and his great-grandson Haydar are the first to assert their claims with the sword and to die on the field of battle.

At the beginning of the fifteenth century, then, the Şafawīs were simply the hereditary pīrs, murshids, or spiritual

---

1 For the full pedigree, see the J.R.A.S. for July, 1921, p. 397 and n. 1 ad calc.
2 Ibid., pp. 417–18.
3 For the text of this passage, see p. 43 infra.
directors of an increasingly large and important order of darwishes or Súfis which drew its adherents not only from Persia but from the Turkish provinces of Asia Minor, where they appear to have carried on an active propaganda. How successful this promised to become in later days is shown by the dreadful massacre of some forty thousand of the Shi’a perpetrated in his dominions by Sulṭán Salím “the Grim” as a preliminary to his great campaign against Sháh Isma’il in A.D. 1514. To these devoted darwishes or murids, as their war-cry cited above (p. 15) sufficiently shows, the head of the Šafawí House, even after he had ceased to be a Shaykh and had become a Sháh, continued to be regarded as the pír or murshid. Chardin, Raphaël du Mans, and other reputable authorities have scoffed at the title “Great Sophi,” by which the Šafawí Sháhs are commonly designated by contemporary European diplomats and writers, on the ground that the Súfis were generally poor and humble people and of doubtful orthodoxy, despised and rejected of men, and unlikely to lend their name to the Great King of Persia. But in the Persian histories of the Šafawís, even in the Siṣīlatu’n-Nasab compiled about the time when Raphaël du Mans wrote, and still more in the Aḥsanu’t-Tawārîkh and other earlier chronicles, the Súfis, especially the Súfis of Rúm (i.e. Turkey in Asia), are represented as the cream of the Šafawí army; we read of “self-sacrifice, courage, and whatever else is inseparable from Súfī-hood” and of unworthy and disloyal acts described as “un-Súfī-like” (nd-Súfī). What, then, more natural than that he who was regarded not only as the Sháh of Persia

---

2 Ibid., p. 259, and pp. 71-3 infra.
3 L’Estat de la Perse en 1660, ed. Schefer, pp. 16-17.
4 See J.R.A.S. for July, 1921, the Persian words on the illustration facing p. 415.
but as the Shaykh of these devoted darvishes or Şūfis, whose courage amazed contemporary Venetian travellers, should be called in Europe “the Great Şūfī” or “Sophi”? At any rate no more probable origin has been suggested for this term, which can scarcely be regarded as a corrupt pronunciation of Şafawi.

It would appear that an idea prevailed in Europe (based, perhaps, on vague recollections of the Magi or Wise Men from the East) that Sophi was derived from σοφός, an opinion which Don Juan of Persia¹ is at pains to refute; for, having described how Sháh Isma‘īl immediately after he had conquered Tabríz adopted the title of “gran Sophi de Persia,” he adds: “no Sophi por sabio, como algunos mal entendieron, pensando que venía de Sópos vocablo Griego, sino de Sophi, que es vocablo Persiano, y quiere dezir, lana, o algodón” (“Not Sophi in the sense of wise, as some have erroneously supposed, thinking it to come from the Greek word σοφός, but from Sophi, which is a Persian word meaning wool or cotton”).

The rapid rise to power of Isma‘īl is one of the most remarkable events in Persian history, especially in view of his forlorn and threatened childhood. His father, Shaykh Haydar, was killed in A.D. 1490 when he was only about three years of age, and he and his two brothers, of whom the elder, Sultán ‘Alí, also fell in battle about A.D. 1495, were in constant danger from the Turkmán rulers of the “White Sheep” dynasty, and had many hair-breadth escapes in which they owed their lives to the devoted loyalty of their faithful Şūfis. Only seven of these accompanied Isma‘īl when, at the age of thirteen, he set out from Láhiján for Ardabīl to win a kingdom or perish in the attempt, but at every

¹ Ed. Valladolid, 1604, f. 50a.
² Krusinski agrees with this view. See p. 68 of the English version (London, 1728).
³ He was born on Rajab 5, 892 (June 27, 1487).
stage he received reinforcements, so that at Tárum his army numbered fifteen hundred men, and by the time he reached Arzinján on his way to attack Fartukh-Yasár, king of Shír-wán, it had increased to seven thousand. Within a year he had taken Tabríz, been crowned king of Persia, and, despite the attempts of his counsellors to dissuade him, imposed the Shí'a doctrine on his subjects. He was warned that two-thirds of the people of Tabríz were Sunnís, and that the introduction into the prayers and professions of Faith of the distinctively Shí'a clauses, and more especially the cursing of the first three Caliphs, Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán, might lead to trouble. “God and the Immaculate Imámás are with me,” he replied, “and I fear no one. By God’s help, if the people utter one word of protest, I will draw the sword and leave not one of them alive.” He was as good as his word, and when the above-mentioned anathema was uttered all men were commanded, on pain of death, to exclaim, “May it (i.e. the curse) be more, not less!” (Básh bád, kam ma-báda’).

Ruthless and bloodthirsty as he showed himself, Sháh Isma'íl, as depicted by contemporary Venetian travellers, had many attractive characteristics. At the age of thirteen he was, according to Caterino Zeno, “of noble presence and a truly royal bearing,... nor did the virtues of his mind disaccord with the beauty of his person, as he had an elevated genius, and such a lofty idea of things as seemed incredible at such a tender age.” Angiolello describes him as “very much beloved...for his beauty and pleasing manners”; and, when grown to man's estate, as “fair, handsome, and very pleasing; not very tall, but of a light and well-framed figure; rather stout than slight, with broad shoulders. His hair is reddish; he only wears moustachios, and uses his left hand instead of his right. He is as brave as a game-cock, and stronger than

---

1 The original text is quoted on p. 53 infra, ad calc.
any of his lords; in the archery contests, out of the ten apples that are knocked down, he knocks down seven.” The anonymous merchant, after describing Isma‘il’s doings in Tabrīz, adds “from the time of Nero to the present, I doubt whether so bloodthirsty a tyrant has ever existed,” yet adds a little further on that at Caesarea “he caused proclamation to be made that everyone who brought provisions for sale should be liberally paid, and forbade his men, under pain of death, to take even as much as a handful of straw without paying for it, as it was a friendly city.” He further describes him as “amiable as a girl, left-handed by nature, as lively as a fawn, and stronger than any of his lords,” and says that “this Sophi is loved and reverenced by his people as a god, and especially by his soldiers, many of whom enter into battle without armour, expecting their master Ismael to watch over them in the fight.”

The closest historical parallel to the Ṣafawī movement is, I think, afforded by the propaganda in favour of the ‘Abbāsids carried on by Abū Muslim in Persia with so great a success in the first half of the eighth century of our era. Both were consciously religious and only unconsciously, though none the less truly, racial; the chief difference was that the later movement had to confront in the person of the Ottoman Sulṭān Salīm a far more energetic and formidable antagonist than the earlier in the Umayyad Caliph Marwān, and hence its more limited success; for while the ‘Abbāsid cause triumphed throughout almost the whole of the Eastern lands of Islām, the Ṣafawī triumph was limited to Persia, though without doubt at one time it threatened Turkey as well. Fear is the great incentive to cruelty, and it was chiefly fear which caused Sulṭān Salīm to massacre in cold blood some forty thousand of his Shi‘a subjects. Fear, however, was not the only motive of this ferocity; with it were mingled anger
and disappointment. For Sultán Salím was what is now called a Pan-Islamist, and his ambition was to be not merely the Sovereign of the greatest and most powerful Muhammadan State, but the supreme head of the whole Muslim world. His conquest of Egypt and the Holy Cities of Mecca and Madíná in A.D. 1517, and his assumption of the title of Caliph, which, whether by threats or promises, or a combination of the two, he induced the last titular ‘Abbásid Caliph to surrender to him, might well have given him this position but for Sháh Isma’íl and the barrier of heterodoxy which he had erected between the Turks, Egyptians and other Sunnís to the West and their fellow-believers to the East in Transoxiana, Afghánistán, Balúchistán and India. The Persians not only refused to recognise Sultán Salím as Caliph, but repudiated the whole theory of the Caliphate. The Turkish victory over the Persians at Cháldirán in August, 1514, failed of its results owing to the refusal of the Ottoman troops to push home their advantage, and thus robbed the succeeding Egyptian campaign of its full measure of success, and left a lasting soreness which served greatly to weaken the political power of Islám and to impose a check on Turkish ambitions whereby, as we have seen, Europe greatly profited. Between A.D. 1508, when it was taken by the Persians, and A.D. 1638, when it was finally recovered by the Turks, Baghádád, once the metropolis of Islám, changed hands many times as the tide of these bitter and interminable wars ebbed and flowed, until the increasing weakness and effeminacy of the later Šafawí kings left Turkey in undisputed possession of Mesopotamia.

ART AND LITERATURE.

One of the most curious and, at first sight, inexplicable phenomena of the Šafawí period is the extraordinary dearth of notable poets in Persia during the two centuries of its duration.) (Architecture,
miniature-painting and other arts flourished exceedingly; the public buildings with which Sháh ʿAbbás adorned his realms, and especially his capital Isfahán, have not ceased to command the admiration of all who beheld them from his time until the present day; and Bihzád and the other artists who flourished at the Tímúrid court of Herát found worthy successors in Rídá-yi-ʿAbbásí and his colleagues. Yet, though poets innumerable are mentioned in the Tuhša-i-Sámí and other contemporary biographies and histories, there is hardly one (if we exclude Jámí, Hátifí, Hiláli and other poets of Khurásán, who were really the survivors of the school of Herát) worthy to be placed in the first class. During the seventy stormy years of Tímúr's life there were at least eight or ten poets besides the great Háfíz, who outshone them all, whose names no writer on Persian literature could ignore; while during the two hundred and twenty years of Šafáwí rule there was in Persia, so far as I have been able to ascertain, hardly one of conspicuous merit or originality. I say "in Persia" advisedly, for a brilliant group of poets from Persia, of whom ʿUríf of Shíráz (d. A.D. 1590) and Šáʿíb of Isfahán (d. A.D. 1670) are perhaps the most notable, adorned the court of the "Great Moghuls" in India, and these were in many cases not settlers or the sons of emigrants, but men who went from Persia to India to make their fortunes and returned home when their fortunes were made. This shows that it was not so much lack of talent as lack of patronage which makes the list of distinctively Šafáwí poets so meagre. The phenomenon is noticed by Rídá-qulí Kháín in the preface to his great anthology of Persian poets entitled Majmaʿu-l-Fuṣahá, composed in the middle of the last century, as well

1 This biography of contemporary poets by Prince Sám Mírzá, the son of Sháh Ismaʿíl, is another work which urgently needs publication.

2 Lithographed at Tihrán in two large volumes in 1295/1878,
as by European scholars like the late Dr Ethé, who have written on Persian poetry; with this difference, that the European writers commonly speak of Jāmī as the last great Persian poet, and consider that during the four centuries which have elapsed since his death Persia has produced no poet of eminence, while Ridá-qull Khán, rightly as I think, places certain modern poets of the Qájár period, notably such men as Qá'ání, Furúghí and Yaghmó, in the first rank. That no great poet should have arisen in Persia in days otherwise so spacious and so splendid as those of the Šafawís seemed to me so remarkable that I wrote to my learned and scholarly friend Mírzá Muhammád Khán of Qazwín, to whose industry and acumen students of Persian owe so much, to ask him, first, whether he accepted this statement as a fact, and secondly, if he did, how he explained it. In reply, in a letter dated May 24, 1911, he wrote as follows:

"There is at any rate no doubt that during the Šafawí period literature and poetry in Persia had sunk to a very low ebb, and that not one single poet of the first rank can be reckoned as representing this epoch. The chief reason for this, as you yourself have observed, seems to have been that these kings, by reason of their political aims and strong antagonism to the Ottoman Empire, devoted the greater part of their energies to the propagation of the Shi'a doctrine and the encouragement of divines learned in its principles and laws. Now although these divines strove greatly to effect the religious unification of Persia (which resulted in its political unification), and laid the foundations of this present-day Persia, whose inhabitants are, speaking generally, of one faith, one tongue, and one race, yet, on the other hand, from the point of view of literature, poetry, Súfism and mysticism, and, to use their own expression, everything connected with the 'Accomplishments' (as opposed to the
they not merely fell far short in the promotion thereof, but sought by every means to injure and annoy the representatives of these 'Accomplishments,' who were generally not too firmly established in the Religious Law and its derivatives. In regard to the Şūffis particularly they employed every kind of severity and vexation, whether by exile, expulsion, slaughter or reprimand, slaying or burning many of them with their own hands or by their sentence. Now the close connection between poetry and Belles Lettres on the one hand, and Şūfiism and Mysticism on the other, at any rate in Persia, is obvious, so that the extinction of one necessarily involves the extinction and destruction of the other. Hence it was that under this dynasty learning, culture, poetry and mysticism completely deserted Persia, and the cloisters, monasteries, retreats and rest-houses [of the darwishes] were so utterly destroyed that there is now throughout the whole of Persia no name or sign of such charitable foundations, though formerly, as, for instance, in the time of Ibn Baṭūta, such institutions were to be found in every town, hamlet and village, as abundantly appears from the perusal of his Travels, wherein he describes how in every place, small or great, where he halted, he alighted in such buildings, of which at the present day no name or sign exists. Anyone ignorant of the circumstances of the Şafawī period might well wonder whether this Persia and that are the same country, and the creed of its inhabitants the same Islām; and, if so, why practically, with rare exceptions, there exists now not a single monastery throughout the whole of Persia, while in those parts of Turkey, such as Mesopotamia, Kurdistān and Sulaymāniyya, which did not remain under the Şafawī dominion, there are many such buildings just as there were in Ibn Baṭūta's days.

"At all events during the Şafawī period in place of great
poets and philosophers there arose theologians, great indeed, but harsh, dry, fanatical and formal, like the Majlisis, the Muḥaqiq-i-thání, Shaykh Ḥurr-i-Āmulí and Shaykh-i-Bahá’í, etc."

Most professional poets in the East are primarily panegyrists, and if Rıḍá-qulí Khán is correct in his assertion that the Šafawi kings, especially Tahmásp and ‘Abbás the Great, expressed a wish that laudatory poems should be addressed to the Imáms rather than to themselves, another and a more creditable cause for the diminution of poets in their realms is indicated. More material benefits were to be looked for from the Great Moghuls¹ than from the Imáms, and hence the eyes and feet of the more mercenary poets turned rather to Dihlí than to Karbalá. (But to religious poetry commemorating the virtues and sufferings of the Imáms a great impetus was given in Persia, and of these poets Muhtasnam of Káshán (d. A.D. 1588) was the most eminent.) But, besides these more formal and classical elegies, it is probable that much of the simpler and often very touching verse, wherein the religious feelings of the Persians find expression during the Muḥarram mourning, dates from this period, when every means was employed to stimulate and develop these sentiments of devotion to the House of ‘Alí and detestation of its oppressors. On the other hand the dramatisation of these moving scenes, which now form so remarkable a feature of the Muḥarram mourning (Ta’ziya), and are often described by European writers as “Miracle Plays,” seems to have taken place at a much later period. That careful writer Olearius spent the month of Muḥarram, A.H. 1047 (May–June, 1637) at Ardabil, the sanctuary of the Šafawi family,

¹ The liberality of Humáyún towards poets and men of letters is especially noticed under the year of his death (962/1555) in the Ahsanu’t-Tawārikh. This and the succeeding topics will be more fully discussed in a subsequent chapter.
and gives a very full description of all that he saw, the
mournings, wailings, lamentations and cuttings culminating
on the 'Ashūrā, the tenth day of the month or Rūs-i-Qaṭl,
but he makes no mention of any dramatic representations,
so that it is pretty certain that none existed at that time.
To elucidate this point I addressed enquiries to two well-
informed and intelligent Persian friends, Sayyid Taqī-záda
and Mírzá Husayn Dánish. The former expressed the
opinion that while the solemn recitations known as Rawda-
khvánt (i.e. the reading from the pulpit of the Rawdatu'sh-
Shuhadá, or “Garden of the Martyrs,” and other similar
books) dates from Safawí times, the Ta'ziya-gardání, shabth,
or “Passion Play” was of much later date, and perhaps owes
something to European influences. The latter also placed
the origin of these “Passion Plays” (of which Sir Lewis
Pelly’s translations give a good idea to the English reader)
about the end of the eighteenth or beginning of the nine-
teenth century, i.e. at the beginning of the Qájár period, and
incidentally cited the following interesting verses by Shaykh
Ridá-yi-Kurd in illustration of the view that the Persian
dislike of 'Umar is due not less to the fact that he conquered
Persia and overthrew the Sásánian dynasty than to his
usurpation of the rights of 'Alí and Fátima:

بشکشت غیر پُشْتِ هائران اجمراء،
بر باد فنا داد رک و ریشه، جمراء،
این عربیده برغصب خلافت زعلی نیست،
با آل عمر کینه قدیراست عجرم،

“'Umar broke the back of the lions of the thicket: He cast to the winds the thews and sinews of Jamshíd.
This quarrel is not about the usurpation of the Caliphate from 'Alí:
Persia has an ancient grudge against the House of 'Umar.”

In conclusion we must not omit to notice another step
taken by the Safawí kings which added greatly to the
consolidation of Persia and the prevention of a continued outflow of men and money from the country, namely the exaltation and popularisation of Mashhad, Qum and other holy cities of Persia, whereby the tide of pilgrims was to a considerable extent confined within the limits of their Empire, in which, as we have seen, the most sacred shrines of Karbalá, Najaf and Mashhad 'Alí were long included before they finally fell under Turkish dominion.¹

POSTSCRIPT.

I am indebted to my friend Mr H. L. Rabino, of H.B.M.'s Consular Service, for the following valuable notes on the celebration of the Muharram mourning at Baghída as early as the fourth Muhammadan (tenth Christian) century. I have only the text of the two passages (one in German and the other in Persian): the reference was probably given in the accompanying letter (December 23, 1922), which has unfortunately been mislaid. I have an impression that they are taken from one of Dorn's articles, probably published in the *Mélanges Asiatiques*. The whole quotation runs as follows:


¹ See Krusinski, *op. cit.*, pp. 159-161.
"It is related in the History of Ibn Kathīr the Syrian that Mu‘izzū’d-Dawla Aḥmad ibn Buwayh issued orders in Bagh ῃd that during the first ten days of Muharram all the bazaars of Bagh ῃd should be closed, and that the people should wear black for mourning and betake themselves to mourning for the Chief of Martyrs [the Imām Ḥusayn]. Since this procedure was not customary in Bagh ῃd, the Sunnī doctors regarded it as a great innovation; but since they had no control over Mu‘izzū’d-Dawla, they could do nothing but submit. Thereafter every year until the collapse of the Daylamite [or Buwayhid] dynasty, this custom of mourning was observed by the Shi‘ites in all countries during the first ten days of Muharram. In Bagh ῃd it continued until the early days of the reign of Tūghrīl the Saljūq."
CHAPTER II.

THE CREATION OF THE ŠAFAWĪ POWER TO 930/1524.

SHÁH ISMA'ĪL AND HIS ANCESTORS.

That Shaykh Šafīyyu'd-Dīn, the saintly recluse of Ardabil from whom the Šafawī kings of Persia derived their descent and their name, was really an important and influential person in his own day, is a fact susceptible of historical proof. He who wins a throne and founds a great dynasty destined to endure for more than two centuries is apt, if he be of lowly origin, to create, or allow to be created, some legend connecting his ancestors with famous kings, statesmen or warriors of old, or otherwise reflecting glory on a House which, till he made it powerful and illustrious, held but a humble place in men’s esteem. But Sháh Isma’il, sixth in descent from Shaykh Šafi (as we shall henceforth call him for brevity), who founded the Šafawī dynasty about the beginning of the sixteenth century of the Christian era, and raised Persia to a position of splendour which she had scarcely held since the overthrow of the ancient and noble House of Sásán by the Arabs in the seventh century, had no occasion to resort to these devices; for whether or not Shaykh Šafi was directly descended from the seventh Imám of the Shi‘a, Músá Kázim, and through him from ‘Alí ibn Abí Tálīb1 and Fátima the Prophet’s daughter (and his

1 The full pedigree is given (with only slight variants) in the Šafwatu’s-Šafá, Ahsanu’t-Tawārikh, Silsilatu’n-Nasab-i-Šafawiyya and most other histories of this dynasty, and runs as follows: (1) Šafīyyu’d-Dīn Abu’l-Fath Išáq b. (2) Aminu’d-Dīn Jibrā’īl b. (3) Šāliḥ b. (4) Quršu’d-Dīn Ahmad b. (5) Šalāhu’d-Dīn Rashíd b. (6) Muḥammad Ḥāfiz b. (7) ‘Awaḍ al-Khawāṣṣ b. (8) Fīrūzshāh-i-Zarrin-kulāh b. (9) Muḥammad b. (10) Sharaflshāh b. (11) Muḥammad b.
EVIDENCE OF SHAYKH ŞAFİ’I’S IMPORTANCE

Claim is probably at least as good as that of any contemporary Sayyid), two facts prove that in his own time (the thirteenth century) he was highly accounted as a saint and spiritual guide.

The first and more important of these two facts is the concern shown by that great Minister Rashidu’d-Din Faḍlulu’l-Máh for his welfare, and the desire to win his favour and intercession. In the very rare collection of the Minister’s letters known as the Munsha’át-i-Rashidí there occur two documents affording proof of this. The first is a letter (No. 45 of the collection, ff. 145b–149a of the MS.) addressed to Shaykh Şafiyyu’d-Din himself, offering to his monastery (Khánqál) a yearly gift of corn, wine, oil, cattle, sugar, honey and other food-stuffs for the proper entertainment of the notables of Ardabil on the anniversary of the Prophet’s birthday, on condition that prayers should be offered up at the conclusion of the feast for the writer and benefactor. The second (No. 49, ff. 161a–169b) is addressed by Rashid to his son Mír Ahmad, governor of Ardabil, enjoining on him consideration for all its inhabitants, and especially “to act in such wise that His Holiness the Pole of the Heaven of Truth, the Swimmer in the Oceans of the Law, the Pacer of the Hippodrome of the Path, the Shaykh of Islam and of the Muslims, the Proof of such as attain the Goal, the Exemplar of the Bench of Purity, the Rose-tree of the Garden of Fidelity, Shaykh Şafiyyu’l-Millat wa’d-Dín (may


B. P. L.
God Most High perpetuate the blessings of His Holy Exhalations!) may be well pleased with and grateful to thee." These letters, and especially the second, which is filled with the most exaggerated praises of Shaykh Şafi, sufficiently prove the high repute which he enjoyed amongst his contemporaries.

The second fact germane to our thesis is that comparatively soon after his death a most extensive monograph on his life, character, teachings, doctrines, virtues and miracles was compiled by one of his followers, the darvish Tawakkul ibn Isma'il, commonly called Ibn'ul-Bazzáz, apparently under the inspiration and direction of Shaykh Şadru'd-Din, who succeeded his father Shaykh Şafi as head of the Order and held this position for fifty-eight years (A.D. 1334–1392). This rare and important book has never been printed, but is the chief source of all later accounts of the head of the family and dynasty, in most of which it is frequently and explicitly cited. A much later recension of it was made in the reign of Sháh Ẓahmásp (A.D. 1524–1576) by a certain Abu'l-

1 Nousi Safi who was a great qadi; behind him stood the two qadis [Shirazi and Khâleqi], renowned for their learning in Hadith and Sharî'ah, al-Islam, and the Sunnah. Baha' al-Din al-Muhaddith, who was the head of the religious and scholarly circles of the period.

2 Shaykh Şafi died in 735/1334 at the age of 85. Rashídud-Din was put to death in A.D. 1318 at the age of 70 or somewhat over.

3 Or Túklí (توكلی) as it is written and pointed in a note in Mr. Ellis’s manuscript.

4 Since this was written I have obtained through the kindness of one of my Persian correspondents a copy of an excellent lithographed edition published at Bombay in 1320/1911, of the very existence of which I was ignorant when this chapter was written.
Fath al-Hasayni. I have personal knowledge of only three manuscripts, Add. 11745 of the British Museum¹; No. 87 of the Pote Collection in the library of King's College, Cambridge²; and a fine copy made at Ardabil in 1030/1621, now belonging to Mr A. G. Ellis, who, with his customary generosity, placed it at my disposal for as long as I required it. This exhaustive work comprises an Introduction, twelve chapters, and a Conclusion, each of which is divided into numerous sections³, and its contents are summarized by Rieu with his usual precision. It contains interesting matter, dilated by much that is wearisome save to a devoted disciple, and represents on a more extensive scale the type of hagiography familiar to all Persian students in such books as the Manaqib al-‘Arifin of Aflaki, available in the English version of Redhouse⁴ and the French of Huart⁵. The extracts from it included in most later histories of the family, notably the Silsilatu-n-Nasab-i-Shafawiyya⁶, will suffice to satisfy the curiosity of most readers, though a careful perusal and analysis of the original work would undoubtedly yield results of value, most of the anecdotes and sayings being vouched for by Shaykh Sadru’d-Din. But before further discussing Shaykh Safi and his descendants something more must be said about his ancestors.

² See my Suppl. Hand-list, p. 137, No. 837.
³ Ch. viii comprises no less than 27 sections.
⁶ See my account of this rare and interesting work in the J.R.A.S. for July, 1921, pp. 395–418. Both Dr Babinger and M. Minorsky have called my attention to the fact that another MS. of this work at St Petersburg was described by Khanikoff in the Mélanges Asiatiques, i, pp. 580–583.
The Ancestors of Shaykh Sāfiyyu’D-Dīn.

That the seventh Imām Mūsá Kāzīm had, besides the son ‘Ali Rida who succeeded him in the Imāmate, another son named Ḥamza, from whom Shaykh Sāfī claimed descent, is a fact vouched for by the historian al-Ya‘qūbī, but the next dozen links in the chain (including five Muhammad’s without further designation) are too vague to admit of identification. The earliest ancestor of the Ṣafawīs who is invested with any definite attributes is Firūzshāh-i-Zarrīn-kulāh (“Golden-cap”), who is stated by the Silsilatun-Nasab to have been made governor of Ardabil, henceforth the home and rallying-point of the family, by a son of Ibrāhīm-i-Adham, here represented as king of Persia. Ibrāhīm-i-Adham, however, though reputed of kingly race, renounced the world, became a notable saint, and died about A.D. 780 in Syria, and history knows nothing of any son of his who succeeded to a throne in Persia or elsewhere. Firūzshāh died after a prosperous life at Rangīn in Gīlān, and was succeeded by his son ‘Awad, of whom nothing is recorded save that he lived and died at Isfaranjān near Ardabil. His son Muhammad earned the title of Ḥāfiz because he knew the Qur’an by heart, an accomplishment for which he is said to have been indebted to the Jinn, who kidnapped him at the age of seven and educated him amongst themselves for a like number of years. The two succeeding heads of the family, Šalāhu’d-Dīn Rashīd and Qutbu’d-Dīn Aḥmad, seem to have lived quietly at Kalkhorān, devoting themselves to agriculture, until a fierce incursion of


2 For some account of the believing Jinn, see Qur’ān, lxii.

3 This, as M. V. Minorsky has pointed out to me, and not “Gilkhwārān,” is the proper pronunciation of this name.
the Georgians compelled the latter to flee to Ardabil with his family, including his little son Aminu’d-Din Jibr’lil, then only a month old. Even here they were not left unmolested: the Georgians pursued them and they had to take refuge in a cellar, where their lives were only saved by a devoted youth, who, ere he fell beneath the swords of his assailants, succeeded in concealing the entrance to the cellar by throwing down a large earthen jar over it. Qutbu’d-Din himself was severely wounded in the neck and hardly escaped with his life, and his grandson Shaykh Safi, who was born during his life, used to relate that when his grandfather took him on his shoulder he used to put four baby fingers into the scar left by the wound. In due course Qutbu’d-Din was succeeded by his son Aminu’d-Din Jibr’lil, farmer and saint, who adopted KhwaJA Kamalu’d-Din ‘Arabshah as his spiritual director, and married a lady named Dawlati; she in due course, in the year 650/1252–3, bore him the son who afterwards became famous as Shaykh Safiyu’Din, with whom the family suddenly emerges from comparative obscurity into great fame. The author of the Silsilatu’N-Nasab, not content with giving the year of his birth, further fixes the date as follows. At the time of his birth Shams-i-Tabriz had been dead five years, Shaykh Muhyi’d-Din ibnu’l-‘Arabi twelve years, and Najmu’d-Din Kubra thirty-two years. He was five years old when Hulagu Khan the Mongol conquered Persia, twenty-two on the death of Jalalu’d-Din Rum’i, and forty-one on the death of Sa’di. The eminent saints contemporary with him included Amir ‘Abdu’llah-i-Shirazi, Shaykh Najibu’d-Din Buzghush, ‘Ala’-u’d-Dawla-i-Samnani and Shaykh Mahmu’d-i-Shabistar (author of the Gulshan-i-Raz or “Rose-bed of Mystery”). He had three elder and two younger brothers and one

1 Muhammed, Salahu’Din Rashid and Isma’Iil.
2 Ya’qub and Fakhrud-Din Yusuf.
elder sister, being thus the fifth in a family of seven; and his father died when he was six years of age.

SHAYKH ŠAFIYYU'D-DIN (A.D. 1252-1334).

Hitherto we have suffered from the exiguity of biographical details, but now we are rather embarrassed by their abundance. The Šafawāt's-Šafā, it is true, probably contains all that can now be known about Shaykh Šafi, but it is a voluminous work, containing some 216,000 words, and written in a fairly simple and direct style without much "stuffing" (hashu') or rhetorical adornment, so that anything approaching a full analysis of its contents would in itself constitute a volume of considerable size. It is lamentably deficient in dates, and in general deals rather with the spiritual than the material aspects of the life of Shaykh Šafi and his director Shaykh Zāhid-i-Gilānī. Stated as briefly as possible, its contents are as follows:

Introduction (in 2 sections). Shaykh Šafi's advent foretold by the Prophet and by former saints, such as Jalālu'd-Dīn Rūmī.

Chapter I (in 11 sections, two of which are further subdivided). Early life of Shaykh Šafi. His genealogy. Portents preceding his birth. His birth and childhood. His search for a spiritual director. He finally meets Shaykh Zāhid of Gilān. His life as a disciple of this holy man. His succession to the supremacy of the Order. His spiritual affiliation up to the Prophet. Characteristics and miracles of Shaykh Zāhid.

Chapter II (in 3 sections). Some of the miracles of Shaykh Šafi, whereby he delivered men from the perils of the sea and of deep waters, of mountains, mist and snow, and from foes, bondage and sickness.

Chapter III (in 3 sections). Some of the miracles wrought by the favourable or unfavourable regards of Shaykh Šafi.
Chapter IV (in 6 sections, two of which are further subdivided). Some of Shaykh Ṣafi's sayings, and his explanations of verses of the Qur'an, traditions of the Prophet, utterances of the Saints, and allegorical verses of the poets.

Chapter V (in 3 sections). Some of Shaykh Ṣafi's miracles connected with the ḫimār, with animals, and with inanimate objects.

Chapter VI (undivided). Ecstacies and devotional dancing of Shaykh Ṣafi.

Chapter VII (in 5 sections). Various miracles of Shaykh Ṣafi, such as thought-reading, foretelling future events, converse with the dead, etc.

Chapter VIII (in 27 sections). Further examples of the virtues, powers, pious actions, effective prayers, intuitions and views of Shaykh Ṣafi, vouched for by his son Shaykh Ẓadrud-Dīn.

Chapter IX (in 2 sections). Last illness and death of Shaykh Ṣafi.

Chapter X (in 3 sections). Posthumous miracles of Shaykh Ṣafi.

Chapter XI (in 3 sections). The fame and greatness of Shaykh Ṣafi and his vicars (Ḵulafā') throughout the world.

Chapter XII (in 2 sections). Miracles wrought by Shaykh Ṣafi's disciples.

Conclusion.

That so comparatively small a portion of this voluminous work should be biographical is disappointing but not surprising, for how can those who regard themselves as belonging to the Timeless and Placeless (Lá ṭakfán) be expected to trouble themselves about dates or similar details? All these hagiographies, indeed, have a similar character, and deal chiefly with the pious sayings, devout practices and supernatural achievements (karamat) of those whose lives they record.
That these *karámát* have an interest of their own in connection with Psychical Research has been recognised by D. B. Macdonald in his excellent book on *The Religious Attitude and Life in Islam* and by Cl. Huart in his *Saints des Derviches Tourneurs*. The latter classifies the psychical phenomena recorded in his original, the *Manáqib 'l-'Arifín* (composed about 718/1318, only some thirty years earlier than the *Šafwatu's-Safá*, which was very probably modelled on it), as follows: dreams; knowledge of future events; second sight and divination of hidden objects; thought-transference; luminosity of bodies, human and inanimate; automatic opening of closed doors; ubiquity; anaesthesia and immunity against poisons; action on material objects at a distance; production of the precious metals; abnormal muscular, digestive and sexual powers and physical enlargements of the body; shifting features and instability of countenance; apparitions; psychotherapy; replies to difficult questions; conversions to Islam; sermons to animals; vengeance of the Saints; mental alienation; protracted seclusion and fasting; talismans; sudden disappearances. Examples of all, or nearly all, of these phenomena are to be found in the *Šafwatu's-Safá*, while a smaller but fairly representative selection is contained in the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab*, but a detailed examination of them, though not without interest and value, would be out of place in this volume. It must be noted, however, that certain aspects of these Muslim saints, as recorded by their disciples and admirers, are to Western

1 The supernatural achievements of thaumaturgists are divided by Jámi (Nafaḥatu'l-Uns, ed. Nassau Lees, pp. 22–31) into three classes: (i) the evidential miracles of the Prophets, called *muḥājizát*; (ii) the "gifts" (*karámát*) vouchsafed by God to his saints for their greater honour; and (iii) the "wonders" (*khawādriqu'l-ādād*) wrought by ordinary men by means of Black or White Magic.

2 University of Chicago Press, 1909.

3 Paris, Leroux, 1918–1922.
minds somewhat repellent; their curses are no less effective than their blessings, and their indulgences no less remarkable than their abstentions, while grim jests on

\textbf{Repellent characteristics of Muslim Saints.}

the fate of such as have incurred their displeasure are not uncommon. Thus a certain prince named Siyámak, son of Shírwáns Sháh, when setting out for the Mongol camp (\textit{urdú}), spoke in a disparaging manner of Shaykh Záhid’s disciples, and threatened on his return to pull down or burn their monasteries. When this was reported to the Shaykh he merely remarked, playing on the prince’s name, that Siyámak would become Siyáh-marg (meaning “the Black Death”); which saying was duly fulfilled, for, having in some way incurred the wrath of the Mongol sovereign, he was, after the barbarous fashion of these people, wrapped up in black felt and kicked or trampled to death. To Shaykh Záhid, on the other hand, Gházán Khán the Mongol Ílkhan showed the greatest respect, especially after the saint had exhibited his powers of mind-reading, which so impressed Gházán that he insisted on kissing his feet.

Externally the life of Shaykh Šafi, especially after he became the disciple of Shaykh Záhid and settled at Ardabil, was not very eventful. As a child he was serious, unsociable and disinclined for play. At a comparatively early age he appears to have got a “concern” about religion, and to have seen visions and held converse with the Unseen World. Finding no adequate direction in Ardabil, and hearing the fame of Shaykh

1 The last ‘Abbásid Caliph, al-Musta’ṣin, is said to have been put to death by Húlagú Khán in this way, the Mongols having a dislike to shedding kingly blood. So Clavijo informs us that at the court of Tímúr “the custom is that when a great man is put to death he is hanged; but the meaner sort are beheaded.” See Sir Clements Markham’s translation of his \textit{Narrative}, published by the Hakluyt Society in 1859, p. 150.

Najību’d-Dīn Buzghūsh of Shíráz, he desired to go thither, but, having finally overcome his mother’s opposition to the journey, arrived there only to find the saint dead. While at Shíráz he made the acquaintance of many notable saints and darwishes, and of the celebrated poet Sa’dī, of whom, however, he seems to have formed but a poor opinion. Indeed he appears to have treated the poet with scant civility, even refusing to accept an autograph copy of his poems. Finally Zahiru’d-Dīn, the son and successor of Shaykh Buzghūsh, told Shaykh Sa’dī that no one could satisfy his spiritual needs except Shaykh Záhid of Gílán, whose personal appearance and dwelling-place on the shore of the Caspian Sea he described to him in detail. Four years elapsed, however, ere he was successful in tracking down the elusive saint, then sixty years of age, by whom he was cordially welcomed, and with whom he spent the next twenty-five years of his life.

Shaykh Záhid’s full name, as given in the Ṣafwatu’s-Ṣafá, is Táju’d-Dīn Ibráhím ibn Rawshan Amír ibn Bábíl ibn Shaykh Pindár (or Bundár) al-Kurdí as-Sanjáni, and the mother of his grandfather Bábíl is said to have been a jinniyya. The title of Záhid (“the Ascetic” or “Abstemious”) was given to him by his Director Sayyid Jamálu’d-Dín for reasons which are variously stated. He gave his daughter Bíbí Fátima in marriage to Shaykh Sa’dī, to whom she bore three sons, of whom the second, Sadrú’d-Dín, ultimately succeeded his father as head of the Order. The author of the Silsilatu’n-Nasab was one of his descendants, who were collectively known as Pír-záda and apparently continued to enjoy high consideration during the whole Ṣafawí period.

From the data given by the Silsilatu’n-Nasab, viz. that

1 According to Jámi (Nafahát, p. 548) he died in Sha‘bán 678 (Dec. 1279).
Shaykh Abdal Pir-zada presenting the captured horse of the Uzbek leader, Din Muhammad Khan, to Shah 'Abbás the Great

From a ms. of the Silsilatun-Nasab-i-Safawīyya (H. 12, f. 80a) in the Library of Professor E. G. Browne
Shaykh Zāhid was 35 years older than Shaykh Šafi, that both died at the age of 85, and that the latter died in 735/1334, we may conclude that the former died about 700/1300; and this is corroborated by the further statement that his grandson Šadru’d-Dīn was born in 704/1305, four years after his death. Shaykh Šafi now became head of the Order, and held this position for 35 years, when he died, and was in turn succeeded by his son Šadru’d-Dīn. He produced some poetry both in the dialect of Gīlān (in which also several of his conversations with Shaykh Zāhid were conducted) and likewise in ordinary Persian. Though one of his quatrains testifies to his love of ‘Alī (“how much soever he in whose heart is a grain of love for ‘Alī may sin, God will forgive him” are his words), I find no evidence that he held those strong Shi’a views which subsequently characterised his descendants. There is, indeed, a piece of evidence to the contrary in the Aḥsanu’t-Tawārīkh, an important unpublished history of the first two Šafawī kings composed in the reign of Shāh Tahmāsp and including the years A.H. 901–985 (A.D. 1495–1577). In a letter of remonstrance addressed to this ruler by the Uzbek ‘Ubayd Khān in 936/1529–1530 the following sentence occurs:

و پدر خلان شیخ صفی را حضرت علی نژاد که مردی عزیز اهل علی و جمعه که خانواده مارا حضرت علی علیه السلام خود را تبعید نکرده بوده و نه روش پدر خلان را.

1 On Monday, Muḥarram 12, 735 (Sept. 12, 1334).
3 Mr A. G. Ellis most kindly placed at my disposal his MS. of this rare book, to which all subsequent references are made.
4 F. 166v.
“We have thus heard concerning your ancestor, His sainted Holiness Shaykh Şaff, that he was a good man and an orthodox Sunni, and we are greatly astonished that you neither follow the conduct of Murtadá 'Alī nor that of your ancestor.”

He did much, however, to extend and develop the Order of which he was the Superior, and his influence is illustrated by a statement of Mawláná Shamsu’d-Dîn Barniqi of Ardabil, quoted in the *Silsilatun-Nasab*¹, that the number of those who came to visit him along one road only—that from Marāgha and Tabrîz—in the course of three months amounted to some thirteen thousand. Many if not most of these must have come from Asia Minor, so that even at this early date the Order was establishing and consolidating itself in regions where it was afterwards destined to cause the greatest anxiety to the Ottoman Sultâns².

Shaykh Şadru’dd-Dîn succeeded his father at the age of 31 in 735/1334 and controlled the affairs of the Order for 59 years until his death in 794/1392. He also composed verses in Persian, and is besides credited with many miracles, the most celebrated of which was his recovery and restoration to Ardabil of the door of the principal mosque which had been carried off by the Georgians when they raided that city about 600/1203-4³. Amongst the most celebrated of his disciples was the poet Qâsimu’l-Anwâr, whose orthodoxy was somewhat suspect, and who was expelled from Herât by Sháh-rûkh under circumstances which I have discussed elsewhere⁴. That Shaykh Şadru’dd-Dîn’s influence and ac-

---

¹ See *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, pp. 403-4.
² Compare Dr Franz Babinger’s remarks in his admirable study *Scheij Bedr ed-Dîn der Sohn des Richters von Sinâw* (Berlin and Leipzig, 1921), especially p. 15 of the Sonderabdruck.
⁴ *Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion*, pp. 473–486 and pp. 365–6. I must here note an error into which I fell concerning the
tivities also aroused the suspicions of neighbouring potentates is shown by the action of Malik-i-Ashraf, who lured him to Tabriz and kept him in confinement there for three months, when, warned by a dream, he released him, but subsequently attempted to recapture him and compelled him to flee into Gilan. Other holy and learned men suffered at the hands of this tyrant, and one of them, the Qādī Muḥyī’d-Dīn of Barda’a, depicted in such vivid colours the odious oppression of Malik-i-Ashraf to Jānī Beg Khān son of Uzbek, the ruler of the Dasht-i-Qūchāq, that the latter invaded Ādharbāyjān, defeated Malik-i-Ashraf, and put him to death. According to the *Silsilatu’n-Nasab* he also had an interview with Shaykh Ṣadrū’d-Dīn, treated him with great respect, and confirmed to him the possession of certain estates whereof the revenues had formerly been allocated to the shrine at Ardabīl.

Shaykh Ṣadrū’d-Dīn, like his father Shaykh Ṣafī, performed the pilgrimage to Mecca at the end of his life, and is said to have brought back with him to Ardabīl the Prophet’s standard. Shortly after his return he died, in 794/1392, and was succeeded by his son Khwāja ‘Alī, who controlled the affairs of the Order for thirty-six years until his death on Rajab 18, 830 (May 15, 1427). This happened in Palestine, where he is buried, his tomb being known as that of “Sayyid ‘Alī ‘Ajami.” Like his father and grandfather he

verses of Qāsim quoted on p. 474. These obviously refer not to Shaykh Ṣafī but to his son Ṣadrū’d-Dīn, who actually lived exactly ninety years (A.H. 704–794). The word `aḍād in l. 1 probably needs emendation to some word (like َناح) meaning “son”; in any case this is its meaning here. The translation should run: “The Ṣadr of Saintship, who is the son [or survivor or representative] of Shaykh Ṣafī,” etc.

1 See d’Ohsson’s *Histoire des Mongols*, vol. iv, pp. 740–2.
3 See *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, p. 407. Dr Franz Babinger wrote to
was a worker of miracles and a poet, and over two hundred of his Persian verses are quoted in the Silsila\(\text{n}\)-Nasab. In him strong Shi'a tendencies reveal themselves: instigated by the Ninth Imâm Muḥammad Taqī in a dream he converts the people of Dizful, by a miraculous stoppage of their river, to a belief in and recognition of the supreme holiness of 'Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib; and he exhorts Tīmūr, whose regard he had succeeded in winning by a display of his psychical powers, to “chastise, as they deserve, the Yazidi Kurds, the friends of Mu‘awiyah, because of whom we wear the black garb of mourning for the Immaculate Imám.” More celebrated is his intercession with Tīmūr on behalf of a number of Turkish prisoners (astrān-i-Rām) whose release he secured, and whose grateful descendants, known as “the Turkish Şūfīs” (Şuṣīyān-i-Rāmlī), became the most devoted adherents and supporters of the Şafawi family.  

me in a private letter: “Quds-i-Khalil ist vielmehr al-Quds wa‘l-Khalil, d.h. Jerusalem und Hebron, eine häufige Bezeichnung für Süd-palästina.” This is confirmed by the Rev. Canon J. E. Hanauer, to whom Dr Babinger wrote about this matter, and who kindly endeavoured to identify this tomb. His very interesting letter is too long to quote in full. “The Arab historian Mejd ed-Dīn,” he says, “who wrote about A.D. 1495, i.e. seventy years later [than Khwāja ‘Alī’s death], gives a list of the most renowned Shaykhs buried at Hebron, but does not mention ‘Alī ‘Ajamī. We must therefore look for the shrine elsewhere. Four different places of note suggest themselves.” These are (1) the Haram of ‘Alī ibn ‘Alawi 2½ hours north of Jaffa; (2) the Wālī of al-‘Ajamī, just south of Jaffa; (3) a sacred oak-grove with the shrine of “the Imám ‘Alī” near the Bāb-el-Wad; and (4) another very holy shrine of al-‘Ajamī, on the hill above the village of Bayt Maḥafsir, amidst woods and thickets. Canon Hanauer is inclined to think that the last is most probably the tomb in question.

2 See Sir John Malcolm’s History of Persia (ed. 1815), vol. i, pp. 495–7 and footnotes. The ascription of this act of intercession to Shaykh Șadrud-Dīn and still more to his father Șafiyyu’d-Dīn is an anachronism.
Shaykh Ibráhím, better known as Shaykh Sháh, succeeded his father in 830/1427 and died in 851/1447-8. Little is recorded of him save the names of his six sons, and he is even omitted entirely in the succession by the Ta’rikh-i-‘Alam-árá-yi-‘Abbási. He was succeeded by his youngest son Shaykh Junayd, with whom the militant character of the family first asserted itself. He visited Diyar Bakr and won the favour of Úzún Hasan, the celebrated ruler of the “White Sheep” Dynasty, who bestowed on him the hand of his sister Khadijá in marriage. This alliance, combined with the assembly round his standard of ten thousand Súfi warriors (ghusdat-i-Súfiyya), “who deemed the risking of their lives in the path of their perfect Director the least of the degrees of devotion,” aroused the alarm of Jahánsáh, the Turkmán ruler of Ádharbáyján and the two ‘Iráqs, and other neighbouring princes, and Shaykh Junayd fell in battle against Shírwánsáh. His body, according to one account, was brought to Ardash and there buried, but according to others it was buried near the battle-field at a village variously called Quryál, Qarúyyl or Qúriyín.

Shaykh Ḥaydar (the “Sechaidar” of Angiolello), like his father Junayd, whom he succeeded, found favour in the eyes of the now aged Úzún Hasan, his maternal uncle, who gave him in marriage his daughter Marta, Ḩalímá, Bakí Aqá or ‘Álam-sháh Begum, whose mother, the celebrated Despina Khátún (“Despina-catón”), was the daughter of Kalo Ioannes, the last Christian Emperor of Trebizond, of the noble Greek family of the Comneni. The anonymous Venetian merchant whose narrative is included in the Italian travels in Persia in the

---

1 These particulars are from the Ta’rikh-i-‘Alam-árá-yi-‘Abbási.
2 In 860/1456 according to Babinger, op. cit., p. 83.
3 See Pers. Lit. iii, p. 497.
fifteenth and sixteenth centuries describe him as "a lord about the rank of a count, named Secaidar, of a religion or sect named Sophi, reverenced by his co-religionists as a saint and obeyed as a chief. There are," he continues, "numbers of them in different parts of Persia, as in Natolia (Anatolia) and Caramania (Qaramán), all of whom bore great respect to this Secaidar, who was a native of this city of Ardouil (Ardabil or Ardawil), where he had converted many to the Suffavean (Şafawi) doctrine. Indeed he was like the abbot of a nation of monks; he had six children, three boys and three girls, by a daughter of Assambei (Hasan Bey, i.e. Üzün Hasan); he also bore an intense hatred to the Christians." He it was who, divinely instructed in a dream, bade his followers adopt in place of the Turkman cap (təqiyə-i-Turkmən) the scarlet cap of twelve gores (Təq-i-dəwəsda tark) from which they became universally known as "Red Heads" (Qızıl-baş in Turkish; Surkh-sar in Persian). "They are accustomed," says the anonymous Venetian merchant cited above (p. 206 of the Italian Travels), "to wear a red caftan, and above that a high conical turban made with a dozen folds, representing the twelve sacraments of their sect, or the twelve descendants of 'Allī."'

Shaykh 话说, like his father, fell in battle against the hosts of Shīrwānshāh and his Turkman allies at Tabar-sarán near Darband. Twenty-two years later his death was

---

1 Translated and edited by Charles Grey and published by the Hakluyt Society in 1873, pp. 139–207.

2 These were Sultan 'Ali Mīrzá (or Pādishāh), Isma'īl, and Ibrāhīm, according to the Ta'rīkh-i-ʿAlam-adrā-yī-ʿAbbāsī, but they are differently given in the Ahsanu'l-Tawārikh.

3 See the late Sir A. Houtum-Schindler's note on this in the J.R.A.S. for 1897, pp. 114–115. For a long note on Qızıl-baş, see Babinger's Schejch Bedr ed-Din, pp. 84–5 of the Sonderabdruck.

4 This, of course, is an error, for the Twelve Imāms include 'Alī, who was the first of them and was succeeded by eleven of his descendants.
avenged and his body recovered and brought to Ardabil by his redoutable son Sháh Isma’íl, who was at this time (Rajab 20, 893; June 30, 1488)¹ only a year old.

**SHÁH ISMA’ÍL.**

(Born 892/1487; crowned 905/1499–1500; died 930/1523–4.)

Nothing could appear more unpromising than the position of the three little sons of Shaykh Ḥaydar, who were for the moment entirely at the mercy of their father’s enemies. Sulṭán Ya’qúb, the son of Úzún Ḥasan, however, shrank from killing them for the sake of their mother, who was his sister, and contented himself with exiling them to Ištakhr in Fārs, where they were placed in the custody of the governor Mansúr Beg Parnák. According to Angiolello, however, the three boys were confined on an island in the “Lake of Astumar” (identified by the translator with Lake Van) inhabited by Armenian Christians, where they remained for three years and became “very much beloved, especially Ismael, the second, for his beauty and pleasing manners,” so that when Rustam, the grandson of Úzún Ḥasan, after the death of his uncle Ya’qúb, sent a message to demand their surrender, intending to put them to death, the Armenians not only made excuses for not giving them up but enabled them to escape by boat to the “country of Carabas” (Qará-bágh). In the Persian accounts, however, Rustam is credited with their release from Ištakhr, because, being at war with his cousin Bay-sunqur, he thought to strengthen himself by an alliance with them and their numerous devoted followers. He accordingly invited the eldest brother Sulṭán ‘Alí to Tabrız,

¹ According to the rare history of Sháh Isma’íl represented by Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library, however, Shaykh Ḥaydar was killed in 895/1490.


B. P. L.
received him with much honour, conferred on him all the paraphernalia of sovereignty and the title of Pádisháh, and despatched him to attack Baysunqur, whom he defeated and slew in a battle near Ahar. Having thus got rid of his rival, Rustam sought to rid himself of his ally, who, warned by one of his Turkmán disciples, fled to Ardabil, but was overtaken by his enemies at the neighbouring village of Shamáší and killed in the ensuing skirmish in the year 900/1494-5. His two brothers, however, reached Ardabil in safety, and were concealed by their faithful followers during the house-to-house search instituted by the Turkmáns, until an opportunity presented itself of conveying them secretly into Gilán, first to Rasht, where they remained for a short period, estimated at anything from seven to thirty days, and then to Láhiján, the ruler of which place, Kár-kiyá Mirzá 'Alí, accorded them hospitality and protection for several years. It is related that on one occasion when their Turkmán foes came to look for them he caused them to be suspended in a cage in the woods so as to enable him to swear that they had no foothold on his territory.

To the valour and devotion of Isma'íl's disciples, the "Súfis of Láhiján," contemporary European writers testify as forcibly as the Persian historians. "This Sophi," says the anonymous Italian merchant, "is loved and reverenced by his people as a

---

1 The following portion of this account, taken from the rare history of Sháh Isma'íl mentioned in n. 1 on p. 15 above, has been published with translation by Sir E. Denison Ross in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1896 (vol. xxviii), pp. 264-283.

2 P. 206 of the Hakluyt Society's *Travels of Venetians in Persia* (London, 1873). See also p. 223 of the same volume, where Vincentio d'Alessandri speaks in similar terms of the devotion of his subjects to Táhmasp, the son and successor of Isma'íl. Most of this passage has been already quoted on p. 23 *supra.*
god, and especially by his soldiers, many of whom enter into battle without armour, expecting their master Ismael to watch over them in the fight....The name of God is forgotten throughout Persia and only that of Ismael remembered." "The Suffaveans fought like lions" is a phrase which repeatedly occurs in the pages of the Venetian travellers. Yet for all this, and the numbers and wide ramifications of the Order ("from the remotest West to the limits of Balkh and Bukhárá," says the rare history of Sháh Isma'íl, speaking of the days of his grandfather Junayd), it is doubtful if their astounding successes would have been possible in the first instance but for the bitter internecine feuds of the ruling "White Sheep" dynasty after the death of the great and wise Úzún Hasan in A.D. 1478, from which time onwards their history is a mere welter of fratricidal warfare.

Isma'íl was only thirteen years of age when he set out from the seclusion of Láhiján on his career of conquest. He was accompanied at first by only seven devoted "Súfís," but, as he advanced by way of Tárum and Khalkhál to Ardabil, he was reinforced at every stage by brave and ardent disciples, many from Syria and Asia Minor. Ordered to leave Ardabil by the Turkmán Sulíán 'Alí Beg Chákarlú, he retired for a while to Arjáwán near Astárá on the Caspian Sea, where he amused himself with fishing, of which he was very fond; but in the spring of A.D. 1500 he was back at Ardabil, having rallied round him a goodly army of the seven Turkish tribes who constituted the backbone of the

1 Cf. Pers. Lit. iii, p. 417. So the rare history of Sháh Isma'íl (Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library, f. 27a):

در عرض راه اریاب جلادت و صوفیان پاک طلبت از روی عقیدت
در هر منزلی از منزل از طواتف روم و شمار بی‌موجب علی می
پیوستند;

4-2
Şafawí military power. He now felt himself strong enough
to embark on a holy war against the Georgian
"infidels" and a war of revenge against Farrukh-
Yasár, king of Shírwán, whom he defeated and
killed near Gulistán. He decapitated and burned
the corpse, built a tower of his enemies' heads; destroyed
the tombs of the Shírwánsháhs, and exhumed and burned
the remains of the last king, Khalíl, who had killed his
grandfather Shaykh Junayd. The noble dynasty thus ex-
tinguished claimed descent from the great Sásánian king
Anúsharwán (Núshírwán), and numbered amongst them
the patron of the famous panegyrist Kháqání.

Having captured Baku (Bádkúya, Bádkúba) Isma'íl, ad-
vised in a dream by the Imáms, decided to raise the siege of
Gulistán and march on Ádhabáyján. Alwand
and his "White Sheep" Turkmáns endeavoured
to arrest his advance, but were utterly defeated
at the decisive battle of Shurúr with great
slaughter. Alwand fled to Arzinján, while Isma'íl entered
Tabríz in triumph and was there crowned King of Persia.
Henceforth, therefore, we shall speak of him as Sháh
Isma'íl, but by the Persian historians he is often entitled
Kháqán-i-Iskandar-shán ("the Prince like unto Alexander
in state"), as his son and successor Sháh Táhmásp is
called Sháh-i-Dín-panáh ("the King who is the Refuge
of Religion").

Already Sháh Isma'íl and his partisans had given ample
proof of their strong Shí'a convictions. Their battle-cry
on the day they slew Shírwánsháh was Alláh! Alláh! wa
'Alí wa-la'íyyu'lláh (God! God! and 'Alí is the Friend of
God!"), while Alwand was offered peace if he would

1 These were the Shámlú, Rúmlú, Ustájílú, Takallú, Dhu'l-Qadar,
Afshár and Qájár. From the two last respectively there arose in later
days Nádir Sháh and the present Royal House of Persia.
2 Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library, I. 35°.
embrace this doctrine and pronounce this formula. But now Sháh Isma‘íl resolved that, with his assumption of the kingly rank, the Shí‘a faith should become not merely the State religion but the only tolerated creed. This decision caused anxiety even to some of the Shí‘a divines of Tabrız, who, on the night preceding Isma‘íl’s coronation, represented to him that of the two or three hundred thousand inhabitants of that city at least two-thirds were Sunnís; that the Shí‘a formula had not been publicly uttered from the pulpit since the time of the Imáms themselves; and that if the majority of the people refused to accept a Shí‘a ruler, it would be difficult to deal with the situation which would then arise. To this Sháh Isma‘íl replied, “I am committed to this action; God and the Immaculate Imáms are with me, and I fear no one; by God’s help, if the people utter one word of protest, I will draw the sword and leave not one of them alive.” Nor did he content himself with glorifying ‘Alí and his descendants, but ordained the public cursing of the first three Caliphs of the Sunnís, Abú Bakr, ‘Umar and ‘Uthmán, and that all who heard the cursing should respond

---

1 Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library, f. 40.
2 Ibid., f. 44. The text of this important passage, to which reference has been already made (p. 22 supra), runs as follows:

قريتت شويم دويسد سيسد نزار غلط هک در تبريزت ججار دانک آن همي سيني اند و از زمان حضرات تا حال اين خطابا کشي بر ملا نخوانده و ميترسيم که مردم بگويند که پادشاه شيعه نميحواده و نعود يالله اگر رعیت بر گردند چه تدارد درين باب توآن چرک؛ پادشاه فرومودند که مرا بابين كار براي داشته اند و خداداي عالي بر حضرات ائه؛ معصومين همراه مندد و من از هچين کس باك ندارد بتوئتي ائه تعالى اگر رعیت حرفی بگويند مشخير ميشي و يک کسرا زنده نميگذارم.
“May it be more, not less!” (Bish bâd, kam ma-bâd!) or suffer death in case of refusal.

Immediately after his coronation, according to the Ahsan'u-Tawârîkh, he ordered all preachers (Khuṭabâ) throughout his realms to introduce the distinctively Shi'a formulae “I bear witness that ‘Alî is the Friend of God” and “hasten to the best of deeds” (ḥayya ila khayrīl-'amāl) into the profession of Faith and the call to Prayer respectively; which formulae had been in abeyance since Tughril Beg the Saljûq had put to flight and slain al-Basâsîrî five hundred and twenty-eight years previously. He also instituted the public cursing of Abû Bakr, ‘Umar and ‘Uthmán in the streets and markets, as above mentioned, threatening recalcitrants with decapitation. Owing to the dearth of Shi’a theological works the religious instruction of the people necessitated by the change of doctrine presented great difficulties, but finally the Qâdî Naṣru’llâh Zaytûnî produced from his library the first volume of the Qawâridu’l-Islâm (“Rules of Islâm”) of Shaykh Jamâlu’d-Dîn... ibn ‘Alî ibnu’l-Muṭahhir al-Ḥillî, which served as a basis of instruction “until day by day the Sun of Truth of the Doctrine of the Twelve [Imâms]

1 F. 44 of Mr. A. G. Ellis’s manuscript.
2 See Weil’s Geschichte der Chalifen, vol. iii, pp. 92-102. Al-Basâsîrî was the Commander-in-chief of the troops of the Buwayhid al-Malikur-Râhîm. He espoused the cause of the Fâtimid Caliph al-Mustânîr and attempted to depose the ‘Abbâsid Caliph al-Qâ’dîm. He was killed on Dhu’l-Qa’dâ 6, 451 (Dec. 14, 1059). Since Isma’îl was crowned in 907/1501-2, we must understand “previously” as referring not to this event, but to the composition of the Ahsan'u-Tawârîkh, or rather this portion of it, for it extends to the year 985/1577, while the date we require is 979/1571-2 (451 + 528 = 979).
3 The name is defective in the ms., but most closely resembles this. Such a writer is mentioned towards the end of the fifth Majîs of the Majâlisu’l-Mu’minîn, but he has no work bearing precisely this name. It is possible that the popular Sharâyi’u’l-Islâm of another al-Ḥillî is intended. See Rieu’s Arabic Supplement, p. 212.
increased its altitude, and all parts and regions of the world became illuminated by the dawning effulgences of the Path of Verification."

Of the anger and alarm aroused by these proceedings in the neighbouring kingdoms, and especially in the Ottoman Empire, we shall have to speak presently, but first we may with advantage give from the list of potentates in Persia itself who at this time claimed sovereign power: (1) Sháh Isma‘íl in Ádharbáyján; (2) Sultán Murád in most of Iráq; (3) Murád Beg Báyandari in Yazd; (4) Ra‘ís Muḥammad Karra (؟) in Abarquh; (5) Ḥusayn Kiyá-yí-Chaláwi in Sammán, Khwár and Fírúzkúh; (6) Bárik Parnák in Iráq-i-'Arab; (7) Qásim Beg ibn Jahángír Beg ibn ‘Alí Beg in Diyár Bakr; (8) Qádí Muḥammad in conjunction with Mawláná Mas‘úd in Káshán; (9) Sultán Ḥusayn Mírzá (the Tímúrid) in Khurásán; (10) Amír Dhu‘n-Nún in Qandahár; (11) Badí‘u‘z-Zamán Mírzá (the Tímúrid) in Balkh; and (12) Abu‘l-Fath Beg Báyandari in Kirmán.

Many of these petty rulers (Mulúkú‘-Tawdíf) were quite insignificant, and several of them I cannot even identify. None of them long stood in Sháh Isma‘íl’s victorious path. His old enemy Alwand of the "White Sheep" dynasty suffered a decisive defeat at his hands in the summer of A.D. 1503, and died a year or so later at Diyár Bakr or Baghdád. His brother Murád was defeated and Shíráz occupied about the same time, and stern punishment overtook the Sunní doctors of Kázarún, many of whom were put to death, while the tombs and foundations of their predecessors were destroyed. The words Rahmatún l'il-‘Ala-

---

1 F. 45 of Mr Ellis’s MS.
2 According to contemporary European accounts he was put to death in cold blood by Isma‘íl. See p. 62 infra.
3 Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library, f. 55.
min ("a Mercy to the Worlds") were found, not very appropriately from an impartial point of view, to give the date 909 (A.D. 1503–4) of this event; while the equivalent chronogram Shaltāq-i-Sipāhi ("Military Coercion") was observed by the poets and wits of Fārs to commemorate in like manner the appointment by Shāh Isma‘īl of his captain Ilyās Beg Dhu‘l-Qadar as governor of Shīrāz. Kāshān, always a stronghold of the Shi‘a, received Isma‘īl with enthusiasm, and he held a great reception at the beautiful suburb of Fīn. Thence he passed to the holy city of Qum, intending, apparently, to winter there, but hearing that Ilyās Beg, one of his most trusted officers, "a Ṣūfī of pure disposition and right belief," had been murdered by Ḥusayn Kiyā-yi-Chalāwī, he marched out on February 25, 1504, to avenge him. Three weeks later he was at Astarābād, where he was met by Muhammad Muḥsin Mīrzā, the son of the Timūrid Sultan Ḥusayn Mīrzā, and, having attacked and destroyed the fortresses of Gulkhandān and Fīrūzkūh, he reduced the stronghold of Ustā by cutting off the water-supply, massacred the garrison (ten thousand souls, according to the Aḥsanu‘l-Tawārīkh), and took captive the wretched Ḥusayn Kiyā, whom he confined in an iron cage, but who succeeded in inflicting on himself a wound which in a few days proved mortal.

Cruel treatment of captives.

Still more unfortunate was Ra‘is Muḥammad Karra of Abarqūh, who rebelled and took possession of the ancient city of Yazd. Him also Shāh Isma‘īl confined in a cage, and smeared his body with honey so that the wasps tormented him until he was finally burned alive in the maydān of Isfahān.


2 According to Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library (f. 61) the body was conveyed to Isfahān and there blown to pieces in the maydān with gunpowder.
About the same time an embassy came from the Ottoman Sultan Bayazid II (A.D. 1481–1512) to offer “suitable gifts and presents” and congratulations on Sháh Isma’íl’s conquest of Iráq and Fárs. They were dismissed with robes of honour and assurances of Isma’íl’s friendly sentiments, but were compelled to witness several executions, including, perhaps, that of the philosopher and judge Mir Husayn-i-Maybudi, whose chief offence seems to have been that he was a “fanatical Sunni.” Persian kings were disposed to take this means of impressing foreign envoys with their “justice”; Clavijo relates a similar procedure on the part of Timúr, and Sháh Isma’íl’s son and successor Táhmasp sought to impress and intimidate Humayún’s ambassador Bayrám Beg by putting to death in his presence a number of heretics. To the Turkish envoys it would naturally be particularly disagreeable to witness the execution of a learned Sunni doctor by those whom they regarded as detestable schismatics.

Of the increasingly strained relations between Turkey and Persia, culminating in the Battle of Chádirán (August, 1514), we shall have to speak very shortly, but we must first conclude our brief survey of Sháh Isma’íl’s career of conquest. To describe in detail his incessant military activities would be impossible in a work of the scope and character of this book, and only the barest summary is possible.

During the years A.H. 911–915 (A.D. 1506–1510) Sháh Isma’íl was for the most part busy in the West. He first entered Hamadán and visited the tomb of the Imám-záda Sahl ‘Alí. A serious revolt


2 Embassy to the Court of Timour, A.D. 1403–6, published by the Hakluyt Society, 1859, pp. 149–150.

3 W. Erskine’s History of India, etc. (London, 1854), vol. ii, p. 281.
of the "Yazidi" Kurds next demanded his attention. Their leader, Shīr Šārim, was defeated and captured in a bloody battle wherein several important officers of Shāh Isma'īl lost their lives. To their relatives the Kurdish prisoners were surrendered to be put to death "with torments worse than which there may not be." War was next waged against the conjoined forces of Sultan Murād, the thirteenth and last of the "White Sheep" dynasty, and 'Alā'u'd-Dawla Dhu'l-Qadar (the "Aliduli" of the Italian travellers of this period), who, refusing Isma'īl's proposal that he should "set his tongue in motion with the goodly word 'All is the Friend of God, and curse the enemies of the Faith" (to wit, the first three Caliphs), appealed for help to the Ottoman Turks. Shāh Isma'īl, however, was not to be denied, and successively captured Diyār Bakr, Akhlāt, Bitlis, Arjūsh, and finally in 914/1508 Baghdād itself, whereby he obtained possession of the Holy Shrines of Karbalā' and Najaf, so dear to Shī'ī hearts, where he hastened to offer prayers and thanksgivings. At Hūwayzā he showed that, ardent Shī'as as he was, he would not tolerate the exaggerated veneration of 'Alī characteristic of the Ghulāt, represented there by certain Arabs called Mus'hāshī, who venerated 'Alī as God, and, invoking his name, would cast themselves on sharp swords without

1 "All the Curds," says the anonymous Italian merchant (p. 157), "are truer Mahometans than the other inhabitants of Persia, since the Persians have embraced the Sufiavean doctrine, while the Curds would not be converted to it: and though they wear the red caftans, yet in their hearts they bear a deadly hatred to them."

2 They are thus enumerated in the Aḥsanu't-Tawārīkh (f. 109b of Mr Ellis's ms.): (1) Qārā 'Uthmān; (2) 'Ali Beg; (3) Sultan Hamza; (4) Jahāngīr Mīrza (these four ruled over Diyār Bakr only); (5) Uzūn Hasan; (6) Khalīl; (7) Ya'qūb; (8) Bāysunghūr; (9) Rustam; (10) Ahmad Beg; (11) Muḥammad Mīrza; (12) Alwand Mīrza; (13) Sultan Murād.
sustaining injury, after the fashion of the modern ‘Isáwiyya of North Africa. Their leader, Mír Sultán Muḥsin, died about this time, and was succeeded by his son Sultán Fayyád, who claimed for himself divine honours. Sháh Isma’íl ruthlessly suppressed these heretics, and proceeded to Dízful and Shúshtar, receiving the submission of the Lur chieftain Sháh Rustam, who won his favour by “the utterance of prayer and praise in the Luri tongue with extreme sweetness.” Thence Sháh Isma’íl made his way eastwards to Fárs, encamped for a while at Dárábjírd, and organised a great hunting expedition, of which the special object was a kind of mountain goat which yields the “animal antidote” (padzahr-i-haywánt)². He also put to death the Qádí Muhammad-i-Káshí, who held the high ecclesiastical office of Sadr, and replaced him by the Sayyid-i-Sharif of Astarábád, who was descended on his mother’s side from the celebrated Jurjání. He further erected at Qaṣr-i-Zar a mausoleum in memory of his brother Sultán Ahmad Mírzá, who had died there, and, under the title of Najm-i-Tháni (“the Second Star”), appointed Amír Yá’ Ráhmad-i-Khúzaní of Isfahán to succeed “the First Star,” Amír Najmu’d-Din Mas’úd of Rasht, who had recently died and been buried at Najaf. The poet Ummídí celebrated this appointment in a very ingenious and sonorous gásída beginning:

۱١ اذی جوهرت گوهرب آسماّینی، توّثی عقلی اولّ توبّی تبّی ثانیّنی
روایت حرم را تو رخّیت عراقی، عراقی عجرم را سبیلّ یبانیّنی

¹ Add. 200, Camb. Univ. Lib., f. 83a:

و آن خاّفر مرودود دعوی الوهیت  کرده قوم مشهّع حالا بلالوهيّت
فیّاض.. قاّبل اند

² In this hunting expedition 56,700 head of game are said to have been killed.
From Fárs Sháh Isma‘īl marched into Shírwán (where Shaykh Sháh, the son of Farrukh-Yásár, had re-established himself), recovered the body of his father Shaykh Haydar and conveyed it to Ardabil for burial, as already related, and took Darband.

So far Sháh Isma‘īl had been chiefly occupied in putting down minor princes and pretenders and in consolidating his power in Persia, of which he had to the West and North-West greatly enlarged the territories, and had almost restored the ancient frontiers of Sásánian times. Hitherto he had hardly come into conflict with the two powerful enemies who were destined to give so much trouble to himself and his successors, to wit the Uzbeks of Central Asia and the Ottoman Turks. Of his relations with these formidable rivals we must now speak, but, before doing so, a few more words may be said of Sháh Isma‘īl’s character and appearance. As usual, a much more vivid picture of these is given by contemporary travellers than by his own countrymen, though his courage, energy, cruelty and restless activity are sufficiently apparent in the Persian chronicles of his reign. At the age of thirteen, when he began his career of conquest, he was, according to Caterino Zeno, “of noble presence and a truly royal bearing, as in his eyes there was something, I know not what, so great and commanding, which plainly showed that he would yet some day become a great ruler. Nor did the virtues of his mind disaccord with the beauty of his person, as he had an elevated genius, and such a lofty idea of things as seemed incredible at such a tender age....He had vigour of mind, quickness of perception, and a personal valour...never yet...equalled by any of his contemporaries.” Angio-

---

1 Narrative of Italian Travels in Persia (Hakluyt Society, London, 1873), pp. 46–8. See p. 22 supra, where part of this passage has been already cited.
lello speaks of "his beauty and pleasing manners" when he was a child, and relates how, in his campaign against ‘Alá’u’d-Dawla ("Alidoli"), "he supplied himself with provisions, paying for everything, and proclaiming abroad that everyone might bring supplies to the camp for sale, and that anyone taking anything without paying for it would be put to death." " This Sophi," he says a little further on, "is fair, handsome, and very pleasing; not very tall, but of a light and well-framed figure; rather stout than slight, with broad shoulders. His hair is reddish; he only wears moustachios, and uses his left hand instead of his right. He is as brave as a game-cock, and stronger than any of his lords; in the archery contests, out of the ten apples that are knocked down, he knocks down seven; while he is at his sport they play on various instruments and sing his praises." "He is almost worshipped," he remarks in another place, "more especially by his soldiers, many of whom fight without armour, being willing to die for their master. While I was in Tauris [Tabrīz] I heard that the king is displeased with this adoration, and being called God." The anonymous merchant describes him at the age of thirty-one as "Very handsome, of a magnanimous countenance, and about middle height; he is fair, stout, and with broad shoulders, his beard is shaved and he only wears a moustache, not appearing to be a very heavy man. He is as amiable as a girl, left-handed by nature, is as lively as a fawn, and stronger than any of his lords. In the archery trials at the apple he is so expert that of every ten he hits six." The same writer, on the other hand, after describing his massacre of Alwand’s soldiers, of the male and female kinsmen of Sūltān Ya’qūb, of three

1 Narrative of Italian Travels in Persia, p. 102 and p. 22 supra.
2 Ibid., pp. 109 and 196, and p. 23 supra.
3 Ibid., p. 111. See pp. 22–3 supra. 4 Ibid., p. 115.
5 Ibid., p. 202. Part of this passage has been already quoted on p. 23 supra.
hundred courtezans of Tabriz, of "eight hundred avaricious Blasi," who had been brought up under Alumut [i.e. Alwand], of "all the dogs in Tauris," and of his own mother [or stepmother], concludes, "From the time of Nero to the present, I doubt whether so bloodthirsty a tyrant has ever existed." He presented, in short, the strangest blend of antithetical qualities; and we are alternately attracted by his personal charm, his unquestionable valour, generosity and—within certain limits—justice, and repelled by actions, such as those recorded above, revealing a savagery remarkable even in that cruel and bloodthirsty age. His courage was shown not only on the field of battle but in the chase. Hearing after his conquest and occupation of Baghdád of a singularly fierce man-eating lion which had its lair in a thicket and terrified the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, he insisted, in spite of all remonstrances, in destroying it single-handed with the bow he knew so well how to use. At the age of thirteen he had already slain a fierce bear in like manner in a cave near Arzinján. When "immense treasures" fell into his hands on the capture of one of the Caspian ports, "he divided them amongst his men, keeping nothing for himself." Yet the same traveller who reports this instance of generosity and political foresight (for in consequence of it "he was joined by numbers, even those who were not Suf- faveans flocking to his standard in hopes of receiving gifts of this nature from the valiant Ismael") describes how the Sháh with his own hand cut off the head of the unfortunate young prince "Alumut," captured by treachery, whom he himself had seen bound in chains in a tent; and tells of even darker deeds wrought at Tabriz on the occasion of the Sháh's

1 I am at a loss to explain this word.
2 Ahsanü't-Tawdikkh (Ellis MS.), f. 74b.
3 Ibid., f. 26.
4 Travels of a Merchant, p. 188.
5 Ibid., pp. 197-8. The Habibu'-Síyar and other Persian histories, however, represent Alwand as dying a natural death. Cf. p. 55 supra.
second entry into that city in A.D. 1520. Towards the Sunnis he showed himself ruthless, sparing neither eminent divines like the learned Farīdu'd-Dīn Aḥmad, a grandson of the celebrated scholar Sa’du’d-Dīn-i-Taftāzānī, who for thirty years had held the office of Shaykhu’l-Islām in Herāt, nor witty poets like Bannā’i, who perished in the massacre of Qarshī in 918/1512. But perhaps the most conspicuous instance of a ferocity which pursued his foes even after their death was his treatment of the body of his old enemy Muḥammad Khān Shaybānī, or Shaybak, the Uzbek, of which we shall have to speak very shortly.

It has already been stated that the foreign relations of Shāh Isma’īl, after he had cleared Persia of the “White Sheep” and other rivals for the sceptre of that ancient kingdom, were chiefly with three Powers, the Tīmūrids, who still kept a precarious hold on Herāt and portions of Khurāsān and Central Asia; the formidable Uzbeks of Transoxiana; and the Ottoman Turks. With the last two, rigid Sunnis in both cases, the relations of Persia were, and continued to be, uniformly hostile; with the Tīmūrids, themselves menaced by the Uzbeks, comparatively friendly and at times even cordial. The aged Sultān Husayn ibn Bayqarā, whose brilliant and luxurious court at Herāt was so famous a centre of literature and art, is reckoned amongst the rulers who, with less success than Shāh Isma’īl, endeavoured to replace the Sunni by the Shi’a doctrine in their dominions; and Bābur, whether

1 Travels of a Merchant, p. 207.
2 He was put to death in Ramaḍān, 916/December, 1510.
3 See Dr F. R. Martin’s Miniature Paintings and Painters of Persia, etc., pp. 35–6.
from conviction or policy, showed enough partiality towards the Shi'a faction to cause grave disaffection amongst his Central Asian Sunnî subjects. There existed, then, in this case no such essential cause of enmity as in the two others, while a common hatred of Shaybânî Khán and his redoubtable Uzbek naturally tended to unite Bâbur to Isma'îl.

It is beyond the scope of this work to enter into a detailed account of the decline of the Tímûrid and the rise of the Uzbek power, of which ample particulars may be found in Erskine's and other works. Suffice it to say that Shaybânî or Shaybak Khán, a direct descendant of Chingiz Khán, first became prominent about A.D. 1500, when he captured Samarqand and Bukhârâ, and later Tâshkand and Farîhanâ. He invaded Khurâsân in 911/1505–6, in the year of SulÎân Husayn's death, and in the course of the next year or two practically exterminated the Tímûrids, with the exception of Bâbur and Bâdî'u'z-Zamân, of whom the latter sought refuge with Shâh Isma'îl. It was not until 916/1510–11, however, that he came into direct conflict with Shâh Isma'îl, whom he had provoked by a raid on Kirmân in the previous year and a most insulting letter in reply to Isma'îl's politely-worded remonstrance. Shâh Isma'îl was not slow to respond to his taunts, and,

2 For example, the History of the Moghuls of Central Asia etc., by N. Elias and Sir E. Denison Ross (London, 1898), and, of course, the incomparable Memoirs of Bâbur, in the tasteful new edition of Erskine and Leyden's translation annotated and revised by Sir Lucas King (Oxford, 1921).
4 See Erskine's History of India, vol. i, pp. 297 et seqq. The text of this long letter is given in the Ahsan'ut-Tawârikh (Ellis MS., ff. 80b et seqq.).
the rest of his realms being for the moment tranquil, at once marched into Khurásán to meet him, visiting on his way the Shrine of the Imám 'Alí Rídá at Mashhad, so sacred in Shi‘a eyes. The decisive battle was fought on Dec. 1 or 2, 1510, at Táhir-ábád near Merv, where, after a stubborn and protracted conflict, the Uzbeks were utterly defeated and Shaybáni killed. When his body was found under a heap of slain, Sháh Isma‘íl ordered the limbs to be cut off and distributed to different parts of his kingdom, and the head to be stuffed with straw and sent as a grim gift to the Ottoman Sultán Báyázid II at Constantinople1. The bones of the skull he caused to be mounted in gold and made into a drinking-cup for his own use, and one hand he sent to Áqá Rustam Rúz-afzún, the ruler of Mázandarán, by a special messenger, Darwísh Muḥammad Yasá‘úl, who cast the hand on to Rustam’s skirt as he sat amidst his courtiers at Sári, crying “Thou didst say, ‘My hand on Shaybak Khán’s skirt’ (dast-i-man-ast u dámán-i-Shaybak Khán)2: lo, his hand is now on thy skirt!” So astounded were those present by this audacity that none lifted a hand to stay the messenger’s departure, and Rustam received so great a shock that he soon afterwards sickened and died. Of the drinking-cup the following grim anecdote is told. One of Shaybáni’s trusted advisers, Khwája Kamálú’d-Dín Ságharchí, saved his life by professing the Shi‘a faith, and was admitted into the service of Sháh Isma‘íl. One day at a banquet the latter, pointing to the drinking-cup, asked him if he recognized the skull of his late master. “Yes, glory be to God,” replied Kamálú’d-Dín; “and how favoured by fortune was

1 According to the history of Sháh Isma‘íl contained in Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library (f. 141), Prince (afterwards Sultán) Salím was greatly offended at this, and had a violent quarrel with his father Báyázid on the subject.

2 *I.e.* “I seek protection from him.”

B. P. L.
he! Nay, fortune still abides with him, so that even now he rests in the hands of so auspicious a being as thyself, who continually drinks the Wine of Delight!"

Shaybání Khán was sixty-one years of age at the time of his death and had reigned eleven years. He was, as already stated, a fanatical Sunní and had grievously persecuted the Shi'a in his dominions: now it was the Sunnis who suffered in their turn at the hands of Shah Isma'íl. The Uzbek power, in spite of this disaster, was far from being broken, and, though a formal peace was concluded between them and the Persians a few months afterwards, they had an ample revenge at the battle of Ghujduwán, where Bábúr and his Persian allies suffered a disastrous defeat and many of their leaders, including *Najm-i-Thání*, were slain in November, 1512. During the whole of the sixteenth century they were a constant menace to Persia, and accounts of their raids into Khurásán occur with monotonous iteration in the pages of the Persian historians of this period.

We must now turn to the far more important relations of Persia with the Ottoman Turks at this period, on which more light is thrown by the State Papers so industriously compiled and edited by Firidún Bey in 982/1574 under the title of *Munsha'át-i-Salástín* ("Correspondence of the Kings")¹ than by

¹ Printed at Constantinople in 1274/1858. Until lately I only possessed vol. i, which comprises 626 pp. and comes down to about 966/1558-9. For some account of this most important work, see von Hammer's *Gesch. d. Osmanisch. Reich.*, iv, p. 15; Flügel's *Vienna Catalogue*, i, pp. 282-3; *Z.D.M.G.*, vii, p. 450; *Notices et extraits*, v, pp. 668-688; Rieu's *Turkish Cat.*, pp. 80-83; and Hájjí Khalífa (ed. Flügel), v, p. 488.
most of the Persian or Turkish historians. These letters, which passed between successive Ottoman Sultâns and neighbouring rulers, as well as between them and their sons, ministers and governors, are sometimes in Turkish and sometimes in Persian or Arabic. Unfortunately many of them are undated. They have hitherto been so little used that no apology is needed for summarizing the contents or indicating the purport of such of them as concern the Şafawîs down to the death of Shâh Isma‘îl in 930/1523–4, that is, during the reigns of the Ottoman Sultâns Bâyazîd II (886–918/1481–1512), Salîm I (918–926/1512–1520), and the first four years of Sulaymân “the Magnificent” (926–930/1520–1524).

(1) From Ya‘qûb Pâdishâh of the “White Sheep” dynasty to Sultân Bâyazîd, announcing the defeat and death of Shaykh Haydar (Shâh Isma‘îl’s father), (p. 309). This letter, in Persian, is undated, but must have been written soon after Shaykh Haydar, who is called the “President of the people of error” (Sar-i-halqa-i-arbâb-i-dalâl), was killed on June 30, 1488. The writer assumes that the news of the destruction of “these misguided rebels, enemies of the Prophetic Dispensation and foes of Church and State” will be welcome to all good Muslims.

(2) Sultân Bâyazîd’s answer to the above, also in Persian and undated (p. 311). Congratulations are offered to Ya‘qûb on the victory of “the Bâyandari hosts of salvation” over the “misguided Haydari faction” (gurûh-i-dâlla-i-Haydar-iyyâ).

(3) From Shâh Isma‘îl to Sultân Bâyazîd II, requesting that his disciples in Asia Minor may not be prevented from visiting him at Ardabil (p. 345). This letter, undated and in Persian, is important as proving how numerous were the partisans of the Şafawîs in the Ottoman dominions.

¹ Bâyandari is an alternative name for the Âq-Qoyânlî, or “White Sheep” dynasty.
(4) Sultan Bayazid’s answer to the above, also in Persian and undated (pp. 345–6). The Ottoman Sultan says that, having investigated the matter, he finds that the motive of many of these pilgrims is not the desire to fulfil a pious duty, but to escape from the obligation of military service.

(5) From Shah Isma’il to Sultan Bayazid on the same subject, also in Persian and undated (pp. 346–7). He explains that he has been compelled to enter Ottoman territory to chastise his foes, but intends thereby no unfriendly or disrespectful act towards Bayazid, and has strictly enjoined his soldiers to respect the persons and property of the inhabitants.

(6) Sultan Bayazid’s answer to the above, also in Persian and undated (p. 347). Bayazid accepts Isma’il’s assurances, and has ordered his officials to co-operate with him in a friendly spirit.

(7) From Alwand, the Āq-Qoyūnlū ruler of Persia, to Sultan Bayazid, in Persian, except the Arabic prologue, and undated (pp. 351–2). Alwand announces the arrival of Bayazid’s envoy Mahmud Āqā Cháwúsh-báshi with his master’s letter, urging the Bayandari or Āq-Qoyūnlū family to unite against their common enemy, the “rascally Red-heads” (Awbásh-i-Qizil-báshi). Alwand promises to do his best, whether his relations help him or not, provided he can count on material and moral support from Bayazid.

(8) Bayazid’s answer to the above, also in Persian and undated (pp. 352–3). He commends Alwand’s resolve, and promises help against the “rebellious horde of the Qizil-báshes” (tā’ifa-i-bághiya-i-Qizil-báshiyya).

(9) From Bayazid to Ḥájjī Rustam Beg the Kurd, in Persian, dated Rabī’ i, 908/September 1502 (p. 353). He asks for correct information as to the doings of the Qizil-báshes and the result of their struggle with the Āq-Qoyūnlū or Bayandari princes, to be communicated to his envoy Kaywán Cháwúsh.
(10) Hájji Rustam's reply to the above, in Persian and undated (pp. 353–4). The writer states that the "religion rending Qizil-báshës" (Qizil-básh-i-Madhhab-kharásh), having defeated Alwand and Murád of the Áq-Qoyúnlú family, are now seeking an alliance with Egypt against the Ottoman Turks, and are advancing on Mar'ash and Diyár Bakr.

(11) From Sulţán Bâyazid to Sulţán Ghúrí of Egypt, in Arabic, dated 910/1504–5 (pp. 354–5). This letter contains an allusion to "the man who has appeared in the Eastern countries and defeated their ruler and overcome their peoples," which, as appears from the answer, refers to Sháh Isma'íl, or possibly Sháh-qulí.

(12) Answer to the above, in Arabic, undated (pp. 355–6). This letter contains a reference to "the victory of the misguided Qizil-báshí faction in the Eastern countries," described as a "public calamity which has appeared in those regions."

These are the only letters in Sulţán Bâyazid's correspondence directly connected with the Şafawí, though there are others of interest to students of Persian history addressed to Sulţán Abu'l-Ghází Húsayn (911/1506), the poet Jámi', the philosopher Jalálu'd-Dín Dawání, and the Shaykh'ul-Isláml of Herát Farídu'd-Dín Aḥmad-i-Taftázání (913/1507), who was put to death by Sháh Isma'íl three years later for refusing to subscribe to the Shi'a doctrine. Before we consider the State Papers of Sulţán Salím's reign, something more must be said of the beginnings of that bitter strife between Turkey and Persia which is one of the most prominent features of the whole Şafawí period, and has done so much to undermine the unity and weaken the power of Islám. And here we cannot do better than quote the opening paragraph of

old Richard Knolles's\textsuperscript{1} account of the formidable Shi'a revolt in Anatolia promoted by the celebrated Shāh-qulī ("King's servant"), called by the Turks Shayṭān-qulī ("Devil's servant"), the son of Ḥasan Khalīfa a disciple of Isma'īl's father Shaykh Ḥaydar.

"After so many troubles," says Knolles, "Bajazet gave himself unto a quiet course of life, spending most part of his time in study of Philosophy and conference with learned men; unto which peaceable kind of life he was of his own natural disposition more inclined than to Wars; albeit that the regard of his State and the earnest desire of his Men of War drew him oftentimes even against his Will into the Field. As for the Civil Government of his Kingdom he referred it wholly to his three principal Bassaes, Alis, Aḥmetes and Iachia\textsuperscript{2}, who at their pleasure disposed of all things. After that he had in this quiet and pleasing kind of life to his great contentment passed over five years, of a little neglected Spark suddenly arose such a Fire in Asia as was hardly after with much blood of his People and danger of that part of his Empire quenched; the reliques whereof yet trouble those superstitious People at this day. Which thing was brought to pass by the crafty device of Chasan Chelife and Schach Culi his Boy (whom some call Tucket Scachoculu and others Tchellis)\textsuperscript{3}, two Hypocritical Persians; who flying into those countries and with the counterfeit shew of feigned Holiness having procured to themselves a great name amongst those rude People, with a number of windy headed Followers (filled with the novelty of their new

\textsuperscript{1} I quote the sixth edition of his \textit{Turkish History}, with Sir Paul Rycaut's continuation, published in London in 1687. The passage in question occurs on p. 315 of vol. i.

\textsuperscript{2} \textit{i.e.} 'Alī, Aḥmad and Yahyā Pashas.

\textsuperscript{3} These names stand for Ḥasan Khalīfa, Shāh-qulī, and Takullū or Tekellū, \textit{i.e.} of the Tekke-īli.
Doctrine) raised first such a diversity of opinions about the true successors of their untrue Prophet, and afterwards such a Rebellion amongst the People, as that the one yet remaineth, and the other was not in a good while after without great bloodshed appeased."

There follows a lengthy account of this dangerous rebellion, in which the Turks suffered several severe reverses and lost many notable officers, including the Grand Vezîr Khâdîm 'Alî Pasha, ere the rebels were dispersed, killed, or driven into Persia. Instead of rewarding or comforting the fugitives, however, Shâh Isma'il put many of them to death at Tabriz, because, as Knolles says, they had plundered a caravan of rich merchants; but, according to the most modern Turkish historian, in order to clear himself of complicity in the eyes of Bâyazîd, Knolles adds that "Techellis himself (i.e. Shâh-quîfî), to the terror of others, was burnt alive"; but, according to the Turkish historian, he fell at the same time as 'Alî Pasha in the battle of Gyuk Chây, between Sîwâs and Qaysariyya, in which statement the Ahsanül-Tawârîkh agrees. "Techellis thus put to flight," continues Knolles, "Jonuses caused strait inquisition to be made through all the Cities of the lesser Asia for all such as had professed the Persian Religion; and them whom he found to have borne Arms in the late Rebellion he caused to be put to death with most exquisite torments and the rest to be burnt in their Foreheads with an hot Iron, thereby forever to be known; whom together with the Kinsfolks and Friends of them that were executed or

3 Ff. 90–91 of Mr A. G. Ellis's MS.
4 Yûnus Pasha, Grand Vezîr to Sulṭân Selîm, executed in 923/1517.
fled with Techellis he caused to be transported into Europe and to be dispersed through Macedonia, Epirus and Peloponnesus, for fear lest if Techellis, now fled into the Persian Kingdom, should from thence return with new Forces, they should also again repair unto him and raise a new Rebellion. This was the beginning, course, and ending of one of the most dangerous Rebellions that ever troubled the Turkish Empire; wherein all, or at leastwise the greatest part, of their Dominions in Asia might have been easily surprised by the Persian King, if he would thoroughly have prosecuted the occasion and opportunity then offered." These events are placed by Knolles in A.D. 1508, but by the Ahsanu't-Tawārīkh in 917/1511-12, the year before Báyázid's death.

It is curious that little or nothing is said by the Persian historians about this massacre of the Shi'a in Turkey, which von Hammer describes as one of the most dreadful deeds ever perpetrated in the name of Religion, not excepting the cruelties of the Inquisition or the Massacre of St Bartholomew. That most of the Turkish historians ignore it is less astonishing, since it can hardly be a matter of pride for them. Knolles appears to be mistaken in placing it in the reign of Báyázid II, for there can hardly have been two such massacres, and one certainly took place in 1514 after the accession of Salím, as witnessed by Nicolo Giustiniani in an account dated October 7 of that year. The number of victims is placed by Sa'du’d-Dín, Soláq-záda and ‘Alí Abu’l-Faḍl, the son of Idrís of Bitlís, at 40,000. The particulars given by the last-named writer, quoted by von Hammer in the original Persian verse transliterated into the Roman character, are as follows:

---

1 See von Hammer, *op. cit.*, vol. ii, p. 403 *ad calc.* The passage runs: "Che il Signor havea mandá a far amazzar tutti della secta di Sofé."

Turning now once more to the Munsha'ât of Firđūn Bey, we find the following letters belonging to the reign of Sultán Salím which bear on his relations with Persia.

(13) From Sultán Salím to 'Ubayd Khán the Uzbek, in Persian, dated the end of Muḥarram, A.H. 920 (March 27, 1514), only five months before the Battle of Cháldirán (pp. 374-7). In this long letter, sent by the hand of a certain Muhammad Bey, Salím denounces "that vile, impure, sinful, slanderous, reprehensible and blood-thirsty
Şūfī-cub” (to wit Sháh Isma‘īl), “at whose hands the people of the Eastern lands are rendered desperate”

and calls upon ‘Ubayd Khán to do his part in avenging the death of his father Shaybák Khán.

(14) Answer to the above, also in Persian, dated the end of Jumáda ii, 920 (August 21, 1514), pp. 377–9. In this letter ‘Ubayd Khán describes how he has already avenged his father and slain “the lesser dog, agent and lieutenant of the greater dog (i.e. Sháh Isma‘īl), who in his quintessential folly had conferred on him the title of Najm-i-Thántí,” and promises to aid the Turkish Sultan in extirpating the “inconsiderable remnant” (شرذمة قليلة) (of the “rascally infidels and heretical ‘Red-heads’”) (زنامة أوباش و ملاحة) (قزلباش).

(15) From Sultan Saltán to Sháh Isma‘īl, in Persian, dated Safar, 920 (April, 1514), pp. 379–381. This letter, written in the most arrogant and offensive tone, calls on Isma‘īl to repent of his heresies and evil practices, especially the cursing of “the two Shaykhs” (Abú Bakr and ‘Umar), and threatens, should he continue obdurate, to invade and wrest from him “the lands which he has usurped by violence.”

(16) From Sultan Saltán to Muhammad Beg Áq-Qoyinlú, in Persian, dated the end of Safar, 920 (April 25, 1514), pp. 381–2, congratulating him on the sound Sunni principles of himself and his family and subjects, and inviting his co-operation against the “heretical ‘Red-heads’.”

1 This victory of the Uzbeks over the allied forces of Sháh Isma‘īl and Bábür took place on Ramádán 17, 918 (Nov. 26, 1512). Amír Najmu’d-Dín Mas‘úd (“the First Najm” or “Star”) died in 915 (1509–1510) and was succeeded in his office and title by Amír Yár Ahmad-i-Iṣfahání, called Najm-i-Thántí, “the Second Najm” or “Star.”
(17) *Reply to the above, in Persian, dated the end of Rabî‘ ii, 920 (June 23, 1514), p. 382.* From this it appears that Salîm’s letter was brought by an envoy named Ahmad Jân, who took back the answer, and that the writer was in great fear that the correspondence might be discovered.

(18) *Sultân Salîm’s second letter to Shâh Isma‘îl, in Persian and undated,* pp. 382–3. In this letter Salîm lays claim to the Caliphate, accuses Shâh Isma‘îl and his family of heresy and immorality, and calls on him to repent and suffer Persia to be annexed to the Ottoman dominions.

(19) *Sultân Salîm’s third letter to Isma‘îl, in Turkish, dated the end of Jumâda i, 920 (July 23, 1514) and written from Arzinjân,* taunting him with his apparent unwillingness to try the fortune of battle.

(20) *Shâh Isma‘îl’s reply to Sultân Salîm’s three letters, in Persian and undated* (pp. 384–5). This is apparently the letter to which Creasy refers in his *History of the Ottoman Turks* (ed. 1877, pp. 136–7), for the writer hints that Salîm’s secretary must have written under the influence of bang or opium, and sends a gold casket filled with a special preparation of one or both of these narcotics, sealed with the Royal Seal, by the hand of his messenger Shâh-quî ‘Ághâ.

(21) *Sultân Salîm’s fourth letter to Isma‘îl, in Turkish, dated the end of Jumâda ii, 920 (August 21, 1514), again challenging him to battle.*

Shortly after this last letter was written, namely early in the month of Rajab1, 920 (August—September, 1514), a great battle was fought between the Turks and Persians at Châldirân, situated some 20 parasangs from Tabriz, where 3000 of the former and 2000 of the latter were slain, but the Turkish artillery decided the day, and Shâh Isma‘îl, notwithstanding the valour shown by him and his devoted followers, was forced

---

1 On the first of the month (Aug. 22, 1514) according to Firîdûn Bey (p. 402).
to give way and to fall back beyond Tabrız, which was occupied by the Turks on Rajab 16, 920 (Sept. 6, 1514). Many men of note on both sides were slain; of the Turks Ḥasan Pasha, Begler-begi of Rumelia, who commanded the left wing of the Ottoman army, Ḥasan Bey, Governor of Morea, Uways Bey of Caesarea, Ayás Bey of Latakia, and many other high civil and military officials; of the Persians Amīr Sayyid-i-Sharīf of Shīrāz, a protagonist of the Shī‘a doctrine, Amīr ‘Abdu’l-Bāqī, a descendant of the noted saint Shāh Ni‘matu’l-láh of Kirmān, Sayyid Muḥammad Kamúna of Najaf, Khán Muḥammad Khan, and many others.

Sultān Sālim, greatly elated by his success, immediately despatched the usual bombastic proclamations of victory (fath-nāma) to his son Sulaymān, to the Khán of the Crimea, to the Kurdish chieftains, to Sultān Murád, the last of the Āq-Qoyūnlū or “White Sheep” dynasty, to Shāh Rustam of Luristān, to the Governor of Adrianople, and others. The texts of these documents are given by Firdūs Bey (pp. 386–96), but they are followed (pp. 396–407) by a document of much greater historical value, namely a detailed journal of the movements of the Turkish army from the time they marched out of Adrianople on Muḥarram 3, 920 (March 20, 1514) until they returned to winter at Amāsiya at the end of the same year (Nov.–Dec., 1514). They marched in 105 stages from Adrianople to Tabrīz by way of Constantinople, Caesarea, Sīwās, Arzinjān, Chāldirān, Khūy and Marand; thence back to Amāsiya in 58 stages, by way of Nakhjuwān, Jisr-i-Júbān, and Bayburt. They erected a pyramid of the skulls of their enemies on the field of battle, handed over to Ja‘far Bey one of Shāh Isma‘īl’s wives who fell into their hands, and massacred Khālid Bey and 150 of his Qızıl-bāsh companions at the village of Sāhilān the day before they entered Tabrīz, in which city, however, they seem to have behaved with
moderation, as even the Persian historian of Sháh Isma'íl testifies. Sultán Salím remained there only about a week (Sept. 6–14, 1514), when he departed, taking with him the Timúrid Prince Badí‘u’z-Zamán, the fugitive son of the late Sultán Abu’l-Gházi Husayn ibn Bayqará, and a number of skilled artisans whom he proposed to settle in his dominions. Within two or three weeks of his departure Sháh Isma’íl was back in Tabríz. According to Sir John Malcolm, "the effect of so great a reverse upon the sanguine mind of Isma’íl was deep and lasting; and though before of a cheerful disposition he was never afterwards seen to smile." But as a matter of fact the defeat, decisive as it was, had little permanent effect, since the discontent and nostalgia of the Janissaries compelled the Ottoman Sultán to withdraw from Persian territory, and, save for the extirpation of the little Dhu’l-Qadar dynasty at Kamákh near Arzinján in the spring of A.D. 1515, his martial ardour was fully occupied, until his death in A.D. 1520, with the subjection of Egypt, Syria and Arabia.

Sháh Isma’íl, on his return to Tabríz after the battle of Cháldirán, sent a very polite and apologetic letter by the hand of Núru’d-Dín ‘Abdu’l-Wahháb to Sultán Salím, who, apparently, vouchsafed no reply, but some months later (end of Rajab, 921 = Sept. 9, 1515) wrote in Turkish a long letter to ‘Ubayd Khán the Uzbek inciting him to persecute the Shí‘á.

1 Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library, f. 151.
2 He died at Constantinople four months later of the plague.
3 History of Persia, vol. i, p. 504. I can find no confirmation of this in the Persian histories which I have consulted.
4 According to the Ahsanu’t-Tawáríkh it comprised only four rulers, Malik Aşlán, Sulaymán, Násiru’d-Dín and ‘Alá’u’d-Dawla, of whom the last, together with four of his sons and thirty of his followers, was decapitated by Sultán Salím’s soldiers on June 13, 1515.
5 Firídún Bey, vol. i, pp. 413-414.
6 Ibid., pp. 415-416.
The documents connected with Sulṭán Salím’s reign fill another 84 pages of Firídún Bey’s compilation, but, with one notable exception, contain only incidental abusive references to Sháh Isma‘íl. The exception is formed by two poems, one in Persian and the other in Turkish, addressed to Sulṭán Salím by an unpatriotic Persian named Khwája Isfahání, probably identical with Khwája Mawláná-yi-Isfahání, a fanatical Sunní who attached himself to the Uzbek Shaybák Khán, and whose death is recorded in the Aḥsan’át-Tawárikh under the year 927/1521.

The following verses from the Persian poem will suffice to give an idea of its character.

A Persian congratulatory poem addressed to Sulṭán Salím.

کبک ای پادشاه جمله عالیه
توئی امروز در مردى مستمر
اساسی دین تو در دنیا نهادی
تو شرع مصفی بر جا نهادی
مجدد گشت دین از هشت تو
جبان در زیر بار montage تو
اکر ملک شریعت مستقيم است
همه از دولت سلطان سلیمان است
ز بیست در تزلزل فارس و ترک
چو افتحادي ز سر تاج قزل پرک
فکن اکثرون بهردي از تنش سر

1 The last ends on p. 500.
2 From a line in his Turkish poem it appears that his home was in Khurásán and Khwárazm (Khiva), which he had been compelled to leave since “Infidelity had completely destroyed the Home of Faith, and established itself in the Seat of Religion.”
فر شکست همچون مار افیعی،
سرشرا تا نکوبی نیست نفعی،
توئی امروز ز اوصاف شریفه
خدارا و محبّدرا خلیفه،
۱۰ روا داری که گیبت و ملحمیدن;
رده دشنامه اصحاب محنّد;
تو اورا نشکنی از زور مردی،
سرشرا نا بی‌راه بار گردی،
آخر گیبد امانی در سلامت;
بگیرن دامنرتا در قیامت;
چنین دیدم ز اخبار پیامبر;
که ذو القرنین بید در روم قیصر;
بذو القرنین از آن خودرا علم کرد;
که ملك فارسا با روم ضرب کرد،
۲۳ دو قرن او شیش اندلی سه‌مدت;
بشرق و غرب حکیر او روان شد;
بیا از نصر دین عصر صریح‌گن;
بتخت روم ملك فارس ضر کن

1 "O messenger of auspicious aspect, carry my prayer to the victorious King.
2 Say, 'O King of all the World, thou art today accredited in valour.
3 Thou didst lay the foundations of Religion in the World; thou didst restore the Holy Law of Muṣṭafā [Muḥammad].
4 Religion hath been renovated by thy zeal, the World lies under the burden of thy favour.
5 If the realm of the Holy Law is firmly established, it is all through the fortune of Sulṭán Salīm."
Persia and Turkey quake through fear of thee, since thou hast cast from his head the crown of the Red-cap.  
O victorious one, thou hast cast his crown from his head; now manfully cast his head from his body!  
The Red-head is like the viper; until thou crushest his head it availeth nothing.
Thou art today, through thy noble qualities, the Vicar (Khālīfu) of God and of Muḥammad.
Dost thou hold it right that the guebre and brute-heretic should revile the Companions of the Prophet?
If thou dost not break him by the strength of thy manhood, and if thou turnest back without having cut off his head,
If he obtains amnesty in safety, I will seize thy skirt in the day of Resurrection.
Thus have I seen in the accounts of the Prophet, that Dhul-Qarnayn ("the Two-horned") was Emperor in Rome.
For this cause did he style himself Dhul-Qarnayn, because he added the dominion of Persia to that of Rome.
His two horns were sovereignty throughout the World; his orders ran through East and West.
Come, break the Idol by the aid of the Faith, and add the Kingdom of Persia to the Throne of Rome!

Sułṭán Salím died in 926/1520, having reigned, according to the Aḥsanü'l-Tawārikh, 8 years, 8 months and 8 days. He was succeeded by his son Sulaymán, called by his

1 *Burk* is a Turkish word denoting a kind of tall fur cap, and *Qızıl-burk* ("Red-cap") is, of course, equivalent to *Qızıl-bāš* (Persian *Surkh-sar*) "Red-head."
2 The word *gabr* (anglicized by Thomas Moore as "guebre") properly denotes a Zoroastrian, but is constantly applied by writers of this period to any non-Muslim, infidel or heretic, like the corresponding *gyaouur* ("giaour") of the Turks. See p. 95 infra.
3 This, of course, refers to the cursing of Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán instituted by Shāh Isma'īl. See pp. 53-4 supra.
4 This mysterious person is commonly (as here) identified with Alexander the Great. See *Qur'ān* xviii, 82, 85, 93 and commentary thereon.
5 The term *Rūm* was applied successively to the Roman, the Byzantine and the Ottoman Empires, and by the Persian historians of this period the Ottoman Sułṭán is constantly called *Qaysar-i-Rūm.*
countrymen "the Law-giver" (Qanúni) and by Europeans "the Magnificent." The Persian poet Amini composed a poem on his accession, of which each half-verse (mísr,') yields the date 926. The following verse is cited as a specimen by the Ahsánü't-Tawárikh:

"Fortune hath given the Kingdom of Desire to the Ká'ús of the Age, the Second Solomon."

Three years later (in 929/1523), when Sultán Sulaymán conquered Rhodes, another Persian Poet, Niyází, commemorated this victory in an equally ingenious qasída beginning:

where the first half-verse gives the date of Sulaymán's accession (926/1520), and the second the date of the conquest of Rhodes.

Sháh Isma'il died on Monday, Rajab 19, A.H. 930 (May 23, 1524) at the age of 38 after a reign of 24 years, and was buried with his fathers at Ardabíl. He left four sons, Tahmásp, born on Dhul-Hijja 26, A.H. 919 (Feb. 22, 1514), who succeeded him; Alqás, born in 922/1516, and Sám and Báhrám, both born in the following year; besides five daughters. In his reign the sword was more active than the pen. He not only eliminated all of his numerous rivals in Persia, but greatly enlarged her frontiers. "His kingdom," says the Ahsánü't-Tawárikh,

\footnote{Ahsánü't-Tawárikh (Mr Ellis's MS., f. 128). The first misr' gives the correct date (926), but the second, as written in the Ms. (with, which gives 940. I have emended this to which gives 930, though this is still too much.}

\footnote{Khánish Khánúm, Parí-Khán Khánúm, Mihínbánú Sultánúm, Firangís Khánúm and Zaynab Khánúm.}

\footnote{F. 131.}

B. P. L.
"included Ádharbáyyján, Persian 'Iráq, Khurásán, Fárs, Kirmán and Khúzistán, while Diyár Bakr, Balkh and Merv were at times under his control. In the battle-field he was a lion wielding a dagger, and in the banquet-hall a cloud raining pearls. Such was his bounty that pure gold and worthless salt were alike in his sight, while by reason of his lofty spirit the produce of ocean and mine did not suffice for the donations of a single day, and his treasury was generally empty. He had a passion for the chase, and alone used to slay lions. He had issued orders that whoever should bring news of a lion should receive from his officers a horse and saddle; and he who should bring news of a leopard an unsaddled horse. He would go forth alone and kill lions and leopards. During his reign he fought five [great] battles, the first with Farrukh-Yásár king of Shírwán at the place called Jabání, the second with Alwán at Shurúr, the third with Sultán Murád at Alma Qúlághí near Hamadán, the fourth with Shaybák Khán in the neighbourhood of Merv, and the fifth with Sultán Salím at Cháldirán. The date of his death (930) is given by the word Zill, "Shadow" (of God), and by the words Khusraw-i-Dín, "Prince of the Faith," as expressed in the two following chronograms:

شاعر گوردون بناء اسماعيل، آنکه چوں مبردر نقارب شده،
از جهان رفت و ظلم شدش تاریخ، سایه تاریخ افتتاح شده،

رباعی

شاعر قییم خورشید جهان گشت میں،
بندود غبار ظلم از روی زمین،

1 These battles were fought in 906/1500, 907/1501, 908/1503, 916/1510, and 920/1514 respectively. In all except the last Sháh Isma'íl was victorious.
As regards literature, there was, as elsewhere explained, an extraordinary dearth of remarkable poets in Persia during the whole Safawi period, while the great theologians belong to a later time when the Shī'a faith, raised by Shāh Isma'īl to the position of the established national religion of Persia, had taken firm root. Most of the celebrated writers whose deaths are recorded in the Ahsanu'l-Tawārikh and other chronicles of Isma'īl's reign really belong to the brilliant circle who gathered round the Timurid Sultan Abu'l-Ghāzi Husayn and his talented Minister Mir 'Alī Shīr Nawā'ī. Such were the poets Háṭifi, nephew of the great Jámi, who died in 927/1521; Amīr Husayn Mu'amma'l (d. 904/1498–9); Bannā'ī, who perished in the massacre wrought by Isma'īl's general Najm-i-Thanī at Qarshī in 918/1512; Hilalī, who was killed by the Uzbeks at Herāt in 935/1528–9 for his alleged Shī'a proclivities; the philosopher Jalālu'd-Dīn Dawānī (d. 908/1502–3); the historian Mīrkhwānd (d. 903/1497–8 at the age of 66); and the versatile Husayn Wā'iz-i-Kashīfī, commentator, ethicist and narrator, best known as the author of the Anwār-i-Suhaylī. The poet Qāsimī celebrated the achievements of Shāh Isma'īl in a Shāh-nāma, hitherto unpublished and but rarely met with even in manuscript, completed ten years after the death of that monarch, who appears to have been less susceptible than most Persian potentates to the flattery of courtiers and venal verse-makers.

1 See pp. 24–29 supra.  
2 See p. 74 ad calc.  
3 Accounts of the more notable of these writers will be found in the preceding volume of this history, Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion.  
5 See p. 28 supra.
CHAPTER III.

CULMINATION AND DECLINE OF THE ŞAFÁWÍ POWER, FROM SHAH TÁHMÁSP (A.D. 1524-1576) TO SHÁH HUSAYN (A.D. 1694-1722).

Táhnásp, the eldest of Isma'il's sons, was only ten years of age when he succeeded his father. He reigned over Persia for fifty-two years and a half, and died on May 14, 1576. In the contemporary chronicles he is usually denoted as Sháh-i-Dín-panáh ("the King who is the Refuge of Religion"). The date of his accession is commemorated in the following verse:

للهام سب شاه عالم دژن نصرت ألفی

جا بعد شاه غازی بر تخت زر گرفتی

تأریخ سلطنت شد جای پدر گرفتی

1 "O Táhnásp, King of the World, who, by the Divine Assistance, didst take thy place on the throne of gold after the Victorious King!

Thou didst take the place of thy father; thou didst subdue the world:

'Thou didst take the place of thy father' (já-yi-pidar girífti) was the date of thine accession."

Of the numerous records of his long reign two, on which in what follows I shall chiefly draw, are worthy of special note; his own autobiography\(^2\) from his accession on Monday, Rajab 19, 930 (May 23, 1524), to his shameful surrender of the Turkish Prince

\[ 3 + 10 + 20 + 200 + 20 + 200 + 80 + 400 + 10 = 930 \text{ A.H.} = 1523-4 \text{ A.D.} \]

\(^1\) Printed by the late Dr Paul Horn in vol. xlv of the Z.D.M.G. (for 1890), pp. 563-649; and lithographed in vol. ii of the Malází'í's Shams of Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán Ptímádu's-Saltana, pp. 165-213.
Báyazíd, who had sought refuge at his court, in 969/1561–2; and the excellent Ahsanî-t-Tawârikh of Ḥasan Beg Rûmlû, concluded in 985/1577–8 only a year after Tâhmâsp's death. The autobiography, possibly suggested by Bâbur's incomparable Memoirs, is far inferior to that most instructive and amusing work, and is not greatly superior to the overestimated Diaries of the late Nâsîrû'd-Dîn Shâh; but it throws some valuable light on the mentality of Tâhmâsp, and on those inner conditions which it is so difficult to deduce from the arid pages of the official chronicles, containing for the most part a mere record of interminable wars and massacres, and leaving us quite in the dark as to the social and intellectual state of the people. That Tâhmâsp was a bigot is indicated both by Sir John Malcolm¹ and Erskine², though the former historian takes the more favourable view of his character, describing him as "of a kind and generous disposition," and adding that he "appears to have possessed prudence and spirit, and, if he was not distinguished by great qualities, he was free from any remarkable vices." Anthony Jenkinson, who carried a letter of recommendation from Queen Elizabeth³, had a not very gratifying audience with him at Qazwín in November, 1562⁴. The Venetian Ambassador Vincentio d'Alessandri, who was accredited to his Court in 1571, describes him⁵, "in the sixty-fourth year of his age, and the fifty-first of his reign," as "of middling stature, well formed in

² A History of India under...Babar and Humâyûn (London, 1854), vol. ii, pp. 285 etc.
³ For the text of this curious letter, see the Hakluyt Society's Early Voyages and Travels to Russia and Persia (No. lxxii, London, 1886), pp. 112–114.
⁴ Ibid., pp. 144–147.
⁵ Travels of Venetians in Persia (Hakluyt Society, 1873), pp. 215 et seqq.
person and features, although dark, of thick lips and a grizzly beard,” and says that he was “more of a melancholy disposition than anything else, which is also known by many signs, but principally by his not having come out of his palace for the space of eleven years, nor having once gone to the chase nor any other kind of amusement, to the great dissatisfaction of his people.” He further describes him as boastful, but unwarlike and “a man of very little courage”; as caring little for law and justice, but much for women and money; as mean and avaricious, “buying and selling with the cunning of a small merchant.” “Notwithstanding the things mentioned above,” he concludes, “which make one think he ought to be hated, the reverence and love of the people for the King are incredible, as they worship him not as a king but as a god, on account of his descent from the line of ‘Alí, the great object of their veneration,” and he cites the most extraordinary instances of this devotion and even deification, which is not confined to the common people but extends to members of the Royal Family and courtiers, and to the inhabitants of the remotest parts of his realms. One magnanimous act of the king’s reign, which led to a great alleviation of the burden of taxation imposed on his people, the Venetian Ambassador ascribes to the influence of a dream, “in which the Angels took him by the throat and asked him whether it was becoming to a king, surnamed the Just and descended from ‘Alí, to get such immense profits by the ruin of so many poor people; and then ordered him to free the people from them.” This story is likely enough, for Tahmásp in his Memoirs records numerous dreams to which he evidently attached great importance. Thus in a dream ‘Alí promises him victory over the Uzbeks about A.D. 1528¹, and a year or two later at Herát advises

¹ P. 584 of Horn’s Denkwürdigkeiten cited above p. 84, n. 2.
him as to another campaign\(^1\), whereon he remarks, “the belief of this weak servant Ṭahmásp as-Safawí al-Músawí al-Husayní\(^2\) is that whoever sees His Holiness the Commander of the Faithful (i.e. ‘Alí), on whom be the blessings of God, in a dream, that which he says will come to pass.” Again in his twentieth year two consecutive dreams, in the second of which he sought and obtained from the Imám ‘Alí Ridá confirmation of the first, led him to repent of wine-drinking and other excesses, and to close all the taverns and houses of ill-repute in his domains, on which occasion he composed the following quatrains\(^3\):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{یک‌چند بی زمربی سوده شدیم،} \\
\text{تیل‌الوده شدیم،} \\
\text{نیک‌چند بی‌پاوقت تر آلوده شدیم،} \\
\text{شستیم به این توه ناسوده شدیم.}
\end{align*}
\]

His conversion or repentance. “For a while we pursued the crushed emerald\(^4\); 
For a while we were defiled by the liquid ruby\(^5\); 
Defilement it was, under whatever colour: 
We washed in the Water of Repentance, and were at peace.”

This “repentance” or conversion of Sháh Ṭahmásp is recorded in the Ahsanu’l-Tawárkh under the year 939/1532–3.

About the same time the army of the Ottoman Sultán Sulaymán, profiting as usual by Persia’s preoccupation with one of the constantly recurring Uzbek invasions of her north-eastern province, marched into Ádharbáyján, where it was overtaken by a premature but violent snow-storm (it was in the month of

\(^1\) Horn, loc. cit., p. 592.
\(^2\) These three epithets refer to his ancestors Shaykh Šafíyyu’d-Dín, the Imám Músá al-Kázim and the Imám Husayn.
\(^3\) Horn, loc. cit., p. 600, also cited in the Atashkada (Bombay lith., 1277/1860–1, p. 17).
\(^4\) I.e. Bang or Hashish (Cannabis Indica), as explicitly stated in the Atashkada.
\(^5\) I.e. wine.
October), in which numbers of the Turkish troops perished. This disaster to the arms of his hereditary foe Sháh Táh-másp ascribes to "the help of God and the aid of the Immaculate Imáms." It has been commemorated in the following forcible quatrain, given in the Aḥsanī’t-Tawárikh and the Ta’ríkh-i-ʿĀlam-rád-yi-ʿAbbásí:

\begin{quote}
رفتُ مَرَّةٌ سُلَّٰتَانُ یَانَ طِرَٰقٍ چَمِنَ
دَيْدَمْ دوُ هَزَّارٍ مِرَّهِ مَرَّهُ بَيٍّ گُورَ و چِسَنَ
کَفَتِيُّ جَّهَ رَنُقَتَ اَیٍنَ هِیِ یُعْشَانَیْ ْیَمَّ
بَرَصِيُّ سَحِرٍ از مِیَاتِه بَر خَاسِتٍ جَّهَ مَنَ
\end{quote}

"I went to Sultániyya, that rare pasture-ground:
I saw two thousand dead without grave or shroud.
'Who,' said I, 'killed all these Ottomans?'
The morning breeze arose from the midst saying 'I!'"

Other dreams are meticulously recorded by Sháh Táh-másp in his Memoirs: at Ardabíl he sees and converses with the vision of his ancestor Shaykh Šafiyyu ‘d-Dín; on another occasion he receives encouragement from the spirit of Shaykh Shihábu’d-Dín; other allegorical dreams are recorded under the years 957/1550 and 961/1554.

In his domestic relations Sháh Táh-másp was unhappy, though not perhaps more so than most contemporary Asiatic sovereigns, notably the Ottoman Sultáns. He had three younger brothers, Sám (notable as a poet and biographer of poets); Bahrám and

1 Horn, loc. cit., p. 602. See also the Turkish journal of this campaign given by Firídún Bey (vol. i, pp. 588–9), where mention of this severe cold is made. Sultániyya was reached by the Turkish army on 5 Rabí‘i, 941 (October 14, 1534).
5 He was the author of a valuable but unpublished Biography of contemporary poets entitled Tuhfa-i-Sámi.
Alqāṣ, of whom the first and third rebelled against him. Sám Mírzá was cast into prison in 969/1561–2 and was ultimately put to death there in 984/1576–7 by Tāhmásp’s successor. The case of Alqāṣ was much worse, for he was a traitor as well as a rebel, and not only took refuge with Sultán Sulaymán at Constantinople, but incited him to attack Persia and took an active part in the ensuing war against his own country. At Hamadán, in 955/1548, he plundered the house of his sister-in-law, the wife of Bahrám Mírzá, and later advanced as far as Yazdīkhwāst, where he made a massacre of the inhabitants, but in the following year he was defeated and fell into the hands of his brother Bahrám, who handed him over to Tāhmásp. The King imprisoned him in the Castle of Alamút, according to his own Memoirs¹, or, according to the Aḥsanu’l-Tawārikh, in the Castle of Qahqaha, where he perished a week later. “In short,” says Tāhmásp in recording the event, “after some days I saw that he did not feel safe from me, but was constantly preoccupied, so I despatched him to a fortress with Ibráhím Khán and Ḥasan Beg the centurion, who took him to the Castle of Alamút and there imprisoned him. After six days, those who had custody of him being off their guard, two or three persons there, in order to avenge their father whom Alqāṣ had killed, cast him down from the castle. After his death the land had peace.” It can scarcely be doubted that Tāhmásp approved, if he did not actually arrange, this deed of violence. Bahrám Mírzá died the same year at the age of 33.

Much worse was the case of the unfortunate Prince Báyazíd, son of the Ottoman Sultan Sulaymán, who, deprived of his government of Kútáhiya and driven from his native land by the intrigues of his father’s Russian wife Khurram² (whose

¹ Horn, loc. cit., p. 631.
one object was to secure the succession of her son Salím, afterwards known as "the Sot") took refuge at Táhmasp's court in 967/1559-60. An Ottoman mission headed by 'Alí Páshá was sent to Qazwín to demand the surrender of Báyázíd and his children. They arrived there, as we learn from Anthony Jenkinson's narrative, four days earlier than himself, to wit on October 30, 1562, and Táhmasp, moved partly by fear of the Turkish power, partly by bribes, disregarded his solemn promises to the contrary and caused or suffered the unfortunate Prince and his four little sons to be put to death, and, as Anthony Jenkinson says, "sent his head for a present, not a little desired, and acceptable to the unnatural father." Táhmasp seems to have overcome any scruples he may have felt in breaking his solemn promises to the guest he thus betrayed by handing him over not directly to his father, but to the emissaries of his brother Salím. The case is bad enough even as stated by the Sháh himself in his Memoirs, which conclude with a pretty full account of this episode, ending thus:

"At this date 'Alí Áqá came from his Majesty the Sultán, and of [my] Nobles and Court everyone who had sent a present received its equivalent, save in the case of my own gift and offering, which on this occasion also had not proved acceptable; and there was a letter full of hints and complaints. I said, 'Here have I arrested and detained Prince Báyázíd with his four sons for the sake of His Majesty the Sultán and Prince Salím; but since I have given my word not to

---

1 Early Voyages, etc. (Hakluyt Society, 1886, vol. i.), p. 141 and footnote, in which the substance of Knolles's contemporary account is given. See also Creasy's History of the Ottoman Turks (London, 1877), pp. 186-7.


3 Here, as elsewhere, called Khwándgár, apparently a corruption of Khudáwándgár ("the Lord"), itself in turn corrupted by the Turks into Khünkár ("the Shedder of Blood").
surrender Bāyazīd to the Sultān, I have determined that when the Sultān’s commands arrive and likewise the emissaries of Prince Salīm, I will surrender [Bāyazīd] to the latter, so that I may not break my promise.’ So when the Sultān’s messengers arrived, I said, ‘Your Excellency and Ḥasan Āqá are welcome, and I will act according to the commands of His Majesty and in no wise transgress his orders, but faithfully accomplish whatever service he may indicate. But in return for so material a service I desire from His Majesty the Sultān and Prince Salīm such reward and recompense as may be worthy of them; and, moreover, I hope of the Sultān in a friendly way that no hurt may befall Prince Bāyazīd and his sons.’”

Needless to say this pious wish in no wise influenced the tragic course of events, but the Sháh’s compliance with the Sultān’s imperious demands led to a temporary amelioration of the relations between Persia and Turkey which is reflected both in Anthony Jenkinson’s narrative and in the concluding State Papers contained in the first volume of Firúdūn Bey’s Munsha‘dīt, in which for the first time Tāhmāsp is addressed by Sulaymān with decent civility, though there is no explicit reference to this event.

More creditable and better known is the reception of Humāyūn, the son of Bābur and Emperor of Dihlī, at the Court of Tāhmāsp in A.D. 1544 when he was driven out of his own dominions. Of the hospitality which he received Sir John Malcolm speaks with enthusiasm; but Erskine, giving less weight to the official accounts than to the “plain unvarnished tale” of Humāyūn’s servant Jawhar, takes the view (which he

3 Translated by Major Charles Stewart and printed in London in 1832 for the Oriental Translation Fund.
supports by numerous illustrations) that in reality “Humáyún had much to suffer and many humiliations to endure”; and that in particular great pressure was brought to bear on him to compel him to adopt the Shi’a faith, which might have gone even further but for the moderating influence of the Sháh’s sister Sultánum Khánun, the Minister Qádí-i-Jahán and the physician Núru’d-Dín. One of the pictures in the celebrated palace of Chahil Sutún at Isfahán represents an entertainment given by Táhmasp to Humáyún.

The foreign relations of Persia during the reign of Táhmasp were chiefly, as in the reign of his father Isma’íl, with three states—Turkey, the Uzbeks of Transoxiana, and the so-called “Great Moghuls” of Dihlí. During the greater part of his reign (until 974/1566–7) the great Sultán Sulaymán occupied the Ottoman throne; afterwards Salm II (“the Sot”), and, for the last two years of his life (982–4/1574–6) Murád III. Of the Uzbek rulers ‘Ubayd Khán, until his death in 946/1539–40, and afterwards Dín Múhammad Sultán were his most formidable foes, who ceased not to trouble his eastern, as did the Ottoman Turks his western borders. Of the “Great Moghuls” Bábur (died 937/1530–1), Humáyún (died 962/1555) and Akbar were his contemporaries. Anthony Jenkinson, as we have seen, came to him with credentials from Queen Elizabeth in A.D. 1561, and some thirteen years later, towards the end of his reign, the arrival of a Portuguese mission from Don Sebastian is recorded in the Ahsanu’l-Tawdrikh under the year 982/1574–5, but it met with a bad reception.

Between the Ottoman Turks on the one hand and the Uzbeks on the other, Persia enjoyed little peace at this period, and these campaigns on the N.E. and N.W. frontiers

succeeded one another with varying fortune but with monotonous reiteration. Sultán Sulaymán’s chief campaigns were in 940–942/1534–6, when Baghdád was taken from the Persians and Ádharbáyyján invaded; 950/1543–4; 953–955/1546–8, when the Sháh’s brother Alqaš allied himself with the Turks; 959/1552, when the Persians recovered Arjísh; and 961/1554, when Sulaymán burned Nakhjíwuán and attacked Ádharbáyyján for the fourth time. The Turkish military power was at this time at its zenith, and was formidable not only to the Persians but to the great European Powers, who, indeed, were thankful for such diversion of its activities as the Persians from time to time effected, so that Busbecq, Ferdinand’s ambassador at the Court of Sulaymán, declares that “only the Persian stands between us and ruin.” Creasy speaks of the “pre-eminence of the Turks of that age in the numerical force and efficiency of their artillery”; and adds that “the same remark applies to their skill in fortification, and in all the branches of military engineering.” Inferior as were the Persian to the Ottoman troops alike in discipline and equipment, it was much to their credit that they were able to offer as stout a resistance as they did, especially as the continual object of Turkish diplomacy at this time was to incite the Uzbek, Turkmán, and other Sunni peoples, to combine with them in attacking “the rascally Red-heads” (Qızıl-báșk-i-Așbášk). Of this policy the State Papers of Sulaymán’s, as of his father Salím’s, reign afford ample evidence; for instance the letter addressed to a Turkmán

---

1 A complete diary of this campaign against the “arch-heretic Qızıl-básh King Tahmásp” will be found in vol. i of Firdúz Bey’s Münshá’dí, pp. 584–598. The Ottoman army left Constantinople on June 10, 1534, occupied Baghdád in December of the same year, and returned to Constantinople on Jan. 7, 1536.

2 See p. 11 supra.

chief about the end of 960/1553 (given on pp. 612–613 of Firidúnn Bey’s Munsha’át) and transmitted to him, apparently, by four of his representatives, Muḥammad, Mīr Abū Turāb, Mīr Ṭūṭī and Sunduk, who, after performing the Pilgrimage, had visited the Sultān’s Court at Constantinople on their homeward journey, and had delighted him with accounts of their achievements against the Persians.

The wars with the Uzbeks were equally continuous, especially until the death of the redoutable ‘Ubayd Khān, the son of Shaybāk Khān, a direct descendant of Chingiz, in 946/1539–40, at the age of fifty-three, after a reign of thirty years. He is said by the Aḥsamūt-Tawārīkh to have suffered defeat in only one of the seven campaigns he fought against the Persians. Tūs, Mashhad, and especially Herāt suffered terribly during these wars, which were nearly always accompanied by severe religious persecutions. The poet Hilālī fell a victim to the Sunnī fanaticism of the Uzbeks at Herāt in 935/1528–9, as the poet Bannā’ī had fallen a victim to Shī‘a intolerance at Qarshī in 918/1512–13; and under the year 942/1535–6 the Aḥsamūt-Tawārīkh gives the following graphic account of the persecution of the Shī‘a which took place on the capture of Herāt by ‘Ubayd Khān on Rajab 20, 942 (January 14, 1536):

**�** روز بحکم آن خان بی ایبان پنج شش نس بواسطه تشیع
باقوال جبال در چهار سوق هراة خشته می شدند و روستایان بی
dیانت و شهریان با خیانت با هر خس طه عداوتی داشتند اورا
گرفته نزد قاضی می برند که این مرد در زیمان قتلباش لعن
ابو بکر و عثمان ضرده است، بسخن آن دو کواه چاهل قاضی
بقتل آن مظلوم حکم می گرد و اورا خشته کشان بچه سوق
هرة می برند و بقتلش می آورند و از شومی ایبیان اموج محن
Every day by order of that unbelieving Khán (Ubayd) five or six individuals were slain for Shi’a proclivities on the information of ignorant persons in the market-place\(^1\) of Herát. Godless villagers and treacherous townsmen would seize anyone against whom they cherished a grudge and drag him before the judge, asserting that in the time of the ‘Red-heads’ (\textit{i.e.} the Shi’a Persians) he used to curse Abú Bakr and ‘Uthmán\(^2\); and on the word of these two ignorant witnesses the judge would pronounce sentence of death on the victim, whom they would then drag to the market-place of Herát and put to death. Through their sinister acts the waves of sorrow and the hosts of mischief attained their culmination, while plunder and looting took place throughout the confines of Khurásán."

With the Georgians also the Persians were constantly at war during this period, to wit in 947/1540–1, 950/1543–4, 958/1551, 961/1554, 963/1556, 968/1560–1, and 976/1568–9. These wars were also waged with great ferocity, and it is worth noting that contemporary Persian historians constantly speak of the Christian inhabitants of Georgia as “guebres” (\textit{gabrán}, a term properly applicable only to the Zoroastrians), as in the following verse describing the first of these campaigns:

\textit{"In that stony wilderness those beasts had established themselves, the native land of man-stealing guebres."}

In this campaign, as the \textit{Ahsanu’l-Tawārīkh} informs us, such of the Georgians as consented to embrace Islám were spared, but those who refused were put to the sword; and similarly, in speaking of the campaign of 958/1551 the same history says:

\(^{1}\) \textit{Chahár-süq} (from which is derived the modern Turkish \textit{chârshî}) is the point of intersection of two main \textit{bazaars}; a sort of Oriental Oxford Circus, affording the greatest publicity.

\(^{2}\) The omission of ‘Umar, unless due to a scribe’s error, is remarkable.
"The victorious champions encompassed the lands of the sinful unbelievers, lowlands and highlands, and every mountain and ridge whither that misguided one [their ruler] had fled was levelled with the plain by the trampling of the [Persian] warriors. Not one who drew breath of those polytheists saved his soul alive from the circle of wrath and vengeance of ‘and God encompasseth the unbelievers,’ and, by lawful heritage, the wives, families and property of the slain passed to their slayers.”

Besides these greater wars, there were minor operations against the more or less independent rulers of Gilán, and the last representatives of the ancient but expiring dynasty of the Shírvánísháhs, who boasted descent from the great Núshírwan. Although the last of this line, Sháhrukh ibn Sulṭán Farrukh ibn Shaykh-sháh ibn Farrukh-Yasár, was put to death by Táhmasp in 946/1539-40, nine years later we read of a scion of the house named Burhán in conflict with Isma‘íl Mírzá. In Gilán, Khán Ahmad, the eleventh ruler of a petty dynasty which had ruled for two hundred and five years, was defeated and interned in the Castle of Qahqaha in 975/1567-8. In 981/1573-4 Tábríz was terrorized by a gang of roughs who were not reduced to order and obedience until a hundred and fifty of them had been put to death. Barbarous punishments were frequent. Múzaffar Sulṭán, governor of Rasht, was for an act of treason paraded through the streets of Tábríz, decor-

\[Qurán, ii, 18.\]
ated for the occasion, amidst the mockery of the rabble, and burned to death in an iron cage, suspended under which in a particularly cruel and humiliating fashion Amír Sa'úd-Dín 'Ináyatulláh Khúzání simultaneously suffered the same fate. Khvája Kalán Ghúriyání, a fanatical Sunní who had gone out to welcome 'Ubayd Khán the Uzbek and was accused of speaking slightly of the Sháh, was skinned in the market-place of Herát and the stuffed skin exhibited on a pole. Ruknu'd-Dín Mas'úd of Kázarún, a most learned man and skilful physician, incurred the Sháh's displeasure and was burned to death. Muhammád Salíh, a liberal patron of poets, in whose honour Hayratí composed a panegyric, had his mouth sewn up because he was alleged to have spoken disrespectfully of the King, and was then placed in a large jar which was afterwards thrown to the ground from the top of a minaret.

According to the Ahsanu't-Tawárikh, Sháh Tahmásp was in his youth much interested in calligraphy and painting; he also liked riding on Egyptian asses, which consequently became fashionable, and were adorned with golden trappings and gold-embroidered saddle-cloths. Alluding to these idiosyncrasies a ribald poet with the extraordinary nom de guerre of Búqul-'Ishq ("the Trumpet of Love") lampooned him in this verse:

بي تكلف خوش ترقى كردهاند
 كتاب و نقاش و فروینی و خر;

"The scribe, the painter, the Qazwí and the ass
Obtained easy promotion without trouble."

He made a great ostentation of piety, "regarding most things as unclean, and often spitting out his half-eaten food into the water or the fire," in view of which it is satisfactory to know that "he would not eat in company." He was also punctilious about such matters as cutting his nails, and would spend the day after this operation in the bath.
Čahmásp died on Tuesday, Šafar 15, 984 (May 14, 1576) at the age of sixty-four after a reign of fifty-three years and a half, the longest reign, according to the Ahsanu'l-Tawārikh, of any Muhammadan sovereign except the Fātimid Caliph al-Mustansir bi'llāh¹. Eleven of his sons are enumerated in the history just cited, of whom nine at least survived him. The eldest, Muḥammad Khudá-banda, who was about forty-five years of age, though he succeeded to the throne a year later, renounced it on his father's death on account of his partial blindness, this infirmity, whether natural or deliberately inflicted, being regarded in the East, and especially in Persia, as an absolute disqualification for the exercise of regal functions². His younger brother Ḥaydar, taking advantage of the absence from the capital of his brothers, of whom Isma'īl was imprisoned in the Castle of Qahqaha, while the others were for the most part resident in distant provinces, endeavoured to seize the throne, but was murdered in the women's apartments, where he had taken refuge, by the partisans of his brother Isma'īl, who was proclaimed king in the principal mosque of Qazwín nine days after his father's death.

Isma'īl's reign was short but sanguinary, and in his drastic methods of dealing with possible competitors for the Crown he rivalled the most ruthless of the Ottoman Sulṭāns. He first put to death his two brothers Sulaymán and Muṭṣafā; then, after providing an elaborate funeral for his father at Mashhad and a gorgeous coronation for himself at Qazwín, in which his remaining brothers occupied their due positions, he resumed his fratricidal activities. On Sunday the sixth of Dhu'l-Hijja, A.H. 984 (Feb. 24, 1577), he put to death the six following princes: Sulṭān Ibrāhīm Mirzā, poet, artist, musician and calligrapher;...

¹ He reigned sixty lunar years, A.H. 427–487 (A.D. 1035–1094).
his nephew Muhammad Ḥusayn Mîrzâ, a lad of eighteen, who had already been deprived of his eyesight; Sulṭān Maḥmûd Mîrzâ; his son Muhammad Bāqir Mîrzâ, a child of two; Imám-qulî Mîrzâ, and Sulṭān Aḥmad Mîrzâ. He next turned his attention to those princes who were resident in outlying provinces, such as Bâdî‘u’z-Zamân Mîrzâ and his little son Bahrâm Mîrzâ in Khurâsân, Sulṭān ‘Alî Mîrzâ in Ganja, and Sulṭān Ḥasan Mîrzâ in Tihrân, all of whom he destroyed. Only by a most wonderful chance, accounted by his biographer Iskandar Munshi² as a miraculous intervention of Providence, did the little Prince ‘Abbâs Mîrzâ, destined to become the greatest of Persia’s modern rulers, escape his uncle’s malevolence. The blood-thirsty Isma‘îl had actually sent ‘Alî-qulî Khân Shâmlû to Herât, of which ‘Abbâs Mîrzâ, though only six years of age, was the nominal governor, to put the young prince to death, but the emissary, whether actuated by pity or superstition, delayed the accomplishment of his cruel task till the sacred month of Ramaḍân should be over, and ere this respite had come to an end a courier arrived bringing the joyful news of Isma‘îl’s death, the manner of which was as discreditable as his life. On the night of Sunday, Ramaḍân 13, A.H. 985 (Nov. 24, 1577), being at the time the worse for drink, he had gone out in search of adventures into the streets and bâzârs of the city accompanied by one of his favourites, a confectioner’s son named Ḥasan Beg, and other disreputable companions, and towards dawn had gone to rest in Ḥasan Beg’s house, where he was found dead later in the day. Some suggested that he had been poisoned, or first drugged and afterwards strangled, while others maintained that he had merely taken an overdose of the opium

1 Author of the well-known monograph on Sháh ‘Abbâs the Great entitled Ta’rîkh-i-‘Alâm-arâ-yi-‘Abbâsî.
2 He was born at Herât on Ramaḍân 1, 978 (Jan. 27, 1571).
wherewith he was wont to assuage the pain of a colic to which he was subject. But his death was so welcome to all that no great trouble seems to have been taken to arrive at the manner of it, and it does not even appear that any punishment was inflicted on Hasan Beg, who, indeed, is said to have been also half paralysed when found.

Muhammad Khudá-banda, in spite of his blindness, was now placed on the throne which he had refused on the death of his father Sháh Žahmásp. He was at this time about forty-six years of age and was resident at Shiráz, having been replaced in his former government of Herát by his little son Prince 'Abbás Mírzá, whose narrow escape from death has just been described. The new king at once set out for Qazwín, and amongst those who welcomed him at Qum was Hasan Beg Rúmlú, the author of the Ahsanu't-Tawáríkh, which important but unpublished history was concluded in this very year and contains the most authoritative account of the events above narrated. That this account is in places confused and must be supplemented by later histories like the Khuld-i-Barin and Ta'rikh-i-Âlam-ará-yi-'Abbást arises from the fact that the author, for his own personal safety, had to walk with great caution amidst the rapidly-changing circumstances of these perilous times.

At Qazwín, Muhammad Khudá-banda received the homage of Sulaymán Páshá, a great-grandson of Abú Sa'id the Tímúrid, who greeted him with the following verses:

شاه دی تو قبیلهٔ شاهان عالم است
گروند ترا مستمر و گیتی مستمر است
یکتا شدست رشتهٔ شاهی بعد تو
الحمد لله ارجه خدّه گناوت محاکم است

2 According to the Ahsanu't-Tawáríkh he was born in 938/1531-2.
"O King, thy gate is the qibla of the Kings of the world, Heaven is subjugated and earth surrendered to thee: In thy reign the thread of royalty hath become single; But, Praise be to God, though single it is strong."

The able, ambitious and beautiful Princess Parí-Khán Khánnum, Tahmásp Sháh's favourite daughter by a Circassian wife, who had played a prominent part in the troubles succeeding his death, and aspired to rule in fact if not in name, was put to death at Muḥammad Khudá-banda's command by Khalíl Khán Afshár, together with her mother's brother Shamkhál Khán, and Sháh Shujá', the infant son of the late King Isma'íl. In consequence of these pitiless slaughters the representatives of the Safawí Royal Family were now reduced to Sháh Muḥammad Khudá-banda himself and his four sons, Hamza, 'Abbás, Abú Tálib and Tahmásp. The first, who is sometimes reckoned amongst the Safawí kings (since he seems for a while to have exercised regal functions during his half-blind father's life-time), was murdered by a young barber named Khudá-verdí on the 22nd of Dhu'l-Hijja, 994 (Dec. 4, 1586). Abú Tálib was thereupon nominated Wálī-āhā, or Crown Prince, instead of his elder brother 'Abbás, who was still in Khurásán, but who speedily appeared on the scene with his guardian and tutor Murshíd-qulí Khán Ustájlú,  

1 I suppose this alludes to the practical extermination of the rest of the Royal Family by Isma'íl II.  
2 Sir John Malcolm (op. cit., vol. i, pp. 514 and 517) appears to confuse her with her mother, since he calls her "the favourite Sultána of the deceased monarch" (Tahmásp), and "the sister of Shamkhál." In the 'Ālam-ārá-yi-'Abbásí she is enumerated as the second of Tahmásp's eight daughters, but according to other Persian historians she was one of the five daughters of Sháh Isma'íl and the sister of Tahmásp. See p. 81 supra, n. 2 ad calc. By "Don Juan of Persia" she is called the Infanta.  
3 Called by "Don Juan of Persia" (f. 104a) "Cudy de Lac" (i.e. Dallák), "que es como si dixeramos en Español, Cudi el barbero del Rey."
inflicted condign punishment on those who had prompted the murder of his elder brother Ḥamza, and rendered his two younger brothers harmless by depriving them of their eyesight and imprisoning them in the Castle of Alamút. His father abdicated in his favour after a reign of ten years in Dhu’l-Qa’da, 995 (October, 1587), and Sháh ‘Abbás ascended the throne to which he was destined to add so great a glory. He and his three brothers were all the sons of one mother, a lady of the Mar’áshí Sayyids of Mázandarán, who seems to have resembled her sister-in-law Pári-Khán Khánánum in her masterful character as well as in her tragic fate, for she, together with her aged mother and many of her kinsfolk and countrymen, was murdered by some of the Qizil-básh nobles who objected to her autocratic methods and dominating influence over her irresolute and peace-loving husband, being of opinion that—

"No luck remains in that household where the hen crows like a cock."

Muhammad Khudá-bandá was born in 938/1531–2, was forty-six years of age when his father Sháh Ţahmásp died in 984/1576–7, reigned ten years after the death of his brother Isma‘îl, survived his abdication eight or nine years, and died in 1004/1595–6. His character is thus described by Rádá-qlí Khán in his Supplement to the Rawdatu’s-Šafá: "He had some knowledge of all the current sciences, and was incomparable in understanding and judgement, virtue and discernment, bounty and generosity, and expression and eloquence. Being a 'servant of God' (Khudá-bandá) he showed an excessive

1 "Don Juan of Persia," f. 107.b.
2 Supplement to the Rawdatu’s-Šafá.
clemency in matters of administration, war, anger and punishment, and, so far as possible, would not consent to the death of any one. Though he struck the first blow at Khudá-verdí the barber\(^1\), this was only according to the enactment of the Holy Law. In consequence of his weak eyesight he seldom gave public audience, and, while he tarried in the women’s apartments, the Sayyida [his wife] gave effect to his commands, and, in order more effectively to control affairs, herself sealed the documents... In short, he was a king with the qualities of a religious mendicant, or a religious mendicant endowed with regal pomp (Pádisháhí darwísh-khíslá, yá darwíshtí pádisháh-jálál)."

His reign, though short, was troubled not only by the domestic tragedies indicated above; but by the Turks, Uzbeks, Crimean Tartars, Georgians and other external foes, who, encouraged by the spectacle of those internecine struggles which succeeded the death of Táhzmásp, sought to profit by the distractions of Persia.

Sháh ‘Abbás I, commonly and justly called “the Great,” was only sixteen or seventeen years of age when he ascended the throne in 996/1588\(^2\), and died in Jumádí 1, 1038/Jan. 1629 at the age of 60 after a reign of 43 lunar years, in which, by general agreement, Persia reached the highest degree of power, prosperity and splendour ever attained by her in modern times. His position at first was, however, fraught with dangers and difficulties. Not only was his kingdom threatened, as usual, by the Ottoman Turks on the west and the Uzbeks on the east, but many of the provinces were in revolt and the country was distracted by the rivalries and ambitions of the great Qizíl-básh

---

\(^1\) The murderer of his son Hamza. See p. 101 supra and n. 3 ad calc.

\(^2\) He was born, according to the ‘Alam-árá-yí-‘Abbásí, on Ramádán 1, 978 (Jan. 27, 1571), or 979 (Jan. 17, 1572). The words ١٠٣

form the chronogram of his coronation.
nobles of different tribes, in the hands of two of whom, Murshid-qulí Khán and ‘Ali-qulí Khán, the young King seemed at first to be a mere puppet. When the former accompanied him to Qazwín to place him on the throne, the latter was left in Khurásán to bear the brunt of the Uzbek attack, to which, after a defence of nine months, he fell a victim. ‘Abbás, suspecting Murshid-qulí Khán of deliberately withholding help from his rival, caused him to be murdered one night in camp at Sháhrúd, thus freeing himself from an irksome tutelage, and becoming a sovereign ruler in fact as well as in name. Realizing that he could not possibly wage successful war simultaneously with the Turks and the Uzbeks, he determined, with far-sighted prudence, to make peace, even on unfavourable terms, with the former in order to check the encroachments of the latter and to devise some mechanism to control the disorderly rivalries of the Qizil-básh nobles, whereby his authority and the efficiency of his military force were paralysed. The terms of the treaty with Turkey included the surrender of the towns and districts in Ádharbáyján and Georgia conquered by the Ottoman troops during a war which had lasted more than twelve years (985–998/1577–1590), such as Tabríz, Ganja, Qárs, Nakhjíwán, Sháki, Shamákhí and Tíflis, as well as part of Luristán; the abandonment of the cursing of the first three Caliphs, Abú Bakr, ‘Umar and ‘Uthmán; and the sending as a hostage to Constantinople of Sháh ‘Abbás’s nephew Haydar Mírzá, who departed with the Turkish general Farhád Páshá for the Ottoman capital, where he died two years later.

Sháh ‘Abbás next proceeded to subdue Shíráz, Kírmán, Gírán and Khurram-ábád in Luristán, and to inflict condign punishment on Ya’qúb Khán Dhu’l-Qadar and other rebels. Meanwhile ‘Abdu’l-Mú’min Khán and his Uzbeks were again ravaging Khurásán, and the
Sháh, advancing to attack them, was stricken down by fever at Tihrán. While he lay sick and unable to move, the holy city of Mashhad was taken and sacked by the savage Uzbeks and many of its inhabitants slain. Sabzawár\(^1\) suffered a similar fate in 1002/1593–4; but three or four years later\(^2\) ‘Abdulláh Kháń, the Uzbek sovereign, died, and his son, the above-mentioned ‘Abdu’l-Mú’imin Kháń, was killed by his own people. It was at this juncture (April, 1598) that Sháh ‘Abbás was at length able to attack the Uzbeks in force and drive them out of Khurásán, which now at length enjoyed a period of peace and tranquillity. On his return from this victorious campaign to Qazwín in the autumn of the same year, he found awaiting him there those celebrated English soldiers of fortune Sir Anthony and Sir Robert Sherley, whose romantic adventures are fully described in several excellent monographs\(^8\). These, who were accompanied by some dozen English attendants, including at least one cannon-founder, aided him greatly in the reconstruction of his army and especially in providing it with artillery, the lack of which had hitherto so severely handicapped the Persians in their wars with the Turks, so that, as it is quaintly phrased in Purchas’s Pilgrims, “the mighty Ottoman, terror of the Christian world, quaketh of a Sherley fever, and gives hopes of approaching fates. The prevailing Persian hath learned Sherleian arts of war; and he which before knew not the

---

\(^1\) The author of the ‘Ālam-ārd-yi-‘Abbási says that he himself saw amongst those slain at Sabzawár women with children at the breast.

\(^2\) In 1006/1597–8, according to the ‘Ālam-ārd-yi-‘Abbási.

\(^3\) e.g. “The Sherley Brothers, an historical Memoir of the Lives of Sir Thomas Sherley, Sir Anthony Sherley, and Sir Robert Sherley, Knights, by one of the same House” (Evelyn Philip Shirley; Roxburgh Club: Chiswick, 1848); “The Three Brothers, or the Travels and Adventures of Sir A., Sir R. and Sir T. Sherley in Persia, Russia, Turkey, Spain, etc., with Portraits” (Anon., London, 1825).
use of ordnance, hath now five hundred pieces of brass and sixty thousand musqueteers; so that they, which at hand with the sword were before dreadful to the Turks, now also, in remoter blows and sulphurean arts, are grown terrible.” The discipline of the Persian army had also been improved by the elimination of the more ambitious and disobedient Qizil-básh nobles; the creation of a composite tribal force known as Sháh-seven (“King-lovers”), united not by tribal allegiance but by personal devotion to the King; and the formation of a regular infantry comparable in some degree to the Turkish Janissaries.

A year or two later circumstances were favourable for the long-projected attempt to recover the provinces wrested from Persia by the Turks during the interregnum which succeeded the death of Táhmásp. The reign of the feeble Muhammad III was approaching its end, and Turkey was weakened by a prolonged war with Austria and by the so-called Jaláli revolt in Asia Minor when Sháh ‘Abbás opened his campaign in 1010/1601–2. Tabrız was retaken “with cannon, an engine of long-time by the Persians scorned as not beseeming valiant men,” in 1012/1603–4, and two years later the celebrated Turkish general Chighála-záda Sinán Páshá (“Cicula”) was defeated near Salmás and compelled to retreat to Ván and Diýár Bakr, where he died of chagrin. Baghdad and Shírwán were recaptured by the Persians about the same time, but the former changed hands more than once during the reign of Sháh ‘Abbás, and the occasion of its recapture from the Turks in A.D. 1625 gave rise to an

1 An account of the heretic Jaláli is given by Munajjim-báshí (Šahá ‘ísfál-Abhábár, Turkish version, ed. Constantinople, A.H. 1285, vol. iii, p. 471). He and many of his followers were killed near Sfí Aws in 925/1519, but evidently the sect which he founded retained its vitality for the better part of a century afterwards.
interchange of verses between Ḥāfīz Páshá and Súltán Murád IV which has attained a certain celebrity in Turkish literary history.

No coherent and critical account of these wars between the Persians on the one hand and the Turks, Uzbeks and Georgians on the other has yet, so far as I know, been written, but the materials are ample, should any historian acquainted with Persian and Turkish desire to undertake the task. The enormous preponderance of the military element in such contemporary chronicles as the Ta'ríkh-i-Álam-árd-yi-'Ábbásí makes them very dull and arduous reading to anyone not specially interested in military matters; even from the point of view of military history they are vitiated by overwhelming masses of trivial details and the absence of any breadth of view or clearness of outline. Many matters on which we should most desire information are completely ignored, and it is only here and there incidentally that we find passages throwing light on the religious and social conditions of the time. Of the recapture of the Island of Húrmoz in the Persian Gulf from the Portuguese in March, 1622, by a combined Anglo-Persian force we have naturally very detailed contemporary English accounts.

Allusion has already been made in the introductory chapter to the splendour and prosperity of Isfahán under Sháh 'Ábbás, and to the number of foreigners, diplomats, merchants and missionaries, which his tolerant attitude towards non-Muslims brought thither. These and other similar matters are very fully discussed in the first volume of the great monograph on his reign entitled Ta'ríkh-i-Álam-árd-yi-'Ábbási, half of which consists of an Introduction (Muqaddama) comprising


2 Pp. 24–5 *supra*. 
twelve Discourses (Maqāla). The first of these, dealing with his ancestors and predecessors, is much the longest, and in my manuscript occupies about two hundred pages; the others, though much shorter, often occupying only a page or two, are more original, and deal with such matters as the religious devotion of Shāh 'Abbās; his wise judgement and wide knowledge; his worthiness to be regarded as a Sāhib-Qirān, or "Lord of a fortunate Conjunction"; his miraculous preservation on several occasions from imminent peril; his wise administration and care for public security; his inflexible severity; his pious foundations and charitable bequests; his wars and victories; his birth and childhood; and an account of the most eminent nobles, divines, ministers, physicians, calligraphers, painters, illuminators, poets and minstrels of his reign. Speaking of his severity (Maqāla) the author, Iskandar Munshi, says that no one dared to delay one moment in the execution of any order given him by the King: "for instance, should he command a father to kill his son, the sentence would be carried out immediately, even as the decree of destiny; or should the father, moved by parental tenderness, make any delay, the command would be reversed; and should the son then temporize, another would slay both. By such awful severity the execution of his commands attained the supreme degree of efficiency, and none dared hesitate for an instant in the fulfilment of the sentence inevitable as fate."

He also compelled his officers, on pain of death, to be present at all executions; held each provincial governor and local magistrate responsible for the security of the roads in his district; and punished falsehood with such severity that it was generally believed that if anyone ventured to lie to him, he was informed of it from the Spirit World. Yet at other times he would be very friendly and unassuming in his intercourse with his
courtiers and attendants, careful of their rights and just claims, and ready to overlook accidental and involuntary shortcomings. Though not averse from the banquet and the wine-bout, he was greatly concerned to be correctly informed as to the circumstances of the neighbouring kings and countries, and devoted much attention to the development of his Intelligence Department. He was also something of a linguist, and not only appreciated but occasionally composed poetry.

Amongst the towns and districts which benefited most from his munificence were, besides his capital Iṣfahān, Mash-had and its holy shrine of the eighth Imām ʿAlī Ridā, which, as we have seen, he rescued from the savage and fanatical Uzbek and raised to a position of the greatest glory and honour; Ardabīl, the original home of his family; Qazwīn, the earlier capital of the Ṣafawīs; Kāshān, near which he constructed the celebrated dam known as the Band-i-Quhrūd; Astarābād; Tabrīz; Hamadān; and the province of Māzandarān, one of his favourite resorts, which he adorned with several splendid palaces and the great causeway extending from Astarābād to Ashraf, of which full particulars are given in Lord Curzon's great work on Persia. As regards his conquests, his armies reached Merv, Nīsā, Abīward, Andakhūd and even Balkh in the north-east, and Nakhjuwān, Erivan, Ganja, Tiflis, Darband and Bākū in the north-west.

No useful purpose would be served by enumerating here all the notable persons in each class mentioned by Iskandar Munshi, who wrote, as he repeatedly mentions in the course of his work, in 1025/1616, but the most important are, amongst the divines and

1 See my Year amongst the Persians, pp. 185–6.
2 Vol. i, pp. 376–8, etc.
men of learning, Mîr Muhammad Dâmad and Shaykh Bahâ’u’d-Dîn ‘Amîlî; amongst the calligraphists, Mawlânâ Ishâq Siyâwushânî, Muḥammad Ḥusayn-i-Tabrîzî, Mîr Mu‘izz-i-Kâshî, Mîr Ṣadrü’d-Dîn Muḥammad, and others; amongst the artists and miniature painters, Muẓaffar ‘Alî, Zaynu’l-‘Âbidîn, Sâdiq Beg, ‘Abdu’l-Jabbâr, and others; amongst the poets, Ḥâdîrî, Muḥtasîm, Wâlî, Waḥshî, Khwâjâ Ḥusayn, Mîr Ḥaydar Mu‘ammarî, the brothers Ṭayfûr and Dâ’î, Wâlîh and Malik of Qum, Ḥâtim of Kâshân, Sabrî Rûzbihânî, Ḥisâbî, the Qâdî Nûr-i-Iṣfahânî, Hâlâtî, Halâkî, Maẓhari of Cashmîr, and the Qazwînîs Furûghî, Tabkhi, Sultânî-Fuqara, Kâkâ and Sharmî; and amongst the singers and minstrels, Ḥâfîz Ahmad-i-Qazwînî, Ḥâfîz Jalâjîl-i-Bâkharzî, Ḥâfîz Muẓaffar-i-Qumî, Ḥâfîz Hâshim-i-Qazwînî, Mîrzá Muḥammad Kamâncha’î, Ustâd Muḥammad Mû’îmîn, Ustâd Shahsuwâr-i-Chahâr-târî, Ustâd Shams-i-Shaybûrghû’î-i-Warâmînî, Ustâd Ma’ṣum Kamâncha’î, Ustâd Sultân Muḥammad Ṭanbûrâ’î, Mîrzá Ḥusayn Ṭanbûrâ’î, Ustâd Sultân Muḥammad-i-Changi, and the Qeṣṣa-khwâns (story-tellers) and Shâhnâma-khwâns (reciters of the ‘Epic of Kings’), Ḥaydar, Muḥammad Khursând and Fathî, of whom the two last were brothers and natives of Iṣfahân. It is because the fame of the singers, minstrels and musicians who constitute this last class is in its nature so ephemeral that I have enumerated them in full, as indicating what forms of musical talent were popular at the court of Shâh ‘Abbâs.

That Shâh ‘Abbâs deserved the title of “the Great” there can be no question, and many of his severities have been palliated, if not excused, even by European historians like

1 Of these titles, Ḥâfîz denotes a Qurân-reciter or rhapsodist; Kamâncha’î a violinist; Chahâr-târî a player on the four-stringed lute; Shaybûrghû’î a trumpeter; Ṭanbûrâ’î a drummer; and Changî a harper.
Sir John Malcolm; but his cruel murder of his eldest son Šafí Mirzá and his blinding of another, Khudábanda Mirzá, and the tragical circumstances connected therewith, form a dark page in the records of his otherwise glorious reign, which ended with his death in the early part of A.D. 1629. He was succeeded by his grandson Sáam Mirzá, who, on his accession, took the name of his unfortunate father, and mounted the throne of Persia under the title of Sháh Šáfi I.

There is a well-known tradition of the Muhammadans that Solomon died standing, supported by the staff on which he leaned, and that his death remained unknown to the Jinn, who laboured at his command in the construction of the Temple, for a year, until the wood-worm ate through the staff and the body fell to the ground. This legend may well serve as a parable of the century of Safawí rule which followed the death of Sháh 'Abbás the Great, who, by his strength and wisdom, gave to Persia a period of peace and outward prosperity which for nearly a hundred years protected his successors from the results of their incompetence.

Four of his house succeeded him ere the catastrophe of the Afghán invasion in A.D. 1722 effected its downfall, to wit, his grandson Sháh Šafí above mentioned (A.D. 1629–1642); his great-grandson Sháh 'Abbás II (A.D. 1642–1666); his great-great-grandson Šafí, subsequently recrowned under the name of Sulaymán (A.D. 1666–1694); and his great-great-great-grandson Sháh Husayn (A.D. 1694–1722). Of Sháh Šafí, Krußinski says that "'tis certain there has not been in Persia a more cruel and bloody reign than his" and describes it as "one continued series

---

3 See the commentaries on Qurán xxxiv, 13.
of cruelties"; while Hanway\(^1\) observes that "he interfered so little in the affairs of the government that the Persians would have scarcely perceived they had a king, had it not been for the frequent instances of barbarity which stained his reign with blood"; and that "by his own folly he lost Kandahar and Babylon [Baghdád], two of the most important places on his frontiers." Than Sháh ‘Abbás II, on the other hand, according to Krusinski\(^2\), "next to Ismael I and Schah-Abas the Great, Persia never had a better king of the family of the Sophies." Although, like his father and predecessor, he was "too much subject to wine, and committed some acts of cruelty, yet, abating a few excursions, of which he might justly be reproached, he shewed himself, during the whole course of his reign, truly worthy of the crown he wore." "The farther he advanced into his reign," continues the Jesuit, "the more he was beloved by his subjects and the more feared by his neighbours. He loved justice, and had no mercy of the governors and other public officers who, abusing their authority, oppressed the people, of which several instances may be seen in Tavernier. He had a great and noble soul, was very kind to strangers, and openly protected the Christians, whom he would not have in the least molested for their religion, saying, 'That none but God was master of their consciences; that, for his own part, he was only governor of externals; and that all his subjects being equally members of the State, of what religion soever they were, he owed justice to them all alike.'" This reign, however, was the last flicker of greatness in the Šafáwi dynasty, for Sulaymán (to quote Krusinski\(^3\) once more), "degenerated very much from the virtues of his father Schah-Abas II, and made his reign remarkable only by a thousand instances of cruelty;
SHÁH ‘ABBÁS THE SECOND


To face p. 118
the bare mention of which is shocking. When he was in wine or in wrath nobody about him was sure of life or estate. He caused hands, feet, nose and ears to be cut off, eyes to be plucked out, and lives to be sacrificed upon the least whim that took him; and the man that was most in his favour at the beginning of a debauch was generally made a sacrifice at the end of it. This is the character given us of him by Sir John Chardin, who was in part a witness of what he relates as to this matter. Persons thought their lives in such danger whenever they approached him that a great lord of his Court said, when he came from his presence, that he always felt if his head was left standing upon his shoulders. It was under this prince that Persia began to decay. He thought so little like a king that when it was represented to him what danger he was in from the Turks, who, when they had made peace with the Christians, would come and attack his finest provinces if he did not put himself in a position to repel them, he answered very indifferently that he did not care, provided they left him Isfahán."

Sháh Husayn, the last Šafawí king (for his nominal successors Tahmásp II and ‘Abbás III were mere puppets in the hands of Nádir Sháh), was very unlike his predecessors, for his clemency was so excessive as "rendered him incapable of any severity, though never so moderate and necessary," while having one day accidentally wounded a duck with his pistol "he himself was as much terrified as if he had really committed murder, and made the same exclamation as is customary in Persia upon the shedding of human blood, by saying Ḵaṭiū oldum², i.e. 'I am polluted with blood'; and that very instant he caused two hundred tomons to be given to the poor as an atonement for what he thought a

---

² Turkish: قالو اولدم
great sin." He was something of a scholar and theologian, much under the influence of the Mullás, and so careful of his religious duties and so much attached to the reading of the Qur'án as to earn for himself the nick-name of Mullá or "Parson Husayn." Though at first a vehement prohibitionist, he was later induced by his grandmother, instigated by wine-loving courtiers and power-seeking eunuchs, to taste the forbidden liquor, which gradually obtained such a hold on him that "he would not by any means hear the mention of business, but left it all to the discretions of his ministers and eunuchs, who governed the kingdom just as they pleased, and took the greater license because they were very sensible they had nothing to fear from a prince who was so weak as to refer the very petitions he received to them without so much as reading them."

In such a work as this, which is concerned primarily with Persian literature and only secondarily with Persian history, and that only in broad outlines, save in the case of periods which witnessed some definite change in the national outlook, it is unnecessary to enter into a more detailed account of the later Şafawi period; the more so because several excellent accounts of the decline and fall of this remarkable dynasty, and of the state of Persia at that time, are readily accessible to the English reader. Of these the following may be especially commended.

Adam Olearius, Secretary to the Embassy sent by Frederick Duke of Holstein to Russia and Persia, was in the latter country from November, 1636 until February, 1638. His Voyages and Travels, originally written in Latin, were translated into French and thence, by John Davies, into English. I have used the English version published in 1669. Olearius, or Oelschläger, to give him his original

1 Krusinski, op. cit., p. 71.  2 Ibid., p. 76.
name, was a careful observer, and seems to have had a very fair knowledge both of Persian and Turkish, and his work is one of the best accounts of Persia in the seventeenth century.

Le Père Raphaël du Mans, Superior of the Capuchin Mission at ʻIṣfahán, was born in A.D. 1613, went to Persia in 1644, and died there in 1696. His *Estat de la Perse en 1660* in the learned edition of M. Schefer (Paris, 1890) gives a valuable if not very lively account of Persian institutions at a somewhat later date than Olearius.

The Chevalier Chardin was born in A.D. 1643, was twice in Persia for about six years each time (A.D. 1664–70 and 1671–77), and settled in London in 1681, where he died in 1713. Of the numerous editions of his *Voyages en Perse* I have used that of the learned Langlès (Paris, 1811) in ten volumes, of which the last contains (pp. 151–244) an admirable *Notice chronologique de la Perse, depuis les temps les plus reculés jusqu'à ce jour* by the editor, carried down to the time of Fath-ʻAlī Shāh Qajār.

Shaykh ʻAlī Ḥāzin, who traced his descent from the celebrated Shaykh Zāhid-i-Gilānī, the spiritual director of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu’d-Dīn, the ancestor of the Šafawī kings, was born in A.D. 1692 at ʻIṣfahán, where he spent the greater part of his time until he left Persia for India, never to return, in A.D. 1734. He wrote his *Memoirs* (published in the original Persian with an English translation by F. C. Belfour in 1830–1) in 1741, and died at Benares at a ripe old age in 1779. Though he was himself involved in the disaster which overtook ʻIṣfahán in 1722, he gives a much less vivid and moving picture of the sufferings of its inhabitants during the siege by the Afghāns than that drawn by Krusinski and other European observers. His portraits of contemporary statesmen, theo-
logians and poets, on the other hand, lend a special value to his book.

Father Krusinski, Procurator of the Jesuits at Isfahán for some eighteen or twenty years previous to A.D. 1722, compiled an admirable *History of the Revolution of Persia* from the beginning of the Šafaví dynasty down to A.D. 1727 in which the circumstances of the Afghán invasion and its consequences are narrated in the utmost detail.

Jonas Hanway, who was in Persia in A.D. 1743–4, wrote and published in 1753 in two volumes *An historical account of the British Trade over the Caspian Sea*, with a *Journal of Travels*, which he supplemented by two further volumes on the *Revolution of Persia*, the first containing *The Reign of Shah Sultan Hussein*, with the *Invasion of the Afghans*, and the reigns of Sultan Mir Maghmud and his successor Ashreff, and the second *The History of the celebrated usurper Nadir Kouli*, from his birth in 1687 till his death in 1747, to which are added some particulars of the unfortunate reign of his successor Adil Shah. For the earlier part of his history Hanway is much indebted to Krusinski, but for the later period (A.D. 1727–1750), including the whole account of Nádir Sháh, he is an independent and most valuable authority, while his narrative is throughout lively and agreeable to read.

These are only a few of the many writers and travellers whose works throw light on this period. I have mentioned them because they are the ones I have chiefly used, but a long and serviceable account of a much larger number will be found in Schefter's *Introduction* to his edition of le Père Raphaël du Mans mentioned above. The European writers are here, for reasons well set forth by Sir John Malcolm¹, more instructive and illuminating than the Persian historians, for

¹ *History of Persia* (London, 1815), vol. i, pp. 568–570.
whom, as he says, "we can hardly imagine an era more unfavourable. A period of nearly a century elapsed without the occurrence of any one political event of magnitude; and yet the extraordinary calm was productive of no advantage to Persia. The princes, nobles, and high officers of that kingdom were, it is true, exempt from the dangers of foreign or internal war; but their property and their lives were the sport of a succession of weak, cruel and debauched monarchs. The lower orders were exposed to fewer evils than the higher, but they became every day more unwarlike; and what they gained by that tranquillity which the State enjoyed lost almost all its value when they ceased to be able to defend it. This period was distinguished by no glorious achievements. No characters arose on which the historian could dwell with delight. The nation may be said to have existed on the reputation which it had before acquired till all it possessed was gone, and till it became, from the slow but certain progress of a gradual and vicious decay, incapable of one effort to avert that dreadful misery and ruin in which it was involved by the invasion of a few Afghan tribes, whose conquest of Persia affixed so indelible a disgrace upon that country that we cannot be surprised that its historians have shrunk from the painful and degrading narration."

Shaykh 'Alī Ḥazīn' takes precisely the same view. "Many ages having now elapsed," says he, "since civilization, tranquillity, and the accomplishment of all worldly blessings had attained a state of perfection in the beautiful provinces of Írān, these were become a fit object for the affliction of the malignant eye. The indolent King and princes, and the army that sought nothing but repose and for near a

1 P. 106 of Belfour's text = p. 116 of his translation.
2 The Evil Eye is called by the Arabs 'Aynād-Kamāl, "the Eye of Perfection," because anything perfect of its kind is especially exposed to its attacks.
hundred years had not drawn the sword from the scabbard, would not even think of quelling this disturbance, until Mahmud with a large army marched into the provinces of Kirmán and Yazd, and, having committed much plunder and devastation, proceeded on his route to Isfahán. This happened in the early part of the year 1134/1721."

Jonas Hanway speaks in a similar strain. "Persia never enjoyed," says he, "a more perfect tranquillity than in the beginning of the present [i.e. the eighteenth] century. The treaties she had concluded with her neighbours were perfectly observed and secured her against any foreign invasions; whilst the effeminacy and luxury of her inhabitants, the ordinary consequences of a long peace, left no room to apprehend any danger from the ambition of her own subjects. This monarchy, which had suffered so many revolutions in past ages; seemed to be settled on a solid foundation when the news of its subversion surprised the whole world. The authors of this amazing catastrophe were a people hardly known even to their own sovereigns, and have now acquired a reputation only by the fame of those nations which they brought under their subjection. These people...are comprised under the general denomination of Afghans."

The policy of Sháh 'Abbás the Great has been described above as wise and far-sighted, but this statement needs some qualification; for, while it greatly strengthened the power of the Crown, it undoubtedly conduced in the end to the weakening of the nation

1 The seizure of Qandahár by the revolted Afgáns led by Mír Wáys.
2 The son and successor of Mír Wáys.
3 Revolutions of Persia, vol. i, p. 22.
4 The Afgáns are, however, mentioned by the Arabian historian Ibnul-'Athír in several places, the earliest mention being under the year 366/976-7. They were very troublesome in S.E. Persia in the middle of the fourteenth century. See my Abridged Translation of the Taríkh-i-Guzída (E. J. W. Gibb Series, xiv, 2), pp. 161 et seqq.
and the degeneration of its rulers. Previous kings had been embarrassed chiefly by ambitious relatives, powerful tribal chiefs, and turbulent townsmen; and for all these things Sháh ʿAbbás set himself to provide remedies. Instead of allowing his sons to hold high administrative posts and take a prominent part in wars, he either blinded them or put them to death, or immured them in the haram, where, as Krusinski well explains, they lead a life of hardship and privation rather than of luxury and pleasure, while receiving a very imperfect education, and falling under the influence of the palace eunuchs, who ended by becoming the dominant power in the State. To his destruction of the great nobles and tribal chiefs, and his creation of the Sháh-sevens as a counterpoise to the seven tribes to whom his predecessors owed their power, allusion has already been made. A more extraordinary example of his application of the maxim Divide et impera was his deliberate creation in all the large towns of two artificially antagonized parties, named, according to Krusinski, Pelenk and Felenk, who indulged at intervals in the most sanguinary faction-fights, they being, as Krusinski puts it, “so opposite, and so much enemies one to the other, that people in different States, in arms against one another, do not push their aversion and enmity farther.” He adds (p. 92) that “though they fought without arms, because they were not supposed to make use of anything else but stones and sticks, it was with so much fury and bloodshed that the King was obliged to employ his guards to separate them with drawn swords; and hard it was to accomplish it, even with a method so effectual, insomuch that at Isphahan in 1714 they were under a necessity, before

2 See p. 106 supra.
3 Op. cit., p. 91. Hanway (vol. iii, p. 32 ad calc., and p. 33) calls them Pelenk and Felenk. At a later period they were known as Hâydarí and Nîmât.
they could separate the combatants, to put about three hundred to the sword on the spot."

Besides the eunuchs, there grew up and attained its full development under "Mullá Ḥusayn," the last unhappy though well-meaning occupant of the Safawí throne at Isfahán, another dominant class whose influence hardly made for either spiritual unity or national efficiency, namely the great ecclesiastics who culminated in the redoubtable Mullá Muhammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, the persecutor of Súfís and heretics, of whom we shall have to speak at some length in a future chapter. His admirers\(^1\) call attention to the fact that his death, which took place in 1111/1699–1700\(^2\), was followed in a short time by the troubles which culminated in the supreme disaster of 1722, and suggest that the disappearance of so saintly a personage left Persia exposed to perils which more critical minds may be inclined to ascribe in part to the narrow intolerance so largely fostered by him and his congeners.

\(^1\) *e.g.* the *Qisásu’l-Ulamá*, p. 216 of the lithographed edition of 1306/1888–9.

\(^2\) The chronogram is غم وحزن.
CHAPTER IV.


Only after much hesitation and several tentative experiments have I decided to endeavour to compress into one chapter two centuries of Persian history. Were this book primarily intended as a political history of Persia, such an attempt would be out of the question; for this long period witnessed the Afghán invasion and its devastations; the rise, meteoric career, and sudden eclipse of that amazing conqueror Nádir Sháh; the emergence in a world of chaos and misery of Karím Khán-i-Zand, generally accounted the best ruler whom Persia ever possessed, and of his gallant but unfortunate successor Luṭf-‘Alí Khán; the establishment of the still reigning Qájár dynasty, and within that period the occurrence, amidst many other important events, of two remarkable phenomena (the rise and growth of the Bábí religious movement since 1844, and the political Revolution of 1906) which profoundly affected the intellectual life and literary development of Persia, each one of which might well form the subject of a lengthy monograph rather than a chapter. This book, however, is written not from the political but from the literary point of view, and the historical part of it is only ancillary, and might have been omitted entirely if a knowledge of even the general outlines of Oriental history formed part of the mental equipment of most educated Europeans. From this point of view much fuller treatment is required for periods of transition, or of great intellectual activity, than for periods of unproductive strife not so much of rival ideas and beliefs as of conflicting ambitions. To the latter category belongs the greater part
of the two centuries which must now engage our attention. During this period the literary language (which, indeed, had become fixed at any rate in the fourteenth century, so that the odes of Ḥāfīz, save for their incomparable beauty, might have been written but yesterday) underwent no noticeable change; few fresh forms of literary expression were developed until the middle of the nineteenth century; and few fresh ideas arose to modify the Shi'a frenzy of Ṣafawī times until the rise of the Bābī doctrine in A.D. 1844, of which, however, the literary effects were less considerable than those of the Revolution of 1906. Moreover excellent and detailed accounts of the Afghān invasion, of Nādir Shāh, and of the earlier Qājār period already exist in English, several of which have been mentioned at the end of the preceding chapter; these could hardly be bettered, and would only be marred by such abridgment as would be necessary to fit them into the framework of this book. Hence I have deemed it best to limit myself in this chapter to a brief outline of the more salient events of these last two centuries.

**THE AFGHĀN INVASION (A.D. 1722–1730).**

Unlike the Arabs, Mongols, Tartars and Turks, who were instrumental in effecting previous subjections of Persia by foreign arms, the Afghāns are, apparently, an Êrānian and therefore a kindred race, though differing materially in character from the Persians. The Persian language is widely spoken in their wild and mountainous country, while in their own peculiar idiom, the Pushtō, James Darmesteter saw the principal survivor of the language of the Avesta, the scripture of the Zoroastrians. They are a much fiercer, harder, and more warlike people than the Persians, less refined and ingenious, and

---

1 See pp. 114–118 supra.
fanatical Sunnis, a fact sufficient in itself to explain the intense antagonism which existed between the two nations, and enabled the Afgháns to give to their invasion of Persia the colour of a religious war.

In A.D. 1707 Qandahár, a constant bone of contention between the Safawí kings of Persia and the “Great Moghuls” of India, was in the possession of the former, and was governed in a very autocratic manner by a Georgian noble named Gurgín Khán. Mír Ways, an Afghán chief whose influence with his fellow-countrymen made him an object of suspicion, was by his orders banished to Isfahán as a state prisoner. There, however, he seems to have enjoyed a considerable amount of liberty and to have been freely admitted to the court of Sháh Husayn. Endowed with considerable perspicacity and a great talent for intrigue, he soon formed a pretty clear idea of the factions whose rivalries were preparing the ruin of the country, and with equal caution and cunning set himself to fan the suspicions to which every great Persian general or provincial governor was exposed. This was the easier in the case of one who, being by birth a Christian and a Georgian of noble family, might, without gross improbability, be suspected of thinking more of the restoration of his own and his country’s fortunes than of the maintenance of the Persian Empire, though there seems in fact no reason to suspect him of any disloyalty.

Having sown this seed of suspicion and completely ingratiated himself with the Persian Court, Mír Ways sought and obtained permission to perform the pilgrimage to Mecca. While there he took another important step for the furtherance of his designs. He sought from the leading ecclesiastical authorities a *fatwá*, or legal opinion, as to whether the orthodox Sunni subjects of a heretical (i.e. Shí’á) Muslim ruler were bound to obey him, or were justified, if occasion
arose, in resisting him, if necessary by force of arms. The decision, which supported the latter alternative and so accorded with his designs, he carried back with him to Isfahán and subsequently to Qandahár, whither he was permitted to return, with strong recommendations to Gurgín Khán, in 1709. There he soon organized a conspiracy against the latter, and, taking advantage of the temporary absence of a large part of the Persian garrison on some expedition in the neighbourhood, he and his followers fell on the remainder when they were off their guard, killed the greater number of them, including Gurgín Khán, and took possession of the city. It was at this juncture that the fatwá obtained at Mecca proved so useful to Mír Ways, for by it he was able to overcome the scruples of the more faint-hearted of his followers, who were at first inclined to shrink from a definite repudiation of Persian suzerainty, but who now united with the more hot-headed of their countrymen in electing Mír Ways "Prince of Qandahár and General of the national troops."

Several half-hearted attempts to subdue the rebellious city having failed, the Persian Government despatched Khusraw Khán, nephew of the late Gurgín Khán, with an army of 30,000 men to effect its subjugation, but in spite of an initial success, which led the Afghán to offer to surrender on terms, his uncompromising attitude impelled them to make a fresh desperate effort, resulting in the complete defeat of the Persian army (of whom only some 700 escaped) and the death of their general. Two years later, in A.D. 1713, another Persian army commanded by Rustam Khán was also defeated by the rebels, who thus secured possession of the whole province of Qandahár.

Mír Ways, having thus in five or six years laid the foundations of the Afghán power, died in A.D. 1715, and was

1 Krusinski, p. 187.
succeeded by his brother Mír ‘Abdu’lláh, whose disposition to accept, under certain conditions, Persian suzerainty led to his murder by his nephew Mír Mahmúd, son of Mír Ways, who was forthwith proclaimed king. The weakness of the Persian government thus becoming apparent, others were led to follow the example of the Afghán of Qandahár. Amongst these were the Abdáli Afgháns of Herát, the Uzbeks of Transoxiana, the Kurds, the Lazgís and the Arabs of Bahrayn, and though the Persian General Šáfi-qull Khán with 30,000 troops succeeded in defeating an Uzbek army of 12,000, he was immediately afterwards defeated by the Abdáli Afgháns.

In A.D. 1720 Mír Mahmúd assumed the aggressive, crossed the deserts of Sístán, and attacked and occupied Kirmán, whence, however, he was expelled four months later by the Persian General Luṭf-‘Álí Khán, who, after this victory, proceeded to Shiráz and began to organize “the best-appointed army that had been seen in Persia for many years” with a view to crushing the Afgháns and retaking Qandahár. Unfortunately before he had accomplished this his position was undermined by one of those Court intrigues which were so rapidly destroying the Persian Empire, and he was deprived of his command and brought as a prisoner to Isfahán, while the army which he had collected and disciplined with such care rapidly melted away, and the spirits of the Afgháns were proportionately revived. The capture and sack of Shamákhí by the Lazgís and the appearance of strange portents in the sky combined still further to discourage the Persians, while the ordering of public mourning and repentance by Sháh Husayn tended only to accentuate the general depression.

The fatal year 1722 began with the second siege and
capture of Kirmán by Mír Mahmúd. The most remarkable incident connected with this was that he was joined by a number of "gubres" (gabr)\(^1\), the small remnant of the Persians who still profess the ancient religion of Zoroaster, and who exist in any number only in the cities of Kirmán and Yazd and the intervening region of Rafsinján with its chief town Bahrámábád. Why these people should have attached themselves to foreign Muslims to make war on their Muslim compatriots it is hard to understand, unless the fanaticism of the Shi'a divines was responsible for driving them into this extraordinary course. Still more remarkable, if true, is Hanway's statement that they provided Mír Mahmúd with one of his best generals, who, though he bore the Muhammadan name of Naṣru'lláh, was, according to the same authority\(^2\), "a worshipper of fire, since there were two priests hired by the Sultan who kept the sacred flame near his tomb."

From Kirmán Mír Mahmúd marched by way of Yazd, which he attempted but failed to take by storm, to Iṣfahán, having scornfully refused an offer of 15,000 tumáns\(^3\) to induce him to turn back, and finally pitched his camp at Guñábd, distant some three leagues from the Šafawi capital. After much dispute and diversity of opinions, the Persian army marched out of Iṣfahán to engage the Afghánis on March 7th and on the following day, largely through the treachery of the Wálí of 'Arabistán, suffered a disastrous defeat.

The battle of Guñábd, fought between the Persians and the Afghánis on Sunday, March 8, 1722, decided the fate of the Šafawi dynasty as surely as did the battle of Qádisiyya in A.D. 635 that of the Sásánians, or the conflict between the Caliph's troops and

---

\(^{1}\) Hanway's *Revolution of Persia*, vol. i, p. 99.  
\(^{2}\) Ibid., p. 186.  
\(^{3}\) At that time, according to Hanway (loc. cit., p. 100), equivalent to £37,500.
the Mongols outside Baghda'd in A.D. 1258 that of the 
'Abbásids. Between these three battles, moreover, there 
was a remarkable point of similarity in the 
splendour and apparent strength of the defenders 
and the squalor and seeming weakness of their 
assailants. The similarity in this respect between the battles 
of Qádisiyá and Baghda'd has been noticed in a well-known 
passage of the Kitábú'l-Fakhri, to which the following 
account of the battle of Gurlnábd by Hanway forms a 
remarkable parallel:

"The sun had just appeared on the horizon when the armies began to observe each other with that curiosity so natural on these dreadful occasions. The Persian army just come out of the capital, being composed of whatever was most brilliant at court, seemed as if it had been formed rather to make a show than to fight. The riches and variety of their arms and vestments, the beauty of their horses, the gold and precious stones with which some of their harnesses were covered, and the richness of their tents contributed to render the Persian camp very pompous and magnificent.

"On the other side there was a much smaller body of soldiers, disfigured with fatigue and the scorching heat of the sun. Their clothes were so ragged and torn in so long a march that they were scarce sufficient to cover them from the weather, and, their horses being adorned with only leather and brass, there was nothing glittering about them but their spears and sabres."

These three great and decisive battles resembled one another in several respects. In each case a great historic dynasty, the extent of whose inward decay was masked by its external splendour, and apparent, because hitherto unchallenged, strength and supremacy, collapsed before the fierce onslaught of a hardy and warlike folk, hitherto hardly known, or accounted as little better than barbarians; and in each case the more or less prolonged process of degene-

---

1 See vol. ii of my Lit. Hist., p. 462, for the translation, and pp. 97-8 of Ahlwardt's edition for the text of this passage.
2 Revolutions of Persia (London, 1753), vol. i, pp. 104-5.
ration which rendered the final catastrophe not only possible but inevitable is fairly obvious to subsequent historians, even if its extent and significance were not realized until the fatal touchstone was applied. The results, however, differed widely according to the character and abilities of the assailants. The Arab invaders of the seventh century established an Empire which endured for six centuries and effected a profound and permanent change in the lands and peoples whom they brought under their sway. The Mongol conquests were even more extensive, reaching as they did from China and Thibet to Germany and Russia, but the cohesion and duration of the vast Empire which they created were far inferior. The Afghán conquest, with which we are now concerned, was little more than an extensive and destructive raid, resulting in some seventy-five years of anarchy (A.D. 1722–1795), illuminated by the meteoric career of that Napoleon of Persia, Nádir Sháh, and ending in the establishment of the actually reigning dynasty of the Qájárs. The actual domination of the Afgháns over Persia only endured for eight or nine years.¹

Seven months elapsed after the battle of Gúlnábád before the final pitiful surrender, with every circumstance of humiliation, of the unhappy Sháh Husayn. In that battle the Persians are said to have lost all their artillery, baggage and treasure, as well as some 15,000 out of a total of 50,000 men. On March 19 Mír Mahmúd occupied the Sháh’s beloved palace and pleasure-grounds of Farahábád, situated only three miles from Isfahán, which henceforth served as his headquarters. Two days later the Afgháns, having occupied the Armenian suburb of Júlfá, where they levied a tribute of money and young girls, attempted to take Isfahán by

¹ Mahmúd the Afghán laid siege to Kírmán in January, 1722, and captured Isfahán in October of the same year. His cousin Ashraf, who succeeded him, was killed by Balúchís in 1730.
storm, but, having twice failed (on March 19 and 21), sat down to blockade the city. Three months later Prince Ṭahmāsp Mírzá, who had been nominated to succeed his father, effected his escape from the beleaguered city to Qazwín, where he attempted, with but small success, to raise an army for the relief of the capital.

Soon after this, famine began to press heavily on the people, who clamoured to be led against the besiegers, but their desperate sortie failed owing to the renewed treachery of Wálí of ‘Arabistán, who was throughout these dark days the evil genius of the unhappy king. The Persian court, indeed, seemed to have been stricken with a kind of folly which was equally ready to repose confidence in traitors and to mistrust and degrade or dismiss brave and patriotic officers like Lutf-‘Alí Khán. For three or four months before the end the sufferings of the people from famine were terrible: they were finally reduced to eating dogs, cats, and even the corpses of their dead, and perished in great numbers. The pitiful details may be found in the pages of Krusinski, Hanway, and the contemporary accounts written by certain agents of the Dutch East India Company then resident at Isfahán, of which the original texts have been included by H. Dunlop in his fine work on Persia (Persie, Haarlem, 1912, pp. 242–257).

At the end of September, 1722, Sháh Ḩusayn offered to surrender himself and his capital to the Afghán invader, but Mír Maḥmúd, in order still further to reduce by famine the numbers and spirit of the besieged, dragged out the negotiations for another three or four weeks, so that it was not until October 21 that Sháh Husayn repaired on foot to Farahábád, once his favourite residence, now the headquarters of his ruthless foe, to surrender the crown which Mír Maḥmúd assumed six days later. When news of his father’s abdication reached

B. P. L.
Thámásp Mírzá at Qazwín he caused himself to be proclaimed king, but was driven out of that city on December 20 by the Afghán general Amánu’lláh Khán, who on his way thither received the submission of Qum and Káshán.

Thámásp was now reduced to the miserable expedient of invoking the help of Russia and Turkey, who had already fixed covetous eyes on the apparently moribund Persian kingdom and had occupied Gílán and Tiflis respectively. On September 23, 1723, a treaty was signed whereby, in return for the expulsion of the Afgháns and the restoration of his authority, Thámásp undertook to cede to Russia the Caspian provinces of Gílán, Mázandarán and Gurgán, and the towns of Bákú, Darband and their dependencies. Soon afterwards the Turks took Erivan, Nakhjuwán, Khúy and Hamadán, but were repulsed from Tabríz. On July 8, 1724, an agreement for the partition of Persia was signed between Russia and Turkey at Constantinople.

Meanwhile Mír Maḥmúd was continuing his cruelties at Ísfahán. In A.D. 1723 he put to death in cold blood some three hundred of the nobles and chief citizens, and followed up this bloody deed with the murder of about two hundred children of their families. He also killed some three thousand of the deposed Sháh’s body-guard, together with many other persons whose sentiments he mistrusted or whose influence he feared. In the following year (A.D. 1724) the Afghán general Zabar-dast Khán succeeded, where his predecessor Naṣrú’lláh had failed and fallen, in taking Shíráz; and towards the end of the year Mír Maḥmúd prepared to attack Yazd, which had hitherto remained unsubdued. The Muslim inhabitants of that town, fearing that the numerous Zoroastrians dwelling

---

1 For the contents of the six articles, see Hanway’s Revolutions of Persia, i, pp. 200–1.
2 See p. 126 supra.
in it might follow the example of their co-religionists of Kirmán and join the Afgháns, killed a great number of them.

About this time Mír Mahmúd, alarmed at the increasing insubordination of his cousin Ashraf, and, we may hope, tormented by an uneasy conscience on account of his cruelties, betook himself to a severe course of self-discipline and mortification, which did but increase his melancholy and distemper, so that on February 7, 1725, he murdered all the surviving members of the royal family with the exception of the deposed Sháh Husayn and two of his younger children. Thereafter his disorder rapidly increased, until he himself was murdered on April 22 by his cousin Ashraf, who was thereupon proclaimed king. Mír Mahmúd was at the time of his death only twenty-seven years of age, and is described as “middle-sized and clumsy; his neck was so short that his head seemed to grow to his shoulders; he had a broad face and flat nose, and his beard was thin and of a red colour; his looks were wild and his countenance austere and disagreeable; his eyes, which were blue and a little squinting, were generally downcast, like a man absorbed in deep thought.”

The death of Peter the Great about this period made Russia slightly less dangerous as a neighbour, but the Turks continued to press forwards and on August 3, 1725, succeeded at last in capturing Tabríz. They even advanced to within three days’ march of Isfahán, but turned back before reaching it. They subsequently (A.D. 1726) took Qazwín and Marágha, but were defeated by Ashraf near Kirmánsháh. Negotiations for peace were meanwhile in progress at Constantinople, whither Ashraf had sent an ambassador named ‘Abdu’l-‘Azíz Khán, whose arrogant proposal that his master should be Caliph of the East and the Ottoman
Sultán Caliph of the West caused great umbrage to the Porte. The war, however, was very unpopular with the Turkish soldiers and people, who failed to see why they should fight fellow-Sunnís in order to restore a heretical Shi'á dynasty, though the 'ulamá were induced to give a fatwá in favour of this course, on the ground that a divided Caliphate was incompatible with the dignity or safety of Islám. Finally, however, a treaty of peace was concluded and signed at Hamadán in September, 1727.

This danger had hardly been averted when a far greater one, destined in a short time to prove fatal to the Afgháns, presented itself in the person of Nádir-qlí, subsequently known to fame as Nádir Sháh, one of the most remarkable and ruthless military geniuses ever produced by Persia. Hitherto, though he was now about forty years of age, little had been heard of him; but this year, issuing forth from his stronghold, that wonderful natural fastness named after him Kalát-i-Nádirl, he defeated an Afghán force and took possession of Níshápúr in the name of Sháh Ŵáhmásp II, at that time precariously established at Faraẖábád in Mázandarán, and supported with a certain condescending arrogance by the Qájár chief Fath-\'Alí Khán. After this success Nádir paid a visit to the fugitive Sháh, and, after insinuating himself into his favour, contrived the assassination of the Qájár, against whom he had succeeded in arousing the Sháh's suspicions. On May 15 of the following year (1728) the Sháh, accompanied by Nádir (or Ŵáhmásp-qlí, "the slave of Ŵáhmásp," to give him the name which

---

1 For its provisions, contained in nine articles, see Hanway, op. cit., i, pp. 254-5.

2 This fortress, which is jealously guarded, Lord Curzon attempted but failed to penetrate. See his Persia, vol. i, pp. 125–140, especially the bird's-eye view on p. 134.
he temporarily assumed about this time), made a solemn entry into Nishápúr, amidst the rejoicings of the inhabitants, and shortly afterwards occupied Mashhad and Herát. He also despatched an ambassador to Constantinople, whence in return a certain Sulaymán Esendi was sent as envoy to Persia.

Meanwhile Ashraf, having taken Yazd and Kirmán, marched into Khurásán with an army of thirty thousand men to give battle to Tahmásp, but he was completely defeated by Nádir on October 2 at Dámghán. Another decisive battle was fought in the following year at Múrchakhúr near Isfahán. The Afgháns were again defeated and evacuated Isfahán to the number of twelve thousand men, but before quitting the city he had ruined Ashraf murdered the unfortunate ex-Sháh Husayn, and carried off most of the ladies of the royal family and the King's treasure. When Tahmásp II entered Isfahán on December 9 he found only his old mother, who had escaped deportation by disguising herself as a servant, and was moved to tears at the desolation and desecration which met his eyes at every turn. Nádir, having finally induced Tahmásp to empower him to levy taxes on his own authority, marched southwards in pursuit of the retiring Afgháns, whom he overtook and again defeated near Persepolis, Ashraf fled from Shíráz towards his own country, but cold, hunger and the unrelenting hostility of the inhabitants of the regions which he had to traverse dissipated his forces and compelled him to abandon his captives and his treasure, and he was finally killed by a party of Balúch tribesmen. Thus ended the disastrous period of Afghán dominion in Persia in A.D. 1730, having lasted eight years.
THE CAREER OF NÁDIR
UNTIL HIS ASSASSINATION IN A.D. 1747.

Although it was not until A.D. 1736 that Nádир deemed it expedient to take the title of King, he became from A.D. 1730 onwards the de facto ruler of Persia. Of his humble origin and early struggles it is unnecessary to speak here; they will be found narrated as fully as the circumstances permit in the pages of Hanway, Malcolm and other historians of Persia. Sháh Ṭahmásp was from the first but a roi fainéant, and his only serious attempt to achieve anything by himself, when he took the field against the Turks in A.D. 1731, resulted in a disastrous failure, for he lost both Tabríz and Hamadán, and in January, 1732, concluded a most unfavourable peace, whereby he ceded Georgia and Armenia to Turkey on condition that she should aid him to expel the Russians from Gilán, Shírwán and Darband. Nádир, greatly incensed, came to Isfahán in August, 1732, and, having by a stratagem seized and imprisoned Ṭahmásp, proclaimed his infant son (then only six months old) as king under the title of Sháh ‘Abbás III, and at once sent a threatening letter to Ahmad Páshá of Baghdád, which he followed up by a declaration of war in October.

In April of the following year (1733) Nádир appeared before Baghdád, having already retaken Kirmáňsháh, with an army of 80,000 men, but suffered a defeat on July 18, and retired to Hamadán to recruit and recuperate his troops. Returning to the attack in the autumn he defeated the Turks on October 26 in a great battle wherein the gallant and noble-minded Topál ‘Osmán (‘Uthmán) was slain. Having crushed a revolt in favour of the deposed Sháh Ṭahmásp in Fárs, he invaded Georgia in 1734, took Tíflís, Ganja and Shamákhí,
and obtained from Russia the retrocession of Gilán, Shír-wán, Darband, Bákú and Rasht. In the following year (1735) he again defeated the Turks near Erivan, and captured that city and Erzeroum.

On the following Nawrúz, or Persian New Year's day (March 21, 1736), Nádir announced to the assembled army and deputies of the nation the death of the infant Sháh 'Abbás III and invited them to decide within three days whether they would restore his father, the deposed Sháh Táhámás-p, or elect a new king. His own desire, which coincided with that of most of his officers and soldiers, was evident, and, the unwilling minority being overawed, the crown of Persia was unanimously offered to him. He agreed to accept it on three conditions, namely: (1) that it should be made hereditary in his family; (2) that there should be no talk of a restoration of the Șafawís, and that no one should aid, comfort, or harbour any member of that family who might aspire to the throne; and (3) that the cursing of the first three Caliphs, the mourning for the death of the Imám Ḥusayn, and other distinctive practices of the Shí'ís should be abandoned. This last condition was the most distasteful to the Persians, and the chief ecclesiastical authority, being asked his opinion, had the courage to denounce it as "derogatory to the welfare of the true believers"—a courage which cost him his life, for he was immediately strangled by Nádir's orders. Not content with this, Nádir, on his arrival at Qazwín, confiscated the religious endowments (awqáf) for the expenses of his army, to whom, he said, Persia owed more than to her hierarchy. Towards the end of the year he concluded a favourable treaty with Turkey, by which Persia recovered all her lost provinces; and in December he set out at the head of 100,000 men against Afgániştán and India, leaving his son Rídá-qu'l as regent.

The next two years (A.D. 1737–9) witnessed Nádir Sháh's
greatest military achievement, the invasion of India, capture
of Lahore and Delhi, and return home with
the enormous spoils in money and kind which
he extracted from the unfortunate Indians, and
which Hanway\(^1\) estimates at £87,500,000. Having taken
Qandahár, Kábul and Peshawur in 1738, he crossed the
Indus early in the following year, captured Lahore, and
in February, 1739, utterly defeated the Indian army of
Muḥammad Sháh, two hundred thousand strong, on the
plains of Karnál. Delhi was peaceably occupied, but a few
days later a riot occurred in which some of Nádīr’s soldiers
were killed, and he avenged their blood by a general
massacre of the inhabitants which lasted from 8 a.m. until
3 p.m., and in which 110,000 persons perished. He never
dreamed of holding India, and, having extorted the enormous
indemnity mentioned above and left the unhappy Muḥam-
dmad Sháh in possession of his throne, with a threat that he
would return again if necessary, he began his homeward
march in May, turning aside to chastise the predatory
Uzbeks of Khiva and Bukhárá, which latter town he
captured on November 28, 1739.

During the absence of Nádīr Sháh his son Ríḍá-qulí had
put to death the unfortunate Táhmásp and most of his
family at Sabzawár, and began to show signs of
desiring to retain the powers with which he had
been temporarily invested by his father. Being
suspected of instigating an unsuccessful attempt on Nádīr’s
life, he was deprived of his eyesight, but with this cruel act
the wonderful good fortune which had hitherto accompanied
Nádīr began to desert him. His increasing
cruelty, tyranny, avarice and extortion, but
most of all, perhaps, his attempt to impose on

\(^1\) Revolutions of Persia, ii, p. 188. The loss to India he puts at one
hundred and twenty million pounds and the number of those slain at
200,000 (Ibid., p. 197).
his Persian subjects the Sunnî doctrine, made him daily more detested. His innovations included the production of Persian translations of the Qur’ân and the Gospels. The latter, on which several Christians were employed, he caused to be read aloud to him at Tihrān, while he commented on it with derision, and hinted that when he found leisure he might (perhaps after the model of Akbar) produce a new religion of his own which should supplant alike Judaism, Christianity and Islām. His military projects, moreover, began to miscarry; his campaign against the Lazgīs in A.D. 1741–2 did not prosper, and in the war with Turkey in which he became involved in 1743 he was unsuccessful in his attempt to take Mosul (Mawsil). Revolts which broke out in Fārs and Shīrwān were only suppressed with difficulty after much bloodshed. However he put down a rebellion of the Qājārs at Astarābād in A.D. 1744, defeated the Turks in a great battle near Erivan in August, 1745, and concluded a satisfactory peace with them in 1746. In the following year Nādīr Shāh visited Kirmān, which suffered much from his cruelties and exactions, and thence proceeded to Mashhad, where he arrived at the end of May, 1747. Here he conceived the abominable plan of killing all his Persian officers and soldiers (the bulk of his army being Turkmāns and Uzbeks and consequently Sunnīs), but this project was made known by a Georgian slave to some of the Persian officers, who thereupon decided, in the picturesque Persian phrase, “to breakfast off him ere he should sup off them.” A certain Șāliḥ Beg, aided by four trusty men, undertook the task, and, entering his tent


2 According to the Tārīkh-i-bād Nādirīyya (ed. Oskar Mann, Ley-den, 1891, pp. 15 et seqq.), which gives a very full account of the matter, the four chief conspirators, Muḥammad Khān Qājār, Mūsā Beg Afsār, Qoja Beg Gündüzlū and Muḥammad Șāliḥ Khān, were accompanied by seventy young volunteers, but only four had the courage to enter
by night, rid their country of one who, though he first appeared as its deliverer from the Afghán yoke, now bade fair to crush it beneath a yoke yet more intolerable. At the time of his death Nádir Sháh was sixty-one years of age and had reigned eleven years and three months (A.D. 1736–47). He was succeeded by his nephew 'Alí-qi'llí Khán, who assumed the crown under the title of 'Ádil Sháh, but was defeated and slain by his brother Ibráhím in the following year. He in turn was killed a year later (A.D. 1749) by the partisans of Nádir's grandson Sháhrukh, the son of the unfortunate RIDÁ-qi'llí and a Safawi princess, the daughter of Sháh Husayn, who now succeeded to the throne. Youth, beauty and a character at once amiable and humane did not, however, secure him against misfortune, and he was shortly after his accession deposed and blinded by a certain Sayyid Muhammad, a grandson on the mother's side of the Safawi Sháh Sulaymán II. He in turn soon fell a victim to the universal violence and lawlessness which now prevailed in Persia, and Sháhrukh was restored to the throne, but again deposed and again restored to exercise a nominal rule at Mashhad over the province of Khurásán, which Ahmad Khán Abdálí (afterwards famous as Ahmad Sháh Durrání, the founder of the modern kingdom of Afghánistán) desired, before leaving Persia, to erect into a buffer state between that country and his own. The remainder of the blind Sháhrukh's long reign was uneventful, and he survived until A.D. 1796, having reigned nearly fifty years.

Nádir's tent. The assassination took place on Sunday, 11 Jumáda ii, 1160 (June 20, 1747).

"The history of Persia," says Sir John Malcolm, "from the death of Nádir Sháh till the elevation of Áqá Muhammad Khán, the founder of the reigning family, presents to our attention no one striking feature except the life of Karím Khán-i-Zand. The happy reign of this excellent prince, as contrasted with those who preceded and followed him, affords to the historian of Persia that description of mixed pleasure and repose which a traveller enjoys who arrives at a beautiful and fertile valley in the midst of an arduous journey over barren and rugged wastes. It is pleasing to recount the actions of a chief who, though born in an inferior rank, obtained power without crime, and who exercised it with a moderation that was, in the times in which he lived, as singular as his humanity and justice."

Karím Khán, however, who fixed his capital at Shíráz, which he did so much to beautify and where he is still gratefully remembered, never ruled over the whole of Persia and never assumed the title of Sháh, but remained content with that of Waktí, or Regent. Originally he and a Bakhtiyári chief named 'Alí Mardán Khán were the joint regents of "a real or pretended grandson of Sháh Husayn" in whose name they seized Isfahán, where they placed him on the throne. Before long they fell out; 'Alí Mardán Khán was killed; and Karím Khán became the de facto ruler of Southern Persia. His rivals were the Afghán chief Ázád in Ádharbáyján and the North-west, and in the Caspian provinces Muhammad Hasan the Qájár, son of that Fath-Álí Khán who was murdered by Nádir at the outset of his career, and father

2 R. G. Watson's *History of Persia*, p. 44.
of Áqá Muḥammad Khán, the actual founder of the Qájár dynasty.

Ázád was the first to be eliminated from this triangular contest. He defeated Karím Khán and compelled him to evacuate not only Isfahán but Shíráz, but, rashly pursuing him through the narrow defile of Kamárij, fell into an ambush, lost most of his followers, and finally, having sought refuge first with the Páshá of Baghádád and then with Heraclius, Prince of Georgia, "threw himself upon the generosity of Karím Khán, who received him with kindness, promoted him to the first rank among his nobles, and treated him with so generous a confidence that he soon converted this dangerous rival into an attached friend."

In A.D. 1757, about four years after the battle of Kamárij, Karím Khán had to face a fierce onslaught by his other rival, Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán the Qájár, who, after a striking initial success, was finally driven back into Mázandarán, where he was eventually defeated and killed in A.D. 1760 by Karím Khán's general Shaykḥ 'Alí Khán. From this time until his death in the spring of 1779 Karím Khán practically ruled over the whole of Persia except Khurásán, where the blind and harmless Sháhrukh exercised a nominal sovereignty. The chief military exploit of his reign was the capture of Basra from the Turks in 1776, effected by his brother Šádiq, who continued to administer it until Karím's death, when he relinquished it to the Turks in order to take part in the fratricidal struggle for the Persian crown.

1 Sir John Malcolm's History of Persia, vol. ii, p. 125. The two preceding pages contain a graphic account of the battle of Kamárij, as narrated to the author on the spot by persons who had themselves taken part in it.

Mírzá ‘Aqíl
Ibráhím Khán
Mírzá Mahdí
Mírzá Ja’fár Wāzīr
Add. 24904 (Brit. Mus.), inside cover

Karim Khán-i-Zand

Isma‘íl Khán
Ázád Khán Afghán

To face p. 140
“The most important, if we consider its ultimate consequences, of all the events which occurred at the death of Karím Khá́n, was the flight of Áqá Muḥam-mad Khá́n Qájár, who had been for many years a prisoner at large in the city of Shíráz.” As a child he had suffered castration by the cruel command of Nádir’s nephew ‘Ádil Sháh, on account of which the title of Ághá or Áqá, generally given to eunuchs, was added to his name. After the defeat and death of his father Muhammad Hisán Khá́n the Qájár in A.D. 1757, he fell into the hands of Karím Khá́n, who interned him in Shíráz, but otherwise treated him kindly and even generously, so far as was compatible with his safe custody. He was even allowed to gratify his passion for the chase in the country round Shíráz on condition of re-entering the city before the gates were closed at night-fall. Returning to the city on the evening of Şafar 12, 1193 (March 1, 1779), and learning through his sister, who was an inmate of the Palace, that Karím Khá́n lay at the point of death, he suffered a favourite hawk to escape, and made its pursuit an excuse for spending the night in the plain. Next morning, two hours after dawn, having learned that Karím Khá́n had breathed his last, he took advantage of the prevailing confusion to make his escape northwards, and travelled so swiftly that he reached Isfahán on the third day, and thence made his way into Mázandarán, which thenceforth became the base of those operations by which, fifteen years later, he accomplished the final overthrow of the Zand dynasty and won for his own house that supremacy over Persia which they hold to this day.

It is unnecessary to describe here the fratricidal wars

2 Ibid., p. 263.
3 Ta’rikh-i-Zandiyá, p. 6, l. 1.
4 Sir John Malcolm’s History, ii, p. 158 ad calc.
which during the next ten years (A.D. 1779–89) sapped the power of the Zand dynasty while Aqá Muḥammad Kháń, with incredible self-control and political sagacity, was uniting and consolidating the Qájár power. Within the year which witnessed Karím Kháń’s death four of his house had successively mounted his throne, to wit, his son Abu’l-Fath, his nephew ‘Alí Murád, his son Muḥammad ‘Alí, and his brother Šádiq. The last-named, together with all his sons except Ja‘far, was put to death in March, 1782, by ‘Alí Murád, who thus regained the throne, but died at Múrchakhur near Isfahán in January, 1785, and was succeeded by Ja‘far, the date of whose accession is commemorated in the following ingenious chronogram by Hájjí Sulaymán of Kháshán called Šabáḥí:

پیمود که همست مبداء تاريخ عشرت دوران
نوشت طالق صاحی زقصر سلطانی
علي مراد برون شد نست جعفر خان

“To record the year of the blessed and auspicious accession
Which is the initial date of the mirth of the age,
The pen of Šabáḥí wrote: ‘From the Royal Palace
‘Alí Murád went forth, and Ja‘far Kháń sat’ [in his place].”

The letters composing the words Qašr-i-Sultání yield the number 550; from this we subtract (355) equivalent to ‘Alí Murád, which gives us 195; to this we add the number equivalent to Ja‘far Kháń (1004), which finally gives us the correct date A.H. 1199 (A.D. 1785).

Ja‘far Kháń was murdered on 25 Rabí’ii, 1203 (January 23, 1789), and was succeeded by his son, the gallant and unfortunate Lutf-‘Alí Kháń, of whose personality Sir Harford Jones Brydges has given so attractive an account. “The reader, I hope,” he

1 Ta’rikh-i-Zandiyya, pp. 24–25.
KARÍM KHÁN-I-ZÁND

Or. 4938 (Brit. Mus.), No. 1

To face p. 142
says, “will pardon me if I treat the reign and misfortunes of the noble Lutf-‘Ali more in detail than usual. I received great kindness and attention from him when he filled the throne; and under a miserable tent I had the honour of sitting on the same horse-cloth with him when a fugitive! His virtues endeared him to his subjects; and the bravery, constancy, courage and ability which he manifested under his misfortunes are the theme of poems and ballads which it is not improbable will last as long as the Persian language itself. He was manly, amiable, affable under prosperity and, under calamities as great and as severe as human nature can suffer, he was dignified and cool and determined. That so noble a being, that a prince the hope and pride of his country, should have been betrayed by a wretch in whom he placed, or rather misplaced, his confidence—that his end should have been marked by indignities exercised on his person at which human nature shudders—that his little son should have suffered loss of virility—that his daughters should have been forced into marriage with the scum of the earth—that the princess his wife should have been dishonoured—are dispensations of Providence, which, though we must not arraign, we may permit ourselves to wonder at.”

It is fortunate that we possess such disinterested appreciations of poor Lutf-‘Ali Khan, the last chivalrous figure amongst the kings of Persia, for such of his compatriots as described his career necessarily wrote after the triumph of his implacable rival and deadly foe Aqa Muhammad Khan, and therefore, whatever their true sentiments may have been,

---

1 The Dynasty of the Kajars, etc. (London, 1833), pp. cxx–cxxi. Sir H. J. Brydges “visited Shhráz for the first time in 1786.”
2 To wit, the notorious Ḥājji Ibráhím—“the scoundrel,” as Sir H. J. Brydges calls him (Account of...H.M.’s Mission, etc. vol. i, pp. 95–96), “whose mad ambition and black heart brought ruin on his confiding King, and misery the most severe on his fellow-citizens.”
dared not venture to praise the fallen prince, lest they should incur the displeasure of the cruel Qájár. Short-lived as the Zand dynasty was, it began and ended nobly, for its first representative was one of the best and its last one of the bravest of all the long line of Persian monarchs.

THE REIGNING QÁJÁR DYNASTY (A.D. 1796 ONWARDS).

The full and detailed accounts of the reigning Qájár dynasty already available to the English reader render any attempt to summarize their history in this place quite unnecessary. Áqá Muḥammad Kháń was not actually crowned until A.D. 1796, and was assassinated in the following year, so that he wore the crown of Persia for not more than fifteen months, but his reign practically began on the death of Karím Kháń in A.D. 1779, though “he used to observe that he had no title even to the name of king till he was obeyed through the whole of the ancient limits of the Empire of Persia,” so that it was only after he had finally subdued Georgia that he consented to assume the title of Sháh. His appearance and character are admirably summarized by Sir John Malcolm in the following words:

1 Sir Harford Jones Brydges’ *Dynasty of the Kajars translated from the Original Persian Manuscript* (London, 1833) opens with a valuable Introduction (Preliminary matter) filling pp. xiii—cxc. The text of the original, entitled *Maḏāthir-i-Sultāniyya*, was printed at Tabriz in Rajab, 1241 (March, 1826) and comes down to that year, but Brydges’ translation ends with the year 1226/1811–12, and, in the latter part especially, differs very greatly from the printed text. Sir John Malcolm’s *History* ends with the year 1230/1814; R. G. Watson’s excellent monograph with A.D. 1857–8. The latest *History of Persia*, by Sir Percy Molesworth Sykes (2nd edition, London, 1921), is continued down to the actual year of publication.

2 Like Nádír, he was crowned by acclamation in the Plain of Mútán in the spring of 1796, and met his death on June 17, 1797.

3 Malcolm’s *History*, ii, p. 287.

ÁQA MUHAMMAD KHÁN QÁJÁR seated, with his minister HáJJI IBRÁHÍM standing before him

Add. 24903 (Brit. Mus.)
AQÁ MUHAMMAD KHÁN

"AQÁ Muḥammad Khán was murdered in the sixty-third year of his age. He had been ruler of a great part of Persia for upwards of twenty years, but had only for a short period enjoyed the undisputed sovereignty of that country. The person of that monarch was so slender that at a distance he appeared like a youth of fourteen or fifteen. His beardless and shrunken face resembled that of an aged and wrinkled woman; and the expression of his countenance, at no times pleasant, was horrible when clouded, as it very often was, with indignation. He was sensible of this, and could not bear that anyone should look at him. This prince had suffered, in the early part of his life, the most cruel adversity; and his future conduct seems to have taken its strongest bias from the keen recollection of his misery and his wrongs. The first passion of his mind was the love of power; the second, avarice; and the third, revenge. In all these he indulged to excess, and they administered to each other; but the two latter, strong as they were, gave way to the first whenever they came in collision. His knowledge of the character and feelings of others was wonderful; and it is to this knowledge, and his talent of concealing from all the secret purposes of his soul, that we must refer his extraordinary success in subduing his enemies. Against these he never employed force till art had failed; and, even in war, his policy effected more than his sword. His ablest and most confidential minister, when asked if AQÁ Muḥammad Khán was personally brave, replied, 'No doubt; but still I can hardly recollect an occasion when he had an opportunity of displaying courage. The monarch's head,' he emphatically added, 'never left work for his hand.'"

AQÁ Muhammad Khán was succeeded by his nephew the uxorious and philoprogenitive² Fath-‘Alī Sháh. He was

1. The infamous traitor Ḥájjí Ibráhím, who personally communicated to Sir John Malcolm the opinion here recorded.
2. According to the Náṣíkhü’t-Tawárikh, the issue of Fath-‘Alī Sháh during the 47 years of his mature lifetime amounted to two thousand children and grandchildren, and would, adds the historian, during the twenty-one years intervening between his death and the date of writing, probably amount to about ten thousand souls. He enumerates 57 sons and 46 daughters who survived him, 296 grandsons and 292 granddaughters, and 158 wives who had borne children to him. R. G. Watson (History of Persia, p. 269) puts the number of his children at 159. In any case the number was so large as to justify the well-known Persian

B. P. L.
avaricious and vain, being inordinately proud of his handsome face and long beard, but not by nature cruel (at any rate compared to his late uncle), and it is related that, though obliged by custom to witness the execution of malefactors, he would always avert his face so as not to behold the unhappy wretch’s death-agony. He was something of a poet, and composed numerous odes under the pen-name of Kháqán. Politically the chief features of his reign were the Anglo-French rivalry typified by the missions of Malcolm and Harford Jones Brydges on the one hand, and Jaubert and General Gardanne on the other (A.D. 1800–1808); the growing menace of Russia, resulting in the successive disastrous treaties of Gulistán (A.D. 1813) and Turkmán-cháy (A.D. 1826); and the war with Turkey in A.D. 1821, concluded in 1823 by the Treaty of Erzeroum. Other notable events of this reign were the disgrace and death of the traitor Hájji Ibráhím and the almost complete extirpation of his family about A.D. 1804; the massacre of Grebaiodoff and the Russian Mission at Tihrrán on February 11, 1829; and the premature death, at the age of forty-six, of the Sháh’s favourite son ‘Abbás Mírzá, the Crown Prince, “the noblest of the Kajar race,” as Watson calls him, in A.D. 1833. His heart-broken father only survived him about a year, and died at the age of sixty-eight on October 23, 1834, leaving fifty-seven sons and forty-six daughters to mourn his loss.

Fath-‘Alí Sháh was succeeded by his grandson Muhammad, the son of ‘Abbás Mírzá, who, ere he was crowned on January 31, 1835, was confronted with two rival claimants to the throne, his uncle the Zillu’s-Sultán and his brother the Farmán-farmá. These, saying Shutur u shupush u shahzída hama já payddíst (“Camels, lice and princes are to be found everywhere”).

2 Ibid., pp. 247–256.
3 Ibid., p. 269.
however, were overcome without much difficulty by Persian troops commanded by Sir Henry Lindsay Bethune, and though the new Sháh had every reason to be grateful to England and Russia for assuring his succession, the fact that these two powerful neighbours had for the first time intervened in this fashion was an ominous portent and a dangerous precedent in the history of Persia. The same year witnessed the fall and execution (on June 26, 1835) of the celebrated Qā'īm-magām Mírzá Abúl-Qásim, hitherto the all-powerful minister of the King, still regarded by his countrymen as one of the finest prose stylists of modern times. He was succeeded as Prime Minister by the notorious Hájjí Mírzá Ágháší, concerning whom many ridiculous anecdotes are still current in Persia. Of the protracted but fruitless siege of Herát by the Persians in 1838 and the manifestations of Anglo-Russian rivalry for which it afforded occasion it is unnecessary to speak; nor of the withdrawal of Sir J. McNeill, the British Minister (A.D. 1838-1841), from the Persian Court; nor of the Turco-Persian boundary disputes of 1842 and the Turkish massacre of Persians at Karbalá in the early part of 1843. From our point of view none of these events, fully discussed by R. G. Watson and other historians of Persia, are equal in interest to the Isma‘ílí revolt of 1840 or thereabouts, and the rise of the Bábí religion in 1844.

Of the origin and doctrines of the Isma‘ílí heresy or “Sect of the Seven” (Sab‘íyya), some account will be found in the

1 His father, Mírzá ‘Ísá of Faráhán, bore the same title. Notices of both occur in vol. ii of the Majma‘u’l-Fusāḥá, pp. 87 and 425. Some account of his literary achievements will be given when we come to consider the prose-writers of the Qájár period in the penultimate chapter of Part iii of this volume.

first volume\(^1\) of this work, while their destruction by Húlágú Khán the Mongol in the middle of the thirteenth century of our era is briefly described in the second\(^2\). But, though their power in Persia was shattered, they still continued to exist, and, from time to time, to reappear on the pages of Persian history. In the volume of the Násikh\(^u\)'t-Tawáríkh dealing with the reigning Qájár dynasty several references to them occur. The first, under the year 1232/1817, refers to the death of the then head of the sect Sháh Khalílu'lláh, the son of Sayyid Abu'l-Hasan Khán, at Yazd. Under the Zand dynasty Abu'l-Hasan had been governor of Kirmán, whence on his dismissal he retired to the Mahallát of Qum. There he received tribute from his numerous followers in India and Central Asia, who, it is recorded, if unable to bring their offerings in person, used to throw them into the sea, believing that they would thus be conveyed into the hands of their Imám; but, when possible, used to visit him in his abode and deem it an honour to render him personal service, even of the most menial kind. His son, Sháh Khalílu'lláh, transferred his abode to Yazd, but after residing there two years he was killed in the course of a quarrel which had arisen between some of his followers and the Muslim citizens of Yazd, instigated by a certain Mullá Ḥusayn. The Sháh punished the perpetrators of this outrage, gave one of his daughters in marriage to Áqá Khán, the son and successor of the late Imám of the Isma'ílís, and made him governor of Qum and the surrounding districts (Mahallát).

We next hear of this Áqá Khán in 1255/1839 or 1256/1840\(^3\), when, apparently in consequence of the arrogant

---

\(^1\) Lit. Hist. of Persia, i, pp. 391-415, etc.  
\(^2\) Ibid., ii, pp. 190-211; 453-460.  
\(^3\) R. G. Watson in his History of Persia gives a fairly full account of the insurrection (pp. 331-334).
behaviour of Hájjí ‘Abdu'l-Muhammed-i-Mahallátí, instigated by the minister Hájjí Mírzá Áqáspí, he rebelled against Muḥammad Sháh and occupied the citadel of Bam, but was obliged to surrender to Fírúz Mírzá, then governor of Kirmán, who pardoned him and sent him to Tihrán. Here he was well received by Hájjí Mírzá Áqáspí and was presently allowed to return to his former government in the district of Qum. Having sent his family and possessions to Karbalá by way of Baghán, so as to leave himself free and unencumbered, he began to buy swift and strong horses and to recruit brave and devoted soldiers, and when his preparations were completed he set out across the deserts and open country towards Kirmán, pretending that he was proceeding to Mecca by way of Bandar-i-Abbá, and that the government of Kirmán had been conferred upon him. Prince Bahman Mírzá Bahá'u'lláh-Dawlá, being apprised of his intentions, pursued and overtook him as he was making for Shahr-i-Bábak and Sírájn, and a skirmish took place between the two parties in which eight of the Prince's soldiers and sixteen of the Áqá Khán's men were killed. After a second and fiercer battle the Áqá Khán was defeated and fled to Lár, whence he ultimately escaped to India, where his descendant, the present Áqá Khán, lives a wealthy and spacious life at Bombay when not engaged in his frequent and extensive travels.

The rise of the Bábi sect or religion, which began in the later years of Muḥammad Sháh's reign, was an event of the most far-reaching significance and importance, and forms

---

the subject of an extensive literature, not only in Persian and Arabic, but in English, French, German, Russian and other European languages. Since it would be impossible to give an adequate account of its eventful history and extensive developments in this volume, and since ample materials for its study are already available even in English (indeed, thanks to the success attained by its missionaries in America, especially in English), no attempt at recapitulation will be made here. Sayyid ‘Alí Muḥammad the Bāb has himself (in the Persian Bayān) fixed the date of his “Manifestation” (Zuhūr) as May 23, 1844 (5 Jumāda 1, 1260), just a thousand years after the disappearance or “Occultation” (Ghaybat) of the Twelfth Imām, or Imām Mahdī, to whom he claimed to be the “Gate” (Bāb). Neither the idea nor the expression was new: the Imām Mahdī had four successive “Gates” (Abwāb) by means of whom, during the “Lesser Occultation” (Ghaybat-i-Sughrah), he maintained communication with his followers; and the “Perfect Shi‘a” (Shi‘a-i-Kāmil) of the Shaykhī School, in which the Bāb pursued his theological studies, connoted much the same idea of an Intermediary (Wāsiṭa), or Channel of Grace, between the Concealed Imām and his faithful people. Later the Bāb “went higher” (bādātar raft), to use the expression of his followers, and claimed to be first the “Supreme Point” (Nuqṭa-i-‘A’lā), or “Point of Explanation” (Nuqṭa-i-Bayān), then the Qd‘im (“He who is to arise” of the House of the Prophet), then the Inaugurator of a new Dispensation, and lastly an actual Divine Manifestation or Incarnation. Some of his followers went even further, calling themselves Gods and him a

1 For a bibliography of the literature to 1889 see my Traveller’s Narrative written to illustrate the Episode of the Bāb (Cambridge, 1891), vol. ii, pp. 173–211; and for the subsequent literature, my Materials for the Study of the Bābī Religion (Cambridge, 1918), pp. 175–243.
"Creator of Gods" (Khudá-Áfsár) while one of them went so far as to write of Bahá'u'lláh:

خلق گویند خدائي و من اندر غضب آيه: برده بر داشته مسند بهقود نتگ خداائي.

"Men say Thou art God, and I am moved to anger:
Raise the veil, and submit no longer to the shame of Godhead!"

Although the Bábí movement led to much bloodshed, this took place almost entirely after the death of Muḥammad Sháh, which happened on September 5, 1848, though already the Báb was a prisoner in the fortress of Mákú in the extreme N.W. of Persia, while in Khurásán, Mázandarán and elsewhere armed bands of his followers roamed the country proclaiming the Advent of the expected Mahdí and the inauguration of the Reign of the Saints, and threatening those sanguinary encounters between themselves and their opponents which were at once precipitated by the King's death and the ensuing dislocation and confusion.

Dark indeed were the horizons at the beginning of the new reign. The Walt-áh, or Crown Prince, Násiru'd-Dín, was absent at Tabríz, the seat of his government, at the time of his father's death, and until he could reach Tíbrán his mother, the Mahdí-'Áljí, assumed control of affairs. Hájjí Mírzá Áqáší, whose unpopularity was extreme, not only ceased to act as Prime Minister, but had to flee for his life, and took refuge in the Shrine of Sháh 'Abdu'll-'Ázím². Disturbances broke out in the capital itself, and more serious revolts in Burújird, Kirmánsháh, Kurdistán, Shíráz, Kirmán, Yazd and Khurásán. The young Sháh, then only seventeen years of age³, finally

1 Cited in the Hasht Bihisht, f. 244ª of my MS. The verse is ascribed to Nábíl of Zarand, who killed himself at 'Akká on Bahá'u'lláh's death on May 28, 1892.
3 He was born on July 17, 1831.
reached the capital on October 20, 1848, was crowned the same night, and immediately appointed as his Prime Minister Mirzâ Taqī Khán, better known as the Amir-i-Nișân, who, notwithstanding his lowly origin (his father was originally cook to the Qā'im-maṣām)\(^1\), was one of the greatest men and most honest, capable and intelligent ministers produced by Persia in modern times. “The race of modern Persians,” exclaims Watson\(^2\) enthusiastically, “cannot be said to be altogether effete, since so recently it has been able to produce a man such as was the Amir-i-Nișân”; and the Hon. Robert Curzon, in his Armenia and Erzeroum, has described him as “beyond all comparison the most interesting personage amongst the commissioners of Turkey, Persia, Russia and Great Britain who were then assembled at Erzeroum.” In the brief period of three years during which he held the high office of Prime Minister he did much for Persia, but the bright promise of his career was too soon darkened by the envy and malice of his rivals. The tragic circumstances of his violent and cruel death in his exile at the beautiful palace of Fin near Kháshán are too well known to need repetition\(^3\), but the admirable fidelity of his wife, the Sháh’s only sister, cannot be passed over in silence. “No princess educated in a Christian court,” says Watson\(^4\), “and accustomed to the contemplation of the brightest example of conjugal virtues that the history of the world has recorded could have shown more tenderness and devotion than did the sister of the Sháh of Persia towards her unfortunate husband.” Her untiring vigilance was, however, finally tricked and out-

---

\(^1\) Some account of the two celebrated men, father and son, who bore this title will be found in the account of modern prose-writers of note in Part iii of this volume. See p. 147 supra, ad calc.

\(^2\) See Watson’s History, p. 264.

\(^3\) Ibid., pp. 398–406.

\(^4\) Ibid., p. 403.
witted by the infamous Hájí ‘Alí Khán Ḥājībū’d-Dawla, who owed so much to the minister whose life he succeeded in bringing to an end on January 9, 1852.

The Bábís, however, had no cause to love Mírzá Taqí Khán, whose death they had already striven to compass, and whose ultimate fate was regarded by them as a signal instance of Divine retribution, since, apart from other measures which he had taken against them, he was responsible for the execution of the Báb himself at Tabríz on July 9, 1850. The Báb indeed, helpless prisoner that he was, had kindled a flame which proved inextinguishable, and which especially illumines with a lurid glow the first four years of Násír-ud-Dín Sháh’s reign. The story of the almost incredible martial achievements of the Bábís at Shaykh Ṭabarsí in Mázandarán, at Zanján, Yazd, Nayríz and elsewhere during the years 1849–1850 will never be more graphically told than by the Comte de Gobineau, who in his incomparable book *Les Religions et les Philosophies dans l’Asie Centrale* combines wit, sympathy and insight in an extraordinary degree. I personally owe more to this book than to any other book about Persia, since to it, not less than to an equally fortunate and fortuitous meeting in Isfahán, I am indebted for that unravelling of Bábí doctrine and history which first won for me a reputation in Oriental scholarship. Gobineau was for some time a “prophet without honour in his own country,” but, while France long neglected him, Germany produced a “Gobineau-Vereinigung” and several important works on his life and writings. The militant

1 Founded in 1894.
2 I possess two by Ludwig Schemann, *Eine Biographie und Quellen und Untersuchungen* (Strassburg, 1913 and 1914). The monthly review *Europe* for October, 1923 (No. 7), has published a very important *Numéro consacré au Comte de Gobineau*, which contains (pp. 116–126) an excellent article by M. Vladimir Minorsky entitled *Gobineau et la Perse*, followed (pp. 127–141) by a list of his published and unpublished
phase of Bábísm culminated in the attempted assassination of Náṣiru’d-Dín Sháh by three members of the sect on August 15, 1852, and the frightful persecution which followed, wherein twenty-eight more or less prominent Bábís, including the beautiful and talented poetess Qurratu’l-‘Ayn, suffered death with horrible tortures. Most of the leading Bábís who survived emigrated or were exiled to Baghdád, and thenceforth, though the sect continued to increase in Persia, the centre of its activity, whether at Baghdád, Adrianópolis, Cyprus or Acre, lay beyond the frontiers of Persia.

It is unnecessary here to discuss the causes and course of the short Anglo-Persian War of 1856–7, brought about by the seizure of Herát by the Persians. It began with the occupation by the British of the island of Khárák in the Persian Gulf on December 4, 1856, and was officially terminated by the Treaty of Peace signed at Paris on March 4, 1857, by Lord Cowley and Farrukh Khán, though, owing to the slowness of communications at that time, hostilities actually continued for another month. They did not end a moment too soon for Great Britain, for almost before the ratifications were exchanged the Indian Mutiny broke out. The need then experienced for better communications between England and India led in 1864 to the introduction into Persia of the telegraph, to which further extension was given in 1870 and 1872, and this, as pointed out by Sir Percy Molesworth Sykes (whose *History of Persia* is almost the only book which gives a continuous works, a biography, and an account of *Le mouvement Gobiniste en Allemagne et en France.*


2 I refer to the second and enlarged edition, published in 1921, in which (on p. 526 of vol. ii) March of that year is mentioned as the current date at the time of writing.
and coherent narrative of events from 1857 to 1921), had far-reaching reactions, and was one of the factors in the modernization of Persia. Others were the extension of the Press (first introduced into Tabriz by 'Abbás Mírzá about A.D. 1816) and consequent wider diffusion of literature; the slow growth of journalism since 1851 down to its enormous expansion during the Revolution of 1906-1911 and again after the Russian collapse; the foundation of the Dárí'l-Funún, or Polytechnic College, at Tihrán in 1851, and the introduction of European science and instruction; and, in a lesser degree, the Sháh's three journeys to Europe in 1873, 1878 and 1889, though it is doubtful whether he or his attendants derived more advantage from what they saw in the course of their peregrinations than Persian literature did from his accounts of his experiences.

Náširu'd-Dín Sháh was only a little over seventeen years of age when he was crowned on the 24th of Dhú'l-Qa'ída, 1264 (20 October, 1848), and would have entered upon the fiftieth year of his reign on the same date of the Muhammadán year A.H. 1313, corresponding to May 5, 1896. Four days earlier, however, when all the preparations for the celebration of his Jubilee were completed, he was shot dead by Mírzá Ridá of Kírmán, a disciple of that turbulent spirit Sayyid Jamálú 'd-Dín al-Afghán, in the Shrine of Sháh 'Abdu'l-'Azím a few miles south of Tihrán. Of the events which led up to this catastrophe and their significance I have treated fully in my History of the Persian Revolution of 1905-1909, and will not attempt to epitomize here matters which are fully discussed there, and which it would be a waste of space to

2 See p. 10 of my Press and Poetry in Modern Persia, where the whole subject is fully discussed.
recapitulate. The seeds of the Revolution were sown, and even began to germinate, about the time of the Sháh's third and last visit to Europe, fruitful in ill-advised concessions, which (especially the Tobacco concession of 1890) were a potent factor in stimulating the political discontents which found their first open expression in the Tobacco-riots of 1891 and culminated in the Revolution of 1905. If we ignore the external relations of Persia with foreign Powers, especially England and Russia, which form the principal topic of such political histories as that of Sir Percy Molesworth Sykes, we may say, broadly speaking, that of the long reign of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh the first four years (A.D. 1848–52) were notable for the religious fermentation caused by the Bábis, and the last six years (A.D. 1890–6) for the political fermentation which brought about the Revolution in the following reign; while the intervening period was, outwardly at any rate, one of comparative peace and tranquillity. It was my good fortune to visit Persia in 1887–8 towards the end of this period, and, while enjoying the remarkable security which then prevailed in the country, to see almost the last of what may fairly be called mediaeval Persia. To this security I hardly did justice in the narrative of my travels¹ which I wrote soon after my return, for I hardly realized then how few and short were the periods, either before or after my visit, when a young foreigner, without any official position or protection, could traverse the country from North-West to South-East and from North to South, attended only by his Persian servant and his muleteers, not only without danger, but practically without the occurrence of a single disagreeable incident. And if this

¹ *A Year amongst the Persians* (London: A. & C. Black, 1893). This book has long been out of print and is now very scarce.
remarkable security, which compared favourably with that of many European countries, had originally been brought about by frightful exemplary punishments of robbers and ill-doers, these were no longer in evidence, and during the whole of my time in Persia I not only never witnessed an execution or a bastinado, but never heard of a specific case of either in any place where I stayed, though the ghastly pillars of mortar with protruding human bones outside the gates of Shíráz still bore witness to the stern rule of the Sháh’s uncle Farhád Mírzá, Mu’tamadu’d-Dawla, whom I met only in the capacity of a courtly and learned bibliophile. Yet withal the atmosphere was, as I have said, mediaeval: politics and progress were hardly mentioned, and the talk turned mostly on mysticism, metaphysics and religion; the most burning political questions were those connected with the successors of the Prophet Muḥammad in the seventh century of our era; only a languid interest in external affairs was aroused by the occasional appearance of the official journals Irán and Ittilá, or the more exciting Akhtar published in Constantinople; while at Kirmán one post a week maintained communication with the outer world. How remote does all this seem from the turmoil of 1891, the raging storms of 1905–11, the deadly paralysis of the Russian terror which began on Christmas Day in the year last mentioned, and then the Great War, when Persia became the cockpit of three foreign armies and the field of endless intrigues. The downfall of Russian Imperialism freed her from the nightmare of a century, and seemed to her to avenge the desecration of the holy shrine of Mashhad in April, 1912, while the collapse of the Anglo-Persian Agreement and consequent withdrawal of British troops and advisers has left her for the time being to her own devices, to make or mar her future as she can and will.
Since Nāširu’d-Dín fell a victim to the assassin’s pistol the throne of Persia has been occupied by his son Mu’azzafaru’d-Dín (1896–1907), who granted the Constitution; his grandson Muḥammad ‘Alí, who endeavoured to destroy it, who was deposed by the victorious Nationalists on July 16, 1909, and who is still living in retirement in the neighbourhood of Constantinople; and his great-grandson Sultán Aḥmad Sháh the reigning monarch. It would be premature to discuss the reign and character of the last, while the very dissimilar characters of his father and grandfather I have endeavoured to depict in my History of the Persian Revolution. But since the death of Nāširu’d-Dín Sháh twenty-seven years ago it may truly be said that the centre of interest has shifted from the king to the people of Persia, nor, so far as we can foresee the future, is it likely that we shall see another Isma’īl, another Nádir, or (which God forbid!) another Āqá Muḥammad Khán.
PART II.

PERSIAN VERSE
DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES
CHAPTER V.

SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS ON THE LATER AND ESPECIALLY THE RELIGIOUS POETRY OF THE PERSIANS.

Four hundred years ago the Persian language (or at any rate the written language, for no doubt fresh colloquialisms and slang may have arisen during this period) was to all intents and purposes the same as it is to-day, while such new literary forms as exist go no further back, as a rule, than the middle of the nineteenth century, that is to say than the accession of Nāṣiru'd-Dīn Sháh, whose reign (A.D. 1848–1896) might not inappropriately be called the Persian Victorian Era. In the three previous volumes of this book each historical chapter has been immediately followed by a chapter dealing with the literature of that period; but in this volume, for the reason just given, it appeared unnecessary to break the sequence of events in this way, and to be preferable to devote the first part of the volume to a brief historical sketch of the whole period, and the second and third parts to a consideration of the literature in verse and prose, arranged according to categories.

How to arrange these categories is a problem which has cost me a good deal of thought. Nearly all those who have written on Persian literature have paid an Excessive amount of attention which I regard as excessive and disproportionate to poetry and belles-lettres, and have almost entirely ignored the plainer but more positive fields of history, biography, theology, philosophy and the ancient sciences. If we understand literature in the

1 Nāṣiru'd-Dīn, indeed, approximately means "Victor" or "Defender of the Faith."

B. P. L.
narrower sense as denoting those writings only, whether poetry or prose, which have artistic form, there is, no doubt, some justification for this view; but not if we take it in the wider sense of the manifestation in writing of a nation’s mind and intellectual activities. Still, in deference to the prevalent view, we may begin this general survey of the recent literature of Persia with some consideration of its poetry.

Here we have to distinguish some half-dozen categories of verse, namely (1) the classical poetry; (2) occasional or topical verse; (3) religious and devotional verse, from the formal marthiyas, or threnodies, of great poets like Muḥtašam of Kāshān to the simple popular poems on the sufferings of the Imāms recited at the Taʿṣiyas, or mournings, of the month of Muḥarram; (4) the scanty but sometimes very spirited verses composed by the Bābīs since about 1850, which should be regarded as a special subdivision of the class last mentioned; (5) the ballads or taṣnifs sung by professional minstrels, of which it is hard to trace the origin or antiquity; (6) the quite modern political verse which has arisen since the Revolution of 1906, and which I have already discussed in some detail in another work. In this chapter I shall deal chiefly with the religious verse, leaving the consideration of the secular poetry to the two succeeding chapters.

(1) The Classical Poetry.

Alike in form and matter the classical poetry of Persia has been stereotyped for at least five or six centuries, so that, except for such references to events or persons as may indicate the date of composition, it is hardly possible, after reading a qaṣīda (elegy), gḥasal (ode), or rubāʿī (quatrain), to guess whether it was composed by a contemporary of Jāmī (d. A.H. 1492).

or by some quite recent poet, such as Qa‘ání. Of the extremely conventional character of this poetry I have spoken in a previous volume¹, and of Ibn Khaḍdún’s doctrine “that the Art of composing in verse or prose is concerned only with words, not with ideas.” Hence, even in the most recent poetry of this type, we very seldom find any allusion to such modern inventions as tea-drinking, tobacco-smoking, railways, telegraphs or newspapers²; indeed several of the greatest modern poets, such as Qa‘ání, Dáwarí and the like, have chiefly shown their originality by reviving certain forms of verse like the musammát³ which had fallen into disuse since the eleventh or twelfth century.

Perhaps the statement with which the above paragraph opens is too sweeping and requires some qualification, for in some of the later Persian poets Indian and Turkish critics do profess to discover a certain originality (tázá-gu‘át) marking an epoch in the development of the art, and the rise of a new school. The Persians themselves are not addicted to literary criticism; perhaps because, just as people only discuss their health when they are beginning to lose it, so those only indulge in meticulous literary criticism who are no longer able, or have never been able, to produce good literature. According to Gibb⁴, Jámí and Mír ‘Alí Shír Náwí’, ‘Urří of Shíráz (d. 999/1590–1) and the Indian Faydí (Feyzí, d. 1004/1595–6), and lastly Sá‘íb of Išfahán (d. 1080/1669–70) were successively the chief foreign influences on the development of Ottoman Turkish poetry, and a great deal has been written about them by the Turkish critics. The best and fullest

² Cf. Gibb’s History of Ottoman Poetry, vol. iv, p. 4. Such allusions will, however, be found in the poem by Nā‘ím quoted in the latter part of this chapter, though in general it follows the orthodox qaṣīda form.
critical estimate of the leading Persian poets from the earliest
times down to the latter part of the seventeenth century is,
however, so far as I can judge, a work written (most un-
fortunately) in the Urdu or Hindustâni language, the
Shi'ru'l-'Ajâm ("Poetry of the Persians") of that eminent
scholar Shibli Nu'mânî. The third volume of this work,
composed in 1324-5/1906-7, deals with seven Persian poets
of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries of our era, namely
Fíghâni (d. 925/1519), Faydí (d. 1004/1595-6), 'Urff (d. 999/
1590-1), Nazírî (d. 1021/1612-3), Tâlib-i-Ámulî (d. 1036/
1626-7), Šâ'îb (d. 1080/1669-1670), and Abú Tâlib Kalîm
(d. 1061/1651). All these were Persians, attracted to India
by the liberal patronage of the Moghul Court, except Faydí,
whom Shibli regards as the only Indian poet except Âmir
Khusraw who could produce Persian verse which might pass
for that of a born Persian. 'Urff and Šâ'îb were the most
notable of these seven, but even they enjoy a greater repute
in India and Turkey than in their own country. The
explanation of this fact offered by some Persians of my
acquaintance is that they are easily understood and there-
fore popular with foreigners, who often find the more subtle
poetry admired in Persia beyond their powers of com-pre-
hension. I must confess with shame that in this case my
taste agrees with the foreigners, and that I find Šâ'îb
especially attractive, both on account of his simplicity of
style and his skill in the figures entitled husn-i-ta'âlîl or
"poetical aetiology," and irda'îl-mathal or "proverbial com-
mission." Nearly forty years ago (in 1885) I read through
the Persian portion of that volume of the great trilingual
anthology entitled Kharâbât which deals with the lyrical

1 Riḍâ-quil Khán explicitly says of both of them that their style is
not approved by modern Persians.
3 Compiled by Ziyâ (Diyâ) Pasha, and published in three volumes
at Constantinople in 1291-2/1874-5.
verse of the Arabs, Turks and Persians, both odes and isolated verses, and copied into a note-book which now lies before me those which pleased me most, irrespective of authorship; and, though many of the 443 fragments and isolated verses which I selected are anonymous, more than one-tenth of the total (45) are by Šá'íb.

India, at all events, thanks to the generous patronage of Humáyún, Akbar, and their successors down to that gloomy zealot Awrangzíb, and of their great nobles, such as Bayram Khán-Khánán and his son 'Abdu'r-Rahím, who succeeded to the title after his father’s assassination about A.D. 1561, continued during the greater part of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries to attract a great number of the most talented Persian poets, who found there an appreciation which was withheld from them in their own country. Badá’úní enumerates about one hundred and seventy, most of whom were of Persian descent though some of them were born in India. Shiblí gives a list of fifty-one who came to India from Persia in Akbar’s time and were received at court, and a long list is also given by Sprenger. Shiblí quotes numerous verses showing how widely diffused amongst Persian poets was the desire to try their fortune in India.

Thus Šá’íb says:

هیچو عزم سفر پسند که در هر دل هست
رقص سودای تو در هیچ (سیری نیست) که نیست

"There is no head wherein desire for thee danceth not,
Even as the determination to visit India is in every heart."

1 Muntakhab’-Tawáríkh (Calcutta, 1869), vol. iii, pp. 170–390.
2 Shi’ru’l-‘Ajam, vol. iii, p. 5.
4 Shi’ru’l-‘Ajam, vol. iii, p. 10.
And Abú Ṭálib Kalím says:

اسیر هنده و زین رفتین بسجنا پشیمان
کجا خواهد رساندن پرتشانی مُرغ بسیلرا
باپیران میرود نالان کلیه از شوق همسرالان
بیای دیگران همجون جبری طی کرده منزلرا
زشوق هند زان چشمر حسرت بر قفا دارم
که رو هر گر پراه آرم نمی بینم مقابلرا

“I am the captive of India, and I regret this misplaced journey:
Whither can the feather-flutterings of the dying bird convey it?
Kalím goes lamenting to Persia [dragged thither] by the eagerness of his fellow-travellers,
Like the camel-bell which traverses the stage on the feet of others.
Through longing for India I turn my regretful eyes backwards in such fashion.
That, even if I set my face to the road, I do not see what confronts me.”

So also ‘Alí-qulí Salmí says:

نیست در ایران زمین سامان تحصیل کمال
تا نیامد سوی هندستان حنا زنگین نشد

“There exist not in Persia the means of acquiring perfection:
Henna does not develop its colour until it comes to India.”

The Persian dervish-poet Rasmí, commemorating the Khán-Khánán’s liberal patronage of poets, says:

ز چری ماج تو آن نکته سنگ شیرازی
رسید صیت کبیش بر روی قمر خاور
بطریز تازه ز ماج تو آشنا گردید
چو روی خوب که یافد ز مشغله زیور

1 When a Muslim kills a bird for food by cutting its throat, he must pronounce the formula Bismi’l-láh (“In the Name of God”) over it. Such a bird, in its dying struggles on the ground, is called Murgh-i-Bismil, or Ním-bisml.

Through auspicious praise of thee the fame of the perfection of that subtle singer of Shíráz reached from the East to Rúm.

In praising thee he became conversant with a new style, like the fair face which gains adornment from the tire-woman.

By the grace (faydí) of thy name Faydí, like [his predecessor] Khusraw, annexed the Seven Climes from end to end with the Indian sword.

By gathering crumbs from thy table Naqírí the poet hath attained a rank such that other poets

Compose such elegies in his praise that blood drips in envy from the heart of the singer.

Men of discernment carry as a gift to Khurásán, like the collyrium of Isfahán, copies of Shákbí’s verses.

By praising thee Hayádí found fresh life (hayát): yea, the substance must needs strengthen the nature of the accident.

---

1 *I.e.* ‘Urífí, as Shíblí notes.  
2 *I.e.* Turkey. See above, p. 80, n. 5.  
3 Cf. p. 164 *supra*. 
How can I tell the tale of Naw'f and Kufwí, since by their praise of thee they will live until the Resurrection Dawn?

Such measure of thy favour accrued to Naw'f as Amfr Mu'izzí received from the favour of Sanjar."

These poets of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries produced what the late Professor Ethé has happily termed the "Indian summer" of Persian poetry, and they had of course a host of Indian imitators and successors so long as Persian continued to be the polite language of India. These last, who were at best skilful manipulators of a foreign idiom, I do not propose to notice; and even of the genuine Persian poets, whether sojourners in India or residents in their own country, only a limited number of the most eminent can be discussed in these pages. The eighteenth century of our era, especially the troubled period intervening between the fall of the Šafawí and the rise of the Qájár dynasties (A.D. 1722–1795), was the poorest in literary achievement; after that there is a notable revival, and several poets of the nineteenth century, Qá'ání, Yaghmá, Furúghí and Wisál and his family, can challenge comparison with any save the very greatest of their predecessors.

(2) Occasional or Topical Verse.

Some of the most interesting pieces of poetry are those composed, not necessarily by professional poets, for some special purpose or some particular occasion. Examples of occasional or topical verse. These are not so often to be found in the regular dītwáns of verse as in the pages of contemporary histories. The following from the unpublished Ahsanu't-Tawártkh may serve as specimens.

In the year 961/1553–4 died three Indian kings, Mahmúd III of Gujerát, Islám Sháh son of Shír Sháh the Afghán of Dihlí, and Nizámú'l-Mulk of the Deccan. This coincidence, with the date, is commemorated in the following verses:
In one year the [fatal] conjunction came to three princes by whose justice India was the Abode of Security. One was Mahmūd, the monarch of Gujerāt, who was youthful as his own fortune. The second was Islām Shāh, King of Dihlī, who was in India the lord of a fortunate conjunction. The third was the Niẓāmu’l-Mulk-i-Bahīrī, who ruled in royal state in the kingdom of the Deccan. Why dost thou ask of me the date of the death of these three Kings? It was ‘the decline of the kings’ (زوال خسروان = 961).

The following verses by Mawlānā Qāsim commemorate the death of Humāyūn in the succeeding year (962/1554-5):

Humāyūn, king of the realm of the Ideal, none can recall a monarch like him:

1 See S. Lane-Poole’s Mohammadan Dynasties, p. 313.
2 Ibid., pp. 300 and 303.
3 Ibid., p. 320. I doubt if Bāhīrī is a correct reading: it should perhaps be Burhān, the proper name of the second of the Niẓām Shāhs of Ahmādnagar, who reigned from 914 to 961 A.H. (1508–1553 A.D.).
Suddenly he fell from the roof of his palace; precious life departed from him on the winds.

Qásim thus ciphered the date of his death: 'King Humáyún fell from the roof'.

The next piece, denouncing the people of Qazwín, is by the poet Hayrátí, who died from a fall at Káshán in 961/1553-4:

وقتی آن آمد گوشه آساید سهپر بی مدار
چون زمین در سایهات ای سایه، پروردگار;
پادشاهان مدّت نه ماه شد چین نا توان;
مانده در قزوین خراب و خسته و مجزوح و زار;
یاقتهر رسیر تسنن در وضيع و در شريف
دیدم آثار تخرج در صغار و در غبار;
در مقابر پای شته از فقير و از غني;
در مساجد دست بسته از يمين و از يسار;
در زمان چون تو شاهى دست بستن در نياز
هست کارى دست بسته ای شه عالي تبار;
قاضى اين ملك نسل خالد بن الوليد;
مفتي اين شهر فرزند سعيد نابكار;
خسته گرديده ز تيگ شاه غازي هر دور;
هم برادر هر پدر هم پا هم خويش و تبار;
خود بفرما اي شه دانا كه اکنون اين گروه;
داعي خصمند يا مولات شاه شامدار;
قتل عامى گر نياضد قتل خاصى ميتوان;
خاصه از بار رضای حضرت پروردگار;

1 My text has gáhi, which I have ventured to emend to Qásim. For the particulars of Humáyún's death, see Erskine's History of India under the first two sovereigns of the House of Taimúr, Baber and Humáyún (London, 1854), vol. ii, pp. 527-8. The chronogram is unusually natural, simple and appropriate.
SATIRE ON QAZWÍN

"The time has come when the pivotless sphere, like the earth, should rest under thy shadow, O Shadow of God!

O King! It is a period of nine months that this helpless one hath remained in Qazwín ruined, weary, wounded and wretched.

I found the practices of the Sunnis in humble and noble alike: I saw the signs of schism in small and great:

Poor and rich with washed feet at the Tombs: hands clasped in the mosques to right and to left.

In the time of a King like thee to clasp the hands in prayer is an underhand action, O King of lofty lineage!

The Judge of this Kingdom is of the race of Khálid ibnul-Walíd; the Muftí of this city is the son of the worthless Sa’íd.

By the sword of the victorious King the brother, father, friend, kinsman and family of both have been slain together.

Say thyself, O wise King, whether now this group are the propagandists of the enemy, or the clients of the victorious King.

If there cannot be a public massacre one might [at least contrive] a private massacre for the special satisfaction of the Divine Majesty.

These are not subjects whose slaughter would cause a reduction of the revenue or would check the spending power of the country;

Nay, rather each one of them consumes a quantity of the wealth of the exchequer, for they are all sief-holders and pensioners."

The worst of these "occasional verses" is that we seldom know enough of the circumstances under which they were composed to enable us fully to understand all the allusions contained in them. What, for example, had the people of Qazwín done to the author of the above verses to arouse in him such bitter anger? Who were the Qádí and the Muftí whom he particularly denounces? How did their relatives come to be slain by the King, and of what enemy were they the propagandists? The fact that we do not know at
what date the verses were composed, and whether in the reign of Sháh Táhmasp or of his father and predecessor Sháh Isma'íl, makes it harder to discover the answers to these questions, but it is interesting to learn how prevalent were the Sunní doctrines in Qazwín at the time when they were written. Of course in the case of the modern topical verses which abounded in the newspapers of the Revolutionary Period (A.D. 1906–1911 especially) the allusions can be much more easily understood.

(3) Religious and Devotional Verse.

Of the numerous poets of the Šáfawí period who devoted their talents to the celebration of the virtues and sufferings of the Imáms of Muḥtasham and his imitators. Religious poetry of Muḥtasham (died 996/1588) is the most eminent. In his youth he wrote erotic verse, but in later life he seems to have consecrated his genius almost entirely to the service of religion, Rídá-qlí Khán in his Ṡajb by the Imáms, Muḥtasham of Káshán (vol. ii, pp. 36–8) gives specimens of both styles, of which we are here concerned only with the second. The author of the Taríkh-i-ʿAlam-ārā-yi-ʿAbbásí in his account of the chief poets of Sháh Táhmasp’s reign states that though in earlier life that king enjoyed and cultivated the society of poets, in his later years his increasing austerity and deference to the views of the theologians led him to regard them with disfavour as latitudinarians (wast’ul-mashrab), so that when Muḥtasham, hoping for a suitable reward, sent him two eloquent panegyrics, one in his praise and the other in praise of the Princess Parl-Khán Khánun, he received nothing, the Sháh remarking that poetry written in praise of kings and princes was sure to consist largely of lies and exaggerations, according to the

1 Ff. 158a–139b of my MS. marked H. 13. Unfortunately this very important history has never been published.
well-known Arabic saying, "The best poetry is that which contains most falsehoods," but that, since it was impossible to exaggerate the virtues of the Prophet and the Imáms, the poet could safely exert his talents to the full, and in addition would have the satisfaction of looking for a heavenly instead of an earthly reward. (Thereupon Muḥtasham composed his celebrated haft-band, or poem of seven-verse strophes, in praise of the Imáms, and this time was duly and amply rewarded, whereupon many other poets followed his example, so that in a comparatively short time some fifty or sixty such haft-bands were produced. This poem is cited in most of the anthologies which include Muḥtasham, but most fully in the Kharábát of Ḍiyá (Ziyá) Pasha (vol. ii, pp. 197–200). In this fullest form it comprises twelve strophes each consisting of seven verses, and each concluding with an additional verse in a different rhyme, thus comprising in all ninety-six verses. The language is extraordinarily simple and direct, devoid of those rhetorical artifices and verbal concisits which many Europeans find so irritating, and shows true pathos and religious feeling. I wish that space were available to quote the whole poem, the prototype of so many others of a similar character, but I must content myself with citing three of the twelve strophes (the fourth, fifth and sixth).

μuhtasham's celebrated Haft-band.

Thereupon Muḥtasham composed his celebrated haft-band, or poem of seven-verse strophes, in praise of the Imáms, and this time was duly and amply rewarded, whereupon many other poets followed his example, so that in a comparatively short time some fifty or sixty such haft-bands were produced. This poem is cited in most of the anthologies which include Muḥtasham, but most fully in the Kharábát of Ḍiyá (Ziyá) Pasha (vol. ii, pp. 197–200). In this fullest form it comprises twelve strophes each consisting of seven verses, and each concluding with an additional verse in a different rhyme, thus comprising in all ninety-six verses. The language is extraordinarily simple and direct, devoid of those rhetorical artifices and verbal concisits which many Europeans find so irritating, and shows true pathos and religious feeling. I wish that space were available to quote the whole poem, the prototype of so many others of a similar character, but I must content myself with citing three of the twelve strophes (the fourth, fifth and sixth).

1 This excellent anthology of Arabic, Persian and Turkish poetry was printed in three volumes in Constantinople in A.H. 1291–2 (A.D. 1874–5). See p. 164, n. 3 supra.
و آنگه سرادقیه ملک محشرس نبود،
صننده از مدنیه و در غربلا زند;
وز تیشه ستیزه در آن دشت خوفان;
بس نخلبا ز غلمشین آل عبا زند;
بس ضریحی حزان جگر مصطفی درید;
بر حلق تشنه خلف مرتضی زند;
اهل حرم دریده گربان خشاده ممی;
فریاد بر در حرم خبربا زند;
روح الامین نیاده بنزانو سر حجاب;
تاریک شد ز دیدن او جشر آفتاب;
چون خون حلق تشنه هم بر زمین رسید;
جوسی شد صه خانه؛ ایمان هد خراب;
از بس شکستها تکه بارکان دین رسید;
نخال بلند او چو خانه بر زمین زند;
طوفان بر آسان ز غبار زمین رسید;
باد آن غبارا بمزار نبی رساند;
گرد از مدنیه بر فلل هفت مین رسید;
یکباره جامه در خر گردون بنیل زد;
چون این خبر بعیسی گردون نشین رسید;
پر شد فلل ز غلغله چون نوبت خروش;
از انبا با حضرت روح الامین رسید;
ضرد این خیال و هIMP غلت گار کین غبار;
تا دامن جلال جهان آریئین رسید;
هست از ملال گرچه بری ذات ذو الجلال;
او در دلست و هیچ دلی نیست بیملال.
چون اهل بیت دست بر اهل سنت زند;
آه از دمیکه با سوگ که خویشکان ز خاک;
آل علی جو شعله آتش علیم زند;
فریاد از آن زمان‌که جوانان اهل بیت;
کلگون شکن برعهده محشر بپر زند;
جمعی که زد بپر ضیافت‌شان شور کریلا;
در حشر صف زنان صف محشر بپر زند;
از صاحب حرمه که تو قع ضند باز;
آن نا کسان که تبیع بصید حرم زند;
پس بر سنان کسند سربرا که جبرئیل;
شوند غدار گیسوش از آپ سلسیبل;

"When they summoned mankind to the table of sorrow, they first issued the summons to the hierarchy of the Prophets.

When it came to the turn of the Saints, Heaven trembled at the blow which they smote on the head of the Lion of God.¹

Then they kindled a fire from sparks of diamond-dust and cast it on Hasan² the Chosen one.

Then they tore up from Madîna and pitched at Karbalá those pavilions to which even the angels were denied entrance.

¹ *I.e.* ‘Alí ibn Abí Ṭālîb, the Prophet’s cousin and son-in-law and the first of the Twelve Imáms.
² ‘Alí’s eldest son, the second Imám, said to have been poisoned at the instigation of Mu‘áwiya.
Many tall palm-trees from the grove of the *Family of the Cloak* \(^1\)
did the people of Kūfa fell in that plain with the axe of malice.
Many a blow whereby the heart of Muṣṭafá [Muḥammad] was rent
did they inflict on the thirsty throat of Murtaḍá ‘Alī's successor \(^2,\)
While his women, with collars torn and hair unloosed, raised their
laments to the Sanctuary of the Divine Majesty,
And the Trusted Spirit [Gabriel] laid his head in shame on his knees,
and the eye of the sun was darkened at the sight.
When the blood of his thirsty throat fell on the ground, turmoil arose
from the earth to the summit of God's high Throne.
The Temple of Faith came nigh to ruin through the many fractures
inflicted on the Pillars of Religion.
They cast to the ground his tall palm-tree \(^3\) even as the thorn-bush;
a deluge arose from the dust of the earth to heaven.
The breeze carried that dust to the Prophet's Tomb: dust arose from
Madīna to the seventh heaven.
When tidings of this reached Jesus dwelling in the heavenly sphere,
he forthwith plunged his garments in indigo \(^4\) in the vat of heaven.
Heaven was filled with murmuring when the turn to cry out passed
from the Prophets to the presence of the Trusted Spirit.
Mistaken imagination fancied that this dust \(^5\) had [even] reached
the skirts of the Creator's glory,
For although the Essence of the All-glorious is exempt from vexation,
He dwells in the heart, and no heart remains un vexed.
I am afraid that when they record the punishment of his murderer,
they may forthwith strike the pen through the Book of Mercy.
I am afraid that the Intercessors on the Resurrection Day may be
ashamed, by reason of this sin, to speak of the sins of mankind.
When the People of the House shall lay hands on the People of
Tyranny, the hand of God's reproach shall come forth from its
sleeve.
Alas for the moment when the House of ‘Alī, with blood dripping
from their winding-sheets, shall raise their standards from the
dust like a flame of fire!

\(^1\) The Prophet, his daughter Fāṭima and her husband ‘Alī and their
sons Ḥasan and Ḥusayn once sheltered under one cloak, whence these
five most holy beings are often collectively called by this title.
\(^2\) *I.e.* his younger son Ḥusayn, the third Imám and "Martyr of Kar-
balá."
\(^3\) *I.e.* stature, as in the fifth verse.
\(^4\) *I.e.* the colour of mourning in Persia.
\(^5\) *I.e.* sorrow and vexation.
Alas for that time when the youths of that Holy House shall dash together their crimson shrouds on the Resurrection Plain!

That company, whose ranks were broken by the strife of Karbalá, at the Resurrection in serried ranks will break the ranks of the uprisen.

What hopes from the Lord of the Sanctuary can those worthless ones entertain who wounded with their swords the quarry of the Sanctuary? Then [finally] they raise on a spear-point that Head from whose locks Gabriel washes the dust with the water of Salsabíl."

Whether or no this be accounted good poetry (and of course it loses much of its beauty in a bald prose translation encumbered with notes on expressions familiar to every Persian though strange to a foreigner and a non-Muslim) it at least reveals something of that deep emotion which the memory of the unforgettable tragedy of Karbalá never fails to arouse in the breast of even the least devout and serious-minded Persian. It has, like the poetry of Násir-i-Khusraw, who lived nearly five centuries before Muhtasham, the great merit of sincerity, and consequently has a claim to be regarded as genuine poetry which we seek in vain in the elaborately artificial and rhetorical compositions of many Persian poets who enjoy in their own country a far higher reputation.

One other marthiya, or elegy on the death of the Imám Husayn, I cannot refrain from quoting, both on account of the originality of its form and the generally irreligious character of its author, the poet Qá'ání (died A.D. 1853), one of the greatest and the least moral of the modern poets of Persia.

1 God or His Prophet.
2 No game or wild animal or bird may be slain within a certain radius of Mecca.
3 I.e. the head of the Imám Husayn.
4 One of the rivers of Paradise.

B. P. L.
بارد چه؟ خون! که؟ دیده، چسان؟ روز و شب، چرا؟
از چه؟ کدام غم؟ غیر سلطانی کریلا
نامش چه بود؟ حسین، ز نزاراً که، از علی
مامش که بود؟ فاطمه، جدّش که؟ مصطفی
چون شد؟ شهید شد، بکجا؟ دشت ماریه
کی؟ عاشق محترم، پنیان؟ نه بر ملا
شب کشته شد؟ نه روز، چه هنگام وقت ظهر
شد از گلو ب pérdida سرش، نی نی از قفا
سیراب کشته شد؟ نه، کس آبش نداد؟ داد
که؟ شیر، از چه چشم؟ ز سرممشه؟ فنا
مظلوم شد شیبید؟ بلی، جَرم داشت؟ نه
کارش چه بُد؟ هدایه، و بارش که پُد؟ خدا
این ظلیرا که کرود، یزید، این یزید گیست؟
ز اولاد هند، از چه کس؟ از نطفه؟ زنا
خود کرود این عمل؟ نه، فرستاد نامه
نزد گه؟ نزد زاده؟ مرجانه، دغاه
این زیاد زاده؟ مرجانه بُد؟ نعیم
از گفته، یزید تعلَف نکرد؟ لای
این نابکار کشته حسین را بدست خوشید
نه او روانه کرد سیه سوی ضریلا
میر سیه که بُد؟ عُمر سعد، او یزید
خلاق عزری فاطمه؟ نه شمر بی حیا
خنجر بُرد خنجر اورا تکرر شرم؟
کرد؛ از چه پس بردی؟ نذیرنفت ازو قضا،
بر چه؟ ببر آنگه شود خلقترا شفیع،
شرط فیاغتش چه بود؟ نوحه و بکا،
عس طِلْبّه شد هر از پرسانش ؛ بلی دو تن؛
دیگر که ؟ چه نادر، و دیگر که ؟ اقرباء
دیگر پسر ندشت ؛ چرا داشت ؛ آن که بود؟
سجاود ؛ چون بُد او ؛ بفر و رنگ مبتلا،
مانند او بکرلاز پدر ؛ چنی بهام رفت،
با عَر و احتشام ؛ چه با ذْلّت و عنا،
تنها ؛ چه با زنا احمر ؛ نامشان چه بود؛
زینب سکینه فاطمه خلیفه بی نوا،
بر تن لباس داشت ؛ بلی گرد رهگزار;
بر سر عیامه داشت ؛ بلی چوب اشقا،
بیمار بُد ؛ بلی ! چه دوا داشت ؛ انکه چهرش،
بعد از دوا غذاش چه بُد ؛ خون دول غذا،
کس بود هم‌سره ؛ بلی اطفال بی پدر;
دیگر که بود ؛ تب چه نمی گشت ازو جهاد؛
از زینبت زنان چه بجا مانده بود ؛ دو چیز؛
طوق سرم بالدن و خلخالی غر بیا،
گبر این ستم گنده ؛ چه، مجوس و یبود ؛ نه،
هندو ؛ چه ؟ پت پوست ؛ نه، فرباد ازین جفا،
قانی است قابلِ این شعرّها ؛ بلی،
خواهید چه ؛ رحمت ؛ از چه ؛ ز حق ؛ کی ؛ صف ـ جزا؛
From grief! What grief? The grief of the Monarch of Karbálá!
What was his name? Ḥusayn! Of whose race? ‘Ali’s!
Who was his mother? Fāṭima! Who was his grandsire? Muṣṭafá!
How was it with him? He fell a martyr! Where? In the Plain of Máriya!
When? On the tenth of Muḥarram! Secretly? No, in public!
Was he slain by night? No, by day! At what time? At noontide!
Was his head severed from the throat? No, from the nape of the neck!
Was he slain unthirsting? No! Did none give him to drink? They did!
Who? Shimr! From what source? From the source of Death!
Was he an innocent martyr? Yes! Had he committed any fault?
No!

What was his work? Guidance! Who was his friend? God!
Who wrought this wrong? Yazíd! Who is this Yazíd?
One of the children of Hind! By whom? By bastard origin!
Did he himself do this deed? No, he sent a letter!
To whom? To the false son of Marjána!
Was Ibn Ziyád the son of Marjána? Yes!
Did he not withstand the words of Yazíd? No!
Did this wretch slay Ḥusayn with his own hand?
No, he despatched an army to Karbálá!
Who was the chief of the army? ‘Umar ibn Sa’d!
Did he cut down Fāṭima’s dear folk? No, shameless Shimr!
Was not the dagger ashamed to cut his throat?
It was! Why then did it do so? Destiny would not excuse it!
Wherefore? In order that he might become an intercessor for mankind!
What is the condition of his intercession? Lamentation and weeping!
Were any of his sons also slain? Yes, two!
Had he no other son? Yes, he had! Who was that?

1 Yazíd was the son of Mu‘áwiya, the rival of ‘Ali and the founder of the Umayyad dynasty, who was the son of Abú Sufyán and Hind “the liver-eater” (Ākilatul-akbád). The term “bastard origin” should refer to Ibn Ziyád, not to Yazíd. See the Kitáb al-Fahhrí, ed. Ahlwardt, pp. 133–5.
‘The Worshippers’ (Sajjād)¹! How fared he? Overwhelmed with grief and sorrow!
Did he remain at his father’s Karbalā? No, he went to Syria!
In glory and honour? No, in abasement and distress!
Alone? No, with the women of the household! What were their names?
Zaynab, Sakīna, Fāṭima, and poor portionless Kulthūm!
Had he garments on his body? Yea, the dust of the road!
Had he a turban on his head? Yea, the staves of the wicked ones!
Was he sick? Yes! What medicine had he? The tears of his eyes!
What was his food after medicine? His food was heart’s blood!
Did any bear him company? Yes, the fatherless children!
Who else was there? The fever which never left him!
What was left of the women’s ornaments? Two things,
The collar of tyranny on their necks, and the anklet of grief on their feet!
Would a pagan (gabr) practise such cruelty? No! A Magian or a Jew? No!
A Hindoo? No! An idolater? No! Alas for this harshness!
Is Qā’ānī capable of such verses? Yes!
What seeks he? Mercy! From whom? From God! When? In the ranks of recompense!²

Besides these marāṭhī (singular marthiyā), or threnodies of the classical type, the contemplation of the sufferings and misfortunes of the Imāms has inspired a copious literature, both in verse and prose, of a more popular kind. The mourning proper to the month of Muḥarram finds expression not only in the actual dramatic representations of this cycle of tragedies, of which there are at least forty (a few of which, however, are connected with prophets and holy men antecedent to Islām), but in recitations of these melancholy events known as Rawda [Rawza]-Khwānī. These latter are said to derive this name from one of the earliest and best-known books of this kind, the Rawdatu [Rawzatu]’sh-Shuhādā (“Garden

¹ ‘Alī ibn Ḥusayn, commonly called Zaynūl-ʿAbīdīn (“the Ornament of the Worshippers”), who, on the death of his father at Karbalā, succeeded him as the Fourth Imām.
of the Martyrs" of Hūsayn Wā'īz-i-Kāshīfī, so that these functions are called "Rawza-readings," whether the readings be taken from this or some similar work, such as the Tāfānūl-Bukā ("Deluge of Weeping") or the Asrāru'sh-Shahādat ("Mysteries of Martyrdom"). Such entertainments are commonly given in the month of Muḥarram by rich notables, nobles, statesmen or merchants, who provide an adequate number of professional rhapsodists or reciters of this class, called Rawza-Khwāns, and a more or less sumptuous supper to follow. I possess a copy of a curious little poem entitled Kitābu's-Sufra fi dhamma-r-Riyā ("the Book of the Table, censuring hypocrisy") in which the ostentation of the host and the greed of the guests is satirized with some pungency. The following lines describe how the word is passed round as to whose entertainment is likely to prove most satisfactory to the guests:

كنون بشنو از من يکی داستان
که رنگین ترست از یک بوستان
کسانیکه گیرند عزای حسین
بجلس نشینند با ثور و شین
برای جکرگوشه فاطمه
سیه پوش گرندید یکسرهده
نمايند بر پا عزا خاندها
بگیرند عزای شه گریلا
په گوش پمی میبا کنند
یکی مجلس نغز بر پا کنند

1 He died in 910/1504-5. See my Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion, pp. 441 and 503-4.
2 The author's name is given as Turkh of Shīrāz, and the little book (48 pp.) was lithographed at Bombay in 1309/1891-2.
مفهوم، به نقطه، گذشت، فرخ، اسباب، ظرفیت، زیادی، مشغول، دیکن، بروی، زرد، خوبی، به، به، نمایند، آمیزه، گونه، مجلس، سراغ، یکی، زان، میان، گوبه، هنرمند، پسنیده، یاران، خبر، آگاهی، من، و، حاجی، عباس، رفتار، دوش، سوی، بزرم، آن، شخص، بستگی، فروش، نبود، اندی آن، مجلس، خصوص، بجز، چاهی، و، قهوه، چیزی، دوترد، ندیدیم، آنجا، کس، از، مردمان، بجز، بانی، و، یک، دو، تن، روضه، خوان، نشستن، در، آن، بزرم، نبود، روا، به، چند، و، چاهی، ندارد، صفا، خداوند، از، آن، به، خورشند، نیست، که، در، مجلس، شریف، چند، نیست، و، الکن، بروز، انس، و، جان، فلان، جاست، بزرمی، چو، بزرگ، شبان، عجب، مجلس، خوب، و، راهت، فزایت، یقین، دانه، آن، مجلس، بیرایست
در آن بزِم چاه‌های بود آق‌پور،
همش قند پزیدی بجای شکر;
زنی به‌پی قلیان‌هایی بلور;
که یاد دل از قلقل وی سرور;
رود عطر تنبایکویش چند میل;
درخشش بسر آتشش چو سبیل;
نخواهید در آنجا شود آب صرف;
بجز شریت قند و لیمو و برف;
نموده‌است بانی عالی جناب;
ز هر عشقخیر داکتری انتخاب;
یک از داکتران میرزا گلای است;
که غویند او روضه خوان باشی است;
دکر یک جلال داکتر رشته است;
که درب‌ایآوازرا کشتی است;
ز کرمان و از یزد و کرمان‌بجان;
ز شیراز و از شوشتر و اصفهان;
همه موسقی دان و خوش صوت و نغز;
بود دیگران قشر و ایشان چو مغنی;
حقیقت عجب مجلس بیرباست;
پبان بان چند رفن آنجا بجاست;
چو یاران کشند این سخن استباغ;
بدان بزِم یکسر کشند اجتماعِ;

"Now hear from me a story which is more brightly coloured than a garden flower,
Of those who make mourning for Ḥusayn and sit in assemblies in frenzied excitement."
All wear black for Fátima’s darling,
Establish houses of mourning and make lament for the King of Karbalá.
In every corner they prepare a feast and arrange a pleasant assembly;
They carpet court-yard and chamber, they bedeck with inscriptions
arch and alcove;
They spread fair carpets, they set out graceful furnishings;
A host of gluttonous men, all beside themselves and intoxicated with
the cup of greed,
On whom greed has produced such an effect that, like the stamp on
the gold,
It has set its mark on their foreheads, make enquiry about such
assemblies.
One of them says, ‘O comrades, well-approved friends, versed in
affairs,
‘I and Ḥāji ‘Abbás went yesterday to the entertainment of that
green-grocer fellow.
‘In that modest entertainment there was nothing but tea and coffee,
‘And we saw no one there except the host and one or two nawsa-
khwáns."
‘To sit in such an assembly is not meet, for without sugar and tea
it has no charm.
‘God is not pleased with that servant in whose entertainment is
neither sherbet nor sugar.
‘But, by Him who gives men and jinn their daily bread, in such-
and-such a place is an entertainment worthy of kings,
‘A wonderfully pleasant and comfortable entertainment, which, I am
sure, is devoid of hypocrisy.
‘There is white tea and sugar-loaf of Yazd in place of sugar,
‘And crystal qalýáns with flexible tubes, at the gargoyle of which the
heart rejoices.
‘The fragrance of their tobacco spreads for miles, and the fire gleams
on their heads like [the star] Canopus.
‘No water will be drunk there, but draughts of lemon, sugar and
snow.

1 I.e. her son the Imám Ḥusayn. Jigar-gúsha (lit. “corner of the
liver”) is an expression very similar to the Irish cúripe mo époróe.
2 Again Ḥusayn, “the martyr of Karbalá.”
3 I.e. its trace is ineffaceably stamped upon them.
4 The professional reciters or rhapsodists employed on these occa-
sions.
'One of the reciters is Mírzá Káshi, who, they say, is the chief of rauza-khwáns.

'Another of them is the rhapsodist of Rasht, who is like a boat in the ocean of song.

'From Kirmán, Yazd and Kirmánsáhá, from Shíráz, Shushtar and Isfahán,

'All are skilled musicians of melodious and charming voices: they are like the kernel and others like the shell.

'In truth it is a wonderful entertainment, devoid of hypocrisy: by your life it is right to attend it!' When the friends hear this speech with one accord they assemble at that banquet.'

(On the whole, however, the emotion evoked by these Muḥarram mournings, whether dramatic representations or recitations, is deep and genuine, and even foreigners and non-Muslims confess themselves affected by them.) "If the success of a drama," says Sir Lewis Pelly in the Preface to his translation of thirty-seven scenes from the Ta'ziyá, "is to be measured by the effects which it produces upon the people for whom it is composed, or upon the audiences before whom it is represented, no play has ever surpassed the tragedy known in the Mussulman world as that of Hasan and Husain. Mr Matthew Arnold, in his 'Essays on Criticism,' elegantly sketches the story and effects of this 'Persian Passion Play,' while Macaulay's Essay on Lord Clive has encircled the 'Mystery' with a halo of immortality." Even the critical and sceptical Gibbon says: "In a distant age and climate the tragic scene of the death of Hosein will awaken the sympathy of the coldest reader." Sayyidu'sh-Shuhádá ("the Chief of the Martyrs") the Persians call their favourite hero, who is, indeed, in their eyes more even than this, since his intercession will be accepted by God for his sinful followers even when the intercession of the

Prophet has failed. "Go thou," says the latter to him on the Resurrection Day, "and deliver from the flames every one who has in his life-time shed but a single tear for thee, every one who has in any way helped thee, every one who has performed a pilgrimage to thy shrine, or mourned for thee, and every one who has written tragic verse for thee Bear each and all with thee to Paradise." To the Persian Shifa, therefore, Husayn occupies the same position that Jesus Christ does to the devout Christian, notwithstanding the fact that the doctrine of the Atonement is utterly foreign to the original spirit of Islam.

To us no Persian verse could well appear more exaggerated in its deification of a human being than this:

مرد گویند خدامی و من اندکی غضب آیر

پرده بر داشته میسند بخود نگاه خدامی

"Men say Thou art God, and I am moved to anger: raise the veil, and submit no longer to the shame of Godhead!"

But I am not sure whether the following verse, ascribed to the Babi poet Nabil, would not more greatly shock the Persian Shifa:

صدای طلعت نار من
بدوید سوی دیار من
سر و جان گنبد نتار من
خی من به شنشه کوبلا

"O witnesses of my aspect of fire, haste ye towards my home; Make head and life my offering, for I am the Monarch of Karbalá!"

1 Sir Lewis Pelly's *Miracle Play*, vol. ii, p. 347.
2 By an Azali controversialist it is said to have been written of Bahá'u'lláh by one of his followers, but I have been told that it, or a very similar verse, was really composed in honour of Husayn.
3 *Nabil* is a Babi substitute for *Muhammad*, the numerical values of both names being equivalent to 92. The poet Nabil at one time after the Bab's death advanced a claim on his own behalf, and the verse here cited appears to have been composed at this period. Later he became one of the most devoted adherents of Bahá'u'lláh, on whose death in 1892 he drowned himself at 'Akká.
It would be an interesting study, but beyond the capacity of this volume, to trace the growth of the Ḥusayn-Legend from its comparatively meagre historical basis, as given by Ṭabarī and the earlier Arab historians, to the elaborate romance into which it has finally developed in the taʿziyās and rawza-khwāns. But the romantic element appears early, even in the narrative of Abū Mikhnaf Lūṭ ibn Yaḥyā, who flourished in the first half of the second century of the hijra (circa A.D. 750), and it has even been suggested that Husayn has been induced with the attributes of some far more ancient prototype like Adonis. At any rate no one at the present day can see anything more like the performances of the priests of Baal than the ghastly ceremonies of the ʿĀshūrā or Rūs-i-Qatl which take place on the tenth of Muḥarram (the anniversary of Husayn’s death at Karbalā) wherever there is a considerable Persian colony, but especially, of course, in Persia itself.

Certain episodes in the Ḥusayn-Legend would almost seem to indicate an unconscious sense of solidarity with the Christians on the part of the Shiʿa Persians arising from their participation in the doctrine of the Atonement. The best-known example of this is the conversion and martyrdom of the “Firangi ambassador” at the Court of Yazīd, a very favourite scene in the taʿziyās, and considered especially appropriate when European visitors are included in the audience. Another instance occurs in the Asrāru’š-Shaḥādat, or “Mysteries of Martyrdom,” of Ismaʿīl Khān “Sarbāz,” when Ibn Saʿd invites certain Christians to aid

1 See Wüstefeld’s Die Geschichtsschreiber der Araber, No. 19 (pp. 5–6), and his translation of this work under the title of Der Tod des Husein ben ʿAll und die Rache: ein historischer Roman aus dem Arabischen (Göttingen, 1883).
3 Lithographed with crude illustrations at Ţihrān in 1274/1857–58.
him in killing the Imám Husayn, but when the eyes of their leader fell upon him—

"He saw Karbalá as the Throne of Divine Majesty, he saw that Throne wet with God’s blood; By the pen of imagination an impression grew in his heart, 'Surely this is God in such glory and splendour! 'If he be not God, then surely he is Jesus, the Sun of the Throne of our Faith.'"

Thereupon, being convinced of the truth of Islám and the sanctity of Husayn—

"With a hundred frenzied enthusiasms he sought permission to engage in the battle, and departed to offer his life as a sacrifice for Husayn."

Since, however, we also find stories of the conversion of an Indian king (presumably a pagan) and even of a lion, the object may be to emphasize the cruelty and hard-heartedness of the professing Muslims who compassed the death of Husayn and his fellow-martyrs by depicting the sympathy evoked by their sufferings even in the hearts of unbelievers and savage animals.

The librettos giving the words actually spoken by the

1 This expression in the mouth of a professing Muslim is extraordinary.
actors in the *ta'ziyás* are not often met with, though lithographed copies exist, of which, by the kindness of my friend the late George Grahame, formerly Consul in different parts of Persia, I possess half a dozen. As an example of their style I shall here cite a passage from the "Martyrdom of Hurr ibn Yazíd ar-Riyyáḥī¹," wherein an Arab from Kūfa brings to the Imám Husayn the news of the execution of his cousin Muslim ibn 'Aqlī.

¹ This constitutes a separate scene in Sir L. Pelly's *Miracle Plays*, vol. i, pp. 171–189.
نوشته‌نامهٔ بهن‌نامه‌های اشتياق؛
فانک خشیده عالم‌نشین بتوسی ملک عراق؛
بیستن بگو تو ز مسلم بهار خبر داری؛
کسی بکوهه‌ای با خو دارد از وفا بیاری؛
(عرب) مهرس از حالت مسلم فدایت;
بیا آقا بوسیر دست و پایت;
مرو در کوههای سلطان ابرار;
که میرسر شوی محسون و بی پار؛
مرو در کوههای سرور امان است;
بکن رحمی علی اکبر جوان است;
مرو در پرده در خوار گردی;
ایسر کوچه و پازار گردید;
(آمام) عرب از حالت مسلم بیان کن؛
(عرب) برای مسلم محسون فغان کن؛
(آمام) بگو در کوهه‌ای نش حلال مسلم;
(عرب) بدان بر گشت‌هشش دش اقبال مسلم;
(آمام) مکر کوهی تنش در خوان کشیدند;
(عرب) سر باکش ز ملک تن بزیدند;
(آمام) مکر شرند جمش پاره پاره؛
(عرب) زندب جسم شریف به قناره;
(آمام) دکر بر گو چه شرند قوم اشرار;
(عرب) کشیدندش میان‌شیری و بازار;
(آمام) بگو از حالت طفیلان مسلم;
(عرب) شنداند اندر جنان میسمان مسلم;
(آمام) حک بر آن کوهگان ظلم و جفا کرد;
(عرب) سر ایشان ز تن حارث جدا ضریر.
"How the Arab comes from Kûfa bringing news of the martyrdom of Muslim ibn 'Aqil.

(Arab)  ‘I whom thou seest coming with an hundred passionate strains
Am the hoopoe coming from Sheba into the presence of Solomon.
I come from Kûfa, having tidings of poor Muslim,
I come enlarging the spirit like the morning breeze.
In my head is a longing to meet the son of Fâtima,  
I come as the remedy for the pain of a wounded heart.’

('Abbâs)  ‘To this gate, of whose pavilion the dust is camphor
And collyrium for the angels’ eyes, and its servants the Hûris.
By God, this gate is the qibla of all faithful folk,
And a house of healing to those stricken with sorrow!’

(Arab)  ‘My salutation to thee, O exemplar of mankind;
I come from Kûfa, O leader of the people of Paradise!
For God’s sake whither goest thou, O my lord?
Explain to me [I conjure thee] by the God of jinn and men!’

(The Imám)  ‘And on thee [be my salutation], O messenger of comely face!

Even now I am going to Kûfa in an agitated condition.
They have written to me letters of longing:
Heaven draws my reins towards the land of ‘Iráq.
Tell me, therefore, if thou hast news of Muslim:
Has any one in Kûfa loyally aided him?’

1 I.e. the Imám Hûsain, son of ‘Alí and Fâtima the Prophet’s daughter.
2 The Hûrul-'Ayn, or black-eyed damsels of Paradise.
3 The point to which the worshipper turns in prayer in order to face Mecca-wards.
(Arab) 'May I be thy sacrifice! Ask not of Muslim's case!
Come, master, let me kiss thy hands and feet!
Go not to Kūfa, O King of the righteous!
For I fear that thou may'st become sorrowful and friendless.
Go not to Kūfa, O Lord! It were a pity!
Be merciful! 'Alī Akbar is so young!
Go not to Kūfa! Zaynab will be humiliated,
And will be led captive through the streets and markets!'

(Together)

(Imám) 'O Arab, make known Muslim's condition!'

(Arab) 'Lament for grief-stricken Muslim!'

(Imám) 'Tell me, how fared it with Muslim in Kūfa?'

(Arab) 'Know that Muslim's fortune failed.'

(Imám) 'Did the Kūfans drag his body through blood?'

(Arab) 'They severed his innocent head from the kingdom of his body.'

(Imám) 'Did they cut his body in pieces?'

(Arab) 'They stuck his noble body on the headsman's hook.'

(Imám) 'Tell me, what further did these wicked people do?'

(Arab) 'They dragged him through the city and market.'

(Imám) 'Tell me, how fares it with Muslim's children?'

(Arab) 'Hārith severed their heads from their bodies.'

(Imám) 'Alas for Muslim's weeping eyes!'

(Arab) 'These are the garments of Muslim's children.'

(Both) 'Alas that faithful Muslim has been slain by the cruelty of wicked men!''

It has only been possible here to touch the fringe of this vast literature of what is commonly and not inappropriately termed the Persian Passion Play, and I have had to content myself with a few specimens of the main types in which it is manifested, namely the classical threnody or elegy (marthiya) of Muḥtāsham and his imitators; the more

1 The eldest son of the Imám Ḥusayn. His death forms the subject of Scene xvii of Pelly's Miracle Play (vol. i, pp. 287–303).
2 The daughter of 'Alī and sister of Ḥasan and Ḥusayn.
3 It is not clear from the text whether this verse is uttered by one or both of the speakers.

B. P. L.
popular presentations of these legends in verse, prose, or mixed verse and prose, contained in innumerable and obscure lithographed books, of which I have chosen the Asrâr-i-sh-Shahîdat as a type, not because it enjoys any supreme excellence, but simply because it is one of those of which I happen to possess a copy; and lastly the actual librettos of the dramatized ṭaṭsîyâs, to be seen at their best at the Royal Takya of Ṭâhrân during the first ten days of the month of Muḥarram. Manuscript note-books for the use of rawza-khwâns on such occasions are commonly met with in collections of Persian books, and the full description of one such (Add. 423) will be found in my Catalogue of the Persian M.S.S. in the Cambridge University Library¹. Most of these pieces are anonymous, but amongst the poets named are Muqbil, Mukhlîş, Mawzûn, Nasîm, Šâfî and Lawî, of none of whom can I find any biographical notice.

(4) Bâbî Poetry.

One of my young Persian friends who, like so many of the rising generation, deplores the influence of the mullâs and rawza-khwâns and the religious atmosphere created by them, especially in connection with the Muḥarram celebrations, admitted to me that at least the work has been done so thoroughly that even the most ignorant women and illiterate peasants are perfectly familiar with all the details of these legends of martyrdom, however little they may know of the authentic history of the events portrayed or the persons represented. Even the greatest mujtâhidâs, like Mullâ Muḥammad Bâqir-i-Majlisî, however little they might approve the exaggerations and even blasphemies which characterized the Passion Plays in their final popular developments, were at great pains to supply their compatriots with popular and easily

¹ No. LXVI, pp. 122–142. On this last page are given references to descriptions of other similar collections.
intelligible religious treatises in Persian, so that a knowledge of these matters might not be confined to Arabic scholars or professed theologians.

One effect of the ta'ziyeh has been to create amongst the Persians a widely diffused enthusiasm for martyrdom, of which sufficient account is not taken by those who, misled by the one-sided portrait, or rather caricature, presented by Morier in his famous Hajji Baba, deem them an essentially timid and even cowardly folk. The English missionaries in Persia, who in sympathy for and understanding of the people amongst whom they work seem to me greatly superior to those whose labours lie in other fields, know better, and no one has done fuller justice to the courage and steadfastness of the Bábí and Bahá'í martyrs than the Reverend Napier Malcolm in his valuable book Five Years in a Persian Town (Yazd). Another told me an interesting story from his own experience in Isfahán. One of the chief mujtahids of that city had condemned some Bábís to death as apostates, and my informant, who was on friendly terms with this ecclesiastic, ventured to intercede for them. The mujtahid was at first inclined to take his intervention very ill, but finally the missionary said to him, “Do you suppose that the extraordinary progress made by this sect is due to the superiority of their doctrines? Is it not simply due to the indomitable courage of those whom you and your colleagues condemn to die for their faith? But for the cruel persecutions to which the Bábís have from the first been subjected, and which they have endured with such unflinching courage, would they now be more numerous or important than a hundred obscure heresies in Persia of which no one takes any notice and which are devoid of all significance? It is you and such as you who have made the Bábís so numerous and so formidable, for in place of each one whom you kill a
hundred converts arise.” The mujtahid reflected for a while and then replied, “You are right, and I will spare the lives of these people.”

Many of these martyrs died with verses of poetry on their lips. Sulaymán Khán, with wicks flaming in his mangled body, sang:

پیک دست جامبرای باده و یک دست زلفی یار
رقصی چنین میانه میدانی آرزوست

“In one hand the wine-cup, in the other the tresses of the Friend,
Such a dance in the midst of the market-place is my desire.”

One of the “Seven Martyrs” exclaimed, when the headman’s sword, missing its stroke, dashed his turban to the ground:

ای خوش آن عاشقی سرمست که در پای حبیب
سر و دستان نداند که گذارانداز

“Happy that intoxicated lover who at the feet of the Friend
Knows not whether it be head or turban which he casts.”

Of the ancient Arabs Wilfrid Blunt well says: “Their courage was of a different quality, perhaps, from that admired among ourselves. It was the valour of a nervous, excitable people who required encouragement from onlookers and from their own voices to do their best...,” and the same holds good to some extent of the Persians. Poetry is called “Lawful Magic” (Sihr-i-Halál) because, in the words of the author of the Chahár Maqála², it is “that art whereby the poet... can make a little thing appear great and a great thing small, or cause good to appear in the garb of evil and evil in the form of good... in such a way that by his suggestion

1 A good instance of that sense of justice (insáf) which my talented friend and former pupil Mr W. A. Smart of the Consular Service regards as one of the most admirable attributes of the Persians.
men's temperaments become affected with depression or exaltation; whereby he conduces to the accomplishment of great things in the order of the world."

The Karbalá legend is a potent factor in producing in these martyrs the psychological state which makes them not only endure with fortitude but glory in their sufferings. In one of the two celebrated poems ascribed to the Bábí heroine Qurratu'l-ʻAyn, who was one of the victims of the great persecution of August, 1852, occurs the verse:

من و عشیٰ آن مه حورو که چو شد صلای بلا برو
بنشاط و قققه شد فرو که آنا الشیہد بکریرا،

"For me the love of that fair-faced Moon who, when the call of affliction came to him,
Went down with exultation and laughter, crying, 'I am the Martyr at Karbalá!'"

In its original and primitive form Bábísm was Shi'ism of the most exaggerated type, and the Báb himself the 'Gate' to the unseen Imám or Mahdí. Gradually he came to regard himself as actually the Imám; then he became the 'Point' (Nuqta), an actual Manifestation of the Supreme Being, and his chief disciples became re-incarnations, or rather "returns" or "recurrences" of the Imáms, and the whole tragedy of Karbalá was re-enacted "in a new horizon" at Shaykh Tabarsi in Mázandarán. The nineteen chapters constituting the first "Unity" (Wáhid) of the Persian Bayán (the most intelligible and systematic of the Báb's writings) are entirely devoted to the thesis that all the protagonists of the Islamic Cycle have returned in this cycle to the life of the world,

1 Both are given in full, with versified translations, in my Materials for the Study of the Bábí Religion, pp. 347-51.
2 Compare the initial verse of the poem cited on p. 173 supra.
3 Concerning this typical doctrine of "Return" (Raj'at) see my Materials etc., pp. 330, 335 and 338, and my translation of the New History, pp. 334 et seqq.
and Hájji Mírzá Jání, the earliest Bábí historian and himself a victim of the persecution of 1852, gives a long comparison between Karbalá and Shaykh Tabarsi, greatly in favour of the latter.

In the eleventh and last section of my Materials for the Study of the Bábí Religion (pp. 341–58) I published a selection of Bábí and Bahá’í poems, and here I will only add to these a qaṣīda comprising 133 verses composed in the spring of 1885 by Mírzá Naʻím, the Bahá’í poet of Si-dih, of Si-dih near Isfahán, an ardent Bahá’í, whose son, as I lately heard from a friend in the British Legation at Tihrán, is still resident there. Mírzá Naʻím sent me an autograph copy of this poem in the summer of 1902 through my late friend George Grahame, and in the concluding colophon he states that he was born at Si-dih in 1272/1855–6 and came to Tihrán in 1304/1886–7. The poem is so long that I originally intended only to give extracts from it, but, finding that this could not be done without injury to the sequence of ideas, I have decided to print it in full as a typical Bahá’í utterance having the authority of an autograph.

هو الله تعالى شانه،
مرا بود دل و چشی ز گردش گردون،
یکی جو دجله آب و یکی چو لجه خون;
چرا ننالم سخت و چرا نگتریم زار;
گه از مضیق جبان ره نمیبرم بیرون;
درون دایره مقصود خود نسی یام;
مرا نه پای برون باشد و نه جای درون;

2 He is referred to in my Year amongst the Persians (p. 519), where he is wrongly described as a native of Abáda.
میه فایده از جاه اگر شور قارون،
میه عایده از مال اگر شور قارون،
چو می نهنده نمیدهد ضیاع و غفار
چو بنگردی مریمین بیش بنان و بینون
میه فخره همه نوشغر غفار یا جللاب
میه فضل همه پوشمر حیریر یا اشکون
چو مالک و مال نماننده میشمین فقیر
چو رژگار نیاپید چه شاد و چه محزن
بعقلا نازم و هر جانور از آن مملو
بروح بالبر و هر جایی از آن مشحون
میه این چه که گویرم چه کرد استکدر
میه خیرین چه که دانیر چه بود نابلیون

میه گوار چه به شهدال و بدر از منک
بقدر تابیش خور بر وی هست چهره نمون
چه فایده است نفس و نفس را دانیر
که خور زماد و همه از ظلل ارض نیلی گون
چه لازم است که گویرم ثوابت و سیاار
همه شموش و خرآتند در خیر گردود
میه این چه که دانیر گرد نمون
میه نقاد و روان وضع جذبه اند زیون
میه گوار که باد آن هوا که موجه زند
خفیف خشک به فوق و ثقیل تر سوی دون

۱۰ چه گویرم آنکه قهر بر زمین زمین بر شبیش
هر او بشپس دختر میچمد به پرمانون
چه گویرم این رمل سالم است پا مصدوق
چه گویرم این رجز مطوف است پا مشبوخ
زرصف و نحو و حروف و قرائت و تجوید،
ز وقف حکفیان و ز وصل بصریون،
ز اشتقاء و بدیع و معانی و انشاه،
بيان و خط و عروض و قربی شعرو فنون،
رجال و فقه و اصول و جدل و استنباط،
حیدث و حجت و تفسیر و ست و قانون،
۲۲، ز رس و هیأت و جبر و مناظر و تاریخ،
حساب و هندسه جغرافی از جمعی شؤون،
سیاست مدن و شرع و زرع و کن و لغات،
حقوقی ملت و خرج و خروج و قرض و تشوون،
طب و علاقو و تشريح و نیس و قاروئه،
خواص جمله، ادیوه مرور و معجون،
طلسر و دعوت و تعبیر و کمیا و جیل،
نگو و طالع و اعداد و رمل و جفر و فسون،
علوم فلسفه و منطق از قدری و جدید،
تحاشیات خواشی تنها تنست و نست متنون،
۵۰، بیهین علوم هلا ناقد عصر خویش مده,
کنین معامله گشتند علیالی مغبون،
از این علوم سوی علیم دین حق پدری،
که غیر معرفت حق همه فرب و فسون،
فسون فلسفه مشنو که سرب سفه است،
قنون دهري و خنده تبام جبل و جنون،
چرا ظنون طبیعی شهرده تو علوم؟
چرا علوم الی گرفته تو ظنون؟
مقال این حکا چیست جبلی مشنوک،
کلار این جبلی چیست سرسر مظنون،
فی دفع حیا و صدق و صفاً
فی فضی و دل و مکرو و مجنون

به ایا؟ ارزه است و اشتراک حضور
به ایا؟ زخم است و امتال به بطن

خیال‌شان به جو کوتاه و جعیشان همه تنگ
فیونشان همه و همه و همه شونشان همه دون

نبوه به شریعت آفر بر این یا وجوه
نبوه به خص از عرض و مال و واجان مامون

بهم حق سخن این گروه ظاهر بین
بهم مالت و ملک است بدترين طاعون

۲۰ شوی ز علم بی سالانه کورین
۲۰ شوی ز شهرت کالبی نیره میمون

هر آنچه که نبی این زمان بیبن مشهد
هر آنچه که نبی حکیراً زمان بیبن مطعون

علومشان همه از انباها وی ناقص
فیونشان همه از نواها وی ملحمه

و لیکن از در انصف در جهان انسان
بعلم و دانش می‌بند باشد از ما دون

بعلم و حکمت ره می‌بند به‌دای قدیر
بعقل و کر بردن به حضرت بیچون

۲۱: تعلیم است که فورمده افسل الاعمال
تفگر است کنی او ساخته به از سبعون

نیفر ذات قدم‌پای، حکیم‌های برگر
چو سوکرَتی قهو بقراط ارسلو و زیدون

چو بو علی و چو اقلایس و چو بطلمیوس
چو طالس و چو فلاطون چو هرمز و شیلون
یک‌دانه له بالعشق و الإشراق،
پس هاون اذا پیمان‌ون از پسون،
جبان سری که حکیم اندر بچای خود،
زمان تنی که علوم اندر او بچای عیون،
ولی تو نست عمرن توشن فنون سرشت،
ولی تو خام ضعف آپری علوم حرون،
نهونده سری ریپ آوری برپ قدری؛
زهى منزق که قبض آورد ز انتیپون،
همد تا بلحد عرم جو و لو بالشین،
ز علیر حق که بر آنست اعتیاد و راکون؛
حقایقی حکیشرا حکیمها مبعوث;
جوامع کلمشرا ادیبا مرهون;
طبیع اند چو اجسام در ظنی و در بروز;
حقایق انپ چو ارواح در خفا و گیبون؛
زتنک ظرین درین فضای نا محدود;
بود عوامل بپیحمد بیکدکر مدهنی;
امور عاردرا عام دید و خاصه چصاص;
بقدر خود و هو آنتر بی‌سیاسون؛
بهن پست‌ترین صنع حادثش نرسد؛
چه جای ذات قدیمیه هزار افلاتون.
بمحقت حق متحرک بود سبیه و نجوم;
بله ز جان متأثر بود عیون و جفون،
ز امر نیست پس از میشت جنبش اجرام;
ز آپ نیست پس از چیست گردش طاحون؛
یکی ببحیر تامل ز روی عقل ببین;
درین سراچه که ببگی از آن بود مسکونی.
به گریکی زجماد و نبات و از حیوان‌
هزار عالمی نا دیده ظاهر و مکنونی
واری عقلی تو عقلی دگر بود غالب
در این جان تو جان دگر بود مکنونی
بیبان بدن‌های که آن دانه با از او هدیه‌ای
بیبان به بیضه‌های که آن بیضه با ابد مقرینی

نیمان و ظاهر از این صد جهان طیور و فروخ
قدیر و حادث از آن صدچین ثمار و گصن

۲. حکا بکوی حقیقت گذش توانایی ضرر
تو حفر سرای طبیعت نیروی بیرون
چنانه بینی فیض حیات از این عالم
بطن الاز ماد میرسد ببطون

۳. زما ورای طبیعت اگر محدود نرسید
بدین جهان بهدا این جهان شود وارون

۴. زما ورای طبیعت در این پیمی جهان
عوالمی است خدارا ز حیات و عد افزون
گروهی از عقلا بر خلای عادات کال
بطوع و طبع بین غوطه میزند بشون

۵. خلاف طبع گروهی بعر و غیر خوش‌
خلاف طبع فرقی ز جوهر کین مبنون

۶. بیبل طبع بیبن جمعی از جهان بیزان
بطیب نفس نگر قومی از وطن نرگون

۷. بیبن بشوق و شعف فرته همه مقتول
بیبن بذوق و طرب زره همه مسجون

۸. بطوع سلسله در عذاب رنگ‌نگ
بطب طائفه در بالای گوناگون.
جمیع مست و غزلخوان وی‌لی‌ه نه‌ی از باده‌،
تیام محو و پریشان وی‌لی‌ه نه‌ی از افیون‌;
چگونه داد خبر داکیال از امروز‌;
چگونه کر دثر قول اشیا اکنون‌;
چگونه گشت وفا وی‌لی‌ه جمعی کتب;
بطبی مصحف و تورات و صحف و انگلیون‌;
کبی بدار سلام و کبی باورشلیم؛
کبی بکوبل و کاهی ادوه و گه صیون؛
معین آمده ارض مقدّس مععود;
مؤّنی آمده پور مبارک میمون؛
و حکاف جَّا‌ه لَنَا اّلّحَقُ كَمَا اَشْارُ لَنَا;
نبیّا العّرّبّیّ و النّیرّة الیادون؛
چنان بوعده جمال قدم نمود جمال;
از آن جمال مبارک زمانه یافت شگون.
چگونه گشت عیان حق بوادی و آتین;
چگونه گشت پیدیاد او بکوه و آتیون;
چگونه بی سب به قاهر است و دکّ مقویّر;
چگونه یکنه او غالب است و خلاق زیون;
سروده بی سب عیار خوشترین آیات;
نهاده بی امر غیر ببترین قانون;
چرا ندیده باو صد هزار یاد قریان;
چرا ندیده باو صد هزار دل مفتون;
ز جنبشِ قلب شینب شینب قلوب و صدور;
ز رامش نظیر شرش ظهور و بطن;
عیانِ علیا مشعلش نكرد خموش;
کتائب امّا رایتش نکرده نگون.
بین رود سخنمن‌ در جهان چو در تن جان،
بین جهد اثرش در روان چو در رگ خون،
خصومت خصیا آب سوده در هاون;
رقابت رقابا باد بوده بر هامون;
ثبوت حکمش در قلب با روان هبه‌م;
دوام امرش در دهار با قرون مقرون;
۰ چگونه آتشی افروخته است در دل‌ها;
که هیچ آب نیارد نشاندن این گانون،
گرفتم حکم‌ش روى زمین و زبر زمین،
گنشته صیش از چین و هند و از زلانون،
بیپک نظر بکشوده دو صد پلا و بلول;
بیپک قلی بستانده صد قلاع و حصن;
چگونه خرید یبا محفیلی بدوعت دین،
که تن بجهر نادرند منی از ناهون;
پی بنای شریعت زکس نخوست ممد;
بلی نداشت یبا آسیان خدا بستون;
۰ بفضل و رحیمیش اقزار یک نمایی گی،
بعل و قدرتش انکار چون نمایی چون،
تو خود که نظام بیپک خانواده نتوانی;
مکن معارضه به ناظر جمعی قرونز;
تو خود که مصلحت خار خود نمیدانی،
مکن لجاج سلطان ملک گشتن نیگون;
تو با پدر استیزی بیپک پشیر ضرور،
دهند در ره او مال و جان وزو مینون;
هزار حیف که دارم درین قیفا فنگ
هزار نکته کره تنوان نمودنش موزون.
سخن ز دست شد و در دل تجاهر نشد،
روم دو پره کنون بر سر همان مضمون;
مرا دلیست در این روژگار بو قلمون;
فریب خوردگه باربدیچه‌ها گوناگون;
زمانه جلوه کنن انز رنگ چون طاووس;
سپهر عشوه دهد گونه گون چو بو قلمون;
بس است تابشت ای مهر شد دلیر بربان;
بس است کردشت ای چرخ شد تنیرمطنحون;
مرا سریست چه سازد باین همه سودا;
مرا دلیست چه سازد باین‌همه انسون;

بجز بجانان جا را کجاست تاب و شکیب;
بجز بدابر دل را کجاست صبر و سكون;
گمی بخویش بگویم که اکمال و بال;
گمی بخویش بخندم که الجنون فنون;

دود خیال‌م گاهی بهشت چون مایین،
برد هواه ت گاهی بچرخ چون بالون;
ز چون گسته‌ام و چان نمیبرود از تن،
زن گذشت‌نام و دل نمیشود مأمون;

دلرب گرفت ز ویران سراي فضل و هنر;
خوشاب میالک عش و خوشاب دیار جنون;

ز پایی بختی بختی عقال عقل گسیخت;
کجاست لبی من ای خدا شده مجنون;

بجز اراده رحمانی از در قدرت;
که میاناند از این ورطه‌ام بر بیرون;
هلار اراده حق مین آرده آلله است;
که شد اراده حق با اراده اش مقرون;
یگانه عید ببا آنکه از اراده حقیقی

یگانه عید ببا آنکه از اراده حقیقی

іذا ارادة لشکی یقول قُنْ تُقُبُونَ

شی چه مارا حق سوی ابست راه نیا

می چه مارا سوی حق ابست راه نمیون

خجسته گوهور بحر وصال سر الله

که ابست در صرف علم حق در مکون

بنزد فضل فضل است فاقد الافضل

بنزد جودش معن است زمان الباعون

عدوی ابست بخد خصر و یار ازو ببزار

مطبع ابست زخد امان وخلق ازومامون

بوصف طالت مان طاق حوله اذاسها

سرودی سخن از بودمی از او مأدون

بهذی ذاتش میقلتم آنچه کجته خدای

نن شعرآ الشعرآ يتبعهم الغاون

۱۰ نو ای خلیفه رحبان و ای سفینه نحو

عیب‌ی عادت آدم بجور و چین قابل

بدون جریم و گنه ریخت از برادر خون

عیب‌ی نوح چو طبان دکشت عید بدر

بذلی نفی نسب شد غربی بحر الیون

عیب‌ی حضرت یعقوب صتیق

ز کید اخوان در قید بندی مسجون

عیب‌ی حضرت موسمی ز سبط اسرائیل

یکی چو حضرت هارون و دیگری قارون

۱۳ عیب‌ی حضرت روح الله از حواریٰمین

پلاد از چفا چو یهودا یک از صفا شبعون
بعد حضرت ختیه مانع از امّت
یکی بصدق ابو ذر یکی ابو شعیون؛
بعد حضرت اعلی دو تن وحید شندی؛
یکی شجاع امنی و یکی جبان خثون؛
بعد طلعت ابّی هر اینچین باید،
یکی ستّاده عبد و یکیست ناقض دون؛
بلعن لب نکشاپر ولى خدا گوید؛
هر آنکه مشکنده عبد من بود ملمون؛
۱۳۰ ز حق بعد مرز این فرقه چشم میبوشد و
که حق ز باطل پیداست درجميع شؤون،
قسم برّوی تو ای مقتدای خلیّ امر;
قسم برمی تو ای پیشواي خلیّ قرون؛
قسم باصل تو عینی بحضور مطلق;
قسم بحقّ تو عینی حقيقة بیچون;
قسم بوجه تو عینی بوجه البصر;
قسم بسر تو عینی بسیر المخرون؛
بخان پای تو عینی بکیبیای مراد;
بگرد راه تو عینی بتوتیای عيون؛
۱۳۱ بمطاً قدم تو بميوطن والّثين؛
بسجدّ هی غد خلاصی خریب ونّازیون؛
که بي ثناى توام مطبّین دکرد دل;
سر فراغ پالین نبی نبد مديون؛
ولی نعیر همّحا مدّج تو تواناد خرود;
نیازموده نباده است پای در جیحون،
مطیع امر تو از خود نفس باد ایمن؛
اسب بند تو از شیب دهر باد مصنون.\n
208 LATER POETRY OF THE PERSIANS [PT II
"HE IS GOD, EXALTED IS HIS STATE!

"Through the revolution of the Sphere I have a heart and an eye,
the one like the Tigris in flood, the other like a gulf of blood.

Why should I not mourn heavily, and why should I not weep bitterly,
since I cannot make my way out of the narrows of the world?

Within the circle I find not my object; I have neither foot to fare
forth nor place within.

What profiteth me if I be as Qâren in rank? What gain to me if I
be as Qârûn in wealth?

What fruit do farms and estates yield, since I must lay them aside?
What effect have daughters and sons, since I must pass away?

What pride have I in drinking wine or rose-water? What virtue have
I in wearing silk or black brocade?

Since dominion and wealth remain not, what difference between
wealthy and poor? Since time endureth not, what difference
between the glad and the sorrowful?

I take pride in my understanding while every animal is full of it;
I glory in spirit when every place overflows with it.

What is it to me that I should say what Alexander did? What is it
to me that I should know who Napoleon was?

What affair is it of mine that the moon becomes crescent or full
because it shows its face in proportion to the shining of the sun
upon it?

What advantage is it that I should know about the eclipses of the
sun and moon, or that the sun is darkened through the moon,
and the moon through the shadow of the earth?

What need is there for me to say that the fixed stars and planets are
all suns and spheres in the vault of heaven?

1 One of the seven great noble houses of ancient Persia. See
Nöldeke’s Sasaniden, especially pp. 437 et seqq. These seven families
constituted the Bar-bítán of the Pahláwi inscriptions, the Aḥtul-
Buyútát of the Arab historians.

2 See Qur’án, xxviii, 76 and commentary thereon in Sale’s transla-
tion and elsewhere. He is identified with Korah of the Old Testa-
ment, and amongst the Muslims is proverbial for wealth as is Croesus
with us.

3 A short note on aksín, "a black brocade worn by the rich for
ostentation," will be found on p. 108 of my translation of the Châhir
Magâla (Gibb Series, xi, 2).

4 Literally, made the colour of indigo.

B. P. L.
What do I gain by knowing that these spheres are poised and revolving round suns, and are subject to two attractions?
What affair is it of mine that the wind, that undulating air, is light and dry above, and dense and moist below?
What have I to say to this, that the moon marches round the earth, the earth round the sun, and the sun in turn round another sun?
What should I say as to this ramal-metre being ‘sound’ or ‘apocopated,’ or this rajaz-metre matwil or makhbun? 1
Or of accident, syntax, the letters, the correct and solemn intonation [of the Qur’án], or of the pauses of the Kúfans or the junctions of the Bağra school? 2
Or of etymology, rhetoric, eloquence, style, expression, calligraphy, prosody or the varieties of poetical criticism?
Or of biography, jurisprudence, principles [of Law], controversy, deduction, tradition, proof, exegesis, the Code and the Law?
Or of drawing, geometry, algebra, observations, chronology, arithmetic, mathematics and geography in all their aspects?
Or of Politics, the Religious Law, agriculture, mining, philology, National Rights, expenditure, taxation, loans and armies?
Or of medicine, symptoms, anatomy, the pulse and the stools, the properties of all the drugs, whether simple or compound?
Or of talismans, incantations, interpretation of dreams, alchemy, mechanics, astrology, ascendants, [magic] numbers, geomancy, cyphers and spells?
Or of the philosophical sciences, and logic, ancient and modern, or of cautionary glosses and the sophistries of texts?
O waste not the coin of your life on such sciences, for a whole world of men have suffered disappointment through such transactions!
Turn from these sciences to knowledge of the Religion of the Truth, for, save knowledge of the Truth, all is deceit and vanity.

1 The full explanation of these terms will be found in Blochmann’s Persian Prosody, or in any book treating of the metrical systems of the Arabs and Persians.
2 The two great rival philological schools of early Isláán.
3 ‘Ilmu’r-Rijál (“the science of notable men”) means particularly the biography and authority of the transmitters of religious traditions.
4 Or God, which is the usual meaning of Haqg amongst the Persians. Gibb (Ottoman Poetry, vol. i, p. 68, ad calc.) gives “the Fact” as a translation suggested by one of his Muslim friends.
Hearken not to the spells of Philosophy, which from end to end is folly; the themes of the materialist and the cynic are all ignorance and madness.

Why dost thou consider the fancies of the naturalist as sciences? Why dost thou assume the Divine sciences to be mere fancies?

What is the talk of these philosophers? All doubtful! What is the speech of these ignorant men? All conjecture!

Their sciences are designed to dispose of modesty, sincerity and purity; their arts are for the promotion of sin, mischief, guile and wantonness!

Their whole idea is the socialization of the earth and the communizing of property; their whole aim is the diffusion of sin and the filling of their bellies!

Their ideas are all short-sighted and their outlook narrow; their arts are all phantasy, and their conditions vile!

Had it not been for the barrier of the Holy Law against this Gog, no one would have been secure of honour, property, or life.

By God’s Truth, the talk of this gang of materialists is the worst pestilence in the body of the Nation and the Kingdom!

By the Divine Knowledge thou wilt become the choicest product of the two worlds; by the cynic’s philosophy thou wilt become the grandchild of an ape!

Behold manifest today whatever the Prophet hath said, but whatever the philosopher hath said behold at this time discredited!

All their sciences are derived from the Prophets, but imperfectly; all their arts are from the Saints, but garbled.

But, regarded fairly, man in this world is distinguished by science and knowledge from all beside.

1 There is a word-play here, of the kind called tajnis-i-sâ’did, between falsafah (philosophy) and safah (folly).

2 The early Bábís were often accused of holding communistic views like the ancient Persian heresiarch Mazdak. Such views are here explicitly repudiated.

3 Alexander the Great is supposed to have built the Great Wall of China (hence called Sadd-i-Sikandar, “the Barrier of Alexander”) to prevent the tribes of Gog and Magog (Yâjûj wa Mâjûj) from overrunning the world.

4 An evident allusion to the Darwinian theory.
By knowledge and learning he finds his way to the Eternal Essence; by understanding and thought he attains to the Presence of the Why-less.

It is Study of which He says 'It is the most excellent of actions'; it is Thought whereof an hour 'is better than seventy [years].'

The great sages, such as Socrates, Hippocrates, Aristotle and Zeno, confess His Eternal Essence,

And so also Abú 'Alī [Avicenna], Euclid, Ptolemy, Thales, Plato, Hermes and Solon.

These sanctify Him at dusk and at dawn; these glorify Him in the morning and in the evening.

The world is a head wherein the sage is the intelligence; time is a body wherein the sciences are in place of the eyes.

But thou ridest with a slack rein, and the steed of the arts is restive; thou art weak and inexperienced, and the dappled charger of the sciences is vicious.

Not having read a line thou hast doubts as to the Eternal Lord: wonderful the constitution in which antimony produces constipation!

'Seek learning from the cradle to the grave, even in China,' from the knowledge of God, whereon trust and reliance may be placed.

Sages are dumbfounded at His wise aphorisms; men of letters are indebted to His pregnant sayings.

Natural laws are like bodies in manifestation and emergence; Divine Truths are like spirits in occultation and latency.

In this illimitable expanse for lack of space illimitable worlds are buried in one another.

Common people see ordinary things, and distinguished people special things, according to their own measure: and He 'knows best what they describe.'

A thousand Platons cannot fathom the essence of His humblest temporal work; how much less His own Eternal Essence?

The sphere and the stars move by the command of God: yea, the eyes and eyelids are affected by the soul.

1 God is so called (Bí-chán) because none may question Him as to the reason of His actions.
2 Doubtful. The original has Shílún, an evident error.
3 A well-known tradition of the Prophet.
4 Cf. Qur’dán, xxiii, 98.
Through whom, if not by His command, is the movement of bodies?
By what, if not by the water, does the mill revolve?
For once in the way of wisdom look with the eye of reflection on
this abode whereof but one quarter is habitable.¹
In each one of the mineral, vegetable and animal kingdoms are a
thousand unseen worlds, manifest and hidden.
Beyond thy intelligence is another over-ruling Intelligence; within
thy soul is another soul concealed.
Behold the grain, which stands shoulder to shoulder with past
Eternity: behold the egg, which is conjoined with Eternity to
come!
Hidden yet manifest in this latter are a hundred worlds of fowls and
chickens; eternal yet temporal in that former are a hundred
groves of fruit and branches.
How canst thou pass through the street of Truth, thou, who comest
not forth from the mansion of Nature?
Even as thou seest how the flow of life from this world reaches the
child’s inward parts through its mother’s aid,
So, if aid come not from the Supernatural to this world, by God,
this world will be ruined!
For within the narrow straits of this world God hath worlds from
the Supernatural beyond limit or computation.
Contrary to universal custom, behold a group of intelligent men
voluntarily and naturally plunging into blood;²
Contrary to nature, a company content with pain and grief; contrary
to nature, a party gladly enduring the cruelty of spite.
Behold a community renouncing the world by natural inclination;
see a people contentedly suffering exile from their native land!
Behold a party all slain eagerly and joyfully; behold a throng all
imprisoned with alacrity and delight;
A whole series [of victims] voluntarily enduring various torments;
a whole class by natural inclination [involved] in afflictions of
every kind;
All intoxicated and singing songs,³ but not from wine; all self-
effaced and dissipated, but not from opium!

¹ I.e. the world, whereof but one quarter is supposed to be capable
of sustaining human life.
² This and the following verses refer to the readiness with which
the Bábís suffer martyrdom.
³ Like Sulaymán Khán, for instance. See p. 196 supra, and my
Year amongst the Persians, p. 102.
How hath Daniel given news of today! How hath the word of Isaiah taken effect now!  
How hath the promise of all the Scriptures been fulfilled, precisely in conformity with the Qur'an, the Pentateuch, the Books of the Prophets and the Gospels!  
Now in the Abode of Peace [Baghdád], now in Jerusalem, now in Mount Carmel, now in Edom, and now in Sion,  
The Holy and Fortunate Land hath been determined, the Blessed and Auspicious Day hath been fixed.  
'How came the Truth [God] to us? Even as our Arabian Prophet and our guides the Imáms indicated to us.'  
How according to promise did the Eternal Beauty reveal His beauty, from whose Blessed Beauty the whole world augured well?  
How did God become apparent in the Valley of 'the Fig'? How did He become visible in the Mount of 'the Olive'?  
How does He conquer without an army while all [others] are conquered? How does He triumph unaided while mankind are helpless [before Him]?  
Without the aid of learning He intones the sweetest verses; without the help of others He lays down the Best Law.  
Why should we not see a hundred thousand souls His sacrifice? Why should we not see a hundred thousand hearts bewitched by Him?  
By the movement of His Pen [men's] hearts and breasts are moved; by the calmness of His Glance cometh Peace without and within.  

1 The fulfilment of these prophecies is especially discussed in a Bábí work entitled Ístídálíyya addressed to the Jews, and in English by Ibráhím Khayru'lláh in Bahá'u'lláh, the Splendour of God. To give only one instance, "a time and times and half a time" is explained as three years and a half of 360 days each = 1260. Now A.H. 1260 (A.D. 1844) was the year of the Báb's "Manifestation."  
2 This verse is entirely in Arabic.  
3 I.e. Bahá'u'lláh, who was most commonly entitled by his followers Jamá-l-i-Mubárák, "the Blessed Beauty," or "Perfection."  
4 The reference is to Sára xcv of the Qur'an, entitled "the Fig."  
5 Not, of course, verses of poetry (ahyát), but the revealed "signs" (áyát) which constitute His credentials.
The turbans of the doctors did not extinguish His Torch; the hosts of the captains did not overthrow His Standard.

Behold how His Word permeates the world as the soul the body; behold how His Influence throbs in the spirit like the blood in the veins!

The hostility of His foes does but [attempt to] crush water in a mortar; the enmity of His rivals is but as wind in the desert.

The duration of His command in the heart keeps company with the Spirit; the continuance of His authority in the world is coeval with the ages.

What a fire hath He kindled in [men's] hearts, such that no water can quench this furnace!

His authority comprehendeth the terrestrial and the subterranean regions; His fame hath passed beyond China, India and Japan.

With one glance He hath conquered two hundred countries and districts; with one [stroke of His] Pen He hath taken a hundred castles and fortresses.

How by His summons to the Faith hath He established a Church against whom until the Resurrection no opponent shall prevail!

He sought help from none to found His Law; yea, God did not raise up the heavens on pillars.

When, when wilt thou admit His Grace and Mercy? How, how canst thou deny His Knowledge and Power?

Thou, who canst not order the affairs of a single household, do not contend with Him who orders all the ages!

Thou, who knowest not what is expedient in thine own affairs, do not obstinately strive with the Lord of the Kingdom of 'Be and it is'!

Thou dost dispute with thy father about a farthing's damage; these surrender life and wealth for His sake, and deem themselves favoured.

Alas a thousandfold that I have a thousand thoughts which I cannot harmonize with these restricted rhymes!

Words have escaped my control, yet [the tale of] my heart's pain is incomplete; now I return again to the same refrain.

1 *I.e.* of Law and Religion. It is, I think, misleading to translate 'Ulamá as "clergy."

2 *I.e.* lasts as long as life endures.

3 See Qurán, xiii, 2 and xxxi, 9.


5 *I.e.* the followers of Bahá'u'lláh.
In this chameleon-like age I have a heart led astray by all kinds of trifles.
The time preens itself like a peacock in varied hues; the sphere displays its blandishments like a chameleon in divers colours.
Sufficient is thy burning, O Sun, for my heart is roasted! sufficient is thy turning, O Heaven, for my body is ground to powder!
I have a head, but what can it do with all this passion? I have a heart, but what can it do with all this trickery?
Where can the soul find endurance and steadfastness except in the Beloved? Where can the heart find patience and rest save in the Heart's Desire?

At one time I say to myself, 'Perfection is a disaster': at another I laugh to myself, 'Madness is of many kinds.'
At one time my fancy rushes through the plain like an engine; at another my desire soars in the air like a balloon.
I have broken away from the body, but life will not leave the body; I have abandoned life, yet the heart is not tranquil.
My heart is wearied of this ruined mansion of merit and talent: welcome the kingdoms of Love! welcome the realms of Madness!
The hobble of understanding hath snapped on the leg of the dromedary of my luck: O God, where is my Laylá, for I have become Majnún (mad)?
Save the Divine Will [exercised] through the channel of Omnipotence, who can drag me forth from this whirlpool?
Behold, the Will of God is 'He whom God willeth,' with whose will the Will of God is conjoined;

1 *i.e.* ever changing, inconstant.
2 Perfection exposes the owner to special risks, and the Evil Eye is called by the Arabs 'Aynul-Kamal because it especially menaces whatever is perfect of its kind. Cf. p. 117, n. 2 supra.
3 So Hāfiz: "If the understanding knew how happy the heart is under the locks of the Beloved, the intelligent would go mad for the sake of our chains." (Ed. Rosenzweig-Schwannau, vol. i, p. 28, ll. 7–8.)
4 It is impossible to render the word-plays between 'agl (understanding) and 'igál (hobble, tether, shackle fastened round a camel's knee to keep it from straying), and bakhtí (dromedary) and bakht (fortune). Even when treating of the most solemn themes few Persian poets can resist such echolalia.
5 This is one of the titles given by the followers of Bahá'u'lláh to his
The unique Servant of Bahá ('Abdu'l-Bahá), made such by the Will of God, Who 'When He willeth aught, saith "Be!" and it is';
A King to whom God shows us the way; a Moon who guides us towards God;
'God's Secret,' the fortunate Pearl of the Ocean of Union, who is the Pearl concealed in the shell of God's Knowledge;
Beside his excellence, excellence lacks its excellency; beside his bounty Ma'ın² is a withholder of benefits.
His enemy is a foe unto himself whom even his friends renounce; he who obeys himself is secure of himself and trusted by mankind.
In praise of the countenance of Him round whom the [Divine] Names revolve I would sing psalms, were I granted permission by Him.
I continued to utter in praise of His Essence what God [Himself] hath said, not the verse of 'the poets whom the erring follow'³.
O Vice-gerent [Khalīfa] of the All-merciful, O Ark of Noah, be not grieved because the Truth hath been weakened by violation [of the Covenant].
In the Dispensation of Adam, Qābīl [Cain] cruelly and despicablely shed his brother's blood without fault or sin [on his part].
In the Dispensation of Noah, when Canaan⁴ broke his father's Covenant, by the disgrace of a repudiated affiliation he was drowned in the Sea of Shame.
In the Dispensation of Jacob, Joseph the faithful was imprisoned in the bonds of servitude by the wiles of his brethren.
In the Dispensation of Moses from amongst the children of Israel one was such as Aaron and another such as Qārūn⁵.
In the Dispensation of the Spirit of God [Jesus Christ] from amongst

son 'Abbás Efendi, also called Sirrulláh ("God's Secret"), and after his father's death 'Abdu'l-Bahá.

¹ See the note on verse 92 above (p. 215, n. 4).
² Ma'ın ibn Zā'ida is proverbial for his courage, virtue and generosity. For an account of him, see Zotenberg's Chronique de Tubari (1874), vol. iv, pp. 373 et seqq. This verse affords another instance of echolalia (Ma'ın, māni', mā'un).
³ Qur'ān, xxvi, 224, on account of which the whole Sūra is entitled the "Chapter of the Poets."
⁴ According to Muhammadan tradition, he was a son or grandson of Noah, who, on account of his unbelief, was not saved in the Ark, but perished in the Flood. See Qur'ān, xi, 42, and commentary thereon.
⁵ See the note on verse 4 of this poem (p. 209, n. 2 supra).
the Disciples one in cruelty became like Judas [Iscariot] and one in sincerity like Simon [Peter].

In the Dispensation of His Holiness the Seal of the Prophets [Muḥammad] one of his people was in faithfulness Abū Dharr and another Abū Sha'yiūn.

In the Dispensation of His Holiness the Supreme [the Báb] two persons were [entitled] Waḥid; one was faithful and brave, the other a cowardly traitor.

In the Dispensation of the Most Splendid Countenance [Bahá'u'lláh] it must likewise needs be so, one faithful to the Covenant, the other a vile violator thereof.

I will not open my lips to curse, but God says, 'Whosoever breaketh my Covenant is accursed.'

This people wilfully shut their eyes to the Truth, for the Truth is apparent from the False in all circumstances.

I swear by Thy Face, O Exemplar of all peoples! I swear by Thy Hair, O Leader of all the ages!

I swear by Thy Substance, to wit the Majesty of the Absolute! I swear by Thy Truth, to wit the Reality of the Why-less!

I swear by Thy Countenance, to wit His [God's] dawning Countenance! I swear by thy Secret, to wit His Treasured Secret!

By the earth at Thy Feet, to wit the Alchemy of Desire! By the dust on Thy Road, to wit the tutty of [our] eyes!

1 I can find no mention of such a person, and suspect that the reading is corrupt.

2 The title Waḥid ("Unique") appears to have been taken by the early Bábís as numerically equivalent to Yaḥyá, but this equivalency can only be obtained by writing the letter yá (ي) in the latter name only twice instead of three times (ييي). Thus misspelt, it, like وحيد, would yield the number 28. At any rate, as we learn from Mírzá Jání's Nuqṭatu'l-Káf (Gibb Series, vol. xv, pp. 243, 250, 257, 259) the title was first given to Sayyíd Yaḥyá of Dáráb, the leader of the Nayriz rebellion, and on his death was transferred to Mírzá Yaḥyá Ṣubh-i-Azal, the half-brother and rival of Bahá'u'lláh, who is therefore called "the Second Waḥíd." It is, of course, to him that Na'ím applies the term "cowardly traitor."

3 The allusion here is to Bahá'u'lláh's sons (half-brothers) 'Abbás Efendí 'Abdu'l-Bahá and Muḥammad 'Alf, between whom arose the same dispute about succession as arose in the previous generation between their father and his half-brother Ṣubh-i-Azal.

4 See p. 212, n. 1 supra.
By the spot pressed by Thy foot in the Land of 'the Fig'! By the place of adoration of mankind adorned by 'the Olive'! [By all these I swear] that my heart cannot remain tranquil without praising Thee, for the debtor cannot lay his head tranquilly on the pillow.

Yet how can Na'ım utter Thy praises? [He is as one] unproved who steps into the Oxus.

May he who obeys Thy command be secure from the deceits of the Flesh! May he who is the captive of Thy thralls be protected from the delusions of the time!”

Some apology is needed for quoting and translating in full so long a poem by an author so modern, so little known outside the circle of his own coreligionists, and, as he himself admits (verse 94), so comparatively unskillful in the manipulation of rhyme and metre. On the other hand the Bábí and the subsequent and consequent Bahá'í movement constitutes one of the most important and typical manifestations of the Persian spirit in our own time; and this poem, wherein an ardent enthusiasm struggles with a somewhat uncouth terminology, does on the whole faithfully represent the Bahá'í Weltanschauung. The following brief analysis may help the reader better to understand the line of thought which it pursues.

**Analysis of Na'ım's poem.**

Dissatisfaction of the author with the ordinary pursuits of life, and recognition of the vanity of worldly wealth, pomp and learning (verses 1–25).

True religion celebrated as the only thing which can satisfy the human soul; and materialism, socialism and communism condemned (verses 26–37).

True wisdom and its seekers and expounders, including the ancient Greek philosophers, praised (verses 38–48).

---

1 See p. 214, n. 4 supra.
The wonder of the Universe, which is permeated throughout by God's Spirit (verses 49-60).

Man's need of Divine Revelation, which is as the need of a little child for its mother's milk (verses 61-63).

Eagerness of the followers of the Báb and Bahá'u'lláh for suffering and martyrdom (verses 64-69).

Fulfilment of former prophecies in this Dispensation (verses 70-74).

Proofs of the truth of Bahá'u'lláh's claim (verses 75-94).

The poet resumes his theme with a new maṭla', or initial verse (95), and first speaks of himself and his own condition (verses 95-105). He next passes to the praise of Bahá'u'lláh's son 'Abbás Efendi, better known after his father's death (on May 28, 1892) as 'Abdu'l-Bahá (verses 106-114), and offers consolation for the antagonism of his half-brother and the Náqistu, or "Covenant-breakers," who supported him, by numerous analogies drawn from previous Dispensations (verses 115-125). The last eight verses (126-133) constitute the peroration. The understanding of the poem, of course, presupposes a fairly complete knowledge of the history, doctrines and spiritual outlook of the Bábís and Bahá'ís, and to render it intelligible I have had to annotate the translation to an extent which I regret. It is, so far as my knowledge goes, the most ambitious attempt to expound this doctrine and point of view in verse.

(If it might be expected that I should include in this section some account of the later mystical poetry of the Súfís, but, though such poetry continues to be produced down to the present day, I have met with none which attains the level of Saná'í, 'Aṭṭár, Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí, Maḥmúd Shabistarí, Jámi, and the other great mystics discussed in the previous volumes of this work. There was, perhaps, little new to be said, and little that could be better expressed than it had been already, while
under the Şafawís at any rate circumstances were particularly unfavourable to the expression of this class of ideas. The beautiful Tarjí'-band of Háťif of Išfahán, which will be given at the end of the next chapter, is the only masterpiece of Şúff poetry produced in the eighteenth century with which I am acquainted.

(5) The Taşníf or Ballad.

This class of verse, ephemeral as our own topical and comic songs, leaves far fewer and slighter traces in literature than its actual importance would lead us to expect. A taşníf about the Şáhib-Díwán beginning:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{دلگشارا ساعت زیبر سر بسته} \\
\text{دلگشارا ساعت با چوب و فلک} \\
\text{حیف دلگشا حیف دلگشا}
\end{align*}
\]

("He made [the garden of] Dil-gushá under 'the Slide'; He made Dil-gushá with the sticks and the stocks: Alas for Dil-gushá! Alas for Dil-gushá!")

was the most popular ballad when I was in Shíráz in the spring of 1888¹, but it is probably now as little remembered as an almost contemporary ribald English satire on a certain well-known Member of Parliament who "upset the milk in bringing it home from Chelsea." I have no doubt that the taşníf or ballad sung by the troubadour and wandering minstrel existed in Persia from very early—perhaps even from pre-Islamic—times. Bárbad and Şakisá may have sung such topical songs to Khúsraw Parwíz the Sásáníán thirteen hundred years ago, as Rúdágí almost certainly did four centuries later to the Sámaníd prince who was his patron²; and a fragment of a

¹ See my Year amongst the Persians, p. 283.
typical taṣnīf (called by the curious name of ḥarāra) sung in Iṣfahān on the occasion of the capture and execution of the heretic and assassin Ṭāhir ibn Aṭṭāsh, is recorded in the history of the Saljūqs composed by Abū Bakr Najmu’d-Dīn Muhammad ar-Rāwandī early in the thirteenth century of our era, under the title of Rāhatu’s-Sudūr wa Āyatul’s-Surūr.

The authorship of these taṣnīfs is seldom known, and they are hardly ever committed to writing, though my friend the late George Grahame, when Consul at Shīrāz in 1905, very kindly caused a small selection of two score of those most popular at the time in that city and in Tihrān, Iṣfahān, Rasht, Tābrīz, and elsewhere, to be written down for me; and a selection, adapted as far as possible to the piano, was published in or about 1904 under the title of Twelve Persian Folk-Songs collected and arranged for voice and pianoforte by Blair Fairchild: English version of the words by Alma Strettell (Novello & Co., London and New York). In this excellent little book the songs are well set, well rendered into English, and intelligibly if not ideally transliterated, and the following sentence from the short prefatory note shows how sensible the compiler was to the indescribable charm of Persian minstrelsy:

“But one needs the setting of the Orient to realize what these songs are: the warm, clear Persian night; the lamps and lanterns shining on the glowing colours of native dresses; the surrounding darkness where dusky shadows hover; the strange sounds of music; voices, sometimes so beautiful, rising and falling in persistent monotony—all this is untranslatable, but the impression left on one is so vivid and so full of enchantment that one longs to preserve it in some form.”

Most of these taṣnīfs are very simple love-songs, in which lines from Ḥāfīz and other popular poets are sometimes

incorporated; the topical, polemical and satirical class is much smaller, though in some ways more interesting as well as more ephemeral. A parody or parallel of such a taṣnīf may be produced to accord with fresh circumstances, as happens nearer home with the Irish an t-riean biàn boëro and the Welsh mochyn du. An instance of such an adaptation is afforded by the second poem cited in my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia* (pp. 174–9). Of course in the taṣnīf the air is at least as important as the words, and a proper study of them would require a knowledge of Persian music, which, unhappily, I do not possess. Indeed I should think that few Europeans had mastered it both in practice and theory, or could even enumerate the twelve maqāms and their twenty-four derivatives (*shuʿba*).

(6) *Modern political verse.*

Of this I have treated so fully in my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia* (Cambridge, 1914) that it is unnecessary to enlarge further on it in this place. It is a product of the Revolution of 1905 and the succeeding years, and in my opinion shows real originality, merit and humour. Should space permit, I may perhaps add a few further specimens when I come to speak of the modern journalism with which it is so closely associated, and which, indeed, alone rendered it possible. The most notable authors of this class of verse include ʿĀrif and Dakhaw of Qazwín, Ashraf of Gilán, and Bahár of Mashhad, all of whom, so far as I know, are still living, while the two first named are comparatively young men. Portraits of all of them, and some particulars of their lives, will be found in my book above mentioned.

---

1 One of the clearest and most concise treatises on this subject which I have seen is contained in a manuscript from the library of the late Sir A. Houtum-Schindler (now in my possession) entitled *Bahjatuʿr-Rawdāj*. 
CHAPTER VI.

POETS OF THE CLASSICAL TRADITION.
PRE-QÁJÁR PERIOD (A.D. 1500–1800).

Almost any educated Persian can compose tolerable verses, and the great majority do so, while the number of those who habitually indulge in this pastime on a considerable scale and have produced *divváns* of poetry has been at all times fairly large. Moreover this poetry is as a rule so conventional, and the language in which it is written so unchanged during the period under discussion, that if a hundred *ghasals*, or odes, by a hundred different poets who flourished during the last four centuries were selected, avoiding those which contained any reference to current events, and omitting the concluding verse of each, wherein the poet generally inserts his *ta-khallus*, or *nom de guerre*, it is extremely doubtful whether any critic could, from their style, arrange them even approximately in chronological order, or distinguish the work of a poet contemporary with Sháh Isma'il the Šafawi from one who flourished in the reign of Násiru'd-Dín Sháh Qájár. Nor do the *tadhkiras*, or Memoirs of Poets, give us much help in making a selection, for when discussing contemporaries the author is very apt to make mention of his personal friends, and to ignore those whom he dislikes or of whom he disapproves. Thus influential or amiable rhymsters of mediocre ability are often included, while heretics, satirists and persons distasteful or indifferent to the author, though of greater talent, are often omitted. When Riḍá-qlí Khán "Hidáyat," author of that great modern anthology entitled
Majmatul-Fuṣahá ("the Concourse of the Eloquent"); comes to speak of his contemporaries, we constantly come across such expressions as

"He had a special connection with me, and I a sincere regard for him"; "I saw him in Shíráz"; "I repeatedly called on him and he used to open the gates of conversation before my face"; "I sometimes get a talk with him"; "for a while he established himself in Fárs, where at that time the writer also was living; I used constantly to have the honour of conversing with him, for he used to open the gates of gladness before the faces of his friends"; and so forth. How many of the 359 "contemporary poets" mentioned in this work were included on such personal grounds rather than on account of any conspicuous merit? I once went through the list with my excellent old friend Hájjí Mírzá Yaḥyá Dawlatábádí, a man of wide culture and possessing a most extensive knowledge of Persian poetry, of which he must know by heart many thousands of verses, and asked him which of them he considered really notable. Out of the whole 359 he indicated five (Šabá of Káshán, Fárúghí of Bistám, Qá’ání of Shíráz, Míjmar of Iṣfahán, and Nasháṭ of Iṣfahán) as of the first class; two (Wiṣál of Shíráz, and the author himself, Hidáyat) as of the second; and two (Surúsh of Iṣfahán and Wiqár of Shíráz) as of the third;

1 Composed in 1284/1867–8 and lithographed in 2 vols. at Tíhrán in 1295/1878.
2 Vol. ii, p. 64, s.v. Ágah-i-Shírází.
3 Ibid., p. 67, s.v. Ázád.
4 Ibid., p. 68, s.v. Mírzá Abúl-Qásim-i-Shírází.
5 Ibid., s.v. Ummid of Kirmánsháh.
6 Ibid., p. 72, s.v. Ulfat of Káshán.
7 They occupy pp. 58–679 of vol. ii, but were not all strictly contemporary, a few being as early as the first half of the eighteenth century.

B. P. L.
that is, he regarded about one out of every forty mentioned as having a claim to real distinction.

In any case, therefore, a very rigorous selection must be made, the more so when it is a question of poets whose beauty does not depend solely on form, and can, therefore, be preserved in some degree in translation. In making this selection I have included such poets as enjoy any considerable fame in their own country, and any others whom I happen to have come across in the course of my reading (a mere fraction of the total number) who make any special appeal to myself. It is doubtful how far a foreigner is competent to criticize; he may say that he personally admires or dislikes a particular poet, but I doubt if he should go so far as to class him definitely on this ground as good or bad. The taste of even the Turks and Indians, who are more familiar with Persian poetry than we can easily become, differs very considerably from that of the Persians themselves, who must be reckoned the most competent judges of their own literature. In this connection I should like to direct the reader’s attention to a very apposite passage in P. G. Hamerton’s Intellectual Life. Speaking of a Frenchman who had learned English entirely from books, without being able either to speak it, or to understand it when spoken, and “had attained what would certainly in the case of a dead language be considered a very high degree of scholarship indeed,” he says: “His appreciation of our authors, especially of our poets, differed so widely from English criticism and English feeling that it was evident he did not understand them as we understand them. Two things especially proved this: he frequently mistook declamatory versification of the most mediocre quality for poetry of an elevated order; whilst, on the other hand, his ear failed to perceive the music of the musical poets, as

Byron and Tennyson. How could he hear their music, he to whom our English sounds were all unknown?" Transform this Frenchman into an Indian or a Turk, and substitute "Persian" for "English" and "Qá'ání" for "Byron and Tennyson," and the above remarks admirably apply to most Turkish and Indian appreciations of Persian poetry.

Of the poets who died between A.D. 1500 and 1600 some ten or a dozen deserve at least a brief mention; of those between A.D. 1600 and 1700 about the same number; between A.D. 1700 and 1800 only one or two; between A.D. 1800 and 1885 about a score. Those who outlived the date last-mentioned may be conveniently grouped with the moderns, who will be discussed separately. The following are the poets of whom I propose to speak briefly, arranged in chronological order of their deaths (the dates of birth are seldom recorded) in the four periods indicated above.

I. Between A.D. 1500 and 1600 (A.H. 906-1009).

Several of the poets who really belong to this period have been already mentioned in my Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion, namely, Mír ‘Alí Shír Nawá’í, d. 906/1500-1 (pp. 505-6); Husayn Wá'íz-i-Káshífí, d. 910/1504-5 (pp. 503-4); Banná’í, killed in the massacre at Qarshí in 918/1512-3 (p. 457); and Hilálí, killed by ‘Ubaydulláh Khán the Uzbek as a Shi'a in 936/1529-30 (p. 459). Of the last-named only need anything further be said here.

I. Hátífí (d. 927/Dec. 1520 or Jan. 1521).

Mawláná ‘Abdu'lláh Hátífí of Kharjírd in Khurásán derives his chief fame from the fact that he was the nephew of the great Jámi’, who, according to the well-known story¹, tested his poetical talent before allowing him to write by bidding him compose


15—2
a “parallel” to the following verses in Firdawsi’s celebrated satire\(^1\) on Sultán Mahmúd of Ghazna:

\[
\text{درختي صه تلغ است وى را سرست،}
\text{کرسر در نشانى بباغ ببشت؛}
\text{ور از جوی خُلَّدش پنگام آب؛}
\text{به بیخ انگیبن رنگی و شد ناب؛}
\text{سر انجام گوهر بکار آورود،}
\text{هیمان میوه تلح بار آورد؛}
\]

“A tree whereof the nature is bitter, even if thou plantest it in the Garden of Paradise,
And if, at the time of watering, thou pourest on its roots nectar and fine honey from the River of Paradise\(^2\),
It will in the end give effect to its nature, and bring forth that same bitter fruit.”

Háfíz produced the following “parallel,” which his uncle Jámí approved, except that he jocularly observed that the neophyte had “laid a great many eggs on the way\(^3\)”:  

\[
\text{اگر بیضه زاغ ظلمت سرشت، نسبی زبر طاووس بباغ بهشت؛}
\text{پسگام آن بیضه پروشید، ز انجیر جنت دهی ارزنش؛}
\text{دهی آبی از چشمه سلسلی، بدان بیضه دم در دمید چرخش؛}
\text{شود عائشت بیضه زاغ زاغ، برد رنگ بیهوده طاووس باغ؛}
\]

“If thou should’st place an egg of the crow compounded of darkness under the Peacock of the Garden of Paradise,
And if at the time of nourishing that egg thou should’st give it grain from the Fig-tree of the Celestial Gardens,

\(^1\) The satire is given at the end (pp. 63–6) of the Persian Introduction to Turner Macan’s edition of the \textit{Sháh-náma} (Calcutta, 1829). These verses occur on p. 66, ll. 5–7.

\(^2\) Probably the celestial river of Salsabíl is intended.

\(^3\) \textit{Majma’ul-Fuṣahá}, vol. ii, p. 54. Háfíz’s verses are given on the last page (436) of vol. iii of Žiýá Bey’s \textit{Kharabát}. 


And should'st water it from the Fountain of Salsabil, and Gabriel should breathe his breath into that egg,

In the end the crow's egg will become a crow, and vain will be the trouble of the Peacock of Paradise.  

Hátífi was one of the innumerable poets who strove to compose a “Quintet” (Khamsa) rivalling that of Nizámí of Ganja. Two of his five subjects were the same, the romances of Laylá and Majnún¹ and of Shtrin and Khusraw; the Haft Manzar formed the parallel to the Haft Paykar; while the Timúr-náma² formed the counterpart to the Sikandar-náma, except that, as Hátífi boasts³, his poem was based on historical truth instead of on fables and legends. He also began, but did not complete, a similar historical poem on the achievements of Sháh Isma‘íl the Şafawi, who paid him a surprise visit as he was returning from a campaign in Khurásán in 917/1511-12. This poem is in the style and metre of the Sháh-náma of Firdawsi, and is entitled Sháh-náma-i-Ḥazrat-i-Sháh Isma‘íl⁴.

Hátífi belongs essentially, like so many other representatives of Art and Letters in the early Şafawi period, to the circle of Herát formed under the liberal patronage of the later Timúrids.


Fighání appears to be one of those poets who are much more highly esteemed in India than in their own country, for while Shibli in his Shīrā’-ʿAjam (vol. iii, pp. 27-30), like Wálih in his Riyádu’sh-Shuʿará⁵, deems him the creator of a new style of poetry⁶.

¹ Published at Calcutta by Sir W. Jones in 1788.
² Lithographed at Lucknow in Oct. 1869. It comprises about 4500 verses.
³ Rieu’s British Museum Persian Catalogue, p. 654.
⁴ There is another similar and homonymous poem by Qásimí. See B.M.P.C., pp. 660-1. The Library of King’s College, Cambridge, possesses a ms. of this latter (Poté Collection, No. 238).
⁵ See Rieu’s Pers. Cat., p. 651.
Ridá-qlí Khlán only accords him a brief mention in his *Riyádul-‘Arifín* and entirely omits him in his larger *Majma‘ul-Fuṣahá*, while the notices of him in the *Atash-káda* and the *Tuhfa-i-Sámí* are very brief. He was of humble origin, the son of a cutler or a vintner according to different accounts, and seems to have lived the life of a somewhat antinomian dervish. In Khurásán, whither he went from Shíráz, he was unappreciated, even by the great Jámí, with whom he forfaged; but at Tabríz he subsequently found a more appreciative patron in Sultán Ya‘qúb the Prince of the “White Sheep” Turkmáns. He repented in later life and retired to the Holy City of Mashhad, so that perhaps this verse of his ceased to be applicable:

ألوُدهُ شراب فغاني بحَلَكُ رُفتُ، آهُ ارملاتُكُسْتُ كفُفْنُ تازهُ نوْ كُنُدُ;

“Stained with wine Fíghání sank into the earth: alas if the Angels should sniff at his fresh shroud!”

The longest extracts from his poems are given in the *Majálisul-Múminín*, but these are all *qaṣídas* in praise of ‘Alí, presumably composed towards the end of his life, and, though they may suffice to prove him a good Shí‘a, they are hardly of a quality to establish his reputation as a great poet.

3. *Ummídí* (or *Umídí*) of Tíhrán (d. 925/1519 or 930/1523-4).

Little is known of Umídí except that his proper name was Arjásp, that he was a pupil of the celebrated philosopher

---

1 Lithographed at Tíhrán, 1305/1887-8, p. 122.
2 On this account he originally wrote verse under the “pen-name” of Sakkákí.
3 Lest they should by the smell of the wine know him for the toper he was.
4 One is tempted to conjecture from this name that he may have been a Zoroastrian, but I have found no further evidence to support this supposition.
Jalālu’d-Dīn Dawānī, that his skill was in the qaṣīda rather than the ghazal, that he was on bad terms with his fellow-townsmen, on whom he wrote many satires, and that he was finally killed in Tīhrān in a quarrel about a piece of land, at the instigation of Qiwāmu’d-Dīn Nūr-bakhshī. Nāmī, one of his pupils, composed the following verses and chronogram on his death:

ناادر عصر أميدي مظلوم،  
شـب بخواب من آمد و فرمود،  
بهر تاريخ قتلى من بنويس،  
همَّ آه از خونی نا حقی من آه؛  

“The much-wronged Umědī, wonder of the Age, who suddenly and contrary to right became a martyr, 
Appeared to me at night in a dream and said, ‘O thou who art aware of my inward state, 
Write for the date of my murder¹: “Alas for my blood unjustly shed, alas!””

Reference has already been made (p. 59 supra) to a qaṣīda composed by him in praise of Najm-i-Thānī, and probably his poetry consisted chiefly of panegyrics, though he also wrote a Sāqīt-nāma (“Book of the Cup-bearer”) of the stereotyped form. Manuscripts of his poems are very rare, but there is one in the British Museum², comprising, however, only 17 leaves, and even these few poems were collected long after his death by command of Sháh Šāfī. Mention is, however, made of him in most of the tadhkiras, and the Ātash-kāda cites 24 verses from his Sāqīt-nāma,

¹ This chronogram gives A.H. 925 (A.D. 1519), but 930/1523–4 is the date given by Sám Mīrzā, and 929/1522–3 in the Aḥsan-i-Tawārīkh, and, by implication, in the Haft Iqlīm.
² Or. 3642, ff. 180–197. See Rieu’s Persian Supplement, p. 269. The author of the Haft Iqlīm, writing more than seventy years after the death of Umědī, his fellow-townsmen and apparently kinsman, says that in his day the well-known verses of the poet consisted of 17 qaṣīdas, 3 ghazals, a few fragments and quatrains, and the Sāqīt-nāma.
and 70 verses from his other poems. Amongst these are the following, also given in the *Majmu‘ul-Fusahā* (vol. ii pp. 7–8):

"If the College hall should be turned upside down it matters little; but may no injury befall the halls of the Wine-houses of Love! The College buildings, high and low, were destroyed, while the taverns continued to flourish just the same."

دو ترک نیبر مستی من مرغ نیبر بسمل;
کار تو از من آسان کمای من از تو مشکل;
تو یا نبی بهدان من دست شوری از جان;
تو خوی چکانی از رخ من خون فشانیرادرل;
دنبال آن مسافر از ضعف و نا توانائی;
بر خیزم و نشینن چون گرد تا بمنزل;
که بخت آنکه گیوم مستی ز خانه دین;
و آن ساعد بلورین در گردن حجایل;
خون خورده در برابر جان داده در مقابل;
می‌احیمیه چو شد طی بشنو حکایت یو;
ویرانه ایست در وی دیوانه ایست عامل;
دیوانه چه تدبیر در وی نکرده تاثیر;
دیوانه چه زنجبیر اورا نگردیده عاقل;
دیوانه ایست پر فن دیرینه دیوانه عاقل;
از وی مباش ایمن وزن من مباش عاقل;
THE TWO AHLIFS

4 and 5. The two Ahlifs.

These two homonymous poets, the one of Turshíz in Khurásán (d. 934/1527-8) and the other of Shíráz (d. 942/1535-6), of both of whom the names are more familiar than the works, must, as Rieu has pointed out, be carefully distinguished. Both are ignored by Rídá-qlí Khán, and both belong,

1 See p. 166, n. 1 supra.
2 This common simile is derived from the game of polo.
3 Persian Catalogue, pp. 657-8. See also Ethé's India Office Persian Catalogue, col. 785, No. 1432, where a very valuable autograph MS., made in 920/1514, is described.
the former actually, the latter spiritually, to the Herát school which gathered round Sultán Ḥusayn and Mír 'Alí Shír. This school, to which also belonged Zuhúrí (d. 1024/1615), likewise of Turshíz, seems never to have been popular in Persia, except, perhaps, in their own day in Khurásán, but enjoys a much more considerable reputation in India, where Zuhúrí, whose very name is almost unknown in Persia, enjoys an extraordinary, and, as I think, quite undeserved fame, especially as a writer of extremely florid and bombastic prose. Ahlí of Shíráz excelled especially in elaborately ingenious word-plays (tajnisát) and other rhetorical devices.


Hilálí, though born in Astarábád, the chief town of the Persian Province of Gurgán, was by race a Chaghatáy Turk, and was in his youth patronized by Mír 'Alí Shír Nawá'í. His most famous poem, entitled Sháh u Darwísh, or Sháh u Gadá ("the King and the Beggar"), has been harshly criticized by Bábúr himself¹ and in later times by Sprenger², but warmly defended by Ethé, who translated it into German verse³. He composed another mathnáwi poem entitled Şifátu'l-'Ashiqin ("the Attributes of Lovers") and a number of odes collected into a Díván. Riḍá-qulí Khán says⁴ that in Khurásán he was regarded as a Shí'a, but in Iráq as a Sunní. Unhappily for him 'Ubaydu'lláh Khán, the fanatical Uzbek, took the former view, and caused him to be put to death as a "Rásid." It is curious, in view of this, that he is not mentioned in the Majálisu'l-Mú'mínín amongst the Shí'a poets; and perhaps, as asserted in the Haft Iqlím, the

1 See my Persian Literature under Turkar Dominion, p. 459.
2 Oude Catalogue, p. 427.
envy of two of his rivals at the Uzbek Court, Baqá’í and Shamsu’d-Dín Kúhistání, rather than his religious views, may have caused his execution, which ‘Ubaydu’lláh Khán is said to have subsequently regretted. The following verses, however, seem to indicate Shí‘a propensities:

محمد عربی آبوروی هر دو سرای،
کسی خذ خذ درش نیست خذ برسر او،
شینه اه که تکمل نهود هیچو مسیح،
بدين حديث لپ لعل روح پروپر او،
که من مدينه علمي علي درست مرا،
عجب خجمت حديثست من سگ در او،

“Muhammad the Arabian, the honour of both worlds: dust be upon the head of him who is not as dust at his Door!

I have heard that his life-sustaining ruby lip uttered, like the Messiah, this tradition:

I am the City of Knowledge and ‘Alí is my Door’: a marvellously blessed tradition! I am the dog of his Door!”

7. Lisání (d. 940/1533-4).

Lisání of Shíráz is the last of the twenty-two Persian Shí‘a poets mentioned in the Majálisul-Mú’mínín and deserves mention rather on account of his devotion to that faith than by reason of his poetic talent, for, although he is said to have produced more than 100,000 verses, they are little known and seldom met with, and, though mentioned in the Átash-káda and the Haft Íqlím, he is ignored by Ridá-qulí Khán. Most of his life was spent at Baghdád and Tabríz, in which latter

1 *I.e.* the dog of ‘Alí. Kalb-‘Alí is not uncommon as a name amongst the Shí‘a, and, as we have seen, the Safawí kings gloried in the title “Dogs of the Threshold of ‘Alí ibn Abí Ílib.” These verses are taken from the Majma’ul-Fusáhá.

2 There is a copy of his Díwán (Or. 307) in the British Museum. See Rieu’s Persian Catalogue, pp. 656-7.
town he died just before it was taken by the Ottoman Sultán Sulaymán. “On account of his devotion to the Twelve Imáms,” says the author of the Majális, “Lisání would never remove from his head the twelve-gored kingly crown¹ until, when Sultán Sulaymán the Turk was advancing to occupy Tabríz, it happened that news of his near approach reached Lisání when he was engaged in prayer in the great Mosque of Tabríz. On hearing this news, he raised his hands in prayer, saying, ‘O God, this usurper is coming to Tabríz: I cannot remove this crown from my head, nor reconcile myself to witnessing his triumph, therefore suffer me to die, and bring me to the Court of Thy Mercy!’ He then bowed his head in prayer, and in that attitude surrendered his soul to the Beloved.”

The following quatrín is characteristic:

"If the joints of Lisání break apart, and his needy body passes into the dust,

By God, from the horizon of his heart naught will appear save the love [or sun] of 'Alí and his eleven descendants!"

His poems, in the preservation of which he seems to have been very careless, were collected after his death by his pupil Sharíf of Tabríz, but so slovenly was the compilation that, according to the Atash-kada, it was known as Sahwát-Lisán, or “Lapsus Linguae.”

8. Fuḍúlí (Fuẓúlí) of Baghdád (d. 970/1562–3).

Fuḍúlí is reckoned amongst the Turkish rather than the Persian poets, and is fully discussed by Gibb in vol. iii of his monumental History of Ottoman Poetry (ch. iv, pp. 70–107). That he became an Ottoman subject was due to the fact that Baghdád,

¹ Concerning this distinctive head-dress, which gave to the Persian Shi'a their name of Qisát-básh (“Red-heads”), see p. 48 supra.
where he was probably born, and where he spent nearly all his life, was taken from the Persians by the Turks in 940/1535; but, as Gibb says, "he composed with equal ease and elegance in Turkish, Persian, and Arabic." He is described by the same scholar as "the earliest of those four great poets who stand pre-eminent in the older literature of Turkey, men who in any age and in any nation would have taken their place amongst the Immortals." That his status in the Persian Parnassus is so much lower is due rather to the greater competition and higher standard of excellence prevailing there than to any lack of skill on his part in the use of the Persian language. That he was of the Shi'a faith is clear from several of his verses, and from his Ḥadīqātū's-Su'ādā, a Turkish martyrology modelled on the Persian Rawḍatū'sh-Shuhadā of Ḥusayn Wâ'īz-i-Kâshîfî.

As I have referred to Gibb's great work on Ottoman Poetry, I may here express a doubt as to his claim that the kind of poem entitled Shahr-angīs (or "City-thriller," as he renders it) is a Turkish invention, and that "there is no similar poem in Persian literature." Sám Mîrzâ in his Ṭukfa-i-Sâmt (compiled in 957/1550) mentions at least two poets, Wâ'īdî of Qum and Ḥarīf of Iṣfahān, who composed such poems, the former on Tabrîz, the latter on Gîlân, and though these were probably written later than Mâshīh's Turkish Shahr-angīs on Adrianople, there is nothing to suggest that they were regarded as a novelty or innovation in Persia. Ḥarīf's poem, called Shahr-āshūb ("City-disturber") seems to have been bitterly satirical, for the

1 Loc. cit., p. 72.  
2 Ibid., p. 71.  
3 He has a complete Persian Dhwân, of which a MS. (Add. 7785) exists in the British Museum, and which has been printed at Tabrîz. See Rieu's Persian Catalogue, p. 659.  
4 See Rieu's Turkish Catalogue, pp. 39-40.  
unhappy poet was deprived of his tongue in consequence, as Sám Mfrzá relates:

شهر آوشی جبَت آنِجا (یعنی گیلان) و مردم آنِجا گفت‌ه و اورا
با مرتیء مست‌جمه ساخته زیان‌شناس بردند اما این جانه‌ اورا از
برای اشعار دیگری می‌بابست نه جبَت‌ هجو اهلِ گیلان،

9. Wahší of Báfq (d. 991/1583).

Though born at Báfq, a dependency of Kirmán, Wahší spent most of his life at Yazd. His poetry, especially his Farhád u Shtrírín and his ghazals, are highly praised in the Taríkh-i-'Alām-árá-yi-Abbást, the Atash-kada, and the Majmá'úl-Fusuhá. He also wrote panegyrics on Sháh Táhmásp and his nobles, concerning which the author of the work last-named remarks that in this branch of the poetic art none of the poets of the middle period can compare with the ancients. He did not finish the Farhád u Shtrírín, which was completed long afterwards (in 1265/1848–9) by Wişál. He wrote two other mathnawi poems, the Khuld-i-Bārín (“Supreme Abode of Bliss”) and Náṣír u Manžúr, besides ghásals (odes) and qiţás (fragments), a large selection of which are given in the Majmá'úl-Fusuhá and the Atash-kada (pp. 111–120). The following murabba', or “foursome,” given in both these anthologies, is rather pretty and unusual.

دستستانُ شرِج پریشانی من گوش گنیم
دستانُ غیر پنبه‌ای من گوش گنیم
قضّه بی سر و سامانی من گوش گنیم
گفتگوی من و حیرانی من گوش گنیم

شرح این قضّه جانسوز نیفتگن نا کنی
سوختی سوختی این راز ناغفتگن نا کنی

روزگاری من ودل ساکن هَبَوی بودیم،
سَاکن هَبَوی بَتروجِده جَوَی بودیم،
دین ودل باخته وبرانه روئی بودیم،
بسته سلسله (سلسله میوتی) بودیم.

خس در آن سلسله غیرار من ودل بند نبوی,
یک گفتگار ازین جهله که هستند نبوی;
نرگس غم‌زه زنش این همه پیمار نداشت.

سنبل پر شکنست هیچ گفتگار نداشت,
این همه مشتری و گرمی بازار نداشت,
یوسفی بود وله هیچ خریدام نداشت,
اول آن خس که خریدار شدم من بودم,
بااعت گرمی بازار شدم من بودم,
عشق من شد سپ خوبی و رهنی ای,
داد رسوایی من شهرت زیبائی او،
بسک خریدم هم چا شرح دل‌آرامی او;
شهر پر گشت ز غوغای تیتانی او,
این زمان عاشقی سر گشته فراوان دارد,
کی سر و پرخ مین بیسر و سامان دارد?

چون چنین است پی کار دگر باشیم به;
مرغ خوش نغمه کَنِلر دگر باشیم به;
اعدلیم گل رخسار دُگر باشیم به;
چند روزی پی دلدار دگر باشیم به;
نو گلی کو هَو هَو شیم بابیل دستان خانیش;
سازه از نازه جوانان چسب ممتنیش;
گرچه از خاطر وخشی هَویس روی تو رفت;
وز دلشا آوروزی قامت دلچو تو رفت.
"O friends, hearken to the account of my distraction! Hearken to the tale of my hidden sorrow! Hearken to the story of my disordered state! Hearken to my description of my bewilderment! How long shall I hide the account of this grievous story? I burn! I burn! How long shall I refrain from telling this secret?

For a while I and my heart dwelt in a certain street: the street of a certain quarrelsome beauty. We had staked Faith and heart on one of dissolute countenance; we were fettered in the chains of one with chain-like tresses. In that chain was none bound save me and my heart: of all that exist, not one was captive then.

Her bewitching narcissus-eyes had not then all these love-sick victims; her curling hyacinthine locks held then no prisoner; she had not then so brisk a business and so many customers; she was a Joseph [in beauty] but found no purchaser. I was the first to become a purchaser; it was I who caused the briskness of her market.

My love was the cause of her beauty and comeliness; my shame gave fame to her beauty; so widely did I everywhere describe her charms that the whole city was filled with the tumult of the spectators. Now she has many distracted lovers, how should she think or care for poor distracted me?

Since it is so, it is better that we should pursue some other aim, that we should become the sweet-voiced songsters of some other rose-bower, that we should become the nightingales of some other rose-cheeked beauty, that for a few days we should follow some other charmer. Where is some fresh young rose whose eloquent nightingale I may become, and whom I may [thus] distinguish amongst the youthful beauties of the garden?

Although the fancy for thy face hath passed away from Wahshf's mind, and the desire for thy charming figure hath departed from his heart, and one vexed in heart hath departed in vexation from thy street, and with a heart full of complaints hath departed from the displeasure of thy countenance, God forbid that I should forget thy constancy, or should listen to man's counsels of expediency!"
10. Maḥmūd Qārī of Yazd (d. 993/1585).
11. Muḥtasham of Kāshān (d. 996/1587–8).

Maḥmūd Qārī of Yazd, the poet of clothes, who died two years after Waḥshī and three years before Muḥtasham, was mentioned in the preceding volume of this work¹ in connection with the two earlier parodists ‘Ubayd-i-Zākānī and Busḥaq (Abū Ishāq) of Shīrāz; while the far more notable Muḥtasham has been already discussed at some length in the preceding chapter² in connection with the religious poetry on which his fame chiefly rests. Of the erotic verse of his early youth and of his panegyrics on Shāh Ṭahmāsp copious specimens are given in the Atash-kāda, but these are neither so distinguished nor so characteristic as his elegies (marāthī) on the martyrdom of Ḥusayn and the other Imāms, from which the extracts given in the Maj-ma‘l-Fuṣḥāḥā³ are chiefly taken.

12. ‘Urffī of Shīrāz (d. 999/1590–1) and his circle.

Though less highly appreciated in his own country than in Turkey and India, ‘Urffī is probably on the whole the most famous and popular poet of his century⁴. Though born and brought up in Shīrāz, his short life was chiefly spent in India, where he died in 999/1590–1 at the early age of thirty-six, some say of dysentery, others of poison. He is one of the three poets of this century (A.D. 1500–1600) discussed by Shībīl Nu‘mānī in his Shehrul-‘Ajam⁵, the other two being his

¹ Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion, pp. 257 and 351–3. Maḥmūd is not mentioned in the Atash-kāda, the Haft Iqlim, or the Majma‘l-Fuṣḥāḥā; no particulars of his life are known to me, and the date of his death must be regarded as uncertain.
² Pp. 172–7 supra.
⁴ See Rieu’s Persian Catalogue, p. 667.
⁵ Vol. iii, pp. 82–133.

B. P. L.
fellow-townsman Bábá Fighání, already mentioned¹, and Faydí (Fayzî), brother of Akbar's celebrated minister Abu'l-Faḍîl (Abu'l-Fażîl), who, in Shiblî's opinion, was one of the two Indian poets who wrote Persian verse which would pass as the work of a genuine Persian². 'Abdu'l-Qâdir Badâ'únî says³ that 'Urfî and Thânâ'î were the two most popular Persian poets in India in his time, and that manuscripts of their works were to be found in every bazaar and bookshop, while Faydí's poems, in spite of the large sums of money which he had expended in having them beautifully copied and illuminated, were little sought after. Gibb says⁴ that, after Jâmî, 'Urfî and Faydí were the chief Persian influences on Turkish poetry until they were superseded by Sâ'îb, and that "the novelty in this style lay, apart from the introduction of a number of fresh terms into the conventional vocabulary of poetry, in the deposition of rhetoric from the chief seat, and the enthronement of loftiness of tone and stateliness of language in its stead."" Ziyá (Diyá) Pasha, in that portion of his metrical Introduction to the Kharábât which discusses the Persian poets, after praising Jâmî, proceeds to speak of 'Urfî and Faydí as follows:


³ The other was Amîr Khusraw of Dihlî.
⁶ Loc. cit. p. 129.
“Fayḍī and ‘Urff run neck-and-neck; they are the leaders of the later
time.
In Fayḍī is eloquence and freshness, in ‘Urff sweetness and fluency.
In Fayḍī are fiery exhortations, while ‘Urff is strong in elegies.
But if pre-eminence he sought, excellence still remains with Fayḍī.
Fayḍī is clear throughout: no dots need be added to his comment-
tary.
But that paragon of excellence suffered martyrdom at his pupil's
hands."

I can find no evidence in support of the last statement,
which, indeed, is at variance with Badā’ūnī’s exultant de-
scription\(^1\) of his painful and unpleasant death\(^2\),
though perhaps the swollen face and blackened
lips, which his bitter enemy describes with un-
concealed Schadenfreude, may have aroused suspicions of
poison. The same fanatical writer gives a series of most
uncomplimentary chronograms composed by the orthodox
to commemorate the death of an arch-heretic, such as:

\[
\text{فیضی بیدین چو مَرُد سال وفاتش فصيح'}
\]

\[
\text{گفت سگی از جهان رفته بحال تکیح}
\]

“When infidel Fayḍī died, Faṣīḥ said as the date of his death, ‘A dog
departed from the world in a soul fashion.’"

The simplest of them all are “Fayḍī was a heretic”
(بود فيضي ملحدي), “he died like a dog-worshipper”
(قه سگ پرستي مرد), and “the rule of heresy broke”
(العاد شکست), all of which yield the required date A.H. 1004
(A.D. 1595). Badā’ūnī also says that, with a view to restoring
his shattered religious reputation, he composed a com-
mentary on the Qur’ān consisting entirely of undotted letters,
adding unkindly that he was drunk and in a state of legal
uncleanness when he wrote it. The author of the Majma‘ul-

\(^1\) Muntakhabu’t-Tawārikh, vol. iii, pp. 299–310, especially p. 300.
\(^2\) This took place on 10 Ṣafar, 1004 (October 15, 1595). See Rieu’s
Persian Catalogue, p. 450, where the chief sources are fully enumerated.
Poets of the Classical Tradition

Fusahí in alluding to this book (which he only knew by repute) says that the author "troubled himself to no purpose" (کُلْفِتِی بِحَامَل چَشِیده), and has no word of praise for his poems, on which the author of the Atash-kada has the tepid encomium that "they are not bad." The fullest and most appreciative account of him which I have met with is that given by Shibli Nu'máni in his Shír-i-'Ájam. He composed a Khamsa ("Quintet") in imitation of Nizámi, the titles of these five poems being Markáz-i-Adwár, Sulaymán u Bilqís, Nal u Daman (the most celebrated), Haft Kishwar, and Akbar-náma, but some of them remained incomplete. He also wrote many qaṣīdas and ghazals, and produced several translations from the Sanskrit. None of his verses quoted by Shibli appear to me so affecting as the following on the death of his child:

ای روشنی دیده، روشان چگونه،
من بی تو تیره روز تو بی من چگونه،
ماتمر سرخست خانه من در فراق تو،
تو زیر خاک ساخته مسکن چگونه،
برخار و خس که بستر و بالین خواب تست،
ای یاسمين عذار سرتن چگونه;

Faydí's verses on the death of his child.

"O brightness of my bright eyes, how art thou? Without thee my days are dark; without me how art thou? My house is a house of mourning in thine absence; thou hast made thine abode beneath the dust: how art thou? The couch and pillow of thy sleep is on thorns and brambles: O thou whose cheeks and body were as jasmine, how art thou?"

1 Vol. ii, p. 26. This commentary was entitled, according to Shibli Nu'máni (loc. cit., p. 65), Sawaṭq'u'll-Ilhám.
2 Vol. iii, pp. 31–81.
Faydí was a man of varied learning and a great lover of books. His library contained four thousand six hundred choice manuscripts, mostly autographs or copied during the authors’ lifetimes. He was generous and hospitable, and amongst those who enjoyed his hospitality was ‘Urfí of Shíráz, to whom we now turn.

‘Urfí, whose proper name was Jamálud-Dín Muhammad and whose father was named Badru’d-Dín, was born and educated at Shíráz, but at an early age migrated to India, and, as already mentioned, attached himself to Faydí, with whom, however, he presently quarrelled. Badá’úní says that one day he called on Faydí and found him caressing a puppy, whereupon he enquired what the name of “the young master” (makhdúm-záda) might be. “‘Urfí,” replied Faydí, to which ‘Urfí promptly replied, “Mubárak báshad!” which means “May it be fortunate!” but may be taken as alluding to Faydí’s father Shaykh Mubárak and as meaning, “It should be Mubárak!”

‘Urfí next won the favour of the Ḥákím Abu’l-Fath of Gílán, by whom he was introduced to that great nobleman and patron of letters ‘Abdu’r-Rahím, who succeeded to the title of Khán-khánán borne by his father Bayram Khán on the assassination of the latter in 968/1560–1. In due course he was presented to the Emperor Akbar himself, whom he accompanied on his march to Cashmere in 997/1588–9.

In spite of his opportunities and undoubted talents, ‘Urfí’s intolerable conceit and arrogance prevented him from being popular, and made him many enemies. Riḍá-qulí Khán accords him but a brief notice, and observes that “the style of his poems is not admired by the people of this age.”

1 Shi’ru’l-Ajam, iii, p. 50, and Muntakhabát-Tawárikh, iii, p. 305.
2 Muntakhabát-Tawárikh, iii, p. 285.
and disparagement are, indeed, courted by a poet who could write:

nazīsh sa'dī bešt āmār khāk shīrāzāz āchā bōd,

kūr namī dānest bāsh mōld w māoāyī mīn.

"Wherefore did Sa'dī glory in a handful of the earth of Shīrāz
If he did not know that it would be my birthplace and abode?"

Nor is this an isolated example of his conceit, for in like fashion he vaunts his superiority to Anwarī, Abu'l-Faraj, Kháqānī, and other great Persian poets, and this unamiable practice may have conducd to his unpopularity amongst his compatriots, who do not readily tolerate such disparagement of the national heroes. In Turkey, on the other hand, he had, as we have seen, a great influence and reputation, and likewise in India, so that Shiblī devotes to him fifty-two pages (pp. 82–133) of his Shī'rū'l-'Ajam, rather more than he devotes to Fayḍī, and much more than he gives to any other of the seven poets he mentions in the third volume of his work. But even Shiblī admits that his arrogance made him generally unpopular, a fact of which he was fully aware, as appears from the following poem, wherein he complains of the hypocritical sympathy of the so-called "friends" who came to visit him when he was confined to bed by a severe illness:

ten āvāntād drēn ḥālāl w dōstān fashī,

bādūr bālsh w bēstāh chōn mīnbar,

yī bārish kōsh dēst w kōsh kōsh gerdīn,

kūh rożārā va yā kūh kūh jān pērdī,

bējāh w mālī fūrūmāyīī dīl nōyād bēst,

kūjāst dūrāt jāmshīd w nāmāsīnādīnī.

1 Shī'rū'l-'Ajam, iii, p. 88.
2 Shī'rū'l-'Ajam, iii, pp. 92–3.
"My body hath fallen into this state, and my eloquent friends stand like pulpets round my bed and pillow. One draws his hand through his beard and cocks his neck, saying, ‘O life of thy father! To whom is fortune constant? One should not set one’s heart on ignoble rank and wealth: where is the Empire of Jamshid and the name of Alexander?’ Another, with soft voice and sad speech, begins, drawing his sleeve across his moist eyes: ‘O my life! All have this road by which they must depart: we are all travellers on the road, and time bears forward the riders.’ Another, adorning his speech with smooth words, says, ‘O thou whose death is the date of the revolution of news (inqlâb-i-khabar)’

1 I think the words انقلاب خبر must be taken as a chronogram, giving the date 986/1578–9, in which case this cannot, as Shibli suggests (loc. cit., p. 92), have been ‘Urfi’s last illness, since he did not die until 999/1590–1.
Collect thyself, and beware, let not thy heart be troubled, for I will with single purpose collect thy verse and prose.

After copying and correcting it, I will compose an introduction like a casket of pearls in support of thy claims;

An index of learning and culture such as thou art, a compendium of good qualities and talents such as thou art,

I will pour forth, applying myself both to verse and prose, although it is not within the power of man to enumerate thy perfections!

'May God, mighty and glorious, give me health again, and thou shalt see what wrath I will pour on the heads of these miserable hypocrites!" ¹

Space does not allow us to follow in detail Shibli's interesting and exhaustive study of this poet, to whose verse he assigns six salient merits, such as "forceful diction" (زور خلام), new and original combinations of words, fine metaphors and comparisons, and continuity or congruity of topics (مسلم مضامین). Except for a little-known prose treatise on Sufism entitled Nafsiyya all his work was in verse, and included, according to Shibli, two mathnawi poems in imitation of Nizami's Makhzanul-Asrar and Khusraw wa Shirin, and a Divan, compiled in 996/1588, only three years before his death, containing 26 qasidas, 270 ghazals, and 700 fragments and quatrains. The following chronogram gives the date of its compilation²:

این طریق تقاطع سحری و اعجازی
چون گشت مکمل برهم پردازی
مجموعه طراز قدس تاریخش پایت
اوول دیوان عرفی شیرازی

One of his most famous qasidas, given in the Kharabat (vol. i, pp. 169-174), is in praise of 'Alf ibn Abi Talib, and contains 181 verses. It begins:

1 This final verse is, of course, spoken by the poet himself.
2 Shi'r ul-Ajam, vol. iii, p. 96.
"I have wandered through the world, but alas! no city or country have I seen where they sell good fortune in the market!"

'Urfl is not, however, included amongst the Persian Shi'a poets to whom notices are consecrated in the Majalis-ul-Mutminin.

Concerning the numerous Persians—theologians, scholars, philosophers and poets—attracted to Akbar's brilliant court, the third volume of Badá'únl's Muntakhabut-Tawáríkh is a mine of information, but space will not permit us as a rule to go beyond the frontiers of the Persian Empire. The late Mr Vincent Smith in his otherwise admirable monograph on Akbar1 is perhaps unduly hard on these poets when he says (pp. 415-6):

"The versifiers, or so-called poets, were extremely numerous. Abul-Faql tells us that although Akbar did not care for them, 'thousands of poets are continually at court, and many among them have completed a diwan (collection of artificial odes), or have written a mathnawi (composition in rhymed couplets).'. The author then proceeds to enumerate and criticize 'the best among them,' numbering 59, who had been presented at court. He further names 15 others who had not been presented but had sent encomiums to His Majesty from various places in Persia2. Abul-Faql gives many extracts from the writings of the select 59, which I have read in their English dress, without finding a single sentiment worth quoting; although the extracts include passages from the works of his brother Fayzi (Faydi), the 'king of poets,' which Abul-Faql considered to enshrine 'gems of thought.'"

The third volume of Badá'únl's Muntakhabut-Tawáríkh, which is entirely devoted to the biographies of the poets and men of learning who adorned Akbar's court, contains notices of 38 Shaykhs (religious leaders), 69 scholars, 15 philosophers and phy-

1 Akbar the Great Mogul, 1542-1605 (Oxford, 1917).
sicians, and no fewer than 167 poets, most of whom, however, though they wrote in Persian and were in many cases Persians by birth, are unknown even by name in Persia.

Amongst the most eminent names belonging, in part at any rate, to the century which we here conclude, are those of Shaykh Bahá’u’d-Dín ‘Ámilí, Múllá Muḥsin-i-Fayd (Fayz) of Kháshán, Mír Dámad, and Mír Abú’l-Qásim-i-Findarískí, who, however, will be more suitably considered amongst the theologians or philosophers.

II. Between A.D. 1600 and 1700 (A.H. 1008–1111).

Four of the seven poets discussed at length by Shiblí in the third volume of his Shi’rúl-‘Ajam fall within the period indicated above. These are Nazírí (d. 1021/1612–13), Tálib-i-Ámulí (d. 1036/1626–7), Abú Tálib Kalím (d. 1061/1651), and Sá’íb (d. 1088/1677–8). 1 Ridá-qlí Khán in the enumeration of eminent contemporaries of the Ṣafáwí kings with which he concludes the supplementary eighth volume written by him in continuation of Mírkhwánd’s Rawdatu’s-Ṣafá mentions not one of these, but, in the period now under consideration, names only Żuhúrí (d. 1024/1615) and Shifá’í (d. 1037/1627). Another poet ignored by both these writers but highly esteemed in Turkey, where, according to Gibb, “he continued for more than half a century to be the guiding star for the majority of Ottoman poets,” being “deservedly famous for his marvellous ingenuity and fertility in the invention of fresh and picturesque images and similes,” is Shawkat (or Shevket, according to the Turkish pronunciation) of Bukhárá (d. 1107/1695–6). To these seven we may add, besides four or five 2 who, though

1 Other dates, e.g. 1080/1669–70, are also given. See Rieu, op. cit., p. 693.
2 History of Ottoman Poetry, vol. i, p. 130. See also vol. iv, p. 95, of the same.

3 Namely, Mír Dámad, Shaykh Bahá’u’d-Dín, Abú’l-Qásim Findarískí, Muḥsin-i-Fayd and ‘Abdu’r-Razzáq-i-Láhijí, called Fáyyád.
they wrote occasional verse, were primarily philosophers, and will be discussed in connection with that class, the following six, who were, perhaps, a trifle more distinguished than their innumerable competitors: Saḥābī of Astarābād (d. 1010/1601–2), Zulālī of Khvānsār (d. about 1024/1615), Jalāl Asīr (d. 1049/1639–40), Qudsī of Mashhad (d. 1056/1646–7), Salīm of Tīhrān (d. 1057/1647–8), and Amānī of Māzandarān (d. 1061/1651). Although I think that Rieu goes too far when he describes Sā‘īb as “by common consent the creator of a new style of poetry, and the greatest of modern Persian poets,” he is without doubt the greatest of those who flourished in the seventeenth century of our era, and, I think, the only one deserving a detailed notice in this volume, notwithstanding Riḍá-qulí Khán’s remark that “he had a strange style in the poetic art which is not now admired.”

Here follows a list of these seventeen poets, arranged chronologically according to the dates of their deaths, with brief references to the authorities who may be consulted for further particulars concerning them. These are, besides Rieu’s incomparable Persian Catalogue, Shiblī’s Shīrūl-ʿAjam, vol. iii (Sh.), the Ātash-kada (A. K.), the Haft Iqlīm (H. I., available in manuscript only), the Rawdatuʾl-Jannāt (R. Ī.), the Rawdatuʾs-Safā (R. Š.), the Majmaʿuʾl-Fuṣūḥā (M. Ī.), and the Riḍūʾul-ʿArīfīn (R. ‘Ā.).

(1) Saḥābī of Astarābād (d. 1010/1601–2). Rieu, p. 672; A. Ī., pp. 141–2, and H. I., s.v. Astarābād in both; M. Ī., ii, p. 21; R. ‘Ā., pp. 85–6. He spent forty years of his life in tending the holy shrine of Najaf, and composed, besides ḡasals, many quatrains, of which 6000 are said to be extant.

1 *Persian Catalogue*, p. 693.
(2) Nazírí of Nishápúr (d. 1021/1612-3). Rieu, pp. 817-8; Sh. iii, pp. 134-64; A. K., pp. 131-3; H. I., s.v. Nishápúr (a long notice); M. F., ii, pp. 48-9; R. 'Á., pp. 236-7. The last thirty years of his life were spent in India, chiefly at Ahmadábád in Gujerát, where he died. He was one of the many poets who benefited by the bounty of 'Abdu'r-Rahím Khán-khánán, who provided him with money to perform the pilgrimage to Mecca in 1002/1593-4, in response to a qaṣīda beginning:

ز هنر بخود نانجیر چو بخورمی مغانی،
بدر د لباس بر تن چو بچوشن در معنا
همه عیش این جهنام بعنايت تو دیدم
چه عجب اگر بیابی ز تو زاد آنجامان

"Through genius I cannot contain myself, like the Magian wine in the jar; the very garments are rent on my body when my ideas ferment.

Through thy beneficence I experienced all the pleasure of this world: what wonder if through thee [also] I should obtain provision for the other world?"

In matters of religion he was something of a fanatic, and wrote verses attacking "the heretic" Abú'l-Faḍl. He also wrote verses in praise of tobacco, some of which are quoted by Shíbí (p. 134).

(3) Zulálí of Khwánsár (d. 1024/1615). Rieu, pp. 677-8; H. I., s.v. Khwánsár (a long notice). He was the panegyrist of Mír Dámad, and composed seven mathnáwís, of which that on Mahmúd and Ayáá (begun in 1001/1592-3, and concluded in 1024/1615), shortly before his death, is the most popular. Two others mentioned by Rieu are "the Wine-Tavern" (May-khána), and "the Mote and the Sun" (Dharrá u Khurshíd).
(4) Zuhúrí of Turshíz (d. 1024/1615), murdered in an affray in the Deccan together with his fellow-poet and father-in-law Malik of Qum). Rieu, pp. 678–9; A. K., pp. 68–70; R. S., at end of vol. viii. He is, as Rieu observes, little known in Persia, though much admired in India, especially as a writer of extremely florid prose. The author of the A. K. says that in his opinion this poet’s Sáqt-náma ("Book of the Cupbearer") has no great beauty, in spite of the fame which it enjoys.

(5) Bahá’u’d-Dín ‘Ámilí, commonly called Shaykh-i-Bahá’í (d. 1030/1620–1), was primarily a theologian, and to some extent a philosopher and mathematician, but he wrote at least two short mathnawí poems, entitled respectively Nán u Halwá ("Bread and Sweetmeats") and Shtr u Shakkar ("Milk and Sugar"). Extracts from both are given in the M. F. (vol. ii, pp. 8–10), besides a few ghazals and quatrains, and also in the R. ‘A., pp. 45–9. Apart from his mathematical and astronomical treatises, his best-known prose work is the Kashkúl (or "Beggar’s Bowl"), which has been printed at Buláq and lithographed in Persia. This work, though written in Arabic, contains many Persian poetical citations, which, however, are omitted in the Egyptian edition. The famous mujtahid Mullá Muḥammad Taqí-i-Majlísí (d. 1070/1659–1660) was one of the most eminent of his disciples.

(6) Ţalíb-i-Ámilí (d. 1036/1626–7). Rieu, p. 679; Sh. iii, pp. 165–188; A. K., pp. 155–6, where it is said that "he had a peculiar style in verse which is not sought after by eloquent poets." In India, whither he emigrated in early life, he was so highly appreciated that Jahángír made him his poet-laureate (Maliku’sh-Shu’árá) in 1028/1619. He was far from modest, for he
boasts that before he reached his twentieth year he had mastered seven sciences:

پا بر دومین پایه، اوج عشراتی،
و اینک عدد فنی از آل اف زیادست،
بر هندسه و منطقی و هیئت و حکمت،
دستی است مرا خش بپذیر رضایست،
وین جمله چو طی شد نیگین علم حقیقت،
کاستر علومست برین جمله مزادات،
در سلسله، وصف خط ابن بس که ز کلکر،
نمر نقطه سویداي دلی اهلی سوادست،
پوشر نسر شعر چو دانم که تو دانی،
کاين پایه مرا ثامن این سبع شدادست،

Tālib's boasted accomplishments.

"My foot is on the second step of the zenith of the decades, and behold the number of my accomplishments exceeds the thousands!

In mathematics, logic, astronomy and philosophy I enjoy a proficiency which is conspicuous amongst mankind.

When all these are traversed the savoury knowledge of the Truth, which is the Master of the Sciences, is added to the sum total.

In the concatenated description of my writing this is enough, that every dot from my pen is the heart's core of men of letters.

I put on the attribute of poetry, for I know that thou knowest that this step is to me the eighth of these 'seven severe ones.'"

In the following quatrain, also cited by Shibli (p. 168), he alludes to his proposed journey to India and bids himself

1 The verses are given by Shibli, op. cit., p. 166.
2 Literally "which has the White Hand," in allusion to one of the miracles of Moses.
3 That is, Ṣūfism, as explained by Shibli.
4 The word-play between suwāyda' and sawād cannot be reproduced in translation.
5 This expression occurs in Qur'ān xii, 48, where it denotes the "seven lean years."
“leave his black (i.e. bad) luck in Persia, because no one would take a Hindú as a present to India”: 

طالب کلٰی ایمن چنین بیستان بنگذار؛
بنگذار که می شوی پریشان بنگذار،
بنش سید هموش به ایران بنگذار
هندر نبرد تنهه کسی جانب هند;

He had an elder sister to whom he was deeply attached and after a long separation she came from Persia to Agra to see him. He thereupon sought leave of absence from the Emperor Jahángír in the following verses:

صاحبنا ذوّه برورا عرشي،
پریه همیشه ایست غیر خواره;
داره سال بلکه بیش گذشت،
نظر دور منظرت مرا;
وین گنی جزیر منگرت مرا
دور گشتی ز خدمش بیراق;
او نیاورد تاب دوری میه
امد ایندی براکر وز شوشن;
دل طبان چون کبوتری مرا
چه خنیم شوق رهبرت مرا;
گر شود رخصت زیارت او،
به چهانی برادرت مرا;

O Master, Patron of the humble! I have a representation [to make] in eloquent language.

I have an old and sympathetic sister, who entertains for me a mother’s love.

Fourteen years or more have passed since my eyes were parted from the sight of her face.

I was removed from her service in ‘Iráq, and this sin is a grievous fault of mine.

1 Shibli, op. cit., pp. 179–180.

2 Dharra means a mote, then metaphorically any very small thing or person, so that dharra-parwar is equivalent to the common Indian gharib-parwar, “protector of the poor.”
She could not bear to remain far from me, for she is as a mother to me.
Lo, she hath come to Ágra, and in longing for her my heart flutters like a pigeon.
My heart craves after her: what can I do? Yearning impels me on the road.
If leave should be granted me to visit her, it would be worth a world to me."

Of love-poems there are only too many in Persian, but poems such as this, testifying to deep and sincere family affection, are rare enough to make them worthy of record.

(7) Shifá’i (d. 1037/1627). There exists in the British Museum (Or. 1372, f. 7a) a portrait of this poet, as well as one of his satires, entitled Sizdah-band1 (Add. 12,560, ff. 134–140): see Rieu, pp. 786 and 822.

I cannot find in my manuscript of the Tá’rikh-i-‘Álam-árá-yi-Abbási, either amongst the poets or the physicians of the court of Sháh ‘Abbáás, the notice of him to which Rieu refers, but there is a long account of him in M. F. (vol. ii, pp. 21–23) and in the R. ‘Á. of the same author (pp. 213–218), as well as in A. K. (pp. 168–9). His proper name was Hákim (Doctor) Sharafu’d-Dín Hasan, and he was court-physician and boon companion to Sháh ‘Abbáás the Great. Rídá-qlí Khán says that “his medicine eclipsed his scholarship, as his poetry eclipsed his medicine”:

فضل حكیرا طبابت و طبابت اورا شاعری محوج داشته

Besides satires and odes he composed a mathnawi poem entitled Namakdán-i-Haqiqat in imitation of Saná’í’s Hadígatu’l-Haqiqat.

(8) Mír Muḥammad Báqir-i-Dámád of Astarábád (d. 1040/1630–1). The title Dámád (“Son-in-law”) really applies to his father, who was the son-in-law of the celebrated mujáhid Shaykh ‘Alí ibn ‘Abdu’l-Ál al-Ámilí. Mír Dámád, who wrote

1 So called, I suppose, because it contains 13 strophes.
SHIFÁ'Í, POET AND PHYSICIAN


To face p. 256
verse under the pen-name of Iskūrāq, was more notable as a theologian and philosopher than as a poet. See Rieu, p. 835; M. F., ii, p. 7; R. ‘A., pp. 166-7; A. K., p. 159. There are long notices of him in the Rawdatul-Jannat (pp. 114-116), and in the Tārīkh-i-‘Alam-ard-yi-‘Abbāst, written in 1025/1616, while he was still living. He is there described as skilled in most of the sciences, especially philosophy, philology, mathematics, medicine, jurisprudence, exegesis and tradition, and about a dozen of his prose works are mentioned. He was one of the teachers of the great philosopher Mullā Šadrā of Shīrāz.

9) Mīr Abu’l-Qāsim-i-Findariski (d. about 1050/1640-1) was also more notable as a philosopher than as a poet, but is mentioned in M. F., vol. ii, pp. 6-7; R. ‘A., pp. 156-6; A. K., pp. 143-4; and Rieu, pp. 815-816. One poem of his, written in imitation of Nāšir-i-Khusraw, is cited in all the tadhkkiras, and is therefore, presumably, his best known if not his best production. It begins:

چرخ با این اختیار نغزو خوش زیباستی:
صورتی در زیر دارد هرچه بر بالاستی;
صورت زیرین اگر با نردهان معرفت،
بر رود بالا همان با اصل خود یکنستی;
این سخن را در نیابد هیچ فیپر ظاهری;
گر ابو نصرستی و گر بو علی سیناستی;

"The heaven with these fair and pleasant stars should be beautiful;
it hath an aspect beneath, whatever there may be above.
If this lower aspect should ascend by the ladder of knowledge, it
would indeed be at one with its original.
No exoteric understanding can comprehend this speech, though it
be Abū Naṣr [al-Fārábī] or Abū ‘Alī [ibn] Sīnā (Avicenna)."

Abu’l-Qāsim was extraordinarily careless of appearances,
dressing like a darwish, avoiding the society of the rich
and the respectable, and associating with disreputable vagabonds. One day Sháh 'Abbás, intending to rebuke him for keeping such low company, said to him, "I hear that certain students cultivate the society of vagabonds and look on at their degrading diversions." "I move constantly in those circles," replied Mir Abú'l-Qásim, "but I have never seen any of the students there." He made a journey to India, and there, according to the Dabistán¹, came under the influence of certain disciples of Ádhar Kaywán and imbibed Zoroastrian and Hindú or Buddhist ideas which led him to declare that he would never perform the pilgrimage to Mecca, since it would involve his taking the life of an innocent animal. Though his attainments are rated high by Ridá-qulí Kháń, very meagre details are given concerning his life; perhaps because, while more a philosopher than a poet, and more a darwísh than a philosopher, he does not exactly fall into any one of these three classes, and is consequently apt to be omitted from the special biographies of each.

Among the better-known minor poets of this period are Jalál Asíf (d. 1049/1639–40), Qudí (d. 1056/1646–7), Salím of Tíhrán (d. 1057/1647–8), Abú Tálíb Kalím and Amání of Mázandárán (both died in 1061/1651), Muḥammad Táhir Wahíd (d. about 1120/1708–9), and Shawkat of Búkhárá (d. 1107/1695–6). Besides Sá'íb (d. 1088/1677–8), the greatest of them all, only the fourth, the sixth and the last of these demand any separate notice.

(10) Abú Tálíb Kalím (d. 1061/1651) was born at Hamadán, but, until he went to India, lived chiefly at Káshán (whence he is often described as "Káshání") and Shíráz. Ridá-qulí Kháń (M. F., ii, p. 28) gives a very meagre notice of him, but Shíblí (Shírú'l-'Ajám, iii, pp. 205–230) discusses him at some length.

About 1028/1619 he paid a visit to his native country, but after remaining there for about two years, he again returned to India, where he became poet-laureate to Sháh Jahán. He accompanied that monarch to Cashmere and was so charmed with that country that he remained there until his death. He was a man of genial disposition, free from jealousy, and consequently popular with his fellow-poets, of whom Sá'íb and Mír Ma'súm were his special friends, so that Sá'íb says:

بغيّ صاّب و معصوبٍ نكّته سنج و كليب
ذرخ كنها زاهلي سخن مبباين يكددنك

"Except Sá'íb, the epigrammatic Ma'súm, and Kalím, who of all the poets are kind to one another?"

When the poet Malik of Qum died, Abú Tálíb composed the following verses giving the date of his death:

ملك آن يادشاه ملك معنى، نقد سخن بود;
چنان آفاق گیر از ملك معنى، بکفتا او سر اهل سخن بود;
بجستر مال تاربخی زايام;

"Malik, that king of the realm of ideas, whose name is stamped on the coin of poetry,
So enlarged the horizons of this realm of ideas that the frontiers of his domains extended from Qum to the Deccan.
I sought for the date of the year [of his death] from the days: they said 'He was the chief of the Masters of Speech'" (A Sur-i-ahl-i-sukhm bhd = 1025/1616).

Most of the Persian poets who went to India to seek a fortune, or at least a livelihood, had, according to Shiblî, nothing but evil to say of the country, but Kalím speaks of it with appreciation:

Dislike of most of the Persian poets for India.

1 Malik is, of course, the Arabic equivalent of Pádisháh, "king," and one of the two distinctive symbols of kingship is the imposition of the royal name on the current coin of the realm.
2 Shi'ru'l-'Ajam, iii, p. 209.
3 He also learned more of the vernacular than most of his countrymen. See a poem full of Hindí words cited by Shiblî (op. cit., p. 211).
"One can call it the second Paradise, in this sense, that whoever quits this garden departs with regret."

On one occasion the Sultán of Turkey wrote a letter to the Emperor Sháh Jahán reproaching him with arrogance in calling himself by this title, which means "King of the World," when he was in reality only king of India. Kalím justified his patron in the following verse:

"Since both Hind (India) and Jahán (world) are numerically identical\(^1\), the right of the king to be called 'King of the World' [and not merely 'King of India'] is demonstrated."

Shiblí discusses Kalím’s merits very fully, and cites many of his verses to illustrate them. He includes amongst them especially novelty of topics (مضمون آفرینی), original conceits (خیال بندی), and aptness of illustration (مثالیّة). In this last respect, illustrated by the following amongst other verses, Kalím resembles the more famous Sá‘íb:

"Fate sets an ambuscade against our luck: the thief always pursues the sleeper\(^2\)."

1 Both words yield the numerical equivalent 59.
2 Luck is called bidár ("awake") when it is good, and khwābida ("asleep") when it is bad.
ICH. VI] ABU ŢALIB KALIM

"He who has been raised up from the dust by fortune, like the rider of the hobby-horse, always goes on foot, although he is mounted."

"My desolate state is not mended by my virtues, just like the ruin, which does not prosper through its treasure."

"The mean man does not acquire nobility by proximity to the great: The thread does not become precious through its connection with the pearls."

"What profits it that I, like the rosary, kissed the hands of all? After all, no one loosed the knots of my affair."

"Her converse with me is as the association of the wave and the shore, Ever with me, yet ever fleeing from me."

"Where there is power, the hand and heart are not able [to use it]: The oyster-shell opens its palm when there is no pearl therein."

"Flowers and fruit are never found together in one place: it is impossible that teeth and delicacies should exist simultaneously."

1 Treasures are popularly supposed to be found in ruins.
"If thou art satisfied with thy portion, the more or less of the world is the same.
When the thirsty man requires but one draught, the pitcher and the ocean are alike."
Old age hath come, and the exuberance of the youthful temperament hath departed.
The weakness of the body can no longer support the heavy [wine] cup.
The way of the world is not worth seeing a second time:
Whoever passes from this dust-heap looks not back.
Through the triumph of thy beauty over the army of Spring
The blood of the roses hath risen a fathom above the top of the Judas-tree.
Acquire such a disposition that thou canst get on with the whole world,
Or such magnanimity that thou canst dispense with the world.

According to our creed the detachment of the 'Anqā is not complete,
For, though it retains no sign, it continues to think of name.
If one cannot travel the road without sight, then how
Canst thou forsake the world when thou hast closed thine eyes to it?
The ill repute of Life endureth no more than two days:
O Kalim, I will tell thee how these too passed:
One day was spent in attaching the heart to this and that,
And another day in detaching it from this and that.

1 The mythical bird called in Arabic 'anqā and in Persian Simurgh is often spoken of as "having name but not substance" (mawjūdāt-īsm, mafqūdāt-īsm).
Muḥammad Ṭāhir Waḥīd of Qazwīn (d. 1120/1708–9)\(^1\) was an industrious rather than a great poet; he is said by Rīdā-qulī Khān\(^2\) to have left a Ḍīwān containing 90,000 verses, which, however, were for the most part "tasteless" (malāḥāti na-ḍāšīt), and of which only six are quoted as "the best of his poetry," amongst them the following quatrain testifying to his Shi'a proclivities:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{اذا مبرع علي طينت هر حكى كه سرئت} \\
\text{هر قند بود هميشه در دير و كنئت} \\
\text{در وزنخ اگر در آووندش بهمث} \\
\text{چا گرم نکره میبرندش بهمتشت}
\end{align*}
\]

"Whosoever's nature is leavened with the love of ‘Ali, Though he be the constant frequenter of church or synagogue, Even if, for example, they should bring him into Hell, They would bear him thence to Paradise ere his place there had been heated."

The main facts of Waḥīd's life are given by Rieu\(^3\). He was secretary to two successive Prime Ministers of Persia, Mīrzā Taqīyyu'd-Dīn Muḥammad and Khalīṣa Sultan. In 1055/1645–6 he was appointed court-historiographer to Shāh ‘Abbās II, became a Minister in 1101/1689–90, retired eighteen years later into private life, and died about 1120/1708–9. Five manuscripts of his historical monograph are described by Rieu, one of which (Or. 2940) comes down to the twenty-second year of the reign, 1073–4/1663. The remark of the Atash-kada, that these poems were only

\(^1\) The date of his death is uncertain. See Rieu's Persian Supplement, pp. 40–41, and Ethé's India Office Catalogue of Persian MSS, cols. 900–1.

\(^2\) M. F., ii, p. 50.

\(^3\) Persian Catalogue, pp. 189–190, and the Supplement cited in the last note but one.
praised on account of the author's rank, is probably justified. He was, according to Ethé, a friend of the poet Šá'ib.

(12) **Shawkat** of Bukhárá (d. 1107/1695–6) is at the present day almost unknown in Persia. He is not even mentioned in the *Majma'ul-Fuṣahá* and but briefly in the *Riyádul-ʻÁrifín*, where only two of his verses are cited, together with the description of his eccentric demeanour given by his contemporary Shaykh Muhammad ʻAlf Láhiji, called Hazín, who saw him wandering about in mid-winter, bare-headed and bare-footed, with a piece of felt (*namad-pára*) over his shoulders and his head covered with snow, which he did not trouble to shake off. Shawkat only deserves mention because of the reputation which he enjoys in Turkey and the influence which he exerted over Turkish poetry, an influence which Gibb emphasizes in several places in his *History of Ottoman Poetry*.

(13) **Šá'ib of Tabríz** (d. 1088/1677–8) is considered by Shibli as the last great Persian poet, superior in originality to Qá'ání, the greatest and most famous of the moderns, whom he regards as a mere imitator of Farrukhí and Minúchíri. Rídá-qulī Khán, on the other hand, says that Šá'ib has "a strange method in the poet's path, which is not now admired." He is, in short, like 'Urfí, one of those poets who, while greatly esteemed in Turkey and India, are without honour in their own country. I have already expressed my own personal opinion as to his high merits.

1 See Rieu's *Persian Cat.*, p. 698; Ethé's India Office *Persian Cat.*, cols. 891–2.


3 Though he was born in Tabríz he was educated and grew up in Iṣfahán, and is therefore often called "of Iṣfahán."

4 *Shiru'l-Ajam*, vol. iii, p. 189.


6 Pp. 164–5 *supra*. 

---

Note: The page begins with a header indicating the chapter and section, followed by the main text. The text refers to historical figures from Persian literature, discussing their contributions and influences. It highlights Shawkat of Bukhárá and Šá'ib of Tabríz, two significant poets, and mentions their reputations and influence in different contexts.
According to the Ātash-kada, Šā'īb, whose proper name was Mīrzā Muḥammad 'Alī, was born in the village of 'Abbás-ābād near Isfahān, whither his father's family had been transferred from Tabrīz by Shāh 'Abbās. Having completed his studies in Isfahān, he visited Dīhlī and other cities of India at an early age, certainly before 1039/1629–30, and was patronized by Zafar Khān and other nobles. He had only spent two years there, however, when his father, though seventy years of age, followed him to India in order to induce him to return home, for which journey he sought permission from his patron Zafar Khān in the following verses:

شش سال بیش رفت که از اصفهان بیرون
افتاده است توسِن عزم مرا کفر
آورده است جذبہ گَشاخ شوقِ من
از اصفهان باگر و لاخرش اشکبار

هفتاد ساله والد پیرست بندوا
خن تربیت بود بمنش حقی بی شبار
ز آن پیشتر کر آگر ببعیدر، دکن
آید عبان گستهتر از سیل بیقرار

این راه دورا ز سر شوق طی صند
با قامت خمیده و با پیکر نزار

دارم امید رخصتی از آستان تو
ای آستانت سکعهِ امیدِ روزگار

مقصود او ز آمدنش پردن منست
لبر ا بحرف رخصتِ من کن گنهرش
با جبهه‌ خشاده‌تر از آفتاب صبح
دست دعا ببدرفه راه من بر آر

2 Shibli's Shi'ru'l-ʾAjam, vol. iii, p. 194.
Autograph of the poet Šá‘īb

Or. 4937 (Brit. Mus.), p. 472
“More than six years have passed since the passage of the steed of my resolve from Isfahan to India took place. The bold attraction of my longing has brought him weeping from Isfahan to Agra and Lahore.

I your servant have an aged father seventy years old, who has countess claims upon me by reason of the education he gave me. Before he comes from Agra to the flourishing land of the Deccan with reins looser than the restless torrent, and eagerly traverses this far road with bent body and feeble form, I hope for permission from thy threshold, O thou whose threshold is the Ka’ba of the age’s hopes!

His object in coming is to take me hence, therefore cause thy lips to scatter pearls of speech by uttering the word of permission, and, with a forehead more open than the morning sun, raise thy hand in prayer to speed me on my way.”

On his return to Isfahan, Sā‘īb became poet-laureate to Shāh ‘Abbās II, but had the misfortune to offend his successor Sulaymān. He died in Isfahan after an apparently uneventful life in 1080/1669-70. The words “Sā‘īb found death” (صائب وفاته) give the date of his decease.

Amongst the merits ascribed to Sā‘īb by Shibli is an appreciation of Indian poets rare with the Persians. Shibli quotes thirteen verses in which Sā‘īb cites with approval, by way of tadmīn or “insertion,” the words of Faydī, Malik, Tālib-i-Āmulī, Naw‘ī, Awhadī, Shawqī, Fatḥī, Shāpūr, Muṭ‘ī, Awjī, Adham, Ḥadhiq and Rāqim. In the following verses he deprecates the jealousy which too often characterizes rival singers:

خوش آن گرود که مست بيان پیکدرگند 
ز جوش فكر مي ارغوان پيكدرگند
نهي زند بصم شكست گوهر هم 
پي رواج متاع رکان پيكدرگند

1 If, as Shibli says, these verses were composed in or about 1041/1631-2, Sā‘īb must have come to India about 1035/1625-6.
2 These words, however, yield the number 1081, not 1080.
الشاعر: نهنئ بسهر گل ز مصور رنگین،
ز فکر تازه گل بوستان یکدگنند;
سخن تراش چی گونه تیغ المانند;
زند جو طبع بعنوان فسان یکدگنند;
بغير صائب و معصوم نکنه نسج و طلیع;
دگر چه ز اهل سخن مهربان یکدگنند،

"Happy that company who are intoxicated with each other's speech;
who, through the fermentation of thought, are each other's red
wine.
They do not break on the stone [of criticism] one another's pearls
[i.e. verses], but rather strive to give currency to the wares of
one another's shops.
They pelt one another with tender-hued verses as with roses, with
fresh ideas they become the flowers of one another's gardens.
When they shape their poetry it is with blades like diamonds, and
when their genius tends to become blunted, they are each other's
whetstones.
Except Šá'íb, the epigrammatic Ma'ṣúm, and Kalim, who of all the
poets are kind to one another."}

Sha'ib was a great admirer of Háfiz, and is also comple-
mentary to his masters Rukná and Shífá'í. Of the latter
he says

"Who will care for poetry in Isfahán, O Šá'íb,
Now that Shífá'í, whose discerning hand was on the pulse of poetry,
is no more?"

He puts Naẓírí not only above himself but above Ūrffí,
"So far," says Shíblí, "no objection can be made, but it is
a pity that, yielding to popular approbation and fame, he
makes himself also the panegyrist of Žuhúrfí and Jalál-i-

1 Cf. p. 259 supra.
2 Shírú'l-Ajam, vol. iii, p. 198.
Asir... This was the first step in bad taste, which finally established a high road, so that in time people came to bow down before the poetry of Nasir 'Ali, Bf-dil, and Shawkat of Bukhará. 'The edifice of wrong-doing was at first small in the world, but whoever came added thereunto.'

Though Sa'ib tried his hand at all kinds of poetry, it was in the ode (ghazal) that he excelled. He was a ready wit. One of his pupils once composed the following absurd hemistich:

اژِ شیشهٔ بی‌می‌می بی‌شیشه طلب کن

"Seek for the bottleless wine from the wineless bottle."

Sa'ib immediately capped it with the following:

حقّاً زدّه خالی از انديشه طلب کن

"Seek for the truth from the heart which is empty of thought."

On another occasion one of his friends produced the following meaningless hemistich and apparently invited Sa'ib to complete the verse and give it a meaning:

دوبدن رفتن استاون نشستن خفتن و مردن

Sa'ib immediately prefixed the following hemistich:

بقدر هر سكون راحت بود بینکر تفاوت را

so that the completed verse runs in translation:

"Peace is in proportion to every pause: observe the difference between 'to run, to walk, to stand, to sit, to lie, to die.'"

(Sa'ib was a very careful student of the works of his predecessors, both ancient and modern, and himself compiled a great anthology of their best verses, of which, according to Shibli, a manuscript exists at Haydar-ábad in the Deccan, and which appears to have been utilized by Wálih of Dághistán and other tadhkira-writers. Shibli

1 This is a quotation from the Gulistán of Sa'ádi (ed. Platts, p. 32).
compares Sā'īb to Abū Tammām, the compiler of the great anthology of Arabic poetry called the *Hamāsa*, inasmuch as his taste is shown even more in his selective than in his creative powers. The following are the verses by Sā'īb which I selected from the *Kharābdī* and copied into a note-book many years ago¹. They pleased me when I was a beginner, they still please me, and I hope that some of them at any rate may please my readers.

جُو شد زهر عادت مضِرْت نَبْخشْت،ِ
به‌رگِ آشنایی کهن بتدغیج جانِ را،
“*When poison becomes a habit it ceases to injure: make thy soul gradually acquainted with death.*”

بیشتَر دلیستگی باشند بدین‌های پیر‌رَ:\n
“*The roots of the aged palm-tree exceed those of the young one; the old have the greater attachment to the world.*”

هر سری دارد درین بازار سودایی دُگر؛
هر کسی بندد بآمین دُگر دَسَتِرَارا،
“In this market every head has a different fancy: everyone winds his turban in a different fashion.”

تَی دستِن قَستِرَا چَه سود از رُهْبِ کامِلِ\nکه خضر از آپ چیوهان تشته باز آرد سَکندِرِ را،
“What profit accrues from a perfect guide to those whom Fate hath left empty-handed, for even Khidr brings back Alexander athirst from the Water of Life?”

سَبح بِرْکَ توبه بولب دل پُر از صَوق گُناهِ;
معصیت را خنده مِی آبید و استغفاَر مِا،
“The rosary in the hand, repentance on the lips, and the heart full of sinful longings—sin itself laughs at our repentance!”

¹ See pp. 164–5 *supra*. My copy of these selected verses was completed on Sept. 4, 1885.
SA‘İB OF İSFANİAN

"The place of a royal pearl should be in a treasury: one should make one's breast the common-place book for chosen verses."

"All this talk of infidelity and religion finally leads to one place: The dream is the same dream, only the interpretations differ."

"The tyrant finds no security against the arrows of the victim's sighs: Groans arise from the heart of the bow before [they arise from] the target."

"The cure for the unpleasant constitution of the world is to ignore it: Here he is awake who is plunged in heavy sleep."

"Flowers and fruit are never combined in one place: it is impossible that teeth and delicacies should exist simultaneously."

"Ten doors are opened if one door be shut: the finger is the interpreter of the dumb man's tongue."

"The simple-minded quickly acquire the colour of their companions: The conversation of the parrot makes the mirror [seem to] speak."
The march of good fortune has backward slips: to retreat one or two paces gives wings to the jumper.

The wave is ignorant of the true nature of the sea: how can the Temporal comprehend the Eternal?

The touchstone of false friends is the day of need: by way of proof, ask a loan from your friends.

The learned man is a stranger amidst the people of the world, just as the 'witness-finger' [i.e. the index-finger] appears strange on the Christian's hand.

What doth it profit thee that all the libraries of the world should be thine? Not knowledge but what thou dost put into practice is thine.

The life of this transitory world is the expectation of death: to renounce life is to escape from the expectation of annihilation.

O my dear friend! thou hast more care for wealth than for life.
Thy attachment to the turban is greater than to the head.
بای شما قرب از جانان دل ما غافلست،
زنده از دریاست ماهاي و زدرا غافلست،

"Our heart is heedless of the Beloved, notwithstanding our complete proximity:"

The fish lives through the sea, yet needs not the sea."

گریه قلم شمع از برای ماتیر پروانه نیست،
صُلح نزدیکت در فقر شب تار خودست،

"The weeping of the candle is not in mourning for the moth: the
dawn is at hand, and it is thinking of its own dark night."

رفتن از عالی پریشور به از آمدنست،
غنچه دلتنگ بیاغ آماد و خندان بر خاست،

"To quit this troubled world is better than to enter it: the rose-bud
ers enters the garden with straitened heart and departs smiling.""

اگر میان دو دل هست دوستی بقرار،
نیش شوند آماد شد خبر محتاج،

"If friendship is firmly established between two hearts, they do not
need the interchange of news."

آدمی پیر چودی حرص جوان میگردد،
خواب در وقت سحرگاه گران میگردد،

"When a man becomes old, his greed becomes young: sleep grows
heavy at the time of morning."

خموشی خسته ناطق بود جویای کوهرا،
که از غوای در دریا نفس ببرون نمی آید،

"To the seeker after pearls silence is a speaking argument, for no
breath comes forth from the diver in the sea."

پیک خف خاک درین مبکده ضایع نشور،

"Not one handful of earth is wasted in this tavern: they make it
either into a pitcher, a wine-jar, or a wine-cup."
The enjoyments of both worlds will not satisfy the greedy man:
Burning fire has always an appetite."

"The humá¹ of happiness came to me in old age; the shadow of fortune came to me at the time of [the sun's] decline:
Heaven became kind to me at the close of my life: peaceful slumber visited me at morning-time."

¹ The humá is a mythical bird of whom it is supposed that if its shadow falls on anyone he will become a king.

"I talk of repentance in the days of old age; I bite my lip [in remorse] now that no teeth remain to me."

"When perfection² is unduly increased it becomes the destroyer of life:
The tender branch breaks when it bears too much fruit."

"If I am mad, then who on the face of the earth is sane? If thou art sane, then there is no madman in the world."

¹ As already pointed out, perfection is regarded as a danger because it is specially obnoxious to the Evil Eye, which the Arabs call 'Aynul-Kamal, "the Eye of Perfection." See supra, p. 117, n. 2, and p. 216, n. 2.
"The only thing which troubles me about the Resurrection Day is this, 
That one will have to look once again on the faces of mankind."

لا مکانی شو که تبدیل مکان‌ی آب و گل،
نقل ضرون باشد از زندان بزندان دگر؛
"Become placeless, for to change this place of water and clay is but 
to move from one prison to another."

نوییت حکه دل از حاصل چهان بر دار،
به بهره دست رسیت نیست دل از آن بر دار؛
"I do not bid thee detach thy heart from the sum of the world: de-
tach thy heart from whatever lies beyond thy reach."

انجام بت پرست بود به ز خود پرست؛
در قید خود مبایش و بقید فرگی باش،
"In the end the idolator is better than the worshipper of self: better 
be in bondage to the Franks than in the bondage of self."

گر پشت پا بعالم صورت نمی زنی،
تا حشر در شکنجه، این خلفش تنگ باش؛
"If thou dost not trample under foot this world of form, then suffer 
until the Resurrection the torments of this tight boot."

درون خانه، خود هر گذا شنگاهیست،
قدم برون منه از حد خویش و سلطان باش،
"Within his own house every beggar is an emperor: do not overstep 
thine own limit and be a king."

گر سجود گل صنبر بر ست بليل خطاست،
من که در آتش پرستی آخت پرواهناهار؛
"If I worship the rose according to the rites of the nightingale, it is 
a fault—I, who in the worship of fire am of the religion of the 
moth."
"Everyone who like the candle exalts his head with a crown of gold will oft-times sit [immersed] in his tears up to the neck."

"Formerly people used to grieve over the departed, but in our days they grieve over the survivors."

"Either one should not avert one's face from the torrent of vicissitudes Or one should not make one's home in the plain of the Phenomenal World."

"Every tombstone is a hand stretched forth from the house of oblivion of the earth to search for thee."

"The hair has become white through the squeezing of the sphere, and the milk which I had drunk in the time of childhood has re-appeared [on my head]."

"If everyone could easily become honoured in his own country, How would Joseph have passed from his father's embrace to a prison?"
III. Between A.D. 1700 and 1800 (A.H. 1131–1215).

From the literary point of view this century is perhaps the most barren in the whole history of Persia, so much so that the only notable poem produced by it is, so far as I know, the celebrated tarji'-band of Hátif-i-Isfaháni, of which I shall speak presently. On the other hand we have two full and authoritative accounts of the period by two men of letters who were personally involved in the disastrous events which befell Persia during and after the Afghán invasion, and who have left us a fairly clear and detailed picture of that sad and troubled epoch. These men were Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín (b. 1103/1692, d. 1180/1766-7), and Luṭf 'Alí Beg poetically surnamed Ádhar (b. 1123/1711, d. 1195/1781). Both were poets, and the former even a prolific poet, since he composed three or four diváns, but their prose writings are, from our point of view, of much greater interest and value than their verse.

Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín, whose proper name was Muhammad ibn Abí Ţálíb of Gílán, is best known by his "Memoirs" (Tadhkíratu'l-Ahwád), which he composed in India in 1154/1741–2, twenty years after he had become an exile from his native land, and which are easily accessible to students in the text and English translation published by F. C. Belfour in 1830–31. He was born, as he himself tells us, on Monday the 27th of Rabí‘íi, 1103 (Jan. 19, 1692) at Isfahán, and was directly descended in the eighteenth degree from the famous Shaykh Záhid of Gílán, of whom some account was given in a previous chapter. The family continued to reside in Gílán, first at Astárá and then at Láhiján, until the author's

1 Cf. p. 168 supra.
2 See pp. 38–43 supra.
father, Shaykh Abū Ṭālib, at the age of twenty, went to Iṣfahān to pursue his studies, and there married and settled. He died there in 1127/1715 at the age of sixty-nine, leaving three sons, of whom our author was the eldest, to mourn his loss. Shaykh ʿAlī Ḥāzīn speaks in the highest terms of his father’s character and ability, and quotes a few lines from an elegy which he composed on this mournful occasion. He also mentions that, amongst other final injunctions, his father addressed to him the following remarkable words:

“If you have the choice, make no longer stay in Iṣfahān. It were meet that some one of our race should survive.”

“At that time,” the author continues, “I did not comprehend this part of his address, not till after some years, when the disturbance and ruin of Iṣfahān took place.”

Since the “Memoirs” can be read in English by anyone interested in their contents, it is unnecessary to discuss or analyse them here, and it will be sufficient to emphasize their importance as a picture of the author’s times, and to note a few points of literary interest. In 1135/1722–3 he began to compile a kind of literary scrap-book or magazine (majmūʿa), probably somewhat similar in character to the Kāshkūl of Shaykh Bahā’u’d-Dīn ʿĀmil, and entitled Muddatūʾl-ʿUmrl (“Lifetime”), but it was lost with the rest of his library in the sack of Iṣfahān by the Afghāns a few months later. About the same time or a little earlier he wrote, besides numerous philosophical commentaries, a book on the Horse (Fāras-nāma), and

1 A fourth son died in infancy. The mother survived the father by two years.
3 Compare text, p. 107; translation, p. 117.
4 See pp. 93–4 of Belfour’s translation, to which henceforth references will be given. There is a MS. of this work in the British Museum. See Rieu’s Persian Catalogue, p. 483, where two other works by the same author, one on wine and measures and another on beasts of venery, are mentioned.
published his second *Dīwān* of poetry, and soon afterwards his third.\(^1\)

The Afghān invasion and the misery which it caused, especially in Ḩisfahān, put a stop to Shaykh Ḥalī Ḥazīn's literary activities for some time. "During the latter days of the siege," he says, "I was attacked by severe illness; and my two brothers, my grandmother, and the whole of the dwellers in my house died, so that my mansion was emptied of all but two or three infirm old women-servants, who attended me till my disorder began to abate." Being somewhat recovered, he escaped from Ḩisfahān early in Muḥarram, 1135 (October, 1722), only a few days before it surrendered to, and was entered by, the Afghāns. During the next ten years he wandered about in different parts of Persia, successively visiting or residing at Khurramābād in Luristān, Hamadān, Nihāwand, Dīzful, Shūštār (whence by way of Basra he made the pilgrimage to Mecca and on his return journey visited Yaman), Kirmānshāh, Baghdad and its holy places, Mashhad, Kurdistān, Aḥharbāyjān, Gilān and Tihrān. From the last-named city he returned once more to Ḩisfahān, to find "that great city, notwithstanding the presence of the King,\(^2\) in utter ruin and desertion. Of all that population and of my friends scarcely any one remained." It was the same at Shīrāz, whither he made his way six months later. "Of all my great friends there," he says, "the greatest I had in the world, not one remained on foot; and I met with a crowd of their children and relatives in the most melancholy condition and without resource." From Shīrāz he made his way by Lār to Bandar-i-Abbās, intending to go thence in

\(^1\) See Belfour's translation, pp. 106 and 111, and for his fourth *Dīwān*, which was published somewhat later, p. 176.


\(^3\) *Ibid.*, p. 205. This was after the expulsion of the Afghāns by Nādir.

a European ship to the Hijáz, "because their ships and packets are very spacious and are fitted up with convenient apartments, and their navigators also are more expert on the sea and more skilful in their art than any other nation." He was, however, prevented by illness and poverty (caused partly by the loss of his patrimony in Gílán, partly by the exorbitant and oppressive taxation which now prevailed) from carrying out this plan. A subsequent attempt carried him in a Dutch vessel as far as Muscat, which he found little to his liking, so that after a stay of rather more than two months he returned again to Bandar-i-'Abbás. He next visited Kirmán, but, finding "the affairs of that ruined country in utter confusion by reason of the insurrection of a body of the Balúch tribe and other accidents," he returned thence after a few months' stay to Bandar-i-'Abbás in the hope of being able to go thence once again to Baghdád and the Holy Shrines. Finding this impracticable owing to Nádir's operations against the Turks, and unable to endure any longer the sight of the misery prevailing throughout Persia, he embarked on the 10th of Ramadán, 1146 (Feb. 14, 1734) for India, where, in spite of the deep dislike which he conceived for that country, he was destined to spend the remaining forty-five years of his long life. "To me," he says, "who do not reckon the time of my residence in this country as a portion of my real life, the beginning of my arrival on the shores of this empire appears as it were the end of my age and vitality." A little further on he says, "Altogether my nature had no agreement with the fashions and manners of this country, nor any power of patiently enduring them," and adds a few lines lower "the sight of these dominions became more and more hateful to me, and being continually in hope of escape from them, I reconciled

---

1 See Belfour's translation, p. 215.
2 Ibid., p. 240.
3 Ibid., p. 253.
my mind to the incidents in the affairs of Persia, and bent my thoughts on my return thither." Although unhappily disappointed in this hope, and compelled to spend the long remainder of his days in "a country traced...with foulness and trained to turpitude and brutality," where "all the situations and conditions...are condemned by fate to difficulty and bitterness of subsistence," he declined to include in his "Memoirs" any account of his personal experiences in India, save in so far as they were connected with such important historical events as Nádir Sháh's invasion and the terrible massacre he made in Dihlí on March 20, 1739. So, though the "Memoirs" were penned at "the end of the year [A.H.] 1154" (beginning of A.D. 1742), they deal chiefly with the author's personal history before he left Persia twenty years earlier. The accounts of contemporary scholars and men of letters (many of whom perished during the siege of Isfahán in A.D. 1722) with whom he was personally acquainted constitute one of the most valuable features of this interesting book.

Eleven years later (1165/1752) Shaykh 'Álí Hazín composed an account of about a hundred contemporary poets entitled Tadhkira't-Mu'ásirín, which is included in the lithographed edition of his complete works published at Lucknow in 1293/1876, and of which MSS. exist in the British Museum and elsewhere.

1 See Belfour's translation, p. 255.  
2 Ibid., p. 256.  
3 Ibid., p. 261.  
4 Ibid., p. 257.  
5 See Rieu's Pers. Cat., p. 372, and Sprenger's Catalogue, pp. 135–141, where the contents are fully stated. Through the kindness of my friend Professor Muḥammad Shafi' of the Oriental College, Lahore, I have recently (September, 1923) received a copy of the Kulliyyat, or Complete Works, of Shaykh 'Álí Hazín, lithographed at Kánpur in 1893. It comprises 1032 pp., of which this Tadhkira occupies pp. 931–1025. I make the number of biographies contained in it 96, and of all these
Another and more accessible contemporary account of the poets of this period forms the last portion of the well-known Ātash-kada ("Fire-temple") of Lutf 'Alī Beg Ādhar. The greater part of this book deals with the Persian poets who flourished before the author's time, arranged in alphabetical order under the various towns and countries which gave birth to them, including Túrán and Hindúsán. This is followed by an account of sixty of the author's contemporaries, which begins with a brief historical survey of the misfortunes of Persia during the fifty years succeeding the Afghán invasion down to the re-establishment of security and order in the South by Karím Khán-i-Zand. The author recognizes the dearth of poets and men of letters during this period and ascribes it to the prevalent chaos and misery, "which," he says, "have reached such a point that no one has the heart to read poetry, let alone to compose it."

تغريدی بال و اختلال حال بحدیست که کسی را حال خواندن
شعر نیست تا بگفتند شعر چه رسد?

To most of these poets the author devotes only a few lines. The longer notices include Mullá Muḥammad Mú'mín, poetically surnamed Dâ'ī, who died in 1155/1742-3 at the age of ninety; Mullá Ḥusayn Rafiq of Iṣfahán; Sayyid Muḥammad Shu'la of Iṣfahán; Sayyid Muḥammad Šádiq of Tafrish; Mírzá Ja'far Šáfí of Iṣfahán; a young friend of the author's named Sulaymán, who wrote under the name Šabáḥ, and to whose poems he devotes no less than thirteen pages; Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí Šubāh of Iṣfahán;

poets there are only about four of whom I ever heard even the names, to wit, Tāhir of Qazwin, Shawkat of Bukhárá, Shafí'á Athar of Shíráz, and Lutf 'Alī Beg Shámi.

1 "That peerless Prince of happy fortune Abūn-Naṣr Sulṭán Karím."
Áqá Taqí Sahbá of Qum; Sayyid ‘Abdu’l-Báqí Tablí ("the physician"), whose father Mírzá Muḥammad Ráhím was court-physician to Sháh Sultán Husayn, as he himself was to Nádir Sháh; Ṭúfán of Hazár-jaríf, whose death was commemorated by the author in a chronogram giving the date 1190/1776-7; Áqá Muḥammad ‘Áṣḥíq of Isfahán (d. 1181/1767-8), to whom he devotes eight pages; and his own younger brother Isháq Beg, who wrote under the pen-name of ‘Udhří and died in 1185/1771-2, according to the chronogram:

نادا در پیش چاودان اسحق بیگ

Other poets noticed are Muhammad ‘Alí Beg the son of Abdál Beg, a Frankish painter who embraced Islám; Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn Ghālib, who spent fourteen years of his earlier life in India and married the daughter of the Nawwáb Sar-afrááz Khán; Mír Sayyid ‘Alí Mushtáq of Isfahán; Sayyid Muḥammad Sádiq, nephew of the above-mentioned court-physician Mírzá Muḥammad Ráhím, who, besides several mathnawí poems dealing with the somewhat threadbare romances of Laylá and Majnún, Khusraw and Shírín and Wámiq and ‘Adhrá, was engaged on a history of the Zand dynasty; Mírzá Naṣír, son of the physician Mírzá ‘Abdu’lláh (d. 1192/1778); and Sayyid Ahmad Hátif, the most notable of all these poets, of whom we shall shortly have to speak.

Luṭf ‘Alí Beg concludes his Átash-káda with an autobiography of himself, from which we learn that he was born on the 2oth of Rabí‘i, A.H. 1123 (June 7, 1711) at Isfahán, but spent fourteen years of his earlier life at Qum, whither his family migrated in consequence of the Afghán menace. At the beginning of Nádir Sháh’s reign his father was made governor of Lár and the coasts of Fárs, and he resided in Shíráz. On the death of his father two years later he accompanied his uncle Hájjí Muḥammad Beg on the
pilgrimage to Mecca, and, after visiting that and the other holy places, returned to Persia, and was at Mashhad when Nádír's victorious army returned from India. After accompanying them to Mázandarán he returned to Işfahán, and, after the assassination of Nádír Sháh, was attached for a while to the service of 'Alí Sháh, Ibráhím Sháh, Sháh Isma'íl and Sháh Sulaymán. He then seems to have retired from public life and devoted himself to the cultivation of poetry under the guidance and tuition of Mír Sayyid 'Alí Mushtáq. With selections of this poetry, largely drawn from his Vásuf u Zulaybáhá, he concludes the book ¹.

Of Sayyid Aḥmad Hátif of Işfahán, though he was the contemporary and friend of Luṭf 'Alí Beg, no biographical particulars are given in the Ātash-kada, but only praises which appear somewhat exaggerated, since he is described as "in Arabic and Persian verse and prose the third after A'shá and Jarír, and second only to Anwarí and Zahír." Nearly ten pages are filled with citations from his poems, but of all these we need only concern ourselves with the beautiful and celebrated tarjî-band by which alone Hátif's name has been immortalized.

(بند اولا)

ای فدای تو هم درد ول هیر جان
وی نشیره هیر این ول هیر آن
دل فدای تو چون توئی دلبر
جان نثار تو چون توئی جانان
دل رهاندن ز دست تو مشکل
جان فشاندن بهای تو آسان

¹ I have used the Ātash-kada in the Bombay lithographed edition of 1277/1860. It has three defects: the numeration of the pages stops at 189; the dates are often omitted; and the accuracy of the text leaves a good deal to be desired.
راه وصل تو راه پر آسیب
درد عشق تو درد بی درمان
بندگانیم جان و دل در خفه
چشمه بر حکیم و گوش بر پرمان
گر سر صلح داري اینک دل
ور سر چنگ داري اینک جان
دوش از شور عشق و جذبه، شوق
هر طرف می شتافتند حیران
آخری ضایر شوق دیدار
سوی دیب مغان خشید عنان
چشمه بد دور خلوتی دیدم
روشن از نور حق نه از نیران
.هر طرف دیدم آتشی طان شب
دید در طور موسی عمران
پیری آنجل باتش افروزی
بادب گرد پیر مغبچگان
همه سبیلند عذار و گل رخسار
همه شیرین زبان و نگاه دهان
عود و چنگ و نی و دف و بربط
شمع و نقل و گل و می و ربخان
ساقی ماهر و مشکین میوی
مطرب بذله گوی خوش الهان
.مغ و مغ زاده موبید و دستور
خدمه ای تهام بسته میان
من شورنده از مسلمانی
شندم آنجل بگوشه پنبه
پیر پرسید کهست این کفتد
عاقله بی قرار و سر گردن
گفت جامی دهدش از می ناب
گرچه ناگوانه باشد این می‌مان
ساقی آتش دست و آتش پرست
ریخت در ساعر آتش سوزان

۲۰، چون شهیدمان نه عقل ماند و نه هوش
سوخت هم گلفر از آن و هم ایمان
مست افتاده و در ان مستی
پزبانی که شیخ آن نتوان
این سخن می‌شند از اعضا
همه حتی الورید و الیوان
که یکی هست و هیچ نیست جزا او
ووده لا اله الا هو
(بند دویم)
از تو ای دوست نگسلم پیوند
ور بتیغم‌بزند بند از بند
۲۰، الحق ارزان بود از ما صد جان
وز دهان تنویر شکر خند
ای پدر بند کم ده از عشقم
که نخواهد شد اهل این فرزند
بند آنان دند خلق ای کاش
که ز عشقی تو می‌هندم بند
من ره طوی عافیت دائم
چهکم که او فتاده‌ام باکمند
در خلیسا بدلبروی ترسا،
فتمار ای دل بدار تو در بند،
هر سرموزی من جدا پیوند،
ره بوحدت نیافتین تا حسی
نگین تئیث بر یکی تا چند،
نام حقی یگانه چون شاید;
که اب و ابن و روح فُدُس لند;
لب شهرین خشور و با من گفت;
وز شکوخدند ربت از لب قدن;
keh گر از سر وحدت آن‌ها
تبته شافری بها مهند;
ده سر اگینه شاهد اژلی;
پرتو از روی تابنای افگند;
سه نگرد بریشم ار اورا;
پریمان خوانی و حسیر و پرند;
ما دریبن گفتگو چه از یکسی
شدن ناقوس ابن ترانه بلند؛
keh یکی هست و هیچ نیست جز او;
وحدة لا اله الا هو;
(بدن سوم)
dوش رفتیم بکوی باده فروش،
زآتش عشق دل بجوش و خروش;
велиکی نغز ودم و روشن;
سیر آن بزم پیر باده فروش.
چاکران استاده صف در صف؛
باده خواران نشته دوش بدوش؛
پیر در صدر و میکشان گردش；
پاره مسئ و پاره مدهوش；
سینه بی گینه و درون صافی؛
دل پر از گفتگو و لب خاموش؛
همه‌ها از عناية ازلی؛
چشم حق بین و گوش راز نیوش；

سخن این بان هنگاً لک؛
پاسخ آن بان که بادت نوش؛
گوش بر چنگا و چشم بر ساغر؛
آرزوی دو کوی در آغوش；
بادب پیش رفتم و گفتتم؛
ای ترا دل قرارگاه سروش؛
عاشقم دردمند و حاجتمند；
درد من بنگز و بدرمان گوش؛
پیر خندان بطنز با من کفت؛
ای ترا پیر عقل حلقه گوش；

تو کجا ما کجا ای از شرم؛
دختر رز نشته برقع پوش；
گفتتم سوخت جانی آبی ده؛
و آتش من فرو نشان از جوش؛
دوش میسوختم از نیم آتش؛
آه افر امشب بود چون دوش；
گفت خندان گه هيمن پلایه بگیر
سندم گفت هان زیاده منوش،
جرعه در کشیده و گشتار
فارغ از رنج عقل و سختی هوش،
۰۰ چون بهوش آمد یکی دیدم،
ما بقی یا همه خطو و نقوش،
نگهبان در صومعه ملکوتی
این حی września سرش گفت پگوش،
گه یکی هست و هیچ نیست جز او,
و حده لا اله الا هو،
(بند چهارم)
چشیر دل باز گدن گه جان بینی،
انچه نا دیدنیست آن بینی،
گر باقلیم عشق رو آری،
همه افاقت گلستان بینی،
۱ بر همه اهل این زمین بس dra,
گرشی دور آسمان بینی،
انچه بینی دلت همان خواهد،
و انچه خواهد دلت همان بینی،
بی سر و یا گداش آنجارا,
سر ز مالک چنان گران بینی،
هم در آن پا بر هنره قومی یارا,
پای بر فرچ فرقدان بینی,
هم در آن سر بر هنر جمعی یارا,
بر سر از عرش سایبان بینی،
۲۰ گاه وجد و سماع هر یکی‌را
بر دو کون آستین فشان بینی‌
دل هر ذره؛ که بشگناهی
آفتابیش در میان بینی‌
هرچه داری اکر بعشق دهی
خاکر گر، جوی زبان بینی‌
جان گدازی اکر بآتش عشق
عشق‌را کلیمای جان بینی‌
از مضیق جهات در گذری
و سعید ملک لا مکان بینی‌
آنچه نشیده گوش آن شنوی‌
و آنچه نا دیده چش آن بینی‌
تا بچائی رسادت چه یکی‌
از جهان و جهان بینی‌
با یکی عشق ورزی از دل و جان‌
تا ببعین الیقین عیان بینی‌
که یکی هست و هیچ نیست جزا‌و
وحده لا اله الا هو،
(بند پنج‌)
پار بی پره از در دیواری‌
در تلقی است یا اولو الیبازار‌
۲۰ شیع جویی و آفتاب بلند
روز پس روشن و تو در شب تار
گر ز ظلمات خود رهی بینی‌
همه عالم مشارقی انوار.
پیرتی، تکیه و عصای طلبه‌ی
بهر این راه روشان و همواره
چشمه بهشتی باکستان و بینه
جلو و آب صاف در کل و خاره
زآب بیرنگ یصد هزاران زنگ
به نشانه و گل نگر درین گلزاره
پا براه طلبنه و از عشق
بهر این راه توشه! بر داره
شود آسان ز عشق خاری جند
په به پیش عقل به دشواره
پار گو بالغدو و الاصله
پار جو بالعشی و الاوکاره
صد رهت لن ترانی از گوینده
باز میدارد دیده بر دیداره
تا بجایی رست خش می نرد
پای اوهم و دیده؟ افکاره
۰۰ پار یابی بمحفیه کننجا
چهره‌بل امین ندارد باره
این ره این توشه! تو این منزله
مورد راهی اگر بیا و بیاره
ورنه مورد راه چون دنده
پار مگوی و پشت سرمیخاره
هاتف ارباب معروفت که گفی
مست خواننده‌ان و گه هشیاره
از می و جام و مطرف و ساقیه
از مغ و دیب و شاهد و زنیاره
"O Thou to whom both heart and life are a sacrifice, and O Thou in
whose path both this and that are an offering!
The heart is Thy sacrifice because Thou art a charmer of hearts; life
is Thine offering because Thou art the Life of our lives.¹
Hard it is to deliver the heart from Thy hand; easy it is to pour out
our life at Thy feet.
The road to union with Thee is a road full of hardships; the pain of
Thy love is a pain without remedy.
We are servants holding our lives and hearts in our hands, with eyes
[fixed] on Thy orders and ears [waiting] on Thy command. 5
If Thou seekest peace, behold our hearts; and if Thou seekest war,
behold our lives!
Last night, [impelled] by the madness of love and the impulse of
desire, I was rushing in bewilderment in every direction.
At last desire for the [Beatific] Vision turned my reins towards the
temple of the Magians.
Far from it be the Evil Eye! I beheld a secret gathering bright with
the Light of Truth, not with the Flames [of Hell].
On every side I beheld that fire which Moses the son of ‘Imrán saw
that night on Sinai.
There was an elder [busied] with tending the fire, round about whom
respectfully stood the young Magians,
All silver-skinned and rose-checked, all sweet-tongued and narrow-
mouthed.
[There were] lute, harp, flute, cymbals and barbiton; candles, desert,
roses, wine and basil;
The moon-faced and musky-haired cup-bearer; the witty and sweet-
voiced minstrel.

¹ It is impossible adequately to preserve in English the play between
dil and dilbar, ján and jándán.
Magian and Magian boy, Fire-priest and High Priest, all with loins girt up for His service.

I, ashamed of my Muhammadanism, stood there concealed in a corner.

The elder enquired, ‘Who is this?’ They answered, ‘A restless and bewildered lover.’

He said, ‘Give him a cup of pure wine, although he be an unbidden guest.’

The fire-handed and fire-worshipping cup-bearer poured into the goblet the burning fire.

When I drained it off, neither reason remained nor sense; thereby were consumed both Infidelity and Faith.

I fell down intoxicated, and in that intoxication, in a tongue which one cannot explain,

I heard this speech from [all] my limbs, even from the jugular vein and the carotid artery:

‘He is One and there is naught but He:
There is no God save Him alone!’

(Strjpe II)

O Friend, I will not break my ties with Thee, even though with a sword they should hew me limb from limb!

Truly a hundred lives were cheap on our part [to win] from Thy mouth a sweet half-smile.

O Father, counsel me not against love, for this son [of thine] will not prove susceptible [to counsel]!

People counsel these [others]: O would that they would counsel me concerning Thy love!

I know the road to the street of safety, but what can I do? for I am fallen into the snare.

In the church I said to a Christian charmer of hearts, ‘O thou in whose net the heart is captive!

‘O thou to the warp of whose girdle each hair-tip of mine is separately attached!

‘How long [wilt thou continue] not to find the way to the Divine Unity? How long wilt thou impose on the One the shame of the Trinity?

‘How can it be right to name the One True God “Father,” “Son,” and “Holy Ghost”? ’

She parted her sweet lips and said to me, while with sweet laughter she poured sugar from her lips:
If thou art aware of the Secret of the Divine Unity, do not cast on us the stigma of infidelity!

In three mirrors the Eternal Beauty cast a ray from His effulgent countenance.

Silk does not become three things if thou callest it Parniyān, Harîr and Parand."

Whilst we were thus speaking, this chant rose up beside us from the church-bell:

'He is One and there is naught but He:
There is no God save Him alone!'

\((Strophe III)\)

Last night I went to the street of the wine-seller, my heart boiling and seething with the fire of love.
I beheld a bright and beautiful gathering presided over by the wine-selling elder.

The attendants stood row on row, the wine-drinkers sat shoulder to shoulder.

The elder sat in the chief seat and the wine-drinkers around him, some drunk and some dazed,
With breasts devoid of malice and hearts pure, the heart full of talk and the lips silent.

The eyes of all, by the Eternal Mercy, beholding the Truth, and their ears hearkening to secrets.

The greeting of this one to that one, 'Wassail!' the response of that one to this one, 'Drink-hale!'

With ears for the harp and eyes on the goblet, and the desire of both worlds in their embrace.

Advancing respectfully, I said, 'O thou whose heart is the abode of the Angel Surūsh,\(^1\)
'I am an afflicted and needy lover: behold my pain and strive to remedy it!'

The elder, smiling, said to me mockingly: 'O thou to whom the Guide of Reason is a devoted\(^3\) slave!'
'Where art thou, and where are we, O thou for shame of whom the
doughter of the grape sits with veiled face?' I said to him, 'My soul is consumed! Give me a draught of water,
and abate my fire from its vehemence!' 'Last night I was consumed by this fire: alas if my to-night be as
my yestere'en!' He said smiling, 'Ho! Take the cup!' I took it. He cried, 'Ha! Drink no more!' I
drained a draught and became free from the pain of understanding
and the trouble of sense. When I came to my senses I saw for a moment One, and all else
mere lines and figures. Suddenly in the temples of the Angelic World the Surâsh whispered
these words into my ear:

'He is One and there is naught but He:
There is no God save Him alone!'

(Strophe IV)

Open the eye of the heart that thou mayst behold the spirit, that
thou mayst see that which is not to be seen.
If thou wilt turn thy face towards the Realm of Love thou wilt see
all the horizons a garden of roses.
Thou wilt behold the revolution of the cycle of heaven favourable to
to all the people of this earth.
That which thou seest thy heart will desire, and that which thy heart
desireth thou wilt see.
The headless and footless beggar of that place thou wilt see heavy-
headed with the dominion of the world. There also thou wilt see a bare-footed company with their feet set
on the summit of the Guard-stars.

1 That is, how far apart are we.
2 Wine, who must veil her face before the stranger. (nâ-mahram).
3 See p. 294 supra, n. 2 ad calc.
4 I.e. even the veriest beggar in the Realm of Love exercises in
this lower world such authority as do the kings and rulers of earth,
and is as much preoccupied by his responsibility as they are.
5 Farqâddin, two bright stars in Ursa Minor, called "the Guards"
or "Guardians" (from the Spanish word guardârê, "to behold") be-
cause of their "singular use in navigation." See vol. ii of my Traveller's
Narrative, p. 125, ad calc.
There also thou wilt see a bare-headed assembly canopied overhead
by the throne of God.
Each one at the time of ecstasy and song thou wilt see shaking his
sleeves over the two worlds.
In the heart of each atom which thou cleavest thou wilt behold a sun
in the midst.
If thou givest whatsoever thou hast to Love, may I be accounted an
infidel if thou shouldst suffer a grain of loss!
If thou melttest thy soul in the fire of Love, thou wilt find Love the
Alchemy of Life;
Thou wilt pass beyond the narrow straits of dimensions, and wilt
behold the spacious realms of the Placeless;
Thou shalt hear what ear hath not heard, and shalt see what eye
hath not seen;
Until they shall bring thee to a place where of the world and its
people thou shalt behold One alone.
To that One shalt thou make love with heart and soul, until with
the eye of certainty thou shalt clearly see

‘That He is One and there is naught but He:
There is no God save Him alone!’

(Strophe V)

From door and wall, unveiled, the Friend shines radiant, O ye who
have eyes to see;
Thou seekest a candle whilst the sun is on high: the day is very
bright whilst thou art in darkest night.
If thou wilt but escape from thy darkness thou shalt behold all the
universe the dawning-place of lights.
Like a blind man thou seekest guide and staff for this clear and level
road.
Open thine eyes on the Rose-garden, and behold the gleaming of
the pure water alike in the rose and the thorn.
From the colourless water [are derived] a hundred thousand colours:
behold the tulip and the rose in this garden-ground.
Set thy foot in the path of search, and with Love furnish thyself with
provision for this journey.
By Love many things will be made easy which in the sight of Reason
are very difficult.

\footnote{I.e. snapping his fingers at them, taking no account of them.}
CH. VI] THE TARJI'-BAND OF HÁTIF

Speak of the Friend in the mornings and the evenings: seek for the Friend in the gloaming and at dawn.

Though they tell thee a hundred times 'Thou shalt not see me'¹, still keep thine eyes fixed on the Vision,

Until thou shalt reach a place to which the foot of Fancy and the eye of Thought cannot attain.

Thou shalt find the Friend in an assembly whereunto not even Gabriel the trusted hath access.

This is the Road, this thy Provision, this the Halting-place: if thou art a roadsman, come and bring!

And if thou art not equal to the Road, then, like the others, talk of the Friend and scratch the back of thy head²!

O Hátif, the meaning of the Gnostics, whom they sometimes call drunk and sometimes sober,

[When they speak] of the Wine, the Cup, the Minstrel, the Cup-bearer, the Magian, the Temple, the Beauty and the Girdle,

Are those hidden secrets which they sometimes declare in cryptic utterance.

If thou shouldst find thy way to their secret thou wilt discover that even this is the secret of those mysteries,

'He is One and there is naught but He:
There is no God save Him alone!'³

¹ Lan taráni, the answer given to Moses when he desired to see God face to face. See Qur'án, vii, 139.

² Like one bewildered or undecided.
CHAPTER VII.

POETS OF THE QÁJÁR PERIOD.

The Qájár rule was strong though severe, and, in spite of its harshness, was, perhaps, welcome on the whole to a country which had suffered seventy years of anarchy and civil war. The brief and bloody reign of the eunuch Āqá Muḥammad Khán¹, who once more carried the Persian standards into Georgia and captured Tiflis, was followed by the milder administration of his nephew Fath-ʿAlí Sháh (A.D. 1797–1834), to whose influence Riḍá-qiłí Khán, in the Introduction to his Majmuʿl-Fuṣḥá, ascribes the revival of poetry and the restoration of a better literary taste. He himself wrote verses under the pen-name of Kháqán, and gathered round him a host of poets to whose lives and work several monographs are devoted, such as the Zinatuʿl-Madāʿiḥ, the Anjuman-i-Kháqán, the Gulshan-i-Maḥmúd and Safitaṭl-Aughát, the Nigáristán-i-Dará, and the Tadhkira-i-Muhammad-Sháhí, all of which are described by Rieu in his Supplementary Catalogue of the Persian MSS. in the British Museum (pp. 84–91), and most of which were utilized by the above-mentioned Riḍá-qiłí Khán. One of them, the Gulshan-i-Maḥmúd, contains notices of forty-eight of Fath-ʿAlí Sháh’s sons who wrote poetry, and at a later date the Royal Family supplied Persia with another verse-making autocrat in Náṣiruʿd-Dín Sháh (A.D. 1848–1896), but these kingly outpourings need detain only those who accept the dictum Kalám-i-Mulūk Mulūk-i-Kalám (“the Words of Kings are the Kings of Words”).

¹ Though practically supreme for eighteen years (A.D. 1779–1797), he was not crowned until 1796 and was assassinated in the following year.
These poets of the earlier Qájár period might very well have been included in the preceding chapter, but for the inordinate length which it has already attained. The only respect in which they differed from their immediate predecessors was in their reversion to earlier models and their repudiation of the school typified by ‘Urff, Šá’ib, Shawkat, and their congeners. This fact is established from two opposite quarters. On the one hand Shiblí, as we have seen, takes the view that Persian poetry, which began with Rúdakí, ended with Šá’ib, and that Qá’ání and the moderns did but imitate the older classical poets, especially Farrukhí and Minúchíhrí. Ridá-qlí Khán takes the same view of the facts, but puts on them a quite different interpretation. According to him, Persian poetry had long been on the decline and at the end of the pre-Qájár period had become thoroughly decadent, so that the early Qájár poets did well to break away from the ideals of their immediate predecessors and revert to earlier models, amongst which he especially mentions the poems of Kháqání, ‘Abdu’l-Wási‘-i-Jabálí, Farrukhí, Minúchíhrí, Rúdakí, Qaṭrán, ‘Unṣuri, Mas’úd-i-Sa‘d-i-Salmán, Saná‘í, Jalálú’d-Dín Rúmí, Abu’l-Faraj-i-Rúní, Anwarí, Asadí, Firdawsí, Nizámí, Sa‘dí, Azaqí, Mukhtárí, Mu‘izzí, Lámi‘í, Násir-i-Khusraw and Adíb Šábir, all of whom flourished before the Fall of the Caliphate and the Mongol Invasion in the middle of the thirteenth century. Of the later poets Háfíz was perhaps the only one who retained an undiminished prestige in the eyes of his countrymen, and it is doubtful how far even he served as a model, though this was perhaps rather because he was inimitable than because he was out of fashion, like Jámí, ‘Urff and Šá’ib, who lost and never regained the
position they had once held in their own country. Henceforth, therefore, the divergence between Turkish and Indian taste on the one hand and Persian taste on the other increases, while the action of the British rulers of India\(^1\) in substituting Urdu for Persian as the polite language of that country in 1835–6 tended still further to cut off India from the intellectual and literary currents of modern Persia.

It would be easy with the help of the Biographies of Poets mentioned above and others of a later period to compile a list of a hundred or two more or less eminent poets of the Qájár period, but it will be sufficient for our purpose to mention ten or a dozen of those who followed the classical tradition. Nor is it necessary to group them according to the reigns in which they flourished, though it will be convenient to arrange them in chronological order. Of one great family of poets, the sons and grandsons of Wišál (Mírzá Shafi'\(^1\), commonly called Mírzá Kúchuk) who died in 1262/1846, it was my privilege to meet several, including the brothers Farhang and Yazdání, at Shíráz in the spring of 1888\(^2\). The latter was accompanied by his own son and the son of his deceased brother who wrote under the pen-name of Himmat. Of the three elder brothers, sons of Wišál, the eldest, Wiqár, was about forty-two years of age when Rídá-qulí Khán\(^3\) met him in Tíhirán in 1274/1857–8, while the second, Mírzá Maḩmúd the physician, who adopted the takhallus of Ḥákím, died in 1268/1851. Of the third, Dáwarí, a specimen of whose work is quoted in translation in vol. ii of my Literary History, pp. 41–42, I do not know the date of decease. As his poems have not, I think, been published, I here give the Persian text on which the trans-

---

1 At or about the same time they ceased to subsidise the publication of Oriental texts, thus inflicting a great injury on Oriental studies.

2 See my Year amongst the Persians, pp. 267–8, and also p. 119.

Autograph of the poet Wişāl

Or. 4936 (Brit. Mus.), 20

To face p. 300
lation above mentioned is based. It is taken from a small manuscript selection of his poems given to me in Tihrán in the winter of 1887–8 by my late friend the Nawwáb Mirzá Hasan ‘Alí Khán, one of his admirers and patrons.

Two stanzas of a musammāt by Dáwari.

ای بچه عرب صبُّحَادَ الله بخیّراً
صح است صبوحی بده آن ساغر می‌رَاه‌;
زآن می‌که بقطب ار بدهی جرعه ویرِا;
بر بیات بساید سر اکلیل چَدَّیدِ راً;

کردن بناتش بفدا چون تو بیتی راً
چون چرخ زنی گرد خیر باده چَدَّید وار;
گر نیست ترا باده یکی شیش ببر کشش;

بر خیز و عبارا عربی وار بسِر کشش

همچون عربان دامن خود تا بکمر کشش;

یکدست عبا شیش بهدان دست گذر کشش;

با دامن ترمت از آن دامن تر کشش;

وز خانه یبرو تا برخانه خساَر

This mention of my kind friend the Nawwáb reminds me of a quaint incident which occurred while I was his guest at Tihrán in the early part of the year 1888, and which shows how relatively unprofitable is the profession of a Persian poet now compared to what it was in the “good old days” when a poet’s mouth was sometimes filled with gold or pearls as the reward of a successful poem which hit the taste of his patron. A minor poet, whose name I forget, if ever I knew it, came one day to the Nawwáb’s house and

1 These selections are now bound up in my ms. bearing the classmark Y. 1. The whole musammāt contains eight strophes, of which only the first two are here given.
asked and obtained permission to recite a poem which he had composed in his praise. On its conclusion he received the sum of one tumán (at that time worth about six shillings), with which he departed, apparently very well contented. But so far from the gift being deemed insignificant, the Nāwāb was subsequently reproached by some of his friends for turning the poet's head and making him imagine that he could earn an honest livelihood by writing poetry!

This is no doubt one of the causes which are tending to put an end to the old style of poetry, especially the panegyric qaštîla. Another still more potent cause of the decline of panegyric is the position attained by the Press since the Revolution of 1905–6, for the poet now tends more and more to write for the people as a whole rather than for some special patron. The transition can be very well seen in the case of poets like the unfortunate Mīrzā Jahāngīr Khán of Shīrāz, the proprietor and editor of that remarkable product of the Revolution the weekly Sūr-i-Isrāfīl, whose life, death, and literary activities in connection with that great national upheaval are fully discussed in my previous works, the Persian Revolution and the Press and Poetry of Modern Persia. As a poet and writer of the Revolution only did I know him until lately, when I received from my accomplished friend and former pupil Mr W. A. Smart, one of the most sympathetic Consular officers ever sent to Persia from this country, a large fragment (292 pages) of an untitled, anonymous, acephalous and incomplete Persian manuscript work containing accounts of thirty-eight poets, mostly of Fārs, who were either still living in A.D. 1910 or who had died in the course of the preceding forty years. Amongst these mention is made of Mīrzā Jahāngīr Khán (pp. 74–77), and specimens are given of his earlier pre-revolutionary poems, including one addressed to his friends at Shīrāz from

1 It bears the class-mark J. 19 in my library.
Tihrán, which are quite in the classical style, and bear no traces of the modern peculiarities. Two other not less eminent "transition poets" mentioned in this extraordinarily interesting volume are Abu'l-Hasan Mírzá, a grandson of Fatḥ-Allá Sháh, born in 1264/1848, and commonly entitled Hájjí Shaykhu'r-Ra'ís, chiefly known as a philosophical and political writer and a strong advocate of Pan-Islamism, who also wrote poetry, mostly topical, but in the classical forms, under the pen-name of Ḥayrat (pp. 102–121 of my ms.); and the eminent journalist Adíbú'l-Mu'míní (born in 1277/1860–1), a descendant in the third degree of Mírzá ʻÍsá the Qadím-Maqám, who composed verse under the pen-name of Amírí of Farahán (pp. 39–50 of my ms.). The new poets of the Revolution were therefore, except in the case of the younger ones who have appeared since that epoch-making event, to a large extent the poets of the old school who had sufficient enthusiasm and flexibility to adapt themselves to the new conditions. But the transition itself is marked by as hard and fast a line as can mark any such historical transition, that line lying in the years 1906–7. Of course an abundance of poetry of the old type is still being produced, and I myself was gratified and honoured on the occasion of my sixtieth birthday (February 7, 1922) by receiving an album of verses contributed by sixteen of the most notable contemporary poets, besides a separate qasídah from ʻImádu'l-Kuttáb, that Benvenuto Cellini of contemporary Persia.

Nor is there any reason to apprehend the early disappearance of the old verse-forms. The panegyrical (as opposed to the philosophical and didactic) qasídah will probably become rarer for the reasons given above, but the mathnawí, ghasál and rubáí will survive as long as mysticism, love and epigram continue to interest the Persians.

1 See pp. 37–39 of my Press and Poetry in Modern Persia.
After these preliminary general remarks on the poetry of the latest epoch, we may pass to the consideration of some of its chief representatives. For information as to those who flourished before about A.D. 1870 my chief sources have been the three works of that industrious writer Ridá-qlí Khán, poetically surnamed Hidáyat, to wit the large general biography of Persian poets entitled Majma‘ul-Fuṣahá ("the Concourse of the Eloquent"); the smaller biography entitled Riyádul-‘Arifín ("Gardens of the Gnostics"), which deals chiefly with the mystical poets; and the Supplement to Mírkhwánd's Rawdatu’s-Safá, which carries that well-known general history down to about 1857 and was already well advanced in 1272/1855-6, when the author returned from the embassy to Khwárazm described in his Sáfárat-náma, of which the Persian text was published by the late M. Ch. Schefer with a French translation in 1876-9. At the end of the ninth volume of the Rawdatu’s-Safá (the second of the Supplement), which concludes the reign of Fath-‘Alí Sháh, several pages (unfortunately unnumbered, so that exact references are impossible) are devoted to the notable statesmen, poets, theologians and other eminent men of that period which sometimes contain biographical material lacking in the two earlier monographs. From these three sources, so far as they extend, the following particulars are chiefly drawn, but I have also made use of a rare manuscript work (possibly an autograph) entitled Tadhkira-i-Dilgushá, a biography of contemporary poets by Mírzá ‘Alí Akbar of Shíráz, who himself wrote poetry under the pen-name of

1 Brief notices of these and other published works of the same author will be found in Mr. E. Edwards's excellent Catalogue of the Persian printed books in the British Museum (London, 1922), columns 631-2.
Bismil, composed about 1237/1821–2. This fine MS., written throughout in a large, clear naskh with rubrications, formerly belonged to the late Sir Albert Houtum-Schindler, and now bears in my library the class-mark J. 18. Mention is made of this author and his work by Ridá-qlí Khán (who in his youth used to see him at Shíráz) both in the Majma‘ul-Fusúhá (ii, pp. 82–3) and the Riyádú’l-‘Arifín (pp. 243–4).

(1) Saháb (d. 1222/1807–8).

Sayyid Muḥammad of Iṣfahán, poetically surnamed Saháb, was the son of that Sayyid Ahmad Hátif mentioned at the end of the preceding chapter as almost the only notable Persian poet of the eighteenth century. Ridá-qlí Khán (M.F., ii, 207–11) says that he was held in high honour by Fath-‘Alí Sháh, for whom he composed, besides numerous panegyrics, a book of memoirs (presumably of poets) entitled Rasahát-i-Saháb, which I have never met with, and that his Diván comprises only some five thousand verses. The following, censuring the conceit and arrogance of certain poets, are of some interest¹:

1. Ḵᵛānaḵe minal fars va bi-ḵᵛān hāsēn hal ġešte,
2. wa ġerār-e hāsēn rā adam nābaste minal ġešte,
3. Ṭahāst-ḵᵛān va shāri‘-e hājī naktar,
4. dar Ḵᵛānter-ḵᵛān dar sarḵᵛān ādin jadāl ġešte,
5. yek tan nārūsū az bi-ḵᵛān ῥūz-e ġend lutf,
6. ai avvalan bi-ḵᵛān hafīz ādin qīl wa ġal ġešte,
7. az bi-ḵᵛān mūṣirū dar ġemā pāmūn dīkārīst,
8. ġendin ḵᵛānāl ġešte wa tahnāi māl ġešte,

¹ M.F., ii, p. 211.
Wherein save in good nature lies anyone's 'perfection', and what 'perfection' can there be to him who has not good nature?

Poetry is naught, and the poet's vocation less than naught: I wonder what is all this quarrel about nothing!

No one will ask about the arrangement of a few words: O fools devoid of merit, what is all this talk?

On account of one or two hemistichs expressing some one else's ideas, what is all this thought of position and hope of wealth?

The root of poetry is phantasy, and its beauty lies in the impossible: what can result from the imagining of all these impossible ideas?

Whoever has discovered what shame and modesty are will not boast of superiority on account of a few silly words.

What in the eyes of men of judgment and sense are a hundred sorts of such 'perfection' compared with the good nature of an ordinary well-disposed man?

I grant that the nazm (arrangement, or verse) of the ocean is pearls and mines of precious stones: but what is it compared with the nathr (scattering, or prose) of the pen of that Lord whose bounty is as that of the ocean?


2 The Arabs say "the best poetry is that which contains most lies," and the exaggeration characteristic of most Persian panegyrists is notorious. Cf. Lit. Hist. Persia, ii, pp. 69-70.
Mijmar (d. 1225/1810-11).

Sayyid Husayn-i-Tabataabâ’l of Ardistân near Ispahan, who earned the title of Mujtahidu’ish-Shu’ârâ’, is noticed by Ridâ-qlî Khán in all three of his above-mentioned works. He owed his introduction to the Persian Court to his fellow-townsman and fellow-poet Mîrzá ‘Abdu’l-Wahhab Nashât, who survived him by eighteen or nineteen years. He appears to have died young, for Ridâ-qlî Khán, after praising his verse, of which but a small collection was left, says that “had he lived longer, he would probably have attained the utmost distinction,” but even as it is he is one of the five poets of this period whom my accomplished old friend Hâjjî Mîrzá Yahyâ of Dawlatâbâd placed in the first class. Copies of his poems are rare, but the British Museum possesses a manuscript of his Kulliyyât, or collected works. I can find nothing very noteworthy in Ridâ-qlî Khán’s selections, but the two following riddles, the first on the Wind and the second on the Pen, taken from the Tadhkirâ-i-Dilgushâ, may serve as specimens of his work.

1 See p. 225 supra. The others are Furû’ghî, Sabâ (not Sâfâ), Nashât, and Qâlânî in the first class; Wîsâl and Ridâ-qlî Khán Hidâyat in the second; and Wiqâr and Surush in the third.

2 Or. 3543. See B.M.P.S., No. 354, pp. 222-3.
کس نمیداند که از عشق‌ آنها باشد بیکار
کس نمی‌یابد که از هجر که دارد اضطراب،
آب از او چون دلی عشقِ از زلفی بستان،
گاه باشد در سلاسل که بود در پیچ و تاب،
مرده گه از او زمین و زنده گه از او جبان،
چون قیوی از بیرو نه چون طبیعت از شباب

"What is that messenger of auspicious advent and fortunate presence who is moving every day and night and hastening every year and month?

Who carries musk-pods in his skirt and perfume in his collar, ambergris in his pocket, and pure musk in his sleeve?

A traveller without foot or head, a madman without sense or reason, a lover without abode or habitation, a wanderer without food or sleep.

None knoweth for love of whom he is so restless; none discovereth through separation from whom he is so troubled.

Through him water becomes, like the hearts of lovers through the tresses of their idols, now wreathed in chains, now twisted and torment.

Now the earth dies through him, and again the world lives through him, like the faculties through old age and like the nature through youth."

لغز قلم

کُلُبَنِ باغ نفیسا ناطقه‌ها، من یکی ابر گوهر افشاَئَی،
هم شکر رز و هم عبر افشان، لب دلدار و زلفی جانانِی،
در در افشاَئَی و گُر رزی، طبع دستور و دست سلطنانِی،

"To the rose-bush of the garden of the reasoning faculty I am a cloud raining down pearls,
Both pouring forth sugar and diffusing perfume [like] the darling’s lips and the sweetheart’s tresses.
In scattering pearls and pouring forth jewels I am [like] the nature of the Minister and the hand of the King."
(3) Šabá (d. 1238/1822–3).

Fath-‘Alí Khán of Káshán, with the pen-name of Šabá, was poet-laureate (Maliku’sh-Shu’árâ) to Fath-‘Alí Sháh. Rídá-quli Khán, who mentions him in all three of his works, says that no poet equal to him had appeared in Persia for nearly seven hundred years, and that some critics prefer his Shahinsháh-náma to the Sháhnáma of Firdawsí. He also composed a Khudá-wand-náma, an ‘Ibrat-náma, and a Gulshan-i-Šabá, while his Dtwán is said to comprise ten or fifteen thousand verses. He was for a time governor of Qum and Káshán, but latterly devoted himself entirely to the Sháh’s service. In his youth he was the pupil of his fellow-townsman the poet Šabáhi, who was a contemporary of Hátif and Ádhar, and died, according to the Majma‘ul-Fusáhá, in 1206/1791–2. His eldest son Mírzá Husayn Khán, poetically surnamed ‘Andalíb (“Nightingale”), succeeded him in the laureateship. His poetry, being mostly panegyric, has little attraction for us, but is extraordinarily melodious, as the following extract from a qaṣīda quoted in the Tadhkira-i-Dilgushá (which I think it unnecessary to translate, since the beauty lies in the form only) will show:

‘عیدست و عشَرَت را بقا بر درگه شه رنه,
در در نواي مرحبان بر لب سرود آفرین;
عیدست و شاهان جبان گویان بهم در استان;
بر خاست بانگ بار هان بنست شاه راد هین;
عیدست و از نویت سرا آواز كوس و بانگ نایی;
در گناه هفت اختصردا در دَکَسِی نَه گردون طنین;
شهازدان خورشید فر بر کلته پرورن سپه;
بر جانشان یا تا برسر در آفرین جان آفرین‘

1 Riyāḍul-‘Ārifin, p. 264. The Sháhinsháh-náma was lithographed in Bombay in 1890.
بر زآبسان شان پایگاه بل آبسان شان خاک ره؛
دیدار رشد مهر و ره گفتار راز داد و دین;
 شهرآب می‌بین بر آستان با شه سراوان دستان;
گوهر فنانش بر آستان چندان‌که شه از آسیه;
فضل و هنر آب و گیش آسان از آن هر مشکلش;
گنج جوهر در دلش گنجور قدرت را دیئن;
در پیشگاه‌های کسان بباده سر در آستان;
عكس از آن باز جان فرشی برآن عرش بین;
شاهنشه فرخندی خو با صدر اعظم راز گو;
قلبگ‌رژو صاف و مان پس نگر این پیش بین;
برچشم‌سین خو ورید ساین در سخن این درسا;
چون پور بیر بربخیا چون رود راز آبتنو;
کسار آهنی فرح لقا از آن صفاهان در صفا;
بر رنگ دریشی دوا بر گنج سلطانی امین;
برتر ز گردون پای‌هاش افزون ز أنگه مایه‌اش;
زین دو دو بی‌پای‌هاش روزی نگر رای رزين;
زیب بساط شه نشاط آری نشاط و ابساط;
اطفالی معنی را قیاط از کلول و از حفر انگلین;
هر طفل معنی کاورد گر بخورش از جان خرید;
ندهد بیلی چون بگذرد ناقص ثمین، مشیم، ثمین.

1 The “aged son of Barkhiyá” is Āṣaf, Solomon’s Wazır; the “noble son of Ābtín” is the legendary King Firidún. I have made a slight but necessary emendation in the penultimate and antepenultimate words of this line.
(4) Nashāt (d. 1244/1828–9).

Passing over Mīrzā Muḥammad-quṭīl Afshār Ulfat (d. 1240/1824–5) and Āqā ‘Alī Ashraf Āghā (d. 1244/1828–9), the younger brother of the poet Bismil, both of whom were personally known to Rīḍā-quṭīl Khān, we come to Mīrzā ‘Abdu’l-Wahhāb of Iṣfahān, celebrated as a calligraphist as well as a poet, and master of the three languages, Arabic, Persian and Turkish. After nearly ruining himself by his prodigal hospitality and liberality to poets, mystics and men of letters, he gained the favour of Fath-‘Alī Shāh, who conferred on him the title of Muṭtamadu’d-Dawla. He excelled in the ghasal, and his best-known work is entitled Ganjina (the “Treasury”). The following chronogram gives the date of his death (A.H. 1244):

اض قلب جهان نشاط رفته

"Nashāt (Joy) hath departed from the heart of the world."

(5) Mīrzā Abu’l-Qāsim Qā’im-maqqām (put to death in 1251/1835).

Two eminent men, father and son, bore this title (of which the literal meaning is exactly equivalent to “lieutenant,” in the sense of vicar or deputy), Mīrzā ‘Īsá of Farāhān, called Mīrzā Buzurg, who acted as Deputy Prime Minister to Prince ‘Abbās Mīrzā and died in 1247/1831–2; and his son Mīrzā Abu’l-Qāsim, who, on the death of Fath-‘Alī Shāh, fell into disgrace, and was put to death by his successor Muḥammad Shāh on June 26, 1835. The latter was, from the literary point of view, the more remarkable, but though he wrote

1 See R. G. Watson’s History of Persia, pp. 271–2 and 287–8. His estimate of this Minister’s character differs very widely from that of Rīḍā-quṭīl Khān.
poetry under the pen-name of Thaná'í, he is more celebrated as a prose-writer, his numerous published letters being regarded by his countrymen as models of good style. I possess a collection of his writings, both prose and verse, compiled at the instance of the late Prince Farhád Mirzá in 1281/1864–5, and lithographed at Tabríz in 1282/1865–6, of which the letters, addressed to various more or less eminent contemporaries but only occasionally bearing dates, occupy by far the larger portion. Many of them are diplomatic documents of some historical importance, e.g. the apology addressed to the Tsar of Russia for the murder of the Minister Grebaiodoff and his staff at Tihrán on February 11, 1829, which is here given as a specimen of the Qá'im-maqám's much admired style.

نامه شاهنشاهی بامبراطور اعظم در باب گذشتن خون ایلچی
با تور که خواهش کرده بودند,
او ل دفتر بنام ابوز دانا، صانع پروپارگار حی و توانا،
وجودی به مثل و منند میرا از چون و چنده که عدل و عالم است و قاهر هر ظالر داشتی هر نیک و بدرا اندازه و حد نباده بحکمت بالغ خود بدکاران را زجر و عذاب کند و نپکاران را اجر و ثواب بخشند، و درد نامعوض بر روان بیغیبرز راست کش و بیشواوان فرخند کردار باد، و بعد بر رای حقایق
نما ی بادشان ذی یا انساف خیص عدلت ونیدش تاجدار با
زیب و فر شهیار بحر و بر برادر و قهر خمشه اختر امپراطور
ممالک رویه و مضافات که دولتش با جا اه خطر است و
راشی با فتح و ظرف مصخی و مستور نیانا که ایلچی آن

1 Shawwál, 1238 (June–July, 1823), is the earliest date I have noticed.
2 The circumstances are fully given by R. G. Watson, op. cit., pp. 247–57.
دولت‌ها در پای تخت این دولت باقی‌مانده ده‌ز و غواص‌های
کسان او با جی‌بال شهر آسیبی رسید که تدبیر و تدارک آن
بر دمنه طبرگزاران این دولت واقعی واجب و لازم افتاد، لذا
اول‌اً برای تمیید مقامات عذربخواهی و پاس Шوشکت و احترام آن
برادر کرمانی فرزند ارمنی که خود خسرو میرزا این تخت دولت
پیش‌ه، روسیه فرستاد، حقیقت‌نگاران این حادثه و نآگاهی
امنای این دولت‌ها را در تلو نامه‌های صادقانه موقوع و معلوم داشت‌
و ثانیا نظر بکنید پیاندگی و اتفاق (خشه) ما بین این دو حضرت
آسیبی سان رفعه‌های ابتداء ایلچی‌ترین باید الدشت سلطنت خند
ثابت داشته است که از ایلی و طیکن دار الخلافه گمان میرفت
که درین کار زشت و تکرار ناامکان‌که مقدمینی توانته داشت
باندزه، استحکام مور و سواست و حات و اخراج بدل نمودیز حلالی
داروگه، شهر و چکخدای محله‌ها نیز به‌بیان جرم که چرا دیر
خبردار شده و قیل از وقوع این حادثه ضبطه، شهر و محله‌ر
محکم نداشت‌هاند عزل و تنیه و ترجمان گردره، بالاخر از
این‌ها به پا ظاهر و سرائیب بود که نسبت به البیجنگ مرزا
مصاح وارد آمد با مرتبه اجتماعی در این اسلام و افتقا و اقدامی
که زمره خواص و عوارم باو داشتند با استحکام اجتماعی که مردم
شهر هنگام حدوث غایب‌ه، ایلچی در داری، ای یا که به‌ودون گفت‌ش
و آفیض‌ها نظر با تحاد دولت‌ه، شایسته نبود، و شناعت هیچ
شیعه و توشت هیچ واسطه در حقیقی او مقبول نیفتاد، پس جوان
اعلام این گذارش بآن برادر نیکو سیری لازم بود بهحریر این نامه.
دوستی علامه پروخته اعلام تفاصیل اوضاع این برند موقد موقت‌
نایب السلطنه عباس میرزا محول داشت، همیش از درگاه پوردرگار
داریم که در بهم مراتب و درز این دولت ابیدت بنیاد در
The Royal Letter to the Most Great Emperor concerning the reparations for the murder of the Envoy in such wise as was desired.

The beginning of the record is in the Name of the All-Knowing God, The Living and All-Powerful Creator and Provider,—that Peerless and Incomparable Being, exempt from every 'how' and 'how much', Who is just and wise, and subdueth every wrong-doer, Who hath set a measure and limit to the recompense of every good and evil deed, and Who, by His far-reaching wisdom, reprouveth and punisheth the doers of evil, and rewardeth the well-doers. And countless blessings be upon the spirits of the righteous Prophets and beneficent Leaders.

But to proceed. Be it not hidden and concealed from the truth-discerning judgment of that most eminent, equitable, and just King, that brilliant and glorious Sovereign, that Lord of land and sea, my noble-natured and fortunate-starred brother, the Emperor of the Russian domains and their dependencies, whose rule is mighty and glorious, and whose standards are triumphant and victorious, that a disaster hath overtaken the Envoy of that State in the capital of this, by impulse of the vicissitudes of the time and the quarrels of his people with certain ignorant townsfolk, for which it is incumbent and obligatory on the acting officials of this Government to make reparation and give satisfaction. Therefore, in order to express our preliminary apologies and to satisfy the self-respect and honour of that esteemed brother, I have sent my dearly beloved son Khusraw Mirzâ to the capital of the glorious Russian State. In the course of a friendly letter we have expressed and explained the truth as to the suddenness of

1 I.e. transcending quality and quantity.
2 As the letter is addressed to a Christian sovereign, the usual specific mention of Muhammad is replaced by this more general phrase.
3 See R. G. Watson, op. cit., pp. 254-6. He was the son of ‘Abbâs Mirzâ and therefore the grandson of Fath-‘Alî Shâh.
this tragedy and the non-complicity of those responsible for the con-
duct of our Government; and secondly, having regard to the perfect
accord and agreement existing between these two Heaven-high Courts,
we have recognized it as incumbent on Our Royal Person to avenge
the above-mentioned Envoy, and, according to his deserts, have
chastised, punished or expelled from the country everyone of the in-
habitants and dwellers in our Capital who was suspected of having
participated in the slightest degree in this foul deed and improper
action. We have even reprimanded and dismissed the chief constable
of the city and the headman of the quarter, merely for the crime of
being informed too late and of not having established a firmer control
over the town before the occurrence of this catastrophe. Beyond all
this was the retribution and punishment which befel His Reverence
Mirzâ Masûf, notwithstanding the rank of mujtahid which he holds in
the religion of Islâm and the respect and influence which he enjoys
alike with gentle and simple, by reason of the assembly made by the
townsmen in his circle. Having regard to the concord of our two
Governments, we have regarded as improper any overlooking of, or
conivance at, such matters, nor hath the intercession or intervention
of anyone been admitted in regard to him. Wherefore, since it was
necessary to make known this procedure to that brother of goodly
disposition, we have applied ourselves to the writing of this friendly
letter, committing the elucidation of the details of these events to our
divinely aided and favoured son Prince 'Abbâs Mirzâ, our Viceroy.
The hope which we cherish from the Court of God is that every
moment the extent of the mutual affection of these two States of ancient
foundation may expand and increase, and that the bonds of friendship
and unity of these two Courts may be continually confirmed and multi-
plied by the interchange of messengers and messages: and may the
end be in welfare!

"Written in the month of the First Rabî', 1245" (September, 1829).

This letter, although professedly from Fath-'Alî Shah, was, of course, really written by the Qâ'îm-maqsâm. It must
have been gall and wormwood to him to be
compelled to write so civilly, indeed so humbly,
to the Russians, of whom he says in a poem
commemorating a Persian victory by 'Abbâs Mirzâ over
them and the 'Turks':

1 Majma'a'il-Fushâ'â, ii, p. 88.
POETS OF THE QAJAR PERIOD

(6) Wišál (d. 1262/1846) and his sons.

I have already mentioned Wišál, some of whose gifted sons and grandsons I was privileged to meet at Shíráz in the spring of 1888. He is generally regarded by his countrymen as one of the most eminent of the modern poets, and both Rídá-qulí Khán, who devotes lengthy notices to him in all three of his works,

1 For a most favourable sketch of his character, see R. G. Watson, *op. cit.*, pp. 404–6.
and the poet Bismil, the author of the *Tadhkira-i-Dilgusha*, were personally acquainted with him, the latter intimately. His proper name was Mîrzâ [Muhammad] Shafî, but he was commonly entitled "Mîrzâ Kûchuk," and he was a native of Shîrâz. Bismil speaks in the most glowing terms of his skill in calligraphy and music as well as in verse, wherein he holds him "incomparable" (adînu’l-mithâl), and praises his lofty character and fidelity in friendship, but describes him as "rather touchy" (andák zûd-ranîj), a description illustrated by Riḍá-qulí Khán’s remark (in the *Rawdatu’s-Šafâ*) that he was much vexed when the Sháh, meaning to praise him, told him that he was "prodigal of talents!" He is said to have written twelve thousand verses, which include, besides qasîdas and ghazals, the *Basm-i-Wiślâl* and the continuation and completion of Wâhsî’s *Farhád u Shîrin*, described as "far superior to the original." He also translated into Persian the *Aţwâ’-qu’dh-Dhahab* ("Collars of Gold") of Zamakhshârî. Bismil, who professes to have read all his poems, only cites the relatively small number of 213 couplets, of which the following are fairly typical, and afford a good instance of what Persian rhetoricians call the "attribution of praise in the form of blame," for the qasîda begins:

"The sea, the land, heaven and the stars—
Each one of them declares the King a tyrant—

an opening calculated to cause consternation to courtiers, until it is stated that the sea considers itself wronged by his liberality, the mountain because he has scattered its hoarded gold like dust, the stars because they are eclipsed in number and splendour by his hosts, and so forth. As

---

1. *Basařaf dar Šâ’ilašat nisbat Dâd*
2. *Ferhad o Shâ’irin oghâsht ro tâ’amaš nomod o Šâ’îlaš fasâhât oqâb.*
3. *Nûmod o bemarâb be az oghâsht lîfeteh.*
هرکس شبا ز بحر و بر و چرخ و اخترست،
قرار میگنند شه خسرو ستگردست;
ز آنها یکیست بحر که نالد یه دست شاه،
کامی از او برفت و کهنون خاک بر سرت;
اندخته‌ام تبار به‌رختن و خود نافذت،
کماین سنگ‌ریزه نیست که مرجان و کوه‌رست.
دریا نشست و کوه بر آورد سر که داد;
زين شاه جای بیشه مرا دل پر آذرست;
بر من هر آنچه رفت، بدریا ز شه نرفت;
مرجان کجا باپایه یاقوت احمرست.
لعلی ظه جز بر افسر شاهان حرام باد;
به آب تر ز افسر شاهانش بر درست;
زیر مرا ندیدی و آن عزتی که داشت;
با خاک ره ز جود وی اکنون برایست.
گوهاسک و سگлексیوش کتنون از سخای شاه;
و آن نیز پیش حلم وی از کاه کمترست.
افراخت چرخ سر که مرا شکوه بیشر;
برفش فزون ترست که با مش فزون ترست;
اختیر مرا شمار نه و پیش لشکرکش;
اختیر مگو که مهره چندم بشش درست.
خورشیدرا که چشم و چراغ زمانه بود;
آتش بدل ز مجمعر شاه شو مجموع است.
Wişál's *Farhád u Shírín* has been lithographed, and ample selections from his poems are given by Riḍá-qulí Khán in his *Riyádūl-'Aríf* (pp. 337-50) and *Majmu'ul-Fuṣahá* (ii, pp. 528-48), which latter work also contains (pp. 548-58) an ample notice of his eldest son Wiqár, who was presented to Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh in 1274/1857-8 at Tíhrán, where his biographer met him again "after twenty years' separation." The same work contains notices of Wiqár's younger brothers, Mírzá Mahmúd, the physician, poetically named Hákim (d. 1268/1851-2: pp. 102-5), and Mírzá Abu'l-Qásim Farhang, of whom I have already spoken (p. 300 *supra*), but not of the three other brothers Dáwarí, Yazdání and Himmat. The following five musammāt by Dáwarí, describing one of the Sháh's hunting parties, I copied for myself in the house of the late Nawwáb Mírzá Ḥasan 'Alí Khán at Tíhrán early in the year 1888, and, as it has never been published, and I know of no other copy in Europe, I cannot resist the temptation of here assuring a survival hitherto so precarious, for it was copied on a loose half-sheet of note-paper which I only accidentally came across just now while searching for something else.
با موجب منصور همانا بسفر بود،
از حسرت او آتششوقی بچگی بود،
شبهای فراقم ز شپ گور بتر بود،
روزه ز غیر هجر سهتر ز شپ تار،
دوشنه همان ز اوول شپ ناشده پاسی،
زنگی شپ افکنده برح تیره پلاسی،
با قیر بیندوده و پوشیده لباسی,
مه بر سر گردان شده چون سیمین طاسی،
آمده ز در آن دلبی ترس و هراسی،
یکباره بپرده از دلی من اندی تیمار،
بر بسته میان و زره خنجر بکیمر بر،
مسکین دلار از خنجر تیزش بحذو بر،
سرداری سنجاب پوشیده ببر بر،
چوخای خراسانی آنرا بزیر بر،
از به همو دیدن من داست بسر بر،
ازره سوی من آمده با چکمه و شلوار،
پر خال سر و زلف و رخ از کرده سیاهه،
خشیده دو عتاب تر از صدمة راهه،
از به نزده شانه پژفیش سیاهه،
درهم شده و ریخته بر گرم کلاهش،
چون کشته خون سرخ شده چشیر سیاهه،
از صدمة بیخوابی و از زحمت بسیار،
یک دسته گل سرخ ره آورد سفر داشت،
از سبلی مر نبز یکی دسته بسر داشت.
بی‌شک‌یا که شاد آمدی و نیک رسیدی،
جوان رهی از دست غمان باز خریدی،
بر گوشه در این راه چه کردی و چه دیدی،
در موقت منصور چه دیدی و شنیدی;
چون بود سرانجام و چه داشت عاقبت کار،
گفتا که نبودی و ندیدی که چه سان بود;
نخجیره‌گر شاه یکی لاله‌ستان بود;
هر کوشه ز خون دجله، به داد روان بود،
تا چهره‌چیزی تار کرد تیر و چشمان بود;
تا ابرهای جای دهد گژر و سنان بود;
نه دشت پرچیدار بد از لاش و نه طُفسار;
دلبا همه آسوده ز رنگ و ز حزن بود;
درشت و بیابان همه گل بود و سمن بود;
قبک دوی از هر طرف قیقمه زن بود;
نخجیره‌گر از آهو چون دشت خشن بود;
اینها همه از یکه شه شیر شکن بود;
کتاب‌الا وی انزوده بود بهشت بیدار;
بنگ بنگ چه تماشائی و ووه هه شگاری;
آرامه صبر و بیابان چو نگاری،
This poem is simple, sonorous and graphic; the court page, who has just returned from accompanying the Sháh on a winter hunting-expedition, and is in so great a hurry to visit his friend the poet that he enters in his riding-breeches and boots (bá chakma wa shalwár), with hair still disordered and full of dust, and eyes bloodshot from the glare of the sun, the hardships of exposure, and lack of sleep, bringing only as a present from the journey (rah-áward-i-saľar) roses and hyacinths (his cheeks and hair), rubies of Badakhshán (his lips), and a casket of pearls (his teeth), is a vivid picture; and if a description of the Royal massacre of game reminds us of the immortal Mr Bunker's Bavarian battue\(^1\), we must remember that the wholesale slaughters of game instituted by Chingíz Khán the Mongol in the thirteenth century, whereof the tradition still survives to some extent, were on a colossal scale, altogether transcending any European analogy\(^2\).

In 1887, the year before I met Dáwari's brother Farhang at Shíráz, two of his unpublished poems were shown to and copied by me in London. One was a qașt̢da in praise of Queen Victoria, composed on the occasion of her Jubilee, which I was asked to translate so that it might perhaps be brought to her notice, a hope not fulfilled. The other, composed in May of the same year (Sha'bán, 1304), contained a quaint description


\(^2\) See Baron d'Ohsso's *Histoire des Mongols* (the Hague and Amsterdam, 1834), vol. i, pp. 404–6; and p. 59, n. 2 *supra*. 

Farhang's description of Paris.
of Paris, laudatory for the most part, but concluding with some rather severe reflections on the republican form of government. It differs widely from the poems of Farhang cited in the Majma'ul-Fusahd (ii, pp. 384–8), is full of French words, and produces, as was probably intended, a somewhat comic and burlesque effect. It contains 78 verses and is too long to be cited in full, but I here give the opening and concluding portions:

cher bakhsh ba 'in anwar,

dideh za is zin xudan yekshay;

khat nibodeh baryana estefar;

nisht meloomak jameh shan an abrar;

hem zin o med o hem sgar o esfaran;

hem ba mal o dawlat es biyar;

nisht dar melik ye nkfe biyak;

hem ser khor o heme salara;

baghi aaresteh goy bagh bayar;

sheib aaresteh goy xeldi beren;

sheib e zubs mashal ast o shum o jegerd;

nisht farq o miyin liel o nor;

beqker az hem esfaran qatar;

hem estefar beryeshest sero o chenar;

kouros o sdtine dawest epzard;

heimo yotwaro yar az dldar;

he jeho yotwaro xeoxo ytfar;

heist xendan keh tayid o wshe.

dar xiyaban o kawcheh o yelvar;

me bernde sh hemye jiyen o yisar;

1 Voiture. 2 Tramway. 3 Omnibus. 4 Boulevard.
در آن حجته بر نشته قطره
هر طرف بندزی گل و گلزار;

کشته پاریس طبیعه عطار

نکنی بر کلام من اقرار;

رستیبان شده هیچه شعار;
رست گویند در همه بزار;
نشود گیاه نا هنگار
هیه با یکدگر گشتند ایثار;

همه ملک عیسوی آثار
همه در کیش و دین خود هشیار
هر کشیشی نبوده استیجار;
آن یکی بسته بر صبر زنا

معتکف مردی نیاز گذار
شکل عیسوی طلبه بر سر داد;
قبله گاه هیه هیهان دیوار;

همه در دری خوشی بخشوراد
همه عیسوی صفت همه احرار;

همه در شغل خوشیستان مختار
همه در گفتگوی بره هیکار;

همه با علم و دانش و افکار;

رمشی گویم با یکن اقرار;

با یکن همه صنایع و علم;

امکان ندارد به نشته قطره
هر طرف بندزی گل و گلزار;

از گل و عطر و بیو ریحانه;

تا نبایی و خود نه بینی تو;

رست گویند و راست گردارند;
هرچه گیرند و هرهچه بفرحند;
کش نکوید گیاه نا مر بوت;

مربانی و لطف و خوشخوئی;

همه خلق عیسوی ماهب;
همه روحانی و مسیحی;

در علیسا برای خدمت دین;
ان یکی طلیسان قفیده بسر;
در علیسا آتّر دام دیدم;

صورتی نقش کرده بر لوحی;
سجده گاه هیه هیهان صورت;

از سر سد و از سر اخلاص;
همه پاک و منزه و خوشخوئی;
همه در کار خوشیستان محکم;
همه در مشورت بهر هر رای;

همه با عقل و هوش و با تدبیر;

لیک با این همه صنایع و علم;

1 Notre-Dame.
Lack of space compels me to pass over several poets of some note, such as Áqá Muḥammad Ḥasan Zargar ("the Goldsmith") of Isfahán, who died in 1270/1853-4; Áqá Muhammad ʿĀshiq, a tailor, also of Isfahán, who died at the age of seventy in 1281/1864; Mírzá Muḥammad ʿAlí Surūsh of Sidih, entitled Shamsu’š-Shu’ārāʾ, who died in 1285/1868-9; and Áqá Muḥammad ʿAlí Jayhūn of Yazd, of whose life I can find no particulars save such as can be gleaned from his verses, but who composed, besides numerous poems of

1 See Majma’al-Fusahd, ii, pp. 151-2.
2 Ibid., pp. 346-9.
3 Ibid., pp. 184-95.
various types, a prose work entitled Namakdán ("the Salt-
cellar") on the model of the Gulistán, and whose complete
works were lithographed at Bombay in 1316/1899, making
a volume of 317 pp. Others who are reckoned amongst
the poets were more distinguished in other fields of litera-
ture, such as the historians Riḍá-qulí Khán Hidáyat1, so
often cited in this chapter (born 1215/1800, died 1288/
1871–2), and Mírzá Muḥammad Taqí Sipíhí of Kháshán2,
entitled Lisánúl-Mulk ("the Tongue of the Kingdom"),
author of the Násikhu’l-Tawdríkh ("Abrogator of His-
tories") and of another prose work entitled Baráhtnu’l-
‘Ajám ("Proofs of the Persians"); the philosopher Hájí
Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár, who was born in 1212/1797–8,
wrote a small amount of verse under the pen-name of
Asrár ("Secrets"), and died in 1295/18783; and others. Of
the remaining modern representatives of the "Classical
School" Qá’ání is by far the most important, and after
him Yaghmá, Furúghí and Shaybání, of whom some account
must now be given.

(7) Qá’ání (d. 1270/1853–4).

Qá’ání is by general consent the most notable poet pro-
duced by Persia in the nineteenth century. He was born
at Shíráz about 1222/1807–8, for, according to
his own statement at the end of the Kitáb-i-
Partshán, he completed that work on Rajab 20,
1252 (October 31, 1836), being then two or three months
short of thirty years of age:

1 His autobiography concludes the Majma’úl-Fusáhá, ii, pp. 581–
678.
2 Ibid., ii, pp. 156–81.
3 See my Year amongst the Persians, pp. 131–4; and the Riyádúl-
‘Arisfín, pp. 241–2, which, however, puts his birth in 1215/1800–1, and
adds that he was sixty-three years of age at the time of writing (1278/
1861–2).
شکر که از باری پردازان مرن
جمع شد اوراچ پریشان مرن.
تیست دو روز عاریت هیچ صن
خاص منست آنچه در هست و بسن.
جُز دو سه بیتی ز عرب وز عجم
کامده جاری بزبان قلم.
خاصه که در طی عبارت همی
رنته بدانجمله اشارت همی.
تا ز حسودان نرسد دق مرا
سخره باطل نشود حق مرا.
رنته ز ماه رجب ایام بیست
بنچه و دو سال و هزار و دویست.
کهر بود از سی دو سه ماه سال من
لبک بست خسته بود حال من.
بسته ز غیر کوژت در هالهایی
رست چو پریان نود سالست.
لبک غیر من غیر عشقست و بسن.
ز آنها چیز نیست کسر داد رس.
شادی عالم همه در این غیریست،
عاشی ازین غیر بجای خرمش است.
غم اگر اینست فروتنتر خوش است
بر صفت قند مکرر خوش است.
هرکه ازین غیر بدلت پرتنوئی است
در نظرش ملک دو عالم جوئی است.
یا راب ازین غیر دل من شاد کن
وز غیر دنیا دلم آزاد کن.
His proper name was Ḥabīb, under which he originally wrote, and which he uses as his takhllus, or nom de guerre, in many of his earlier poems. Later when he and Mīrzā ‘Abbás of Bistām, who originally wrote under the pen-name of Miskin, had attached themselves to Ḥasan ‘Alī Mīrzā Shujā‘u’s-Saltāna, for some time Governor of Khurāsān and Kirmān, that prince changed their pen-names respectively to Qā‘ānī and Furūghī, after his two sons Ogotāy Qā‘ān and Furūghu’d-Dawla.

Qā‘ānī was born at Shīrāz. His father, Mīrzā Muḥammad ‘Alī, was also a poet who wrote under the pen-name of Gulshan. Though Qā‘ānī was but a child when he died, his statement in the Kitāb-i-Parishān that “though thirty complete years have elapsed since the death of my father, I still imagine that it was but two weeks ago” cannot be reconciled with the other statement quoted above that he was not yet thirty when he completed the book in question. The Tadhkira-i-Dilgushā consecrates articles to both father and son, but unfortunately in my manuscript the last two figures of the date of Gulshan’s death are left blank, while it is also omitted in the notice contained in the Majma’ul-Fuṣahād, which is very meagre.

About Qā‘ānī’s seemingly uneventful life there is not much to be said. He appears to have spent most of it at Shīrāz, where in the spring of 1888 I had the honour of occupying the room in the house of the Nawwāb Mīrzā Ḥaydar ‘Alī Khān which he used to inhabit; and, as we have seen, he resided for some time at Kirmān. The latter part of his life, when he had established himself as a recognized Court poet, was spent at Tihrān, where he died in

1 Majma’ul-Fuṣahād, ii, p. 394.
2 Tihrān lithographed edition of Qā‘ānī’s works of 1302/1884–5, p. 35.
HĀJJI MĪRĀĀ ĀQĀSĪ

Or. 4938 (Brit. Mus.), 9
1270/1853–4. Two of his latest poems must have been those which he wrote to celebrate the escape of Násiru’d-Dín Sháh from the attempt on his life made by three Bábis on August 15, 1852, quoted in my Traveller’s Narrative.

Qá’ání is one of the most melodious of all the Persian poets, and his command of the language is wonderful, but he lacks high aims and noble principles. Not only does he flatter great men while they are in power, and turn and rend them as soon as they fall into disgrace, but he is prone to indulge in the most objectionable innuendo and even the coarsest obscenity. In numerous qasídas he extols the virtues and justice of Hájjí Mírzá ‘Abáyí, the Prime Minister of Muhammad Sháh, but in a qasida in praise of his successor Mírzá Taqí Khán Anír-i-Kabír he alludes to the fallen minister thus:

"In the place of a vile tyrant is seated a just and God-fearing man, in whom pious believers take pride."

Of his innuendo the following is a good specimen:

2 Tihrán ed. of 1302/1884–5, pp. 19, 35, 40, 41, 43, 70, 82, 94, 95, 115, 123, 130 etc.
گفت‌متش ای ترک داده که در صد بوس،
کُر لپ لعل تو قانعمر بت‌رها؛
روی ترک صریح و گفت چگونه حر،
کُر تو نگو بود لنهر تبر؛
شاعر و اینگاه رد بوسه شیرین،
کودک و اینگاه ترک جوز منقأ;
مادج شاهی تورا رسد به بروفند;
خاک رهاتا بزلف تاغته حورا;
بوسه بنزن مر مر از ملت و گُرن،
نزد بتان سرکشته گردید و رسا;
در همه عضوئ مخیری پای بوسه،
از سرم اینک بگیر و بوسه بنزن تا....
بوسه چه باشد خش مستحق صنایر،
شکور اینک ببوسه تو ولي با....
روی و لیر هر دو نیکت درخور پوند،
این من و اینک تو یا ببوس لیر یا....
گفت‌متش ای ترک ترک این سخنان گوی،
بس چن ازین غیز و رمز و عشوه و ایبا؛

The beauty of Qâ’ânî’s language can naturally only be appreciated by one who can read his poems in the original, which is fortunately easily accessible, as his works have been repeatedly published.2 I have chiefly used the Tihrân lithographed edition of 1302/1884-5, and in a lesser degree the Tabrîz lithographed edition of 1273/1857, and the "Selections...recommended for the Degree of Honour.

پارکی مراست رنده و بهذلگو،
شوق و دلپی خوب و خوش شریعت،
طراحش عبیر پیپکرش حرشب،
عمرش بهار طللتش بهشت.

نقش بند روح گوشی از نخش،
صورت و لبش تا خشک درست،
لعل پاره یا زاسب خضر شست.
پس نمود حل با نگر شریعت.

در قمر عشق از من این پسر،
برده عقل و دین جسی و جان و سر،
هوش و صبر و تاب مال و سیر و زر،
قول لوطیان هرچه بود گشت.

پیش از آنکه خط رودیش ز روی،
بود آن پسر سخت و تند خوی.

وینک از رخش سر زدست میوی،
تا از آن خطر چیست سر نوشت.

چون خطش دمید خاطئر فسید،
کان صنای حسن شد بدل بدترد.

نکبت رخش باغ وَّرَد بَرَد،
غنچه از لبش داغ و درد هشت.

میوی عارض داشت رنگا قیر،
در فواق او شد برنگا شیرو.

1 تهران 1302، ص. 355.
در جوانیم عمر گشت پیر;
دهن پنه کرده چرخ هرچه رشت،
خواهر از خدا در هم هم جمانت،
یک قفس زمان یک نفس زمان.
تا بکای در مَی خوره در آن;
پی حرفی پد بی نگار زشت،
خوش و نمی پیار ناشا سرخ مَل،
گه صنایر رود گه فراز پَل.
گه بزیز سرو گه بپای گَل،
گچ بسُحن باش گه بطرف کشت،
مرد چون شناخت مغزرا ز پوست;
هرچه بنگرد نیست غیر دوست.
هر کجا رود ملل ملل اپست;
خوای در حرم خواه در کشت;
چون ملل مرا گفت طای حبيب;
پیک غزل بِگو نغز و دلغرب.
پس از آن غزل او برد نصب;
زرم زان گس است گزنست گشت،
زین عابدين زین مجد و جاه;
بنده امیر نیکخواه شاه;
مُلکرا شرف خلیقا بنَه;
هم مَلک لقا هم مَلک سرشت.

Wonderful also is the swing and grace of the poem in praise of the Queen-mother (Mahd-i-'Ulyá) beginning¹:

بنفشه رُسته از زمین بطرف جویبارها;
و یا گُسته حور عین ز زلف خوشبیش تارها;

¹ تهران ed. of 1302, p. 309.
"Are these violets growing from the ground on the brink of the streams,
Or have the houris [of Paradise] plucked strands from their tresses?
If thou hast not seen how the sparks leap from the rock,
Look at the petals of the red anemones in their beds
Which leap forth like sparks from the crags of the mountains!"

Not inferior to this is another similar poem in praise of
Mîrzâ Taqî Khán Amîr-i-Kabîr, beginning:

Instead of the far-fetched and often almost unintelligible
conceits so dear to many Persian poets, Qâ’âní prefers to
draw his illustrations from familiar customs and common
observances, as, for example, in the following verses, wherein
allusion is made to various popular ceremonies connected
with the Naw-rûz, or Persian New Year's Day:

1 _TBh_rán ed. of 1302, p. 16.  
3  Haft Sin. It is customary at the Naw-rûz to collect together seven
objects whereof the names begin with the letter S, such as sunbul
(hyacinth), sib (apple), sâsán (lily), sîm (silver), str (garlic), sîrka
(vinegar), and sipand (rue).
خاطه‌ها بر لب حديث جامه، نو ای حست و من
از شرایط ضعف می‌جویم، لب لب جامه‌ای.
هر کسی که نبد بر خوان و بر خواند دعاً
من ز لعل شکریت طالهم، دشماراً.
هر تنی‌ها حست سیر و دانه، گنده، بست.
سایلی‌من دانه، خالی توسیر اندامرا.
سیر بر خوانست مردمرا و من از عمر سیر
بی دلارامی که بزره‌هاست از دل‌های آرامرا.
پسته و بادام نقل روز نوروزست و من
با لب و چشمت نخواهم پسته و بادامرا.
عود اندر عید می‌سوزند و من نالان چه عود
بی تنی کنن خالی هندو رو زند اسلامرا.
گک‌گرا خلاق می‌پرسند و من زین غیر هلاک
کی زیچه بوسد دیگری این شوخ شیرین گماهرا.
سیره بردشتار خوان خلاق و همچون سرگه دوست
میکنند بر ما تر‌ش رنگین رژ گلفامرا.
خلاقنا در سال روزی عید و من از چهر شاه
عبد دارسمال و ماه و هفتی صبح و شامرا.
لا جرم این عید خاص من شده بادا پایدار.
خو و فرش بشکند بزار بر عید عامرا

1 All the people put on new clothes at this great national festival, distribute sugar-plums amongst their friends, fill their hands with silver and corn, eat pistachio-nuts and almonds, burn aloe-wood and other fragrant substances, and greet one another with kisses.
2 The first verse of a poem by Imámi of Herát cited on p. 116 of my Persian Literature under Tartar domination contains a very similar thought.
Qâ'ânî's stammering poem.

Qâ'ânî is also one of the very few Persian poets who has condescended to reproduce actual peculiarities of speech or enunciation, as in his well-known dialogue between an old man and a child both of whom are afflicted with a stammer. This poem, which may more conveniently be transcribed into the Roman character, is as follows:

"Pîrakî lâl sahâr-gâh bi-tîfîf alkan
Mf-shunidam ki badîn naw' hamf-rând sukhan:
'K'ay zi zuflat ša-ša-šubîm sha-sha-shâm-i-târîk,
W'ay zi chihrat sha-sha-shâmam ša-ša-šubî-i-rasîm!
Ta-ta-tirîyâkiyam, u az sha-sha-shahd-i-la-lalett
Ša-ša-sâbr u ta-ta-tâbâm ra-ra-rafft az ta-ta-ta-tan.'
Tîfîl guftâ, 'Ma-ma-man-râ tu-tu taqlîd ma-kun!
Ga-ga-gum shaw zi baram, aya ka-ka-kamtzar az zan!
Mj-mû-khwaštî mu-mu-mushîf bi-kâ-kallat bi-zanam,
Ki biyuftad ma-ma-maghzat ma-mayân-i-da-dihan?'
Pîr guftâ, 'Wa-wa-wa'lâhi ki ma'lâm-ast în
Ki-ki zâdam man-i-bîchâra zi mâdar alkan!
Ha-ha-haftâd u ha-hashtâd u si sâl-ast fuzûn
Ga-ga-gung u la-la-lâlam ba-bi-Khallâq-i-Zaman!
Tîfîl guftâ: 'Kha-khuda-râ ša-ša-šad bâr sha-shukr
Ki bi-rastam bi-jahân az ma-la-lâl u ma-miân!
Ma-ma-man ham ga-ga-gungam ma-ma-mîthî-i-tu-tu-tû:
Tu-tu-tû ham ga-ga-gungî ma-ma-mîthî-i-ma-ma-man!"

Besides his poems, Qâ'ânî wrote a collection of stories and maxims in the style of Sa'dî's Gulistân entitled Kitâb-i-partishân, comprising one hundred and thirteen anecdotes, and concluding with thirty-three truly Machiavellian counsels to Kings and Princes. This book, which contains a certain amount of autobiographical material, occupies pp. 1–40 of the Tihraân lithographed edition of Qâ'ânî's works, and numerous other editions exist, several of which are mentioned by Mr Edwards in his Catalogue.

---

1 See my Year amongst the Persians, pp. 118–19, and pp. 345–6 of the edition of Qâ'ânî cited above.  
2 Columns 237–9.
(8) Furúghí (d. 1274/1858).

Mention has already been made of Mírzá ‘Abbás, son of Áqá Músá of Bistám, who wrote verse first under the pen-name of Miskín and later of Furúghí. He is said to have written some twenty thousand verses, of which a selection of some five thousand is placed at the end (pp. 4–75) of the Ťihrán edition (1302/1884–5) of the works of Qá’ání, with whom he was so closely associated. Unlike him, however, he seems to have preferred lyric to elegiac forms of poetry; at any rate the selections in question consist entirely of ghasals. According to the brief biography prefixed to them he adopted the Šúfi doctrine in the extremer forms which it had assumed in ancient times with Báyazíd of Bistám and Husayn ibn Mansúr al-Halláj, and so incurred the suspicion and censure of the orthodox. Nášírú’d-Dín Sháh, in the beginning of whose reign he was still flourishing, once sent for him and said, "Men say that like Pharaoh thou dost advance the claim ‘I am your Lord the Supreme,’ and that thou dost openly pretend to Divinity.” "This assertion," replied Furúghí, touching the ground with his forehead, "is sheer calumny....For seventy years I have run hither and thither, and only now have I reached the Shadow of God!" The first three verses from the first ode cited seem to me as good and as typical as any others. They run as follows:

کی رفته؟ ز دل که تبتا کنسر ترا،
کی بوده؟ نفته که پیدا کنسر ترا،
غیبت تكره؟ که شوم طالب حضرور;
پنهان نکشت؟ که هویدا کنسر ترا،
با صد هزار جلوه برون آمدی که من,
با صد هزار دیده تیاشا کنسر ترا.

1 Qurán, lxxix, 24. 2 I.e. the King.
Yaghmá of Jandaq.

Mírzá Abu’l-Hasan of Jandaq, chiefly celebrated for his abusive and obscene verses (Hasaliyyát), and commonly known, from his favourite term of coarse invective, as Zan-gahba, is the last poet mentioned by the author of the Majma’u’ll-Fuṣahá before the autobiography with which he concludes. He was for some time secretary to a very violent and foul-mouthed nobleman named Dhu’l-Fiqr Khán of Sammán, for whose amusement he is said to have written these offensive poems, collectively known as the Sardáriyya. Though he wrote a quantity of serious verse and a number of elegant letters in prose, which are included in the large Tíhrán edition of his works lithographed in 1283/1866–7, it is on his Hasaliyyát, or “Facetiae,” that his fame or infamy is based. The author of the Tadhkira-i-Dilgushá devotes but three lines to him, and was not personally acquainted with him, but had heard him well spoken of as “an amiable and kindly man and a good-natured and eloquent youth, who did not believe in making a collection of his poems.” Qá’ání attacked him in his own style in the following abusive verses:

---

1 Vol. ii, p. 580.
2 These poems, which occupy pp. 204–217 of the Tíhrán lithographed edition of 1283/1866–7; are, however, only a fraction of the Hasaliyyát.
3 F. 53b of my MS.

B. F. L.
Yaghmá’s *Kulliyyát*, or Complete Works, as represented in the Tihrán lithographed edition above mentioned, comprise the following:

A. *Prose writings* (pp. 2–145), consisting of numerous letters written to friends and acquaintances, unfortunately, so far as I have seen, undated. A careful examination of these letters would undoubtedly furnish abundant materials for the poet’s biography. Many of them are addressed to unnamed friends, acquaintances or patrons, but some were written to his sons, Mírzá Isma’il who wrote poetry under the pen-name of *Hunar*, Mírzá Ahmad *Ṣafá‘í*, Mírzá Muḥammad ‘Alí *Khāfar*, and Mírzá Ibráhím *Dastán*, while others were written to men of more or less note whose names are given. In many of these letters he elects to write in pure Persian (*Pársí-nigári*), avoiding all Arabic words, while others, called *náma-i-bást*, are written in a very simple style.

B. *Verse.*

2. Later odes (ghazaliyyát-i-jádída), pp. 184–203.
3. The *Sardáriyya* mentioned above (pp. 204–217), written in the *ghazal* form with the pen-name *Sardár*. 
Autograph of the poet Yaghmá

Or. 4936 (Brit. Mus.), 19

To face p. 338
4. The Qassabiyya (pp. 218–231), similar to the last-mentioned work in form and contents, but with the pen-name Qassab ("Butcher").

5. The Kitab-i-Ahmad (pp. 232–247), similar to the two last, but with the pen-name Ahmad.


7. The Kitab-i-Sukukud-Dalil (pp. 266–280), another mathnawi in the metre of the Shahnama outwardly praising but inwardly satirizing a certain Sayyid Qanbar-i-Rawdakhan, entitled by Yaghma Rustamus-Sadat.

8. Marati or Elegies on the deaths of the Imam (pp. 282–301).

9. Tarji-band and Tarkob-band (pp. 302–331), mostly of a ribald character.

10. Qita'at or Fragments (pp. 332–355), mostly ribald and satirical.

11. Rubaiyyat or Quatrains (pp. 356–389), also ribald.

The odes, old and new, and the elegies (Nos. 1, 2 and 8 in the above list) constitute the respectable part of Yaghma's verse, in all about one-third of the whole. As for the rest, with the possible exception of No. 7, it is for the most part not fit to print, much less to translate. The poet's favourite term of abuse Zan-qahba, by which he himself is commonly known, is by no means a nice expression, but it is delicacy itself compared with much of the language he employs. On the other hand, his serious odes and elegies show that he can write fine poetry, while his command of language is almost greater than that of Qa'ani, even though the melody of his verse be less. He also appears to have invented a type of marthiya or elegy which he calls Naha-i-Sina-zi, or Lamentation accom-
panied by beating of the breast. This I supposed till lately to have been one of the new models which sprang into existence after the Revolution of 1905–6, and I gave several specimens of it in my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*. The following are the initial lines of eight of Yaghma’s elegies of this type:

نوه ی سینه زنی

میرسد خشک لب از شطلق فرات اُخبر من،
نو جوان اُخبر من،
سیلانی بکن ای چشمه چشمی نرم من،
نو جوان اُخبر من،
کسوت عربی تو تا این خرم فیروزه نمیبی،
لعلی آورد بخونی،
گشتی از نیلی عزا ساخت سیه معجزه من،
نو جوان اُخبر من،
تا ابد باعث تو ای زاده آزاده نسیاد،
نتوان برد زیاد،
از ازل خاش نمیزد مراد من،
نو جوان اُخبر من، آَخ

وله ایضاً

شُلوه از چاوِچ ستمگو چکنیم گر تکنیم،
چکنیم گر تکنیم،
کله از گردش اختر چکنیم گر تکنیم،
چکنیم گر تکنیم،
غیر عباس بلاخش چکنیم گر تکنیم،
چکنیم گر تکنیم،
ناله بر حسرت اُخبر چکنیم گر تکنیم،
چکنیم گر تکنیم، آَخ

1 See *No. 19* (pp. 216–218) and *No. 31* (pp. 246–248).
و له ایضاً
در شب چوبشیده بینم روز محشر آفتان
آفتان، باز سرخش آفتان
وز صبحات آشتی عمار دیگر آفتان
آفتان، باز سرخش آفتان
سمت ازین سخت ابتلا ذرات را پا و پست
هرچه هست، چا زرا از گزاره بست
شتر کس آخر نه از دره کمر آفتان
آفتان، باز سرخش آفتان، آله

و له ایضاً
گوه و صحرا خصر و شاه سهره تنها دریغ
وا دریغ، نصرت اعدا دریغ
قلب ایبان را شکست و نصرت اعدا دریغ
وا دریغ، نصرت اعدا دریغ
آه کر بیدولتان دین بنده باخته
تاخته، گشت کارش ساخته
پادشاه کشور دین خسرو دنیا دریغ
وا دریغ، نصرت اعدا دریغ، آله

و له ایضاً
محشری بینم عیان در هفت کشور آسان
آسان، شرمی آخر آسان
ثام عاشورا است این یا صبح محشر آسان
آسان، شرمی آخر آسان
آقتباشی شد ز دوخت تیهو اختیر آسان،
آسان، شومی آخر آسان،
با چنین دوران نکردی خاکی دیگر آسان،
آسان، شومی آخر آسان، آنخ

و له ایضاً;
زین مصيبت نه همین از خاکیان ماتیر باست,
کی روست، سنگون گردی فلک;
چار ارکان شش مخت تا نه فلک ماتیر سرست;
کی روست، سنگون گردی فلک;

نوعه جن و ملک در ماتیر خخر آمیز
از قدم، تا دم شای عدم;
از ثری هم تا ثریا از ثریا تا ثراست;
کی روست، سنگون گردی فلک;

و له ایضاً;
هفته کین مه شر سال دغل قرن داغست,
خون هدر مال هباست;
شب غیر روز ستم شام سلیم عزاست،
خون هدر مال هباست;
فتنه بیدار و امان خفته و خصر از در کین;
تركستان بکمین;
رسته بی شجن و خوان چیده فرمان یگیباست;
خون هدر مال هباست، آنخ
This last poem in form most closely approaches No. 19 in my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*.

The above poems are interesting as regards their form. The following, an ordinary *Nūha*, or "Lamentation," without refrain, partly in colloquial dialect, is simple and rather beautiful. I quote only the first six of the nineteen verses which it comprises:

"My heart is very weary of life; however soon I die, it is still too late. The women's hearts are the abode of grief and mourning; the men's bodies are the target of swords and arrows.

Their sons waver in their blood; their daughters mourn; the brother is slain; the sister is a captive.

The morsel in the mothers' mouths is their own heart's blood; the milk in the children's throats is liquid gore."
The captives, in place of tears and lamentations, have sparks in their eyes and fire in their souls. The outcry of the thirsty reaches down and up from the dark earth to the Sphere of the Ether."

It is curious to find in two such ribald poets as Yaghmá and Qâ’dání so deep a religious sense and sympathy with the martyrs of their faith as are manifested in a few of their poems. Verlaine, perhaps, offers the nearest parallel in modern European literature.

Of the remaining poets who flourished during the long reign of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh, whose assassination on May 1, 1896, may be regarded as the first portent of the Revolution which bore its full fruit ten years later, two, Mírzá Muḥammad Taqí of Káshán with the pen-name of Sípihr, and Mírzá Ridá-qulí Khán Hidáyat, are better known as historians and will be mentioned as such in a later chapter, though notices of both are given by the latter in his often-quoted Majmu‘u’l-Fuṣāhá. Another poet of some note is Abu’n-Naṣr Fathu ’lláh Khán Shaybání of Káshán, a copious selection of whose poems was printed by the Akhtar Press at Constantinople in 1308/1890–19, and of whom a long notice (pp. 224–245) is also given in the Majmu‘u’l-Fuṣáhá. The list might be increased almost indefinitely, did space permit, but the most notable names have been mentioned, and even to them it has been impossible to do justice.

1 For his beautiful marathiya on the tragedy of Karbalá, see pp. 177–181 supra.
2 See vol. ii, pp. 156–181 for Sípihr, and pp. 581–678 for the autobiography of Hidáyat. This great anthology was concluded in 1288/1871–2.
3 It was edited by Isma‘íl Naṣírí Qarájá-Dághí, published at the instigation of Mírzá Ridá Khán, afterwards entitled Arfa’u’d-Dawla, and comprises 312 pp.
MUZAFFARU'D-DIN MIRZA (afterwards SHAH) seated, with his tutor (Lala-bashi) RIJAA-QULI KHAN, poet and historian, standing on his right (the reader's left)

Or. 4938 (Brit. Mus.), 14
Of the new school of poets produced by the Revolution in 1906 and the succeeding years I have treated in a separate work, the *Press and Poetry in Modern Persia*, more fully than would have been possible in this volume. The most eminent of these contemporary poets are, perhaps, Dakhaw (Dih-Khudá) of Qazwín, ‘Árif of Qazwín, Sayyid Ashraf of Gilán, and Bahár of Mashhad. Dakhaw is probably the youngest and the most remarkable of them, though I do not think he has produced much verse lately. The versatility of his genius is illustrated by two of his poems (Nos. 3 and 14) cited in my above-mentioned work, on the one hand the riotous burlesque of "Kabláy," and on the other the delicate and beautiful *In Memoriam* addressed to his former colleague Mírzá Jahángír Khán of Shíráz, editor of the *Súr-i-Isráfíl*, of which the former was published in that admirable paper on November 20, 1907, and the latter on March 8, 1909. Bahár, entitled *Malikušh-Shu'ará*, "King of the Poets," or Poet Laureate, was the editor of the *Naw Bahár* (which after its suppression reappeared under the title of Táza Bahár), and was the author of several fine poems (Nos. 20, 34 and 36-47) published in my book, while ‘Árif is represented by No. 33, and Ashraf by Nos. 4-7, 9-13, 16-19, and 27. I do not think that the works of these or any others of the post-Revolution poets have been published in a collected form. They appeared from time to time in various newspapers, notably the *Súr-i-Isráfíl*, *Nasím-i-Shímad* and *Naw Bahár*, and must be culled from their pages. Many of the now numerous Persian papers contain a literary corner entitled *Adabiyyát* in which these poems appear. The importance of the fact that their aim must now be to please

---

1 Camb. Univ. Press, 1914, pp. xl + 357, with a Persian foreword of 5 pp. The poems (originals and translations) occupy pp. 168-308, comprise 61 separate pieces, and can be obtained separately for 5s.
the increasing public taste and reflect the growing public opinion, not to gratify individual princes, ministers and noblemen, has been already emphasized\(^1\).

Of one other poet, lately deceased, who is very highly esteemed by his countrymen, but whose writings are not yet readily accessible, something more must be said. This is Mírzá Șádiq Khán, a great-grandson of the celebrated Qá'im-ma¿ám\(^2\), best known by his title ʿAdibul-Mamálik, who died on the 28th of Rabí’ II, 1335 (Feb. 21, 1917). Three sources of information about him are at my disposal, viz. (1) a notice in my MS. marked J. 19\(^3\) on modern Persian poets (pp. 39-50); (2) an obituary notice in No. 20 of the old Káwa of April 15, 1917; and (3) a pamphlet published at the “Kaviani Press” in 1341/1922 by Khán Malik-i-Ḥusayni-i-Sásání, a cousin of the poet, announcing his intention of collecting and publishing his poems, and asking help from those who possess copies of verses not in his possession. Some particulars concerning him are also given in my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia* in connection with the various papers he edited or wrote for at different times, viz. the *Adab* of Tabríz (pp. 37–8), Mashhad (p. 38) and Tíhrán (p. 39), which extended over the period 1316-1322/1898-1905; the Turco-Persian *Irshád* (p. 39), which he edited in conjunction with Ahmad Bey Aghayeff of Qarábágh at Bákú in 1323/1905-6; the *Rúznáma-i-ʻIrán-i-Sulțání* (pp. 88–91), to which he contributed in 1321/1903-4; the *ʻIráq-i-ʻAjam* (pp. 118–19), which he edited in 1325/1907; and the *Majlis* (pp. 132-3), for

---

\(^1\) See p. 302 *supra*.

\(^2\) See pp. 311–316 *supra*.

\(^3\) See p. 302 *supra*. Since writing this, my attention has been called by my friend Mírzá Salmán-i-Asádí to an interesting article on the *Adibul-Mamálik* in the periodical entitled *Armaghán* (No. 1 of the third year, pp. 15-25).
which he wrote in 1324/1906. One of the most celebrated of his poems is also given on pp. 300-302 of the same work.

The *Adību’l-Mamālik* was born in 1277/1860-1, and was a descendant in the third degree of Mīrzā ‘Īsá Qā’im-maqām, and in the thirty-fifth degree of the Imām Zaynu’l-‘Ābidin. In 1307/1889-90 he was at Tabrīz in the service of the Amīr Nizām (Hasan ‘Alī Khān-i-Garrūsī), in honour of whom he changed his pen-name from *Parwāna* ("Moth") to *Amīrī*. In 1311/1893-4 he followed the Amīr Nizām to Kirmānshāh and Kurdistān. During the two following years (1894-6) he was employed in the Government Translation Office (Darūt-Tarjuma-i-Dawlatt) in Tihrān, but in Safar 1314/July-August, 1896, he returned with the Amīr Nizām to Ādharbāyjān, where, in 1316/1898-9, he adopted the turban in place of the kulāh, became Vice-master of the Luqmaniyya College at Tabrīz, and founded the *Adab* newspaper, which, as stated above, he afterwards continued at Mashhad and Tihrān. During the years 1318-20/1900-02 he travelled in the Caucasus and Khwārazm (Khiva), whence he came to Mashhad, but at the end of A.H. 1320 (March, 1903) he returned to Tihrān, and for the next two years, 1321-2/1903-5, was the chief contributor to the *Rūs-nāma-i-Īrān-i-Sultānī*. In 1323/1905-6 he was joint editor of the *Irshad* at Bākū; in 1324/1906 he became chief writer for the *Majlis*, edited by Mīrzā Muḥammad Ṣādiq-i-Tabātabā’ī; and in 1325/1907 he founded the *Īrāq-i-‘Ajam*. In July, 1910, he took part in the capture of Tihrān by the Nationalists, and subsequently held the position of President of the High Court of Justice (Ra‘īs-i-‘Adliyya) in ‘Īrāq and afterwards at Samnān. He lost his only daughter in 1330/1912. Two years later he was appointed editor of the semi-official newspaper *Āftāb* ("the Sun"). In 1335/1916-17 he was appointed President of the High Court of Justice at
Yazd, but soon afterwards, as we have seen, he died at Tihrán, aged fifty-eight.

The special value and interest of his poems, according to Khán Malik, his cousin and intimate friend, lie not only in their admirable and original style, but in their faithful reflection of the varying moods of the Persian people during the fateful years 1906–1912. In satire it is said that no Persian poet has equalled him since the time of old Súzaní of Samarqand, who died in 569/1173–4. In his pamphlet Khán Malik gives the opening verses of all the poems in his possession, with the number of verses in each, and invites those who possess poems lacking in his collection to communicate them to him before Jumáda i, 1342 (December, 1923), when he proposes to publish as complete an edition as possible. The Káwa quotes the following verses from one of his poems on the Russian aggressions in Persia, which it compares with the celebrated poems of Sa'ídí on the destruction of the Caliphate by the Mongols, Anwári on the invasion of the Ghuzz Turks, and Háfíz on Tímúr’s rapacity:

\[\text{چون برب، بیچاره بچوپانش نهیست،}
\text{از بیج بصحرا در نه خفته و نه بنشست،}
\text{خرسی بشکار آمد و بازوش فرو بست،}
\text{شد برب، ما طعیه، آن خرس زبردست،}\]

1 These dates are taken from Khán Malik’s pamphlet, pp. 4–6.
3 Ibid., pp. 29–30.
5 The reference here is to the well-known verse—

\[\text{فغان کین لولان شوخ شیرین کاپا شبر آشوب،}
\text{چنان برند از دل هک ترگان خوانی بپیمارا.}\]

It is, however, but a vague and casual allusion.
"Since the poor lamb did not forgather with its shepherd, through fear it neither slept nor rested in the plain.
A bear came forth to hunt, and bound its limbs: our lamb became the prey of that high-handed bear.
Alas for that new-born and bemused lamb! Alack for that aged and greedy bear!"

My manuscript J. 19¹ (p. 44) enumerates twelve of his works, which include an Arabic and a Persian Dțwán, a collection of Magámat, a rhymed vocabulary, a volume of travels, and several books on Astronomy, Geography, Prosody, and other sciences.

¹ See p. 302 supra.
PART III.

PERSIAN PROSE DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES
CHAPTER VIII.

THE ORTHODOX SHI'A FAITH AND ITS EXPONENTS,
THE MUJTAHIDS AND MULLÁS.

One of the chief results of the Shi'a revival effected by
the Şafawí dynasty was the establishment of the powerful
hierarchy of mujtahids and mullás, often, but
not very accurately, described by European
writers as "the clergy." This title is, however,
more applicable to them than to the 'ulamá, or "doctors,"
of the Sunnis, who are simply men learned in the Scripture
and the Law, but not otherwise possessed of any special
Divine virtue or authority. The great practical difference
between the 'ulamá of the Sunnis and of the Shi'a lies in
their conception of the doctrine of Ijtihad, or
the discovery and authoritative enunciation of
fresh religious truths, based on a comprehensive
knowledge of the Scripture and Traditions, and arrived at by
supreme effort and endeavour, this last being the significa-
tion of the Arabic word. One who has attained to this is
called a mujtahid, whose position may be roughly described
as analogous to that of a Cardinal in the Church of Rome.
No such dignitary exists amongst the Sunnis, who hold
that the Babu'l-Ijtihad, or "Gate of Endeavour" (in the
sense explained above), was closed after the death of the
founders of their four "orthodox" schools or sects, Abú
Hanífa (d. 150/767), Málík ibn Anas (d. circa 179/795),
ash-Sháfi'i (d. 204/820), and Ahmad ibn Muhammad ibn
Hanbal (d. 241/855). Thus the "Gate of Endeavour,"
which, according to the Shi'a view, is still open, has for
the Sunnis been closed for more than a thousand years;
and in this respect the Shi'a doctrine must be credited
with a greater flexibility and adaptability than that of the

B. P. L.

23
Sunnís, though in other respects narrower and more intolerant.

As will appear in the course of this chapter, the power and position attained by these prelates tended to divert the ambitions of young men who possessed, or believed themselves to possess, the necessary intellectual qualifications from poetry, belles lettres, and other forms of mental activity to theology, and from this tendency in part resulted the dearth of poets and abundance of divines under the Šafawís. Those were spacious times for the “turbaned classes” (ahlul-‘amā’im), and every poor, half-starved student who frequented one or other of the numerous colleges (madrasa) founded, endowed and maintained by the piety of the Šafawi Sháhs, who delighted to call themselves by such titles as “Dog of the Threshold of the Immaculate Imáms,” or “Promoter of the Doctrine of the Church of the Twelve,” dreamed, no doubt, of becoming at last a great mujtahid, wielding powers of life and death, and accorded honours almost regal.

No class in Persia is so aloof and inaccessible to foreigners and non-Muslims as that of the mullás. It is easy for one who has a good knowledge of Persian to mix not only with the governing classes and officials, who are most familiar with European habits and ideas, but with merchants, tradesmen, artisans, landowners, peasants, darwishes, Bábís, Bahá’ís, Súfis and others; but few Europeans can have enjoyed intimacy with the “clergy,” whose peculiar, exclusive, and generally narrow life is, so far as my reading has gone, best depicted in an otherwise mediocre and quite modern biographical work entitled Qīṣāshul-‘Ulamá ("Tales of the Divines")¹ by Muḥammad

¹ I possess two lithographed editions of this book, the (second) Tihrání edition, published in Șafar, 1304 (Nov. 1886), and another published (apparently) in Lucknow in 1306/1888–9.
ibn Sulaymán of Tanukábun, who was born in 1235/1819–20, wrote this book in three months and five days, and concluded it on the 17th of Rajab, 1290 (Sept. 10, 1873). It contains the lives of 153 Shī’a doctors, ranging from the fourth to the thirteenth centuries of the Muhammadan (tenth to nineteenth of the Christian) era, arranged in no intelligible order, either chronological or alphabetical. To his own biography, which he places fourth in order, the author devotes more than twenty pages, and enumerates 169 of his works, besides various glosses and other minor writings. From this book, which I read through during the Easter Vacation of 1923, having long ago made use of certain parts of it bearing on the Shaykhs and Bābis, I have disentangled from much that is tedious, trivial or puerile, a certain amount of valuable information which is not to be found in many much better biographical works, whereof, before proceeding further, I shall here speak briefly.

What is known as ‘Iḥna‘-Rijāl (“Knowledge of the Men,” that is of the leading authorities and transmitters of the Traditions) forms an important branch of theological study, since such knowledge is necessary for critical purposes. Of such Kutub-‘Iḥna‘-Rijāl (“Books of the Men”) there are a great many. Sprenger, in his edition 1 of one of the most important of these, the Fihrist, or “Index,” of Muhammad ibn Ḥasan ibn ‘Ali of Tūs, entitled Shaykhū‘-Tdīfa, who died in 460/1067, ranks with it in importance four other works, the Aṣma‘-‘Iḥna‘-Rijāl (“Names of the Men”) of Shaykh Ahmad ibn ‘Ali an-Najashi 2 (d. 455/1063); the Ma‘ālimu‘-Ulamā of Muhammad ibn ‘Ali ibn Shahr-āshūb of Māzandarán,

1 Printed in the Bibliotheca Indica.
2 Lithographed at Bombay in 1317/1899–1900. In the Kashfu‘-Hujub (see pp. 357–8 infra) the date of the author’s death is given as 405/1014.
who died in 588/1192; the *Idāhu'l-Ishtibáh* ("Elucidation of Confusion") of Hasan ibn Yúsuf ibn Muṭahhar al-Hillí (b. 648/1250; d. 726/1326); and the *Lūlī'atul-Bahrāyn*, a work of a more special character, dealing especially with the *ulamā* of Bahrayn, by Yúsuf ibn Ahmad ibn Ibrāhīm al-Bahrānī (d. 1187/1773-4). Another work, similar to the last in dealing with a special region, is the *Amalu'l-Āmil fī *Ulamā'i Fībal-Āmil*, composed by Muhammad ibn Ḥasan ibn 'Alī...al-Hurr al-Āmilī (b. 1033/1623-4) in 1097/1686. All these works are written in Arabic, but of the older books of this class there is one in Persian (compiled in 990/1582) which must on no account be overlooked. This is the *Majālisul-Mu'minīn* ("Assemblies of Believers") of Sayyid Núru'lláh ibn Sharīf al-Mar'ashí of Shúshtar, who was put to death in India on account of his strong Shi'a opinions in 1019/1610-11. This book is both of a wider scope and a more popular character than those previously mentioned, since it contains, in twelve chapters, notices of eminent Shi'as of all classes, not merely theologians, and includes not only those who adhered to the "Sect of the Twelve" (*Ithnā-'ashariyya*) but all those who held that 'Alī should have immediately succeeded the Prophet.

Of modern works of this class, composed within the last sixty years, three, besides the above-mentioned *Qīṣāṣul-'Ulamā*, deserve special mention. The most general in its scope, entitled *Rawḍatul-Jannāt fī Ahwālul-'Ulamā wa's-Sādāt* ("Gardens of Paradise: on the circumstances of Divines and Sayyids"), was composed in Arabic by Muhammad Bāqir ibn Hājjī Zaynu'l-'Ābidín al-Músawi al-Khwánsári, whose auto-

---

1 Lithographed in Bombay, n. d.
2 An excellent lithographed edition (four vols. in one, containing in all about 750 pp. and 713 biographies) was published at Tihrán in 1306/1888.
biography is given on pp. 126–8 of vol. i, in 1286/1869–70. The biographies, which are arranged alphabetically, include learned Muslims of all periods, and are not confined to theologians or members of the Shi'a sect. Thus we find notices of great Mystics, like Báyázíd of Bishiám, Ibráhím ibn Adham, Shibli and Ḥusayn ibn Maṣūr al-Ḥalláj; of Arabic poets, like Dhu'r-Rumma, Farazdaq, Ibnul-Ḥarīd, Abū Nuwás and al-Mutanabbi; of Persian poets, like Saná'l, Farīdul-Dīn 'Aṭṭār, Nāṣir-i-Khusraw, and Jalālu'd-Dīn Rūmī; and of men of learning like al-Bīrūnī, Thābit ibn Qurra, Ḥunayn ibn Ishāq and Avicenna, etc., besides the accounts of Shi'a theologians down to comparatively modern times which give the book so great a value for our present purpose.

Another important work, composed in the same year as that last mentioned (1286/1869–70) but in Persian, is entitled *Nujumul-Samā'* ("Stars of Heaven"). It deals with Shi'a theologians of the eleventh, twelfth and thirteenth centuries of the hijra (A.D. 1592–1882), and the biographies are arranged on the whole chronologically. The author was Muḥammad ibn Šādiq ibn Mahdi. Like most of these books its utility is impaired by the lack of an Index or even a Table of Contents, but it contains a great deal of useful information.

The third work of which I desire to make special mention here is primarily a bibliography, though it also contains a good deal of biographical matter. It is entitled *Kashful-Ḥujub* , "the Removal of Veils and Curtains from the Names of Books and Treatises"), contains notices of 3414 Shi'a books arranged alphabetically, and was composed in Arabic by Sayyid Ijáż Ḥusayn, who was born in 1240/1825, and died in 1286/1870. The editor, Muḥammad Hidáyat Ḥusayn, discovered the manuscript in the excellent

\footnote{Lithographed at Lucknow in 1303/1885–6 (pp. 424).}
Bankipore Library, and, encouraged by Sir E. Denison Ross, prepared the text for publication at the expense of the Asiatic Society of Bengal.

Mention must also be made of another Arabic work on Shi’a poets entitled *Nasimatu’s-Sahar fi-man tashayya’a wa sha’ar* (“the Morning Breeze, on those who held the Shi’a faith and composed poetry”), compiled by Yūsuf ibn Yahyā al-Yamanī as-San‘ānī, a rare book, hitherto, so far as I know, unpublished, of which I am fortunate enough to possess a manuscript of the second half, containing the letters ɓ to ƙ. Only poets who wrote in Arabic are noticed.

Of these books the *Rawdātul-Jannāt* is the most scholarly and comprehensive, but those who read Persian only will derive much instruction and some amusement from the *Majḍlisul-Mu’minin, Nuṣūmu’s-Samād*, and *Qiṣāṣul-Ulāmā*. The older “Books of the Men,” such as the works of at-Tūsī and an-Najāshī, are generally very jejune, and suited for reference rather than reading. As it is with the theologians of the Ṣafawī and subsequent periods that we are chiefly concerned here, a very few words about the older ‘ulāmā of the Shi’a will suffice, though with their names, titles and approximate dates the student should be familiar. The most important of these earlier divines are “the three Muḥammad,” al-Kulaynī (Muḥammad ibn Ya’qūb, d. 329/941), Ibn Bābawayhi (Muḥammad ibn ‘Alī ibn Mūsā, d. 381/991–2), and the already-mentioned Tūsī (Muḥammad ibn Ḥasan, d. 460/

---

1 It was printed at the Baptist Mission Press at Calcutta in 1330/1912, and comprises 607 pp.
2 For description of another copy see Ahlwardt’s *Berlin Arabic Catalogue*, vol. vi, pp. 502–3, No. 7423.
3 See the *Qiṣāṣul-Ulāmā*, p. 221 of the Lucknow edition, s.v. Muḥammad Bāqir-i-Majlisī.
The “three Muhammads,” namely Muḥammad ibn Ḥasan ibn ‘Alī...al-Ḥurr al-ʿĀmilī (author of the above-mentioned Amalūl-ʿĀmil); Muḥammad ibn-ul-Murtadā, commonly known as Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ (Fayḍ), who died about 1090/1679; and Muḥammad Bāqir-i-Majlisī (d. 1111/1699–1700)². Each of these also produced a great book, the first the Wasāʾīl, the second the Wāfī, and the third the Biḥārīl-Anwār (“Oceans of Light”), which constitute the “Three Books” of the later time. These seven great works on Shiʿa theology, jurisprudence and tradition are, of course, like the great bulk of the works of the Muhammadan Doctors and Divines, written in Arabic, which language occupies no less a position in Islām than does Latin in the theological literature of the Church of Rome. Of them space will not permit me to speak further; it is the more popular Persian manuals of doctrine, whereby the great theologians of the Safawī period sought so successfully to diffuse their religious teachings, which must chiefly concern us here, and even of these it will be impossible to give an adequate account. According to the Rawḍātul-ṣannāt, Kamālu’d-Dīn Ḥusayn of Ardabil, called “the Divine Doctor” (al-

1 Or al-Uṣūl’l-arba’a (“the Four Principles”). See Nujumul-Samā, p. 75.
² See p. 120 supra.
³ Vol. i, p. 185.
Iláhi), a contemporary of Sháh Isma‘íl I, “was the first to compose books in Persian on matters connected with the Holy Law according to the doctrine of the Shi’a”:

We have already seen what difficulty Sháh Isma‘íl experienced on his capture of Tabríz in finding teachers or books to inculcate the doctrines of the creed which he was determined to impose throughout his dominions, and it is not strange, though the fact is often overlooked, that it became necessary to introduce into Persia learned Arabs of the Shi‘a persuasion, where such were obtainable. Two districts furnished the bulk of these: Bahrayn, across the Persian Gulf, and Jabal ‘Ámil in Syria. To the divines furnished by each of these two localities a special biographical work has, as we have seen, been devoted, namely the Lul‘átul-Bahrayn and the Amalul-Ámil. Some of them came to Persia totally ignorant of the Persian language, like Sayyid Ni‘matulláh al-Jazá’ír, who, on reaching Shíráz with his brother, had to obtain from a Persian acquaintance the sentence “Madrasa-i-Manšúriyya-rd mi-khwáhím” (“We want the Manšúriyya College”), and even then each learned only half of this simple phrase and spoke alternately.

1 Pp. 54–5 supra.
2 See G. le Strange’s Palestine under the Moslems, pp. 75–6 and 470.
3 Qisasul-Ulamá (ed. Lucknow, p. 229; ed. Tihrán, p. 333):
It is the autobiography of this same Sayyid Ni'matu'llah, as given in the Qisasul-Ulama, which furnishes us with so unusually vivid a picture of the privations and hardships experienced by a poor student of Divinity. He was born in 1050/1640-1 and wrote this narrative when he was thirty-nine years of age, "in which brief life," he adds, "what afflictions have befallen me!" These afflictions began when he was only five years old, when, while he was at play with his little companions, his father appeared, saying, "Come with me, my little son, that we may go to the school-master, so that thou mayst learn to read and write, in order that thou mayst attain to a high degree." In spite of tears, protests, and appeals to his mother he had to go to school, where, in order the sooner to escape and return to his games, he applied himself diligently to his lessons, so that by the time he was aged five years and a half he had finished the Qur'an, besides learning many poems. This, however, brought him no relief and no return to his childish games, for he was now committed to the care of a blind grammarian to study the Arabic paradigms and the grammar of Zanjani. For this blind teacher he had to act as guide, while his next preceptor

1 He died, according to the Kashfu'l-Hujub, p. 70, No. 328, in 1130/1718. Since writing this, I have found the Arabic original of this autobiography in one of my MSS. (C. 15) entitled Kitabul-Anwari'n-Nu'maniyya, composed by Sayyid Ni'matu'llah in 1089/1678. It concludes the volume, and occupies ff. 329-34.
compelled him to cut and carry fodder for his beasts and mulberry-leaves for his silk-worms. He then sought another teacher with whom to study the Kāfīya of Ibnul-Hājib, and found an imposing personage dressed in white with an enormous turban “like a small cupola,” who, however, was unable to answer his questions. “If you don’t know enough grammar to answer these questions, why do you wear this great load on your head?” enquired the boy; whereupon the audience laughed, and the teacher rose up ashamed and departed. “This led me to exert myself to master the paradigms of grammar,” says the writer; “but I now ask pardon of God for my question to that believing man, while thanking Him that this incident happened before I had attained maturity and become fully responsible for my actions.”

After pursuing his studies with various other masters, he obtained his father’s permission to follow his elder brother to Huwayza. The journey thither by boat through narrow channels amongst the weeds, tormented by mosquitoes “as large as wasps” and with only the milk of buffaloes to assuage his hunger, gave him his first taste of the discomforts of travel to a poor student. In return for instruction in Jāmi’s and Jārbandi’s commentaries and the Shāfiya, his teacher exacted from him “much service,” making him and his fellow-students collect stones for a house which he wished to build, and bring fish and other victuals for him from the neighbouring town. He would not allow them to copy his lecture-notes, but they used to purloin them when opportunity arose and transcribe them. “Such was his way with us,” says the writer, “yet withal we were well satisfied to serve him, so that we might derive benefit from his holy breaths.”

He attended the college daily till noon for instruction and discussion, and on returning to his lodging was so hungry
that, in default of any better food, he used to collect the melon-skins cast aside on the ground, wipe off the dust, and eat what fragments of edible matter remained. One day he came upon his companion similarly employed. Each had tried to conceal from the other the shifts to which he was reduced for food, but now they joined forces and collected and washed their melon-skins in company. Being unable to afford lamps or candles, they learned by heart the texts they were studying, such as the Alfiyya of Ibn Màlik and the Kàfiyya, on moonlight nights, and on the dark nights repeated them by heart so as not to forget them. To avoid the distraction of conversation, one student would on these occasions often bow his head on his knees and cover his eyes, feigning headache.

After a brief visit to his home, he determined to go to Shíráz, and set out by boat for Basra by the Shaṭṭu'l-'Arab. He was so afraid of being stopped and brought back by his father that, during the earlier part of the voyage, he stripped off his clothes and waded behind the boat, holding on to the rudder, until he had gone so far that recognition was no longer probable, when he re-entered the boat. Farther on he saw a number of people on the bank, and one of his fellow-passengers called out to them to enquire whether they were Sunnis or Shi'a. On learning that they were Sunnis, he began to abuse them and invoke curses on the first three Caliphs, to which they replied with volleys of stones.

The writer remained only a short while at Basra, then governed by Husayn Páshá, for his father followed him thither to bring him home, but he escaped privily with his brother, and, as already narrated, made his way to Shíráz and established himself in the Mansúriyya College, being then only eleven.

\[1\] P. 360 supra.
years of age. He found one of the tutors lecturing on the Alfiyya of Ibn Málík, who, on the conclusion of the lecture, questioned him as to his aims and adventures, and finally, seizing him by the ear and giving it a sharp twist, said, “O my son, do not make thyself an Arab Shaykh or seek for supremacy, and do not waste thy time! Do not thus, that so perchance thou mayst become a scholar.”

In this college also the life was hard and the daily allowance of food inadequate, and the writer's brother wished to return home, but he himself determined to remain, copying books for a pittance, and working almost all night through the hot weather in a room with closed doors while his fellow-students slept on the roof. Often he had neither oil for his lamp nor bread to eat, but must work by moonlight, faint with hunger, while in the winter mornings his fingers often bled with the cold as he wrote his notes. Thus passed two or three years more, and, though his eyesight was permanently affected by the strain to which it was subjected, he began to write books himself, a commentary on the Káfiya, and another, entitled Miṣṭáhu'l-Labīb, on the Tahdhib of Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín Muḥammad\(^1\). He now began to extend the range of his studies beyond Arabic grammar, and to frequent the lectures of more eminent teachers from Baghdád, al-Ahsá and Bahrayn, amongst them Shaykh Ja'far al-Bahrání. One day he did not attend this Shaykh’s lecture because of the news which had reached him of the death of certain relatives.

When he reappeared on the following day the Shaykh was very angry and refused to give him any further instruction, saying, “May God curse my father and mother if I teach

\(^1\) See the Kasfu'l-Itijub, p. 146, No. 725. The author died in 1031/1621-2. He was one of the most notable theologians of the reign of Sháh 'Abbas the Great, and is commonly called in Persia “Shaykh-i-Bahá’í.” See p. 407 infra.
you any more! Why were you not here yesterday?” And, when the writer explained the cause of his absence, he said, “You should have attended the lecture, and indulged in your mourning afterwards”; and only when the student had sworn never to play the truant again whatever might happen was he allowed after an interval to resume his attendance. Finally he so far won the approval of this somewhat exacting teacher that the latter offered him his daughter in marriage; an honour from which he excused himself by saying, “If God will, after I have finished my studies and become a Doctor (‘ālim), I will marry.” Soon afterwards the teacher obtained an appointment in India, at Haydarábad in the Deccan.

Sayyid Ni‘matulláh remained in Shíráz for nine years, and for the most part in such poverty that often he swallowed nothing all day except water. The earlier part of the night he would often spend with a friend who lived some way outside the town so as to profit by his lamp for study, and thence he would grope his way through the dark and deserted bazaars, soothing the fierce dogs which guarded their masters’ shops, to the distant mosque where he lectured before dawn. At his parents’ wish he returned home for a while and took to himself a wife, but being reproached by a learned man whom he visited with abandoning his studies while still ill-grounded in the Science of Traditions, he left his parents and his wife (he had only been married for three weeks) and returned to the Mansúriyya College at Shíráz. Soon afterwards, however, it was destroyed by a fire, in which one student and a large part of the library perished; and about the same time he received tidings of his father’s death. These two misfortunes, combined with other circumstances, led him to leave Shíráz and go to Isfahán.

During his early days at Isfahán he still suffered from the same poverty with which he had been only too familiar
in the past, often eating salted meat to increase his thirst, so that the abundance of water he was thereby impelled to drink might destroy his appetite for solid food. The change in his fortune took place when he made the acquaintance and attracted the notice of that great but fanatical divine Mullah Muhammad Bāqir-i-Majlisī, perhaps the most notable and powerful doctor of the Shi'a who ever lived. He was admitted to the house of this famous man and lived with him for four years studying theology, and especially the Traditions. Yet in this case familiarity did not breed contempt, for, as the author mentions in his Anwār-i-Numāniyya, though specially favoured by this formidable “Prince of the Church,” he often, when summoned to his library to converse with him, or to help in the compilation of the Bihār-i-Anwār, would stand trembling outside the door for some moments ere he could summon up courage to enter.

Thanks to this powerful patronage, however, he was appointed lecturer (mudarris) in a college recently founded by a certain Mirzā Taqī near the Bath of Shaykh-i-Bahá’í in Isfahán, which post he held for eight years, when the increasing weakness of his eyes and the inability of the oculists of Isfahán to afford him any relief determined him to set out again on his travels. He visited Sámmrá, Kázimayn, and other holy places in Iráq, whence he returned by way of Shúshtar to Isfahán. In 1079/1668–9 his brother died, and ten years later, when he penned this autobiography, he still

---

1 As has been already mentioned (p. 359 supra), this powerful prelate was one of the “three Muḥammadis” of the later time, and his great work on Shi'a tradition, the Bihār-i-Anwār, is still accounted in Persia the most authoritative work on this subject.

2 See the Kashfūl-Ḥujub, p. 70, No. 328. I have a MS. of this work obtained from the late Hājji 'Abdu'l-Majīd Belshah and now bearing the class-mark C. 15. As already noted (p. 361), it concludes (ff. 329–34) with the Arabic original of the narrative here given.
keenly felt this loss. After visiting Mashhad he returned to Huwayza, where he was living a somewhat solitary and disillusioned life at the time of writing (1089/1678–9). Of his further adventures I have found no record, but his death did not take place until 1130/1718, only four years before the disaster which put an end to the Safawi Dynasty.

I have given in a somewhat compressed form the whole of this illuminating narrative, one of those “human documents” which are so rare in Persian books (though indeed, as already noted on p. 361, it was originally written in Arabic), because it throws so much light on the life of the Persian student of theology, which, for the rest, mutatis mutandis, closely resembles that of the mediaeval European student. We see the child prematurely torn from the games and amusements suitable to his age to undergo a long, strenuous, and arid course of instruction in Arabic grammar and philology, reading one grammar after another in an ascending scale of difficulty, with commentaries, supercommentaries, glosses and notes on each; we see him as a boy, now fired with ambition, pursuing his studies in theology and law, half-starved, suffering alternately from the cold of winter and the heat of summer, ruining his eyesight by perusing crabbed texts by the fitful light of the moon, and his digestion by irregular and unwholesome meals, varied by intervals of starvation; cut off from home life and family ties; submerged in an ocean of formalism and fanaticism; himself in time adding to the piles of glosses and notes which serve rather to submerge and obscure than to elucidate the texts whereon they are based; and at last, if fortunate, attracting the favourable notice of some great divine, and becoming himself a mudarris (lecturer), a mutawallt (custodian of a shrine), or even a mujtahid.

But if the poor student’s path was arduous, the possible prizes were great, though, of course, attained only by a few.
In the eyes of the Şafawí kings the mujtahid was the representative of the Expected Imám, whose name they never mentioned without adding the prayer, "May God hasten his glad advent!" (ṣajjala ʿlláhu faraja-hu!). He had power of life and death. Hájjí Şayyid Muhammad Báqir ibn Muḥammad Taqí of Rasht, entitled Ḥujjatuʿl-İslám ("the Proof of Islam"), is said to have put to death seventy persons for various sins or heresies. On the first occasion, being unable to find anyone to execute his sentence, he had to strike the first ineffective blow himself, after which someone came to his assistance and decapitated the victim, over whose body he then recited the funeral prayers, and while so doing fainted with emotion.

Another mujtahid, Áqá Muḥammad 'Alí, a contemporary of Karím Khán-i-Zand, acquired the title of Şüfi-kush ("the Şüfi-slayer") from the number of 'urafá and darwishes whom he condemned to death.

Another, Mullá 'Abdu'lláh-i-Túmí, induced Sháh 'Abbás the Great to walk in front of him as he rode through the Maydán-i-Sháh, or Royal Square, of İsfahán, with the object of demonstrating to all men the honour in which learning was held.

Mullá Ḥasan of Yazd, who had invited his fellow-townsmen to expel, with every circumstance of disgrace, a tyrannical governor, was summoned to Tíhrán by Fath-ʿAlí Sháh to answer for his actions, and threatened with the bastinado unless he disavowed responsibility for this procedure. As he refused to do this, and persisted that he was entirely responsible for what had happened, he was actually tied up to receive the bastinado, though it was not actually inflicted. That night the Sháh was notified in a dream of the extreme displeasure with which the Prophet regarded

---

1 Qisásu'l-Ulamá (Lucknow ed.), p. 138.
3 Ibid., part ii, p. 54.
the disrespect shown by him to the exponent of his doctrine and law, and hastened next morning to offer his apologies and a robe of honour, which last was refused by the indignant ecclesiastic.¹

Mullá Āhmād of Ardabīl, called Mūqaddas ("the Saint," died in 993/1585), being asked by one of the King's officers who had committed some fault to intercede for him, wrote to Sháh 'Abbás the Great in Persian as follows²:

"Let 'Abbás, the founder of a borrowed empire³, know that this man, if he was originally an oppressor, now appears to be oppressed; so that, if thou wilt pass over his fault, perhaps God (Glorious and Exalted is He) may pass over some of thy faults.⁴"

To this the Sháh 'Abbás replied:

"'Abbás makes representation that he accepts as a spiritual favour and has fulfilled the services which you enjoined on him. Do not forget [me] your friend in your prayers!"

¹ Qīsāṣu'l-Ulamá (Lucknow ed.), pp. 99–100.
² This and the following anecdote are from the Qīsāṣu'l-Ulamá (Tihrān ed., p. 260; Lucknow ed., p. 132).
³ Because it really belongs to the Expected Imám, and is only held by the Sháh as his trustee and vice-gerent.
⁴ I.e. 'Alí ibn Abí Ṭálīb, the First Imám.
Another mujtahid of Ardabil entitled Muḥaqiq (“the Investigator” or “Verifier”) wrote on behalf of certain Sayyids to Sháh Ṭahmásp, who, on receiving the letter, rose to his feet, placed it on his eyes, and kissed it, and gave the fullest satisfaction to its demands. Then, because the letter addressed him as “O brother” (Ayyuhal’-Akh), the Sháh caused it to be placed with his winding-sheet and ordered that it should be buried with him, “in order that,” said he, “I may argue with the Angels of the Tomb, Munkir and Nakir, that I should not be subjected to their torment.”

Still more extraordinary is another anecdote in the same work\(^1\) of how Prince Muḥammad ‘Alí Mírzá gave a thousand támáns to each of two mujtahids in return for a paper, duly signed and sealed, promising him a place in Paradise. One of them (Sayyid Riḍá ibn Sayyid Mahdí) hesitated to do this, but the Prince said, “Do you write the document and get the doctors of Karbalá and Najaf to witness it, and I will get it (i.e. the mansion in Paradise) from God Most High.”

Many similar anecdotes might be cited, besides numerous miracles (karámat) ascribed to most of the leading divines, but enough has been said to show the extraordinary power and honour which they enjoyed. They were, indeed, more powerful than the greatest Ministers of State, since they could, and often did, openly oppose the Sháh and overcome him without incurring the fate which would almost inevitably have overtaken a recalcitrant Minister.

Nor is this a thing of the past, as is abundantly shown by the history of the overthrow of the Tobacco Concession in 1890–1, which was entirely effected, in the teeth of the Náṣiru’d-Dín Sháh and his Court, and the British Legation, by the mujtahids, headed by Hājjī Mírzá Ḥasan-i-Shírází and Hājjí Mírzá Ḥasan-i-Ashtiyání,

\(^1\) Qīṣāṣul’-Ulamá, ed. Lucknow, p. 32.
inspired and prompted by that extraordinary man Sayyid Jamálu’d-Dín miscalled “the Afghán,” Dr Feuvrier, the Sháh’s French physician, who was in Tihrán at the time, gives a graphic account of this momentous struggle in his *Trois Ans à la Cour de Perse*. I have described it fully in my *Persian Revolution of 1905–1909*, and also the still more important part played by Mullá Muḥammad Kázim of Khurásán and other patriotic mujtahids in the Persian struggle for freedom and independence in the first decade of this century of our era. Mullá Muḥammad Kázim, a noble example of the patriot-priest, deeply moved by the intolerable tyranny and aggression of the then government of Russia, formally proclaimed a *jiḥād*, or religious war, against the Russians on December 11, 1911, and was setting out from Karbalá for Persia in pursuance of this object when he died very suddenly on the following day, the victim, as was generally believed, of poison. He was not the only ecclesiastical victim of patriotism, for the *Thiqatul-Islám* was publicly hanged by the Russians at Tabríz on the 10th of Muharram, 1330 (January 1, 1912), a sacrilegious act only surpassed by the bombardment three months later of the shrine of the Imám Ríḍá at Mashhád, which many Persians believe to have been avenged by the fate which subsequently overtook the Tsar and his family at the hands of the Bolsheviks.

The mujtahids and mullás, therefore, are a great, though probably a gradually decreasing force, in Persia, and concern themselves with every department of human activity,

1 For a full account of him, see my *Persian Revolution*, ch. i, pp. 1–30 etc.
3 Ch. ii, pp. 31–58.
from the minutest details of personal purification to the largest issues of politics. It is open to any Shi'a Muslim to submit any problem into the solution of which religious considerations enter (and they practically enter everywhere) to a mujtahid, and to ask for a formal decision, or fatwá, conformable to the principles of Shi'a doctrine. Such fatwá may extend to the denunciation of an impious or tyrannical king or minister as an infidel (takfîr), or the declaration that anyone who fights for him is as one who fights against the Hidden Imam. The fact that the greatest mujtahids generally reside at Najaf or Karbalá, outside Persian territory, greatly strengthens their position and conduces to their immunity. To break or curb their power has been the aim of many rulers in Persia before and after the Safawis, but such attempts have seldom met with more than a very transient success, for the mullahs form a truly national class, represent in great measure the national outlook and aspirations, and have not unfrequently shielded the people from the oppression of their governors. And although their scholarship is generally of a somewhat narrow kind, it is, so far as it goes, sound, accurate, and even in a sense critical. The finest Persian scholar I know, Mírzá Muḥammad ibn 'Abdu'l-Wahháb of Qazvin, is one who has superimposed on this foundation a knowledge of European critical methods acquired in England, France and Germany.

On the other hand, apart from corruption, fanaticism and other serious faults, many of the 'ulamá are prone to petty jealousy and mutual disparagement. A well-known anecdote, given by Malcolm¹ and in the Qiṣṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá², shows that great doctors like Mír Dámad and Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín al-'Ámilí could rise

¹ History of Persia (ed. 1815), vol. i, pp. 258–9.
above such ignoble feelings; but, as the author of the latter work complains, their less magnanimous colleagues were but too prone to call one another fools and asses, to the injury of their own class and the delight of irreligious laymen. Nor was this abuse rendered less offensive by being wrapped up in punning and pedantic verses like this:

و لست جديراً أن تكون مقدماً، و ما أنت إلا نصف ضد اليقظ.

"Thou art not worthy to be advanced; nay, thou art nothing more than half of the opposite of 'advanced'!"

The opposite of "advanced" (mugaddam) is "postponed" (mu'akkkhar), and the second half of the latter word, khar, is the Persian for an ass. This is a refined specimen of mulâs' wit: for a much coarser one the curious reader may refer to an interchange of badinage between Mulla Mirzâ Mohammed-i-Shirwâni the Turk and Áqá Jamál of Isfâhân recorded in the Qisasul-'Ulamâ. That some mulâs had the sense to recognize their own rather than their neighbours' limitations is, however, shown by a pleasant anecdote related in the same work of Jamâlu'd-Dîn Muhammed ibn Huseyn-i-Khwânsarî. As a judge he was in receipt of a salary of four thousand tumâns a year. One day four persons successively put to him four questions, to each of which he replied, "I do not know." A certain high official who was present said to him, "You receive from the King four thousand tumâns to know, yet here to everyone who asks you a question you reply 'I do not know.'" "I receive these four thousand tumâns," replied the mulâ, "for those things which I do know. If I required a salary for what I do not know, even the Royal Treasury would be unable to pay it."

3 Ibid., Lucknow ed., second part, p. 50; Tihrân ed., p. 199.
Jurisprudence (*fiqh*) and theology (*aqd'id*), with the ancillary sciences, all of which are based on a thorough knowledge of the Arabic language, normally constitute the chief studies of the "clergy," though naturally there is a certain tendency to specialization, the *qādī*, or ecclesiastical judge, being more concerned with *fiqh*, and the theologian proper with doctrine. We must also distinguish between the prevalent *Uṣūl* and the once important but now negligible *Akhbār* school, between whom bitter enmity subsisted. The former, as their name implies, follow the general "principles" (*uṣūl*) deducible from the *Qur'ān* and accredited traditions, and employ analogy (*qiyyās*) in arriving at their conclusions. The latter follow the traditions (*akhbār*) only, and repudiate analogical reasoning. Mullá Muhammad Amín ibn Muhammad Sharif of Astarábád, who died in 1033/1623–4, is generally accounted the founder of the *Akhbār* school, and was, according to the *Lūlāʾatu'l-Bahrayn*, "the first to open the door of reproach against the *Mujtahids*, so that the 'Saved Sect' (*al-Firqatu'n-Nājiya*, i.e. the Shi'a of the Sect of the Twelve) became divided into *Akhbāris* and *Mujtahids*," and the contents of his book *al-Fawā'idu'l-Madaniyya* consist for the most part of vituperation of the *Mujtahids*, whom he often accused of "destroying the true Religion." A later doctor of this school, Mírzá Muhammad Akhbári of Bahrayn, entertained so great a hatred for the *Mujtahids* that he promised Fath-'Alí Sháh that he would in forty days cause to be brought to Tihrán the head of a certain Russian general who was at that time invading and devastating the frontier provinces of Persia, on condition that Fath-'Alí Sháh would, in case of his success, "abrogate and abandon the *Mujtahids*,

---

1 Bombay lith., p. 122.
2 See the *Kashfsul-Hujub*, p. 406, No. 2242. The author wrote the book at Mecca two years before his death.
extirpate and eradicate them root and branch, and make the Akhbári doctrine current throughout all the lands of Persia.” The Sháh consented, and thereupon the Akhbári doctor went into retirement for forty days, abstained from all animal food, and proceeded to practise the “envoûtement” of the Russian general, by making a wax figure of him and decapitating it with a sword. According to the story, the head was actually laid before the Sháh just as the period of forty days was expiring, and he thereupon took council with his advisers as to what he should do. These replied, “the sect of the Mjytahids is one which hath existed from the time of the Imáms until now, and they are in the right, while the Akhbári sect is scanty in numbers and weak. Moreover it is the beginning of the Qájár dynasty. You might, perhaps, succeed in turning the people from the doctrine [to which they are accustomed], but this might be the cause of disastrous results to the King’s rule, and they might rebel against him. Moreover it might easily happen that Mírzá Muhammad should be annoyed with you, arrive at an understanding with your enemy, and deal with you as he dealt with the Russian ‘Ishpukhtur’—The wisest course is that you should propitiate him, excuse yourself to him, and order him to retire to the Holy Thresholds (Karbalá or

1 Qíṣaṣu’l-Ulámá, Tihrán ed., p. 132; Lucknow ed., pp. 188–9. The Russian general is here called Ishpukhtur (اشهختار), which, as my friend M. V. Minorsky informs me, represents “Inspector” (pronounced Ispextor), and is, perhaps, influenced in its form by the popular etymology (in Ottoman Turkish ايشي بوق در= ايشي يوخ دور) invented by the Turkish-speaking Ádharbáyjáni’s, meaning “his work is dirt.” M. Minorsky further informed me that this general’s real name was Tsitsianoff, that he was a Georgian, and that the phrase “Have you brought the Inspector’s head?” (مكر سراشهختروا أوردي) is still used proverbially to one who presents himself in great hurry and excitement, as though in fulfilment of some very important commission.
Najaf) and stay there; for it is not expedient for the State that such a person should remain in the capital.” This advice Fath-‘Alí Sháh decided to follow.

The very dry, narrow and formal divines are called by the Persians Qishrī (literally “Huskers,” i.e. externalists), and to these the Akhbárs in particular belong, but also many of the Usúlís, like Mírzá Ibráhím, the son of the celebrated Mullá Šadrá, one of the teachers of Sayyid Ni‘matu’lláh Jazá’írí, who used to glory in the fact that his belief was that of the common people, and Mullá ‘Alí Núrí, who used to pray that God would keep him in the current popular faith. On the other hand we have the more liberal-minded divines, whose theology was tinctured with Philosophy or Latitudinarians, Súfism, the Mutakallimún, who strove to reconcile Philosophy with Religion and closely resemble the School-men of mediaeval Europe, and finally the pure philosophers, like the celebrated Mullá Šadrá of Shíráz, who, however little their ultimate conclusions accorded with orthodox theology, had generally had the training of the ‘ulamá and were drawn from the same class.

The literature produced by this large and industrious body of men, both in Arabic and Persian, is naturally enormous, but the bulk of it is so dull or so technical that no one but a very leisureed and very pious Shi‘a scholar would dream of reading it. The author of the Qisáṣu‘l-‘Ulamá remarks that the ‘ulamá often live to a very advanced age, and as their habits are, as a rule, sedentary and studious, and they devote a large portion of their time to writing, it is not unusual to find a single author credited with one or two hundred books.


2 Lucknow ed., p. 65.
and pamphlets. Thus the author of the Qīṣaṣu’l-Ulamā enumerates 169 of his own works, besides glosses, tracts and minor writings1; of those of Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ (Fayḍ), 69 by name, but he adds that the total number is nearly 2002; of those of Muhammad ibn ‘Alí... ibn Bába-
wayhi, entitled as-Ṣādiq, 1893; and so on. Many of these writings are utterly valueless, consisting of notes or glosses on super-commentaries or commentaries on texts, grammatical, logical, juristic or otherwise, which texts are completely buried and obscured by all this misdirected ingenuity and toil. It was of this class of writings that the late Grand Muftí of Egypt and Chancellor of al-Azhar Shaykh Muḥammad ‘Abduh, one of the most able and enlightened Muhammadan divines of our time, was wont to say that they ought all to be burned as hindrances rather than aids to learning.

The works on Jurisprudence (Fiqh) also, even the best, are as a rule very unreadable to a non-Muslim. What is taught in English universities as “Muhammadan Law” is, of course, only a portion of the subject as understood in the Lands of Islám. The Shari'at, or Holy Law, includes not only Civil and Criminal Law, but such personal religious obligations as Prayer and the Purifications necessary for its due performance; Alms; Fasting; Pilgrimage; and the Holy War (Jihād), which subjects, with their innumerable ramifications and the hair-splitting casuistry applied to all sorts of contingencies arising from them, constitute perhaps one half of the whole. It is curious that, in spite of the neglect of Shī'ā theology by European Orientalists, one of the best European books on Muhammadan Jurisprudence treats of Shī'ā Law. This is M. Amédée Querry’s Droit Musulman: Recueil de Lois

1 Qīṣaṣu’l-Ulamā, Lucknow ed., pp. 77–85.
2 Ibid., second part, pp. 112–16.
3 Ibid., second part, pp. 183–6.
concernant les Musulmans Schyites; and the European reader who wishes to form an idea of the subject, with all its intricate, and, to the non-Muslim mind, puerile and even disgusting details, cannot do better than consult this monumental work, which is based on the Shârâfi{l,l-Islâm ft
tmasâ'ili'l-Halâl wa'l-Haram of the celebrated Shi'a doctor Najmu'd-Dîn Abu'l-Qâsim Ja'far ibn al-Hasan...al-Hillî, commonly called al-Muhaqqiq al-Awwal ("the First Verifier" or "Investigator"), who died in 676/1277-8. Other works of authority, enumerated in the Preface (vol. i, p. vii) were also consulted, as well as leading contemporary Persian jurists, by M. Querry, whose twenty-five years' sojourn in Turkey and Persia, where he occupied important official positions, such as counsellor of the French Legation at Tihrán, singularly fitted him for the arduous task which he so ably accomplished. An excellent Index of Arabic technical terms explained in the course of the book greatly enhances its value.

Mention should be made in this connection of a Persian catechism on problems of jurisprudence (fiqh) entitled Su'dl u Jawâb ("Question and Answer"), by the eminent musthâhid Hájjî Sayyîd Mu'hammad Bâqîr, whose severity in enforcing the death-penalty in cases where it is enacted by the Ecclesiastical Law has been already mentioned. This work, composed subsequently to 1236/1820, was very beautifully printed in 1247/1832, apparently at Isfahán, under the supervision of Mîrzâ Zaynu'l-'Abidîn of Tabriz, "the introducer of this art into Persia." It comprises 162 ff. of 29½ x 20½ c. and 28 lines, and the letters س (su'dl, "question") and ج (jawâb, "answer")

1 Two vols. of pp. viii+768 and 669 respectively (Paris, Maison-neuve, 1871-2).
2 See p. 54, n. 3; supra.
3 See p. 368 supra. His life is given very fully in the Qisâsu'l-'Ulamâ (Lucknow ed., pp. 129-78).
are throughout inserted by hand in red. I possess only one volume, which was to have been followed by a second, but whether this was ever completed I do not know. The topics are arranged in the usual order, beginning with the personal obligations of purification, prayer, alms, fasting and pilgrimage, and ending with the Kitābu'l-Wadī'at, dealing with objects deposited in trust in the hands of another. An Introduction on “Principles” (Uṣūl) is prefixed to the whole, and in each book, or section, various problems connected with the topic in question are pro-
pounded, with the author’s decisions, the whole in the form of dialogue. Thus the Introduction begins abruptly, with
out any doxology, with the following question:

Q. “If a person follows the opinions of one of the mujtahids (may God increase the like of them !) during the life of that mujtahid, is it lawful after his death for that person to continue to follow him and act according to his sayings, or not?”

The answer, which fills nearly a page, is to the effect that it is not lawful so to do, and that the person in question should transfer his allegiance to some other mujtahid. Numerous authorities are cited in support of this view, amongst them Muḥammad Bāqir (presumably al-Majlisī), Sayyid Muḥammad Mahdī, the “Second Martyr” (ash-Shahiduθ-Thānī), and the “Second Verifier” or “In-
vestigator” (al-Muḥaqiquθ-Thānī).

The “books,” or sections, are of very unequal length, that on Prayer occupying nearly 70 ff., and other “books,” including the last, on Trusts, only half a page. Of the latter, which contains only two questions and their answers, the full translation is as follows:

1 The British Museum Library also possesses only this one volume. See E. Edwards’s Catalogue (1922), col. 458. The Qīṣasūθ-Ulamá gives 1227/1812 as the date of composition, but on f. 28v of the text, line 2, Muḥarram 1236/Oct. 1820 is mentioned as the current date.
Q.—“Zayd\(^1\) sends an article in trust to a trustee, bidding him give it to So-and-so. After the arrival of the article, the trustee learns for certain that the article entrusted to him belongs to ‘Amr\(^1\), and that the hand of the sender, etc., is the hand of borrowing and usurpation. Moreover ‘Amr lays claim to the trust, saying, ‘This trust committed to thee is my property.’ The trustee also admits the validity of his claim to the property, but says, ‘He sent it to me to give it to So-and-so; I will not give it to thee.’ Has ‘Amr legally power to assume possession of the property and take it from the trustee, or not? And to whom should the trustee surrender the trust, so that he may be cleared of all further responsibility?”

A.—“If what has been penned actually corresponds with the facts of the case, that is to say, if the trustee knows that the property belongs to ‘Amr, and that the hand of the sender of it is the hand of usurpation and violence, it is incumbent on the said trustee to surrender such property to its owner, whether the sender gives permission for such surrender or not. For such trustee to say to ‘Amr, having knowledge of the fact that the said property really belongs to him, ‘I will not give it to thee, in view of the fact that the sender of it bade me give it to So-and-so, not to thee,’ is incompatible with the functions of a trustee, and is not conformable to the Holy Law.”

Q.—“If Zayd shall have deposited an article in trust with ‘Amr, and if nearly seventeen years shall have passed, and if, notwithstanding ‘Amr’s urgent insistence with Zayd that he should remove the said article, he neglects to do so, and the said article, without any excess or defect of action\(^2\) [on ‘Amr’s part], perishes, is ‘Amr liable to any penalty, or not?”

A.—“Provided the details as set forth in writing correspond with the facts, there will be no penalty.”

This sample of Shi‘a jurisprudence must suffice, but such as desire a further illustration of the matters which pre-occupy the minds of these jurisconsults and doctors may with profit read the narrative of the trial of the Báb at Tabrīz for heresy about A.D. 1848, of which an account,

---

1 ‘Amr and Zayd in Muslim jurisprudence correspond to “John Doe” and “Richard Roe” of English law-books; in grammar to Balbus and Caius; and in common speech to “Tom, Dick, and Harry.”

2 I.e. without any fault of commission or omission on his part.
THE POPULAR SHÍ'A CREED

based on the principal Persian narratives, will be found in vol. ii of my Traveller's Narrative, pp. 277–90.

We turn now to the more interesting subject of Shi'a theology, which has hitherto hardly attracted the attention it deserves from European Orientalists, and can only receive brief and inadequate treatment here. It must suffice to sketch in outline the current popular creed, without considering its evolution from early times, and to mention a few of the chief doctrinal works written in Persian during or since the Ṣafawí period. For the purpose of this outline, however, I choose not one of the larger, more authoritative and more famous books like the Ḥaqqu'l-Yaqūn ("Certain Truth") of Mullá Muḥammad Bāqir-i-Majlīsī, but a little manual entitled 'Aqīdah-Shí'ā ("Beliefs of the Shi'a") composed during the reign of Muḥammad Sháh Qájár (before the middle of the nineteenth century of our era) by a certain 'Alí Asghar ibn 'Alí Akbar, and lithographed in Persia without indication of place or date. This work, comprising 438 (unnumbered) pages, consists of an Introduction (Muqaddama), five sections called Mishkát, and a Conclusion (Khátima). The contents are briefly as follows:

Introduction (Muqaddama).

Sets forth that God has not created mankind in vain, but that they should worship and serve Him, and reap the recompense of their actions in the next world. He has sent, to make known to them His Will and Law, numerous prophets, of whom Muḥammad is the last and greatest. He left behind him the Scripture (the Qur'ān) and his holy descendants and representatives for the continued guidance of mankind. In these days of the Greater Occultation (Ḡhaybat-i-Kūbrā)¹ wherein we live, the true faith is deduced

¹ This began in 260/873–4, when the Twelfth and last Imám disappeared, to return in "the Last Time."
from the Qur’ān and the sayings and traditions of the Holy Imāms. According to these, three things are required of us: (1) heartfelt belief; (2) oral confession; (3) certain prescribed acts. These are ascertained either by personal investigation and “endeavour” (ijtihād), or by adopting the opinions of such investigator (mujtahid) by conformity to his authority (taqlīd). The author concludes by enumerating a number of heresies to be avoided, such as Pantheism (wahdatu’l-wujūd); Apotheosis and Incarnation (ittihād wa ḥulūl); Determinism or Fatalism (jabr); Antinomianism (suqūt-i-‘ibādāt) consequent on self-mortification and discipline (riyāḍāt); Communism (ibāḥat); Deification and adoration of the Imāms; denial of the Resurrection of the body, or of any future life; sanction of the use of musical instruments, and of narcotic or intoxicating substances; Metempsychosis (tanāsukh); Anthropomorphism (tashbīḥ), and the like.

Mishkāt I (pp. 7–28), in four sections (Miṣbāḥ).

What is to be believed concerning the Essence and Attributes of God.

Belief in the Unity of God (tawḥīd) is fourfold, namely:

Section i. Unity of the Divine Essence (Tawḥīd-i-Dhāt).

God is One, without partner, peer or equal; Holy; Perfect; Free from defect; not composite, or capable of being so conceived, imagined, or apprehended; neither Body, nor Light, nor Substance, nor Accident; not located, nor born, nor producing offspring; Invisible both in this world and the next

1 Communism was preached in Persia in Sāsānian times (sixth Christian century) by Mazdak. From his time until that of the Bábí this accusation has been brought against many heterodox sects.

2 Ḥáfīz has accordingly been blamed by one of his critics for the verse:
Prophets, Imáms and Saints, but known to us only by His acts and the signs of His Power; neither eating, nor drinking, nor clothing Himself; exempt from anger, vexation, pain, joy, height, depth, change, progression, or regression; Eternal and absolutely independent of all else. His Attributes are identical with His Essence, not added to or superimposed on His Essence. These Attributes are for the most part negative, and are called Šifát-i-Salbiyya or "Privative Attributes."

Here again the author digresses to denounce various heresies of the Šúfís, especially the idea that beautiful persons are especially the Mirrors or Tabernacles of God, and the doctrine of Pantheism (Wahdatu'l-Wujúd), according to which the relation of Phenomena to Absolute Being is similar to that between the Waves and the Sea, or to sunlight passing through windows of variously coloured glass.

Section ii. Unity of the Divine Attributes (Tawhíd-i-Šiftí). These Attributes are of several kinds, namely

(1) "Essential Attributes" (Šifát-i-Dhátí), to wit, Life, Power, with its derivative Speech, and Knowledge, with its derivatives Will and Comprehension. To these six some theologians add Eternity and Truth, but these, like Speech, Will and Comprehension, are Secondary Attributes, while Life, Power and Knowledge are primary. (2) The "Privative" or "Negative Attributes" (Šifát-i-Salbiyya), also called the "Attributes of Glory" (Jaldî) as opposed to "Perfection" (Kamál) and

اين نحن على الرابط كهبح ظاهر سيروس دوست

"This borrowed spirit which the Friend hath entrusted to Háfir, one day I shall see His Face and surrender it to Him."

1 Or "Positive" (Thubútiyya), or Šifát-i-Kamál, "Attributes of Perfection."
"Beauty" (Jamāl), are seven qualities from which God is exempt, namely, Compositeness, Corporeality, Visibility, Locality, Association or Partnership, Unreality, and Need. (3) "Effective Attributes" (Ṣifāt-i-Fāli), or "Attributes of Beauty" (Ṣifāt-i-Jamāl), are acts which may be ascribed or not ascribed to God at different times and in different circumstances, like "the Provider" (Rāsiq), "the Creator" (Khāliq), "the Merciful, the Compassionate" (Rahmān, Rahīm), "the Bounteous" (Jawād), and so forth. In this section reference is made to other views entertained by the Ash'arīs, the Mu'tazila, the Kirāmīs, al-Balkhī, an-Najjār, Ḥasan of Baṣra, etc.

Section iii. Creative Unity of God (Tawḥīd-i-Khalqī). God alone can create, and it is heresy to believe with the Zoroastrians that God creates only what is good, and the Devil what is evil. But God can and does use means to this end, and can delegate His creative powers to Angels or other agents. "The good or evil manifested through God's plenipotentiary servants¹ is not God's act but their act, wherefore they are the recipients of reward or punishment, by reason of the option which they enjoy, so that they themselves, by their own

¹ This passage is so important in connection with the doctrine of Free Will and Predestination that I give it in the original:

وأمّا خير وشرّ از بندگان مختار ظاهر میشود گذا خدا نیست بلکه گذا بندهد است لیدا مورد ثواب و عقاب میشوند بااختیاریکه دارند و بخواهی خود بخود میکنند آن‌هازآ که خداوند امر و نبی نموده است گرچه ایشان هر بقدرت و قوّتی که ندارند بایشان عطا فرموده است میکنند لکن چون اختیاری آر هر بایشان داد پس ثواب و عقاب‌ها هر قرار داد و امّا خدا خالق خیر و شرّ است و بنده فاعل و مکننده اوست، باری چون [این] رساله بهجة عوضامّاست محلّ خلامر با [ما؟] اینجا نیست.
volition, do those things which God hath commanded or forbidden. For although they act by virtue of a power and strength which they do not in themselves possess, but which God hath conferred upon them, yet, since He hath given them this option, He hath also assigned to them rewards and punishments. Yet God is the Creator of Good and Evil, while His servant is but the agent and doer thereof. Since, however, this treatise is designed for the common people, it would be out of place for us to discuss this matter [more fully] here.

The author next proceeds to refute certain opinions entertained by the extreme Shī'ā (Ghulāt), such as that 'Alī can create, with or without God's permission; or that he is the "Assigner of Daily Bread" (Qāsimūl-Arzāq); or that God obtained his permission to create the universe; or that he put his hand under his prayer-mat and brought forth in it the heavens and the earth. It may, however, be believed, as is implied in sundry traditions, that on the Day of Judgement God will leave "the Reckoning" with 'Alī or other of the Imāms, and will accept their intercession, and the like. Hence 'Alī is entitled "the Face of God" (Wajhu'llāh), "the Hand of God" (Yadu'llāh), "the Gate of God" (Bābu'llāh), and the like.

It is also necessary to believe in al-Biḍā, or God's sovereign Will, that He does what He pleases; and that He can create what He pleases "without material or period" (bīlā madīdahu wa mu'dda), that is, from nothing in the twinkling of an eye.

Section iv. Unity of Worship (Tawḥīd-i-'Ibadat). Worship is the exclusive prerogative of God, and of the Divine Essence, not of the Attributes. To worship an Attribute or Name (such as "the Word of God") apart from the Essence is unbelief, while to worship an Attribute in conjunction with the Essence is polytheism. This is of two sorts, patent and latent. The
former includes the external worship of idols, trees, stars, the sun and moon, fire and human beings; or of symbols, such as crucifixes or pictures of holy persons; the latter includes excessive devotion to wife or child, or worldly wealth, or ambition, or hypocritical ostentation of piety. The visitation of the Ka‘ba at Mecca and the Tombs of the Holy Imáms is, however, permitted; as also bowing down before kings or holy and learned men, provided there be not actual prostration (sujūd), and that no worship be intended.

Mishkát II (pp. 28–31).

What is to be believed concerning the Justice of God.

"It is necessary to believe that God is just, not a tyrant, and that at no time hath He acted, or doth He or will He act, unjustly towards any one. This is a fundamental article of our Faith, and whosoever holds the contrary is eternally damned." Thus begins this section, of which the most interesting portion again deals with the question of Free Will and Predestination. "It is also necessary to believe that God neither compels His creatures to act in a given way (jabr, 'compulsion'), nor allows them unrestricted choice (tafwiḍ), but pursues a course intermediate between these two: that is to say that He has created them equally capable of both good and evil, so that they neither act under such compulsion that their deeds are in reality God's deeds, nor can they do what they do by their own strength and power without God's assistance. The former belief is Determinism or Fatalism (jahr) and the latter Free Will (tafwiḍ). The correct view is that, whatever they do, they do voluntarily, not by compulsion and constraint, although God furnishes them with the power, means, and instruments, and has indicated to them the paths of good and evil, so that whoever elects to do good becomes deserving of reward, while he who elects to do evil becomes deserving of punishment."
The author illustrates this by the example of a carpenter’s apprentice, who, having been taught his craft and furnished with the necessary tools, is bidden by his master to make a window of a certain size and description. If instead of this he makes a door, he cannot excuse himself by pleading that his master taught him the craft and gave him the tools which enabled him to make the door. Such is the case of man if he misuses the powers and limbs which God hath given him. Here follows the well-known story of the sceptic whose three questions were answered by a darwish who struck him on the head with a clod, but here Abú Ḥanifa and Buhlúl (the “wise fool”) take the parts of the sceptic and the darwish respectively.

The author’s theory that God created the hearts of believers, unbelievers, and waverers each from a different clay, “Knowing before He created them that the believer by reason of his belief would be good, and the unbeliever by reason of his unbelief bad, and so creating each of the appropriate substance, so that there might be no question of compulsion” (jabr), is not very convincing.

Mishkát III (pp. 32–45).

On the Prophetic Function, general and special.

Section i. The general Prophetic Function (Nubuwwat-ī-‘āmma). The number of the true prophets antecedent to Muḥammad, “the Seal of the Prophets and the last of them,” is variously stated as from 140 to 124,000. It is necessary to believe that these, whatever their actual number, were true and immaculate (maṣūm), that is, that during the whole of their lives they were guilty of no sin, major or minor; that they all enunciated the same essential truths; and that the revela-

1 It is included in the extracts at the end of Forbes’s Persian Grammar, No. 67, pp. 57–57.
tions which they received were essentially identical, though in detail the later abrogate the earlier, to wit, the Qur'an the Gospel, and the Gospel the Pentateuch (Taurat). These three, together with the Psalms of David (Zubur) and the Books of Abraham (Suhuf), are the principal Scriptures, but the total number of revealed books is estimated by some as 104 and by others as 124. Of the Prophets sent to all mankind (mursal) four (Adam, Seth, Enoch or Idris and Noah) were Syrians; five (Húd, Sálih, Shu'ayb, Ishmael and Muḥammad) were Arabs, and the remainder of the Children of Israel. The five great Prophets called, Ulū'í-Azm are Noah, Abraham, Moses, Jesus and Muhammad.

Section ii. The Special Prophetic Function [of Muḥammad] (Nubuwat-i-Khāṣṣa). It is necessary to believe that Muḥammad was the last of all the Prophets, and that anyone after him who claims to be a prophet is an unbeliever and should be killed by the Muslims. Also that in every virtue and excellence he surpasses all other beings; that his "Light" (Nūr-i-Muḥammad) was created thousands of years before all other creatures; that he was sent not only to all mankind but to the Jinns; and that his doctrine and law abrogate all preceding ones.

Section iii. What is to be believed touching the Qur'an. It is the last and greatest of revealed Scriptures, abrogating all others, and is the miracle of Muḥammad, though not the product of his mind; it is temporal (hadith), not eternal (qadim); was revealed in the pure Arabic language (as were all the Scriptures, though each prophet received his revelation in the language of his people), and was sent down on the Laylatul-Qadr ("Night of Worth") in its entirety from the Preserved Tablet (Lawḥ-i-Mahfūz), but was revealed by Gabriel in instalments, as occasion arose, over a period of 23 years.
Neither men nor Jinn, though all should combine, can produce the like of the Qur’an, or even one chapter or verse of it. It contains all truth and all knowledge, and the full interpretation of it is known only to God, the Prophet, and the Imáms, and those “firmly established in Knowledge” to whom they have imparted it. The original Qur’an is in the keeping of the Hidden Imám, and has undergone no change or corruption.

Section iv. The Prophet’s Attributes. He was “illiterate” (ummi), having never studied or received instruction from men or Jinn; he cast no shadow; a cloud used to overshadow his head; he could see behind his back as well as before his face; he was luminous to such a degree that in his presence on the darkest night his wives could find a lost needle without the aid of lamp or candle. His birth was heralded and accompanied by miracles, enumerated in detail. He was immaculate (ma’sum), and the most excellent of all beings. Gabriel was really his servant, and ‘Azrá’il (the Angel of Death) could not approach him to receive his soul without his permission. He was neither a poet (sháír), nor a magician (sáhir), nor a liar (kadháb), nor a madman (dávána), and to assert any of these things is blasphemy. He had five souls or spirits, of which the first three (called Ruh-i-mudraj, Ruh-gwarswat, and Ruh-i-shahwat) are common to all men; the fourth, Ruh-i-imán, “the Spirit of Faith,” is peculiar to true believers; while the last, “the Holy Spirit” (Ruhul-Quds), belongs to the Prophet alone, and his successors, the Holy Imáms.

Section v. The Prophet’s Miracles. These included the Cleaving of the Moon (shagqul-qamar); knowledge of the Past, the Future, and the Unseen; raising the dead; knowledge of 72 out of the 73 Names of God, whereof not more than twenty were known to any previous Prophet, and the like. He saw
Paradise and Hell with his own eyes, and ascended into Heaven in his material body, clad in his own clothes, and wearing his sandals, which he would have put off on approaching God’s Throne, but was forbidden by God to do so.

Section vi. The Prophet’s Ascension (Mi’rāj). He ascended in his material body to the Station of “Two bow-shots or less,” a point nearer to God than that attained by Enoch or Jesus or any angel or archangel. To assert that this Ascension was allegorical, or within himself, or spiritual and esoteric, is heresy.

Section vii. Sundry other beliefs concerning the Prophet. He was “a mortal man to whom revelations were made” in various ways mediate and immediate. He combined in himself the functions of Apostle (Rasūl), Prophet (Nabī), Imām, and Muḥaddith, by which is here meant one who sees and holds converse with the Angels. His intercession for sinners will be accepted in the Day of Resurrection; and God has bestowed on him, within certain limits, authority to command and prohibit, and to add to the obligations imposed by God in such matters as prayer and fasting. He explicitly appointed his cousin and son-in-law ‘Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib to succeed him; but to assert that Gabriel took the Revelation from a well in a plain, and, receiving permission from God to see who was the author, looked into the well and saw that it was ‘Alī; or that Gabriel mistook Muhammad for ‘Alī and brought the Revelation to him by mistake, are blasphemous heresies.

1 Qur’ān, liii, 9.
2 Ibid., xviii, 110.
THE TWELVE IMÁMS

Mishkát IV (pp. 45–71).

On the Imámate.

Section i. Enumeration of the Twelve Imáms of the Ithnà-‘ashariyya or “Sect of the Twelve,” and refutation of the Sunnís, who recognize Abú Bakr, ‘Umar and ‘Uthmán as the Khulafá, or successors and vice-gerents of the Prophet; of the Kaysáníyya, who accept Muhammad ibnu’l-Hanafiyya, a son of ‘Alí by another wife than Fáṭima, as Imám; of the Zaydiyya, who accept Zayd ibn Ḥasan; of the Isma‘íliyya, who accept Isma‘íl in place of his brother Músá al-Kázím; of the Aftahíyya, who accept ‘Abdu’lláh al-Aftah, another son of Ja‘far aš-Šádiq the sixth Imám, and so forth. The Kaysánís, Zaydís, Isma‘ílí, Ta‘úsí, Aftahí and Wáqqí are all belong to the Shi‘a, but not to the “Sect of the Twelve,” and they will all be tormented in Hell for their error, though they are Muslims, as are even the Sunnís, who are therefore pure, wherefore, according to the prevailing view, it is not lawful to interfere with their lives, wives or property, though some Shi‘a doctors hold the contrary view.

Section ii. Knowledge of the Prophet and Imáms. This section is entirely historical or quasi-historical, giving the dates of the births, deaths, and chief events in the lives of Muḥammad and the Twelve Imáms.

The Prophet Muḥammad was born on Friday 17th (or 12th) of Rabí‘ i in the “Year of the Elephant,” in the year 1021 of Alexander, and in the Seventh year of the reign of Anúsharwán “the Just.” He lived 63 years, of which 53 were spent at Mecca and ten at al-Madína, and his “Mission” began when he was forty years old. He had nine (or 12, or 15) wives and two concubines; four sons, Qásim, Táhir and Ṭayyib by Khádija, and Ibráhím by Mary the Copt; and three
daughters, Fátima (who married ‘Alí), and Zaynab and Ruqayya, who were married to ‘Uthmán. He died (poisoned by a Jewess of Khaybar, as asserted) on Monday the 27th or 28th of Safar, and was buried at al-Madīna.

‘Alí ibn Abí Ṭálīb was the immediate legitimate successor of the Prophet and the First Imám, though not formally recognized as Khalífah until after the deaths of Abú Bakr, ‘Umar and ‘Uthmán (whom the Shi‘a regard as usurpers). He waged three great wars, with the Qásīfín (“wrong-doers”), i.e. Mu‘áwiya the Umayyad and his partisans; the Nákithín (“troth-breakers”), i.e. ‘Á’isha, Ṭalha and Zubayr; and the Máriqín (“rebels”), i.e. the Khárijites. He was assassinated by Ibn Muljam on Ramaḍán 21 at the age of sixty-three. He married twelve wives after the death of Fátima and had seventeen sons and nineteen daughters. His father Abú Ṭálīb was inwardly a believer, though he made no outward profession of Islám. ‘Alí is supposed to have been the twelfth of the Awwsiyā (executors, trustees, or vicegerents) of Jesus Christ.

Fátima was the daughter of the Prophet by Khadijá, and the wife of ‘Alí, to whom she bore three sons (al-Ḥasan, al-Ḥusayn and Muḥassin), and two daughters (Zaynab the elder and Umm Kulthúm). She died, aged about eighteen, on the 3rd of Jumádá ii, A.H. 11 (26 August, 632).

Ḥasan ibn ‘Alí, the Second Imám, was born in Sha‘bán or Ramaḍán, A.H. 3 (January or March, 625), resigned the position of Khalífah to Mu‘áwiya, to safeguard himself and his followers, after he had held it for ten years and a half, and died of poison administered to him by Ja‘da the daughter of al-Ash‘ath ibn Nafís, known as Asmá, at the instigation of Mu‘áwiya, nine years and a half later. He is said to have had 60 wives, besides concubines, but others say 300 or even 600,
of whom he divorced so many that he earned the nick-name of al-Mīṭlāq ("the great divorcer"); and to have had fifteen sons and two daughters, though here again there is much difference of opinion. The best known of his numerous titles is al-Mujiābā.

Ḥusayn ibn ʿAlī, the Third Imām, was born only six months (sic) after his brother Ḥasan; had five wives besides concubines; six sons, ʿAlī Akbar, who succeeded him as Imām, ʿAlī Awṣat, ʿAlī Asghar, Muḥammad, Jaʿfar and ʿAbduʾllāh; and three daughters, Fāṭimatuʾl-Kubrā, Sakina and Fāṭimatuʾṣ-Ṣughrā. Account of his death at Karbalā on Muḥarram 10, A.H. 61 (October 10, 680) with 72 of his kinsmen and partisans at the age of 56, 57 or 58. Of his titles the best known is "the Chief of Martyrs" (Sayyiduʾsh-Shuḥaddā).

ʿAlī ibn Ḥusayn, the Fourth Imām, commonly known as ZaynuluʾʾAbidīn and Sayyid-i-Sajjad. His mother was the daughter of Yazdigird, the last Sāsānian King of Persia. Her name was Shahrbānū, or, according to others, Ghazāla or Salāma. He was born in 36/656-7 or 38/658-9. He had one wife, his cousin Umm ʿAbdiʾllāh, daughter of al-Ḥasan, besides concubines. He had sixteen children (seven or twelve sons, and nine or four daughters). One of his sons, Zayd, was killed by the Umayyad Caliph Hishām ibn ʿAbduʾl-Malik, who is also said to have poisoned him in 94/712 when he was fifty-seven years of age.

Muḥammad Bāqir, the Fifth Imām, was born in A.H. 57 or 58 (A.D. 676-8), and is said to have been poisoned by the Umayyads in 104/722 or 107/726-7. [From this point onwards there are so many discrepancies and conflicting statements that a more rigorous abridgment seems desirable. Thus the age of this Imām is given as 57 or 58, or even 78, all of which,
especially the last, are absolutely incompatible with the dates given for his birth and death.]

Ja'far as-Šádiq, the Sixth Imám, born 80/699–700, poisoned by the ‘Abbásid Caliph al-Mansúr in 148/765–6.

He took advantage of the internecine strife between the Umayyads and ‘Abbásids to carry on an active propaganda for the Shí'a doctrine, which is therefore often called after him “Ja'farí.”

Músá al-Kázim, the Seventh Imám, born 129/746–7, poisoned by Hárúnu'r-Rashíd in 180/796–7.

‘Ali ar-Ri'dá, the Eighth Imám, poisoned by al-Ma'mún in 203/818–9, and buried at Mashhad.

Muḥammad Taqí, the Ninth Imám, born 195/810–11, poisoned by his wife at the instigation of the Caliph al-Mu'tasim in 220/835.

‘Ali Naqí, the Tenth Imám, born in 212/827–8, poisoned in 245/868 at the instigation of the Caliph al-Mu’tazz.


The Imám Mahdí, also called Qá'imú Ali Muḥammad, Ḥujjatu'lláh and Baqiyyatulláh, the Twelfth and last Imám, born in 255/869 by Narjis Khátún to Ḥasan al-‘Askarí, disappeared in 260/873–4, is still living and will return “in the last Days” to establish the Shí'a faith and “fill the earth with justice after it has been filled with iniquity.”

Section iii. Attributes of the Imáms. It is necessary to believe that the Imáms were created from one pre-existing Light; that all blessings and all knowledge of God come through them; that through them the universe lives and moves and has its being; and that they are in every respect the most excellent of beings after the Prophet Muḥammad, and superior to all other Prophets and to the Angels, though subject to all
human needs and functions. They are also immaculate (maṣām), innocent of any sin, small or great, co-equal, endowed with every virtue, knowledge and power. Their birth was not as that of ordinary mortals, and, like the Prophet, they were born circumcised. After many further amplifications of the Imāms’ perfections, the author proceeds to warn his readers against certain opinions of the Ghulāt, or most extreme Shi’a, who would put them above the Prophet and even deify them.

Mishkāt V¹ (pp. 71–85).

Beliefs connected with Death, Judgement and the Hereafter.

Section I. Death. The Angels, the Prophet and the Imāms are present at every death-bed, whether of a believer or an unbeliever. When the spirit leaves the body, it attaches itself to a subtle invisible body (qālib-i-mithāl-i-latīf) which is a simulacrum of the material body in the intermediate world or “World of the Barrier” (ʿĀlam-i-Barzakh). To believe, as do some of the common people, that these disembodied spirits enter the crops of green birds or lamps attached to the Throne of God (ʿArsh) is an error. This disembodied spirit watches the body it has quitted and the preparations for its burial, urging haste if it be a believing spirit, and delay if unbelieving, but none hears or heeds its appeal. It also sees its place in Heaven or Hell, as the case may be. A believer’s death is not always easy, nor an unbeliever’s hard. The Prophet’s description of the Angel of Death, whom he saw during his Night Ascent to Heaven.

¹ Like so many Persian books, the actual divisions of this book do not correspond with the Table of Contents, which indicates five main divisions, each called Mishkāt, while only four such headings actually occur in the text. This section is described as Section (Mīnah) iv of Mishkāt IV, but it introduces a quite new topic and should, I am convinced, be called, as I have called it, Mishkāt V.
Section ii. The Questioning of the Tomb. When the body has been buried and the mourners have dispersed, the spirit returns to the body to undergo the Questioning of the Tomb (Su'di-i-qabr) at the hands of the Angels Munkir and Nakir, whose terrible aspect is described. If the deceased is a believer and gives satisfactory answers to their questions on his beliefs, they leave him in peace, saying, "Sleep as the bride sleeps in her bridal chamber," and they enlarge his Tomb as far as the eye can see, and open from it a door into Paradise, so that the air of Paradise enters it and gladdens the occupant. But if he is an unbeliever, they revile him and beat him with their clubs, and fill the tomb with fire; and he cries out in agony, so that if men and Jinn could hear, they would die of terror. But the animals hear, and that is why a sheep grazing or a bird gathering grain will suddenly stop and shiver and listen intently. Those of the Shi'a who are buried at Karbalá are said to be exempt from this Questioning, and some believe that the whole plain of Karbalá, rid of all impurities, including the bodies of unbelievers and hypocrites, will be bodily transferred to Paradise. The good deeds and kindnesses of the dead may take the form of a beautiful companion who will bear them company in the tomb and dispel their loneliness.

Section iii. The Squeezing of the Tomb. It is not certain whether all are subject to this, or only the unbelievers. This squeezing is not confined to those who are buried in the ground, for those who are hanged, drowned or eaten by wild beasts are equally subject to it. After the Questioning and the Squeezing, the spirit again leaves the material body and reunites with the subtle invisible body. Opinions differ as to whether this last always existed within the material body, or apart from

---

1 This affords an interesting parallel to the Zoroastrian belief set forth in the Arda Viráš náma.
it in the “World of Similitudes,” or is specially created for each spirit at the moment of dissolution.

Section iv. Concerning the Intermediate World (‘Alam-i-Barzakh). Barzakh means something intermediate between two other things, in this case a state or world between this life and the next, more subtle than the former and more gross than the latter. Some identify it with the World of Similitudes (‘Alam-i-Mithál), others believe it to exist in this world, but in an Eighth Clime outside the Seven Climes, called Ard-i-Huwargilyá. The Terrestrial Paradise is in the Wádi’s-Salám in the western part of this region, and the Terrestrial Hell in the Wádi Barahún, in the eastern part. In these places respectively the souls of the Blessed and the Lost congregate and experience pleasure or pain, and when a new spirit arrives they let it rest for a while to recover from the “Questioning” and the “Squeezing,” and then interrogate it as to the friends who survived them on earth, whether they be still living or dead.

Section v. The departed spirits visit their former homes on earth to watch their families and friends, some daily, some weekly, some monthly, some yearly, some only once in several years. Some say they come in the form of green birds and perch on the roof or walls of the house and talk, but the living do not notice or attend to them because of their preoccupation with the things of this world. The spirits of the Blessed see only the

1 This is headed Miṣbāḥ v (of Mishkát IV), and the numbering of the sections begins again, but it appears to me really to constitute Section iv of Mishkát V.

2 Cf. the Jism-i-Huwargilyá of the Shaykhfs, mentioned in my Traveller’s Narrative, vol. ii, p. 236.

3 See Qazwini’s Athárul-Bilád, p. 25; also Halévy in the Journal Asiatique for Oct.-Dec. 1883, pp. 442-54; and Yáqút’s Mutjamul-Buldán, vol. i, p. 598.

4 Entitled Section ii of Miṣbāḥ v (of Mishkát IV).
good things which befall, or are wrought by, their families and friends. Some say that they come on a particular day, on Monday at noon, or on Thursday, or on Friday. If their friends remember them, offering good works, prayers or fasting as a present to them, they are pleased; the happiness of the Blessed is increased, and the torments of the Lost alleviated thereby. "Therefore, my dear friend," says the author, "you must not forget the departed in this world, but must strive, so far as in you lies, to send presents to them." The Earthly Paradise (Bihisht-i-Dunya) is a place of rest and peace, there is no sorrow or weeping, nor any obligation to pray or fast.

Section vi. On the spirits of the wicked. These are also permitted from time to time to visit their homes, but they see only the evil done by their friends, and strive to warn them, but cannot, and return to the Earthly Hell more miserable than before. Discussion as to the state after death of the children of believers and unbelievers, the ignorant and feeble-minded, and the insane; and concerning the Recording Angels. According to some, the male children of believers are, after their death, committed to the care of Abraham, and the female children to that of the Virgin Mary.

Conclusion (Khátima)² (pp. 85–132).

Beliefs connected with the Return of the Twelfth Imam.

Section i. On his Occultation (Ghaybat). Three Occultations are distinguished, entitled "Lesser," "Greater" and "Least." The "Lesser Occultation" (Ghaybat-i-Sughrá) began on the 8th of Rabí‘ i, 260 (Jan. 1, 874), lasted 69 years, and ended with

1 Entitled Section iii etc., as in the preceding footnote.

2 This, I believe, is how the title should stand, but it is actually described as Misbah vi of Mishkát IV. See p. 395, n. 1, supra.
the death of the last of the four wakils who maintained communication between the Hidden Imám and his followers in 329/940-1. Then began the “Greater Occultation” (Ghaybat-i-Kubrâ), wherein no one has direct access to the “Hidden Imám,” and wherein we are now living. The “Least Occultation” (Ghaybat-i-Aşghar) will last only from noon on the Friday succeeding his “Return” (Raj‘at), when he will behead the preacher (Khatîb) at Mecca and forthwith disappear again, until the morning of the next day (Saturday). The time of the Advent or “Return” of the Imám is known to God alone, but it will be heralded by numerous signs, of which forty-eight or more are enumerated by our author, and of which the most celebrated are the coming of the wicked and hideous Sufyání, whose army the earth will finally swallow up; the appearance of a figure in the sun; the multiplication of misleading divines and lawyers and of poets; the abounding of tyranny and oppression; the appearance of Antichrist (Dajjâl) riding on his Ass; the assembling of 313 chosen supporters of the Imám in Tâliqán of Khurasân, etc. After a “reign of the Saints” lasting seventy years, the Imám will die, poisoned by a woman named Malîha, and the Imám Husayn will return to earth to read the Burial Service over him. This is the beginning of what is called the “Lesser Resurrection” (Qiyâmat-i-Şughrâ), when the

1 I.e. Agents or Representatives, also called “Gates” (Báb, pl. Abwâb). The avoidance of this last title by the author is probably intentional, for he wrote in 1263/1847, just when Mîrzá ‘Alí Muhâammad’s claim to be the Báb was creating so great a stir in Persia. See my Traveller’s Narrative, ii, pp. 226–34 and 296–8.

2 Many particulars concerning the “Occultations,” the “Gates,” and the claims to communicate with the Hidden Imám advanced by the Shaykhís and Bábis, denounced as heretics by our author, are given in the notes (especially D, E and O) at the end of vol. ii of my Traveller’s Narrative, to which the reader is referred.
Prophet and all the Imáms, as well as their chief antagonists, shall return to earth for a while, and fight their battles over again, but with a different result, since the unbelievers shall be uniformly defeated. In this first temporary Resurrection only those who are purely believers or unbelievers (Múmin-i-Khális or Káfir-i-Khális) will come to life. Then they will again disappear from the face of the earth, and, after forty days’ anarchy and confusion, the tribes of Gog and Magog (Vájúj u Májúj) will burst through the Wall (Sadd) which keeps them back, and will overrun the earth, and eat up all the grass and herbs, and drink up the rivers.

The “Greater Resurrection” (Qiyámat-i-Kubrâ), when all the dead shall be raised to life in the same bodies they had while on earth, re-created by God’s Power as a broken brick can be re-made from its original materials, will be inaugurated by the blast of Isráfîl’s trumpet, which shall draw into itself all the spirits of the quick and the dead, so that no living thing shall remain on earth save the “Fourteen Immaculate Ones” (Chahárdah Ma’súm)\(^1\). Then, when their bodies have been re-created, Isráfîl will again blow his trumpet, and the spirits will emerge from it like a swarm of bees, and fly each one to its own body. All animals will also be raised to life to undergo the Reckoning and be judged for their acts of violence towards one another. Then the Balance (Mídání) will be set up for the weighing of the good and bad acts of each soul, and the scroll of each man’s deeds, written down by the Recording Angels Sá’iq and Shahíd, will be placed in his hand.

The Seven Hells (Jihannam, Safir, Sagar, Jahâm, Lazzá, Hutama and Hâwiya) are next enumerated, whereof the first is for Muslims who died in sin without repenting, and who will be released when adequately punished; the second for the Jews;

\(^{1}\) *I.e.* the Prophet, his daughter Fátima, and the Twelve Imáms.
the third for the Christians; the fourth for the Sabaeans; the fifth for the Magians; the sixth for the idolatrous Arabs; and the seventh for the hypocrites. Unbelievers will remain in Hell for ever, but some, on account of their virtues, will remain there without suffering torment, as, for example, Khusraw Anusharwán on account of his justice, and Hátim of Tayy on account of his generosity.

Next follows a description of the Bridge of Širāt, "finer than a hair, sharper than a sword, and hotter than fire," which spans Hell, and over which everyone must pass, even the Prophets and Imáms and Saints, to reach Paradise. A detailed description of a very material Paradise succeeds, which in turn is followed by an account of the Purgatory or intermediate state called al-Árāf. This is said to be a beautiful meadow or high ground situated on the Bridge of Širāt, and peopled by the spirits of the feeble-minded, illegitimate children, and those who are neither good enough for Heaven nor bad enough for Hell. By the intercession of the Prophet or the Imáms some of these will be subsequently admitted to Heaven. Other heavenly delights described, such as the Water of Kaswahr, the "Lote-tree of the Limit" (Sidratul-Muntahā, and the Tūdā-tree. When every soul has been assigned its place in Heaven, Hell or al-Árāf, Death will be led forth in the form of a black sheep and slain, to show that henceforth there is neither fear nor hope of death.

Conclusion (Khátima)¹ (pp. 132–138).

[Section ii.] On the meaning of Unbelief (Kufr) and Belief (Imán). Five meanings of Kufr in the Qur'ān are distinguished, and three chief kinds in ordinary life, namely

¹ This is so headed, but see pp. 381 and 398 supra. This section might be called "Epilogue."

B. P. L.
spiritual (galbī), verbal (gawli), and actual (fīla). Three kinds of Imān are also distinguished, and Imān is distinguished from Islām. Sunnis and Shi'a not of the “Sect of the Twelve” are believers (mīmin), but not Muslims; they are not unclean, but will remain for ever in Hell-fire. The apostate (muttaadd) from Islām is deserving of death, nor is his repentance accepted in this world, though, according to some theologians, it may be accepted in the next. But from the convert to Islām who reverts to his original faith repentance may be accepted; and a woman who apostasizes should not be killed, but imprisoned and beaten until she repents or dies in prison. The book ends with a description of five kinds of Faith and six kinds of Repentance.

Such in outline is the Shi'a creed of contemporary Persia in its crudest and most popular form. It would be interesting to trace the evolution of that creed from the earliest times of Islām, to compare (so far as the available materials allow) the historical with the legendary Imāms, and to contrast in detail the beliefs, both doctrinal and eschatological, of the Shi'a and the Sunnis. This, however, transcends the scope of this book, even had the preliminary work indispensable to such a study been adequately done. Even amongst the orthodox and formal (qishrt) mujtahids and mullās these doctrines must often have been held in a form less crude and childish than that outlined above, though they may have deemed it wiser to leave the popular beliefs undisturbed, and to discourage speculations which might become dangerous amongst a people only too prone to scepticism and heresy. Taking only the broad divisions of theological and philosophical thought in Persia, we may distinguish in each field three main types; amongst the theologians the Akhbārs, the Usūlis (or Mujtahids), and the Shaykhis; amongst the philosophers the Mutakallimūn or School-men,
the *Falásifa* or *Hukamá* (Philosophers pure and simple), and the philosophical *Súfís*. Of all these Gobineau's account is still the most clear, lively and concise which I have met with in any European language, though it cannot be certainly affirmed that its accuracy is equal to its clarity. Thus he credits the Akhbáris, generally regarded as the straitest sect of the Shi'a, with a certain latitudinarianism to which they can hardly lay claim; and describes the Shaykhís as "not altogether rejecting the idea of the Resurrection of the Body," when it was precisely their doctrine of the "subtle body" (or *Jism-i-ḥuwārqiya*) which especially laid them under suspicion of heresy. The doctrines of the Shaykhís, moreover, definitely prepared the way for the still more heretical doctrines of the Bábís, who were outside the pale of Islam while the Shaykhís were just within it and counted many influential followers in high places. Of the Philosophers and Súfís more will be said in another chapter, but as to the theologians we shall do well to bear in mind Gobineau's dictum: "Il ne faut pas perdre de vue que si l'on veut, approximativement, classer les trois opinions ainsi que je le fais, il est nécessaire pourtant d'ajouter qu'il est rare que, dans le cours de sa vie, un Persan n'ait point passé de l'une à l'autre et ne les ait point toutes les trois professées." Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlísí, one of the greatest, most powerful and most fanatical mujtahids of the Ẓafawi period, found it necessary to apologize for the tolerant and even sympathetic attitude assumed by his father Mullá Muḥammad Taqí-i-Majlísí, not less distinguished than himself as a theologian, towards


2 See my *Traveller's Narrative*, vol. ii, p. 236.

the Šūfīs. "Let none think so ill of my father," he says, "as to imagine that he was of the Šūfīs. Nay, it was not so, for I was intimately associated with my father in private and in public, and was thoroughly conversant with his beliefs. My father thought ill of the Šūfīs, but at the beginning of his career, when they were extremely powerful and active, my father entered their ranks, so that by this means he might repel, remove, eradicate and extirpate the roots of this foul and hellish growth (in Shajara-i-Khabitha-i-Zaqqumiyya). But when he had extinguished the flames of their infamy, then he made known his inner feelings, for he was a man of the utmost virtue and piety, ascetic and devout in his life," etc.

Yet Mullá Muḥammad Bāqīr, in spite of his formalism and fanaticism, his incredible industry in writing books in simple and easily intelligible Persian in order to popularize the Shi'a doctrines, and his ruthless persecution of the Šūfīs, is credited with posthumous gleams of a higher humanity. One saw him in a dream after his death and asked of him, "How fares it with you in that world, and how have they dealt with you?" He answered, "None of my actions profited me at all, except that one day I gave an apple to a Jew, and that saved me."

The Qisas-ul-'Ulamā contains 153 biographies of eminent divines, of whom the following twenty-five appear to me the most interesting and important. They are here arranged, as far as possible, chronologically, the serial number of each biography in the book being indicated in brackets after the name.

2 Ibid., part i, p. 216. The author discredited the tale, which is described as widely current. As regards this theologian's literary activity, he is said on the same page to have been accustomed to write 1000 "bayts," i.e. 50,000 words, daily.
3 They are numbered in both editions in the abjad notation, e.g. Kulaynī as ص (96); Najjashī as قل (132), etc.
Autograph of Mullá Muḥammad Bāqir-i-Majlisi

Or. 4937 (Brit. Mus.), p. 105
I. Pre-Ṣafawī divines.

1. Muḥammad ibn Yaʿqūb al-Kulaynī (No. 96), entitled "Thiqatu'l-Islām, author of the Kāfī, d. 329/941. Ten great divines of the pre-Ṣafawī period.

2. Muḥammad ibn ʿAlī ibn Ḥusayn ibn Mūsā ibn Bābawayhī of Qum, called Ṣadūq (No. 95), d. 381/991–2. Of his works 189 are enumerated in the Qīṣaṣu'l-Ulamā, the most important being that entitled ʿMan lā yahdūruhu'l-Faqīḥ, which, like the Kāfī mentioned in the last paragraph, is one of the "Four Books."


4. Sayyid Murtadā, entitled 'Alamu'l-Hudā (No. 98), d. 436/1044. He was the great-great-grandson of the Seventh Imām, Mūsā al-Kāzīm.

5. Ahmad ibn ʿAlī an-Najjāshī (No. 132), d. 455/1063. He was a disciple of the Shaykh-i-Mufīd, and the author of the well-known Kitābū'r-Rijāl.

6. Muḥammad ibn Hasan ibn ʿAlī at-Ṭūsī, called Shaykhuluṭ-Tā'iifa (No. 100), d. 460/1067. He was the third of the older "three Muḥammads" (the others being Nos. 1 and 2 supra), and the author of two of the "Four Books," the Tahdhibul-Ahkām and the Istibṣār, and of the well-known Fikrist, or Index of Shī'a books.

7. Naṣīrū'd-Dīn-i-Ṭūsī, entitled Muḥaqqaqīq ("the Investigator"), even more celebrated as a philosopher and man of science than as a theologian (No. 90), d. 672/1274. His most famous works are the Akhlāq-i-Nāṣirī on Ethics, the Astronomical Tables called Zīj-i-Ithnā'īni, compiled for Hūlāgū Khān the Mongol, and the Tājrid on Scholastic Philosophy, a favourite text for the countless host of commentators and writers of notes and glosses.

8. Najmū'd-Dīn Jaʿfar ibn Yākya, known as Muḥaqqaqīq-i-Awwal ("the First Investigator"), author of the Shada-
9. Hasan ibn Yūṣuf ibn ‘Alī ibn ‘Abdul-‘Alī, commonly called ‘Allāma-i-Hillī (“the Sage of Hillī”) (No. 88), died in the same month and year as the above-mentioned Muḥaqiq-i-Awwal, who was ten years his senior. Of his works 75 are enumerated in the Qīṣās. ‘Allāma-i-Hillī came of a great family of theologians, which produced in a comparatively short period ten mujtahids. His father was one, and his son, entitled Fakhrul-Muḥaqiqīn (No. 86), another.

10. Shaykh Shamsud-Dīn Muḥammad ibn Maḳkt... al-‘Amīlī, called Shahīd-i-Awwal (“the First Martyr”) (No. 82), was put to death at Damascus about midsummer 786/1384 by judgement of the two Qādis Burhānu’d-Dīn the Mālikī and Ibn Jāmā’ā the Shāfi’ī.

II. Şafawī and post-Şafawī divines.

11. Nūru’d-Dīn ‘Alī ibn ‘Abdu’ll-‘Alī, known as Muḥaqiq-i-Thānī (“the Second Investigator”) (No. 84), came to Persia from Karak, his native place, and was highly honoured and esteemed by Shāh Tahmāsp I. He died in 940/1533–4.

12. Ahmad ibn Muḥammad, called Muqaddas-i-Ardabīlī “the Saint of Ardbil” (No. 83), was highly honoured by Shāh ‘Abbās the Great. He died in 993/1585.

13. Mir Muḥammad Bāqir-i-Dāmād (No. 77), the grandson of Muḥaqiq-i-Thānī (No. 11 supra), also stood high in the favour of Shāh ‘Abbās, and died in 1041/1631–2.

1 This is the date given in the Qīṣās, but the Lūṭul-‘atu’l-Bahrāyn gives 780/1378–9.
Concerning his book the *Sirāṭu'l-Mustaqim* ("the Straight Path") a Persian poet composed the following epigram:

"Stratahul movsilmim Meyer Damaad, Muslaman neshow Kafaar Meyinad."

He himself wrote poetry under the *takhallis*, or pen-name, of Ishrāq.

14. Shaykh Muḥammad Bahāʾu'd-Dīnāl-'Āmilī, commonly called Shaykh-i-Bahāʾī (No. 37), was equal in fame, influence and honour with the above-mentioned Mīr Dāmād; these two being amongst the men of learning who gave most lustre to the court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great. The literary activities of Shaykh-i-Bahāʾī, who was born near Ba'labakk in 953/1546, and died in 1031/1622, were not confined to theology. In that subject his best-known work is the *Jāmiʿ-i-'Abbāsī*, a popular Persian manual of Shiʿa Law, which he did not live to complete. He also compiled a great collection of anecdotes in Arabic named the *Kashkul* ("Alms-bowl"), a sequel to his earlier and less-known *Mikhlát*. He also wrote several treatises on Arithmetic and Astronomy, and composed the Persian *mashnawi* poem entitled *Nān u Halwā* ("Bread and Sweet-meats").

15. Muḥammad ibn Murtadā of Kāshān, commonly known as Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ (No. 76), though reckoned "a pure Akhbári" (اختياري صرف), and detested by Shaykh Aḥmad al-ʾAḥsáʾī the founder of the Shaykhi sect, who used to call him *Must* ("the Evil-doer") instead of *Muḥsin* ("the Well-doer"), was in fact more of a mystic and a philosopher than a theologian. His best-known theological work is probably the *Aḥwābul-Janān* ("Gates of Paradise"), composed in 1055/1645. Ten years later he went from Kāshān to Shírāz to study philosophy with Mullá Ṣadrá, whose daughter he married. He was also a poet, and in the

1 "May the Musulmán not hear nor the unbeliever see Mīr Dāmād's *Sirāṭu'l-Mustaqim.*"
16. Mīr Abūl-Qāsim-i-Findariskī, though omitted from the Qīṣāṣu'l-ʿUlamā, was accounted “the most eminent philosopher and Šūfī of his time, and stood high in the estimation of Shāh ʿAbbās I, whom he is said, however, to have scandalized by his habit of mixing with the lowest orders and attending cock-fights.” He spent some time in India in the reign of Shāh-Jahān and died in Isfahān about 1050/1640–1.

17. Mūllā Ṣadrū'd-Dīn Muḥammad ibn Ibrāhīm of Shīrāz, commonly called Mūllā Ṣadrā, is unanimously accounted the greatest philosopher of modern times in Persia. That in the Qīṣāṣu'l-ʿUlamā no separate article should be devoted to one whose life was a constant conflict with the “clergy,” and whose clerical disguise was even more transparent than that of his teachers Mīr Dāmād and Shaykh-i-Bahāʾī, is not surprising, but much incidental mention is made of him in this and other similar works, like the Lūṭ'atul-Bahrāyn, and his teaching affected theology, notably that of the Shaykhī school, in no small degree. His death is placed by the Rawḍatul-Jannāt about 1070/1660, but by the Lūṭ'atul-Bahrāyn twenty years earlier.

18. ʿAbdu'l-Razzāq-i-Lāhiji, like Mūllā Muḥsin-i-Fayd, was a pupil of Mūllā Ṣadrā. His two best-known works, both in Persian, are the Sar-māya-i-Imān (“Substance of Belief”) and the Gawhar-i-Murād (“Pearl of Desire”).


2 Rieu’s Persian Catalogue, p. 815. See also p. 258 supra.

3 Shaykh Aḥmad al-Aḥsāʾī commented his Mashāʾir and other works (Rawḍatul-Jannāt, p. 331), but, according to the Qīṣāṣu'l-ʿUlamā (Lucknow ed., p. 48), regarded him as an infidel.

4 This is given by the Qīṣāṣu'l-ʿUlamā as the date of his son Mīrzā Ibrāhīm’s death. The earlier date 1050/1640–1 is therefore more probable for the father.
Autograph of Mullá Şadrá of Shíráz, the Philosopher

Or. 4935 (Brit. Mus.), 1
shared with Shaykh Ṭabarṣī, the author of the *Majmu‘ul-Bayān*, the curious belief in the “essential meaning” of words, by which he meant that there existed a real relation between the sound and meaning of every word, so that having heard the sound of a strange word it was possible by reflection to conjecture the sense.

The last six persons mentioned were all philosophers as well as, or even more than, theologians. The following, except the last, Ḥājji MULLÁ HÁdí, are all Shi‘a divines of the strictest type.

19. Mullá Muḥammad Taqī-i-Majlisī (No. 36) is said to have been the first to compile and publish Shi‘a traditions, which he received from the *Muḥaqqiq-i-thānt*, in the Ṣafawī period. Allusion has already been made to his alleged Ṣūfī proclivities. He died in 1070/1659–60, a date expressed by the ingenious chronogram:

```plaintext
افسر شرع اوفتاد بی سرو پا گشت فضل
```

“The crown of the Holy Law fell: scholarship become headless and footless.”

By removing the “crown,” *i.e.* the initial letter, of *شعَر*, and the “head” and “foot,” *i.e.* the initial and final letters of *فضل*, we get the three letters *

ゲ = 800 + 200 + 70 = 1070.

20. Mullá Muḥammad Bāgir-i-Majlisī (No. 33), son of the above, who has been already mentioned repeatedly in this chapter, was even more famous than his father. His great work is the *Bihārul-Anwār* (“Oceans of Light”), an immense compilation of Shi‘a traditions; but he composed many other works, of which the following are in Persian: *Aynul-Hayt* (“the Fountain of Life”); *Mishkátul-Anwār* (“the Lamp of Lights”); *Ḥilyatu‘l-Muttaqín* (“the Ornament of the Pious”); *Haydūrul-Qulūb* (“Life of Hearts”),

---

2 These data are from the *Rawdātul-Jannāt*, pp. 129–31. The notice in the *Qīṣas* is very incomplete.
not completed; *Tuhsatul-Zā'irīn* ("the Pilgrims' Present"); *Jalā'il-Uyun* ("the Clearing of the Eyes"), etc. He died, as already stated, in 1111/1699-1700.

21. Sayyid Muḥammad Mahdī of Burūjird, entitled *Bahru'l-Ulūm* ("the Ocean of Learning") (No. 27), was born in 1155/1742-3, and appears to have died about 1240/1824-5.

22. Sayyid Muḥammad Bāqir ibn Sayyid Muḥammad Taqī of Rasht, entitled *Hujjatu'l-Islām* (No. 26), has been already mentioned for his severity in inflicting punishments for infractions of the *Sharī'at*. He was wealthy as well as influential, and, according to the *Rawdatul-Jannāt* (p. 125), spent 100,000 "legal dinārs" in building a great mosque in the Bīdābād quarter of Isfahān. He was born about 1180/1766-7, went to ‘Irāq to pursue his studies at the age of sixteen or seventeen, returned to Isfahān in 1216 or 1217 (1801-3), and died on Sunday the 2nd of Rabī' I, 1260 (March 23, 1844). According to his namesake, the author of the *Rawdatul-Jannāt*, his death was mourned for a whole year by the people (presumably the devout and orthodox only!), because none after him dared or was able to enforce the rigours of the Ecclesiastical Law to the same extent. By a strange coincidence, the "Manifestation" of Mīrzā ‘Alī the Bāb, and the subsequent rise of that heresy which did so much to weaken the power of the orthodox Shi’a faith, took place just two months after his death.

23. Shaykh Ahmad ibn Zayni’d-Dīn ibn Ibrāhīm al-Aḥṣā’ī, the founder of the Shaykhī school or sect, spent most of his life at Yazd, whence he went by way of Isfahān to Kirmānshāh. There he remained until the death of the

---


2 The dinār in modern Persia is of merely nominal value, and 100,000 (=10 Tūmāns) are only worth £2 to £4, but originally the dinār was a gold coin worth about 10 francs, and this latter is presumably what is here intended.
governor of that city, Prince Muḥammad ‘Alī Mīrzā, son of Fath-ʿAlī Sháh, who favoured him and invited him to make his abode there. He then retired to the Holy Shrines of Šírāz, where he composed most of his numerous works, of which the most famous are the Sharḥu’s-Ziyārati’l-Kabīra and the Sharḥu’l-Fawā’id. He vehemently opposed Mullá Šadrá, Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayd, and the Šūfīs, but was himself denounced as a heretic by Hájjí Mullá Muḥammad Taqí of Qazwín, whose death at the hands of a Bábí assassin about A.D. 1847 earned for him the title of “the Third Martyr” (Shahid-i-Thalith). Shaykh Ahmad died in 1243/1827–8, being then nearly ninety years of age.

24. Mullá Ahmad-i-Niráqt, who died of cholera in 1244/1828–9, was a poet as well as a theologian, and composed a Persian poem entitled Tāqdis in imitation of the Mathnawí of Jalálu’d-Dín Rúmí. His poetical name was Šafá’i, and an article is consecrated to him in the Majma’u’l-Fusahá (vol. ii, p. 330).

25. Hájjí Mullá Hádi of Sabzawár², the last great Persian philosopher, also wrote poetry under the nom de guerre of Asrár. He was born in 1212/1797–8 and died in 1295/1878.

¹ Most of these particulars are taken from the Rawdatu’l-Jannát, pp. 25–7.
² For an account of his life furnished by one of his disciples, see my Year amongst the Persians, pp. 131–43.
CHAPTER IX.

PROSE WRITERS UNTIL A.D. 1850.

Oriental writers on the art of rhetoric classify prose writings, according to their form, into three varieties, plain (ئرط, rhymed (مغافط), and cadenced (مُساجْت)). We may divide them more simply into natural and artificial. To us, though not always to our ancestors, as witness the Euphuists of Elizabethan days, artificial prose is, as a rule, distasteful; and if we can pardon it in a work like the Arabic Maqámát of al-Harírí or the Persian Anwár-i-Suhaylí, written merely to please the ear and display the writer's command of the language, we resent it in a serious work containing information of which we have need. It is a question how far style can be described absolutely as good or bad, for tastes differ not only in different countries but in the same country at different periods, and a writer deemed admirable by one generation is often lightly esteemed by the next, since, as the Arab proverb says, "Men resemble their age more than they do their fathers." But when a serious historian takes a page to say what could be easily expressed in one or two lines, we have a right to resent the wilful waste of time inflicted upon us by his misdirected ingenuity. Before the Mongol Invasion in the thirteenth century Persian prose was generally simple and direct, and nothing could be more concise and compact than such books as Bal'amí's Persian version of Tabari's great history, the Šiýásat-náma of the Nižámú'l-Mulk, the Safr-náma of Naṣir-i-Khusraw, the Qábús-náma, or the Chahár Maqála. Mongol, Tartar and Turkish influences
seem to have been uniformly bad, favouring as they did flattery and bombast. The historian Waṣṣāf, whose chronicle was presented to Üljáytú in A.D. 1312, was the first great offender, and unhappily served as a model to many of his successors. In recent times there has been a great improvement, partly due to the tendency, already remarked in the case of verse, to take as models the older writers who possessed a sounder and simpler taste than those of the post-Mongol period, and partly to the recent development of journalism, which, if not necessarily conducive to good style, at least requires a certain concision and directness. In point of style, arrangement, and, above all, documentation the quite recent but little-known “History of the Awakening of the Persians” (Ta’rīkh-i-Bīdārī-yi-Īrānīyān) of the Nāzimu’l-Islām of Kirmān (1328/1910), unfortunately never completed, is incomparably superior to the more ambitious general histories of Rida-qulī Khān and the Lisānū’l-Mulk (the Supplement to Mirkhwānd’s Rawdatu’s-Ṣafā and the Nāsikhu’l-Tawārīkh) compiled some fifty years earlier.

Of prose works written simply to display the linguistic attainments and rhetorical ingenuities of the authors I do not propose to perpetuate the memory, or to say more than that, when they embody historical and other matter of sufficient value to render them worth translating, they should, in my opinion, if they are to be made tolerable to European readers, be ruthlessly pruned of these flowers of eloquence. As an instance I will take one passage from that very useful and by no means very florid history of the early Safawī period the Aḥsanu’t-Ta’wārīkh (985/1577–8), of which I have made such extensive use in the first part of this volume. It describes the war

1 See my Persian Literature under Turtar Dominion, pp. 67–8.
waged on the blind Shâhrukh Dhu‘l-Qadar by Muhammed Khán Ustájlı in the spring of 914/1508–9, and begins thus:

In the spring, when the Rose-king with pomp and splendour turned his face to attack the tribes of the Basil, and, with thrusts of his thorn-spear, drove in rout from the Rose-garden the hibernal hosts—

A roar arose from the cloud-drums, the army of the basils was stirred;

The cloud contracted its brows, and drew Rustam-bows for the contest;

The flowering branches raised their standards, the basils prepared their cavalry and their hosts;

The cloud in its skirts bore in every direction hail-stones for the head of Afrásiyáb—

Khán Muhammad Ustájlı encamped in summer quarters at Mârdîn.”

1 F. 75º of Mr A. G. Ellis’s ms.
2 This reading is conjectural. The ms. has obviously wrong, since it is neither sense nor verse.
3 I.e. the spring thunder.
4 The rainbow is called “Rustam’s bow” (Kamán-i-Rustam) in Persian.
All this could much better be said in one line:

"In the spring Khuṭbān Muḥammad Ustājilī encamped in summer quarters at Mārdīn."

Graceful poetic fancies are all very well in their proper place, but in a serious history they are inappropriate and irritating. The trouble is that, as has been remarked already, nearly all literary Persians, and consequently historians, are poets or poetasters, and they unhappily find it easier and more entertaining to mix poetry with their history than history with their poetry, even their professedly historical poetry. In discussing the later prose literature of Persia I shall therefore confine myself to what has substantial value apart from mere formal elegance, and shall treat of it, according to subject, under the five following headings:

1. Theology.

2. Philosophy.

3. The Sciences—mathematical, natural and occult.

4. History—general, special and local.

5. Biography and autobiography, including travels.

I. THEOLOGY.

Theology in Persia during the period with which we are dealing, that is from the establishment of the Šafawī dynasty to the present day, means Shi'a theology, and by extension the semi-heterodox doctrines of the Shaykhīs and the wholly heterodox doctrines of the Bábīs and Bahā'īs. A large portion of this theological literature—in older times almost all, and even now a considerable amount—is in Arabic, the sacred language of Islām and of the Qur'ān, and much of it in all Muslim countries is almost unreadable, save for a few professional
theologians, and, it may be added, quite unprofitable. Some learned man writes a theological, philological, or logical treatise which achieves renown in the Colleges where the ‘ulamá get their mediaeval training. Some one else writes a commentary on that treatise; a third produces a super-commentary on the commentary; a fourth a gloss on the super-commentary; a fifth a note on the gloss; so that at the end we are confronted with what the immortal Turkish wit Khoja Naṣru’d-Dín Efendí called “soup of the soup of the soup of the hare-soup,” a substance devoid of savour or nutriment, and serving rather to conceal than to reveal its original material. Shaykh Muḥammad ‘Abduh, late Grand Muftí of Egypt and Chancellor of the University of al-Azhar, than whom, perhaps, no more enlightened thinker and no more enthusiastic lover of the Arabic language and literature has been produced by Islám in modern times, used to say that all this stuff should be burned, since it merely cumbered bookshelves, bred maggots, and obscured sound knowledge. This was the view of a great and learned Muḥammadan theologian, so we need not scruple to adopt it; indeed the more we admire and appreciate the abundant good literature of Islám, the more we must deplore, and even resent, the existence of this rubbish. In reading the lives of the ‘Ulamá in such books as the Rawḍátul-Fannát and the Qisasul-‘Ulamá we constantly find a theologian credited with forty, fifty, or sixty works of this type, which nobody reads now, and which, probably, no one but his pupils ever did read, and they only under compulsion. Even to enumerate these treatises, were it possible, would be utterly unprofitable.

The great achievement of the Shī’ī doctors of the later Safawī period, such as the Majlisīs, was their popularization of the Shī’ī doctrine and historical Anschauung in the vernacular. They realized that to reach the people they must employ the language of
the people, and that in a simple form, and they reaped their reward in the intense and widespread enthusiasm for the Shi'a cause which they succeeded in creating. We have already seen how few Shi'a books were available when Sháh Ismá'íl first established that doctrine as the national faith of Persia, and, according to the Rawdátul-Jannát, Mullá Muḥammad Taqí Majlísí was the first to publish the Shi'a traditions after the appearance of the Safawí dynasty." His even more eminent son Mullá Muḥammad Báqír compiled on this subject the immense Bihárul-Anwár ("Oceans of Light") in Arabic, and in Persian the following works: 'Aynul-Hayát ("the Fountain of Life"), containing exhortations to renunciation of the world; Mishkátul-Anwár ("the Lamp of Lights"); Ḥilyatul-Muttaqín ("the Ornament of the Pious"), on example and conduct; Hayátul-Qulūb ("the Life of Hearts") in three parts, the first on the Prophets before Muḥammad, the second on the Prophet Muḥammad, and the third on the Twelve Imáms, but only part of it was written and it was never completed; Tuhfátul-Zá'írín ("the Pilgrims' Present"); Ḥaḍrátul-'Uyun ("the Clearing of the Eyes"); Miqásátul-Maṣábah, on the daily prayers; Rabí'ul-Asábi ("the Spring of Weeks"); Zádul-Mi'dd (" Provision for the Hereafter"), and numerous smaller treatises. Oddly enough one of the most notable of his Persian theological works, the Ḥaqqu'l-Yaqín ("Certain Truth"), which was compiled in 1109/1698, and beautifully printed at Tihrán so early as 1241/1825, is omitted from this list. The late M. A. de Biberstein Kazimirski began to translate this book into French, but abandoned his idea, sent his manuscript translation to me, and urged me to continue and complete the work he had begun;

1 Pp. 54-5 supra.
2 Tihrán lithographed ed. of 1306/1888, p. 129.
3 Ibid., p. 119.
a task which, unfortunately, I have never had leisure to accomplish, though it would be well worth the doing, since we still possess no comprehensive and authoritative statement of Shi'a doctrine in any European language.

The basic works of the Shi'a faith, namely the Qur'an (the Word of God) and the Traditions (the sayings and deeds of the Prophet and the Imáms), are naturally in Arabic. The numerous Persian religious treatises may be roughly classified in three groups—the doctrinal, the historical, and the legal. In practice doctrine and history are almost inevitably intermixed, especially in the sections dealing with the Imámate, where attempts are made to prove that the Prophet intended 'Alí to succeed him; that Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán were usurpers of his rights; that the Imáms were twelve in number, no more and no less, and that they were the twelve recognized by the "Sect of the Twelve" (Ithnà 'Ashariyya) and none other. Thus while the earlier sections of these doctrinal works dealing with God and His Attributes border on Metaphysics, the later sections are largely composed of historical or quasi-historical matter, while the concluding portions, dealing with Heaven, Hell, the Last Judgement, and the like, are eschatological.

The style of these books is generally very simple and direct, and totally devoid of rhetorical adornment, but commonly affects an imitation of the Arabic idiom and order of words, not only in passages translated from that language, but throughout, as though these theologians had so steeped their minds in the Qur'an and the Traditions that even when using the Persian language the thought must follow Arabic lines. The following example, taken from the beginning of the second volume of the Haqqul-Yaqtn, will suffice to illustrate this peculiarity:

---

1 Tihrán printed ed. of 1241/1825, f. 142b.
"Maqsad IX: establishing the 'Return' (Raj'at).

"Know that of the number of those things whereon the Shī'ā are agreed, nay, which are of the essentials of the true doctrine of that Truth-pursuing body, is the 'Return.' That is to say that in the time of His Holiness the Qā'im, before the Resurrection, a number of the good who are very good and of the bad who are very bad will return to the world, the good in order that their eyes may be brightened by seeing the triumph of their Imāms, and that some portion of the recompense of their good deeds may accrue to them in this world; and the bad for the punishment and torment of the world, and to behold the double-of that triumph which they did not wish to accrue to the Imāms, and that the Shī'ā may avenge themselves on them. But all other men will remain in their tombs until they shall be raised up in the general Uprising; even as it has come down in many traditions that none shall come back in the 'Return' save he who is possessed of pure belief or pure unbelief, but as for the remainder of mankind, these will [for the time being] be left to themselves."

It is true that here the sentence most Arabian in construction may be the literal translation of a tradition not

1 "He who shall arise," i.e. the Imām Mahdī or Messiah of the Shī'ā.
given in the original Arabic, which must evidently run something like this:

لا يرجع في الرَّجعة إلا من له محض الإيمان أو محض الكفر،

but the influence of Arabian syntax is constantly apparent.

Another class of Shi‘a theological writings consists of polemical works directed against the Sunnis, the Şūfis, the Shaykhs, the Bábís and Bahá‘ís, and the Christians. The Sunnis are naturally attacked in all manuals of doctrine with varying degrees of violence, for from Nádir Sháh downwards to Abu‘l-Hasan Mírzá ("Hájji Shaykhur-Ra‘í's"), an eager contemporary advocate of Islamic unity, no one has been able to effect an appeasement between these two great divisions of Islám, and a more tolerant attitude in the younger generation of Persians, so far as it exists, is due rather to a growing indifference to Islám itself than to a religious reconciliation. Attacks on the Şūfis, especially on their Pantheism (Waḥdatu‘l-Wujūd), are also often met with in general manuals of Shi‘a doctrine, but several independent denunciations of their doctrines exist, such as Áqá Muḥammad ‘Alí Bihbihání’s Risála-i-Khayratiyya, which led to a violent persecution of the Şūfis and the death of several of their leaders, such as Mir Ma‘sum, Mushtáq ‘Alí and Núr ‘Alí Sháh; and the Maṭá‘inu‘s-Sá‘iyya of Muḥammad Ra‘f ibn Muḥammad Shaffi of Tabríz, composed in 1221/1806. The latter even has recourse to the Gospels to prove his case, quoting Christ’s saying “Beware

---

1 His pamphlet on the “Union of Islám” (Ittihādu‘l-Islám) was lithographed at Bombay in 1312/1894-5.
2 Composed in 1211/1796-7. See the full and interesting account of the work in Rieu’s Persian Catalogue, pp. 33-4.
3 For a full account of these events, see Malcolm’s History of Persia, ed. 1815, vol. ii, pp. 417-22.
4 Of this I possess a good ms. dated 22 Jumádá ii, 1222 (27 Aug. 1807).
of them which come to you in sheep’s clothing (ṣīf, wool), but within they are ravening wolves.”

The Isamo-Christian controversy has also produced a considerable literature in Persian, which has been discussed by Professor Samuel Lee in his *Controversial Tracts on Christianity and Mohammedanism* (Cambridge, 1824). Several such works were written in the first quarter of the seventeenth century by Sayyid Aḥmad ibn Zaynu’l-ʿAbidīn al-ʿAlawi, one in refutation of Xavier’s *ʿAina-i-Ḥagg-numā* (“Truth-revealing Mirror”), and another directed against the Jews. Later the proselytizing activities of Henry Martyn the missionary called forth replies from Mīrzā Ibrāhīm and others.

The Shaykhī sect or school derived its origin and its name from Shaykh Aḥmad ibn Zaynu’d-Dīn al-ʿAhsā’ī, a native not of Persia but of Bahrayn, who died, according to the *Rawḍatull-Jannāt*, at the advanced age of ninety in 1243/1827–8, and was succeeded by Sayyid Kāẓim of Rasht, who numbered amongst his disciples both Sayyid ʿAlī Muḥammad the Bāb, the originator of the Bābī sect, and many of those who subsequently became his leading disciples, and Ḥājjī Muḥammad Karīm Khān of Kirmān, who continued and developed the Shaykhī doctrine. This doctrine, essentially a rather extreme form of the Shiʿa faith, was accounted heterodox by several eminent mujtahids, such as Ḥājjī Mullā Muḥammad Taqī of Qazwīn, the uncle and father-in-law of the celebrated Bābī heroine Qurratu’l-ʿAyn, whose hostility to the Shaykhīs and Bābīs ultimately cost him his life, but earned for him from the orthodox Shiʿa the title of the “Third Martyr” (*Shahid-i-Thālith*). Some account of the

---

1 See my *Cat. of Pers. mss. in the Camb. Univ. Library* (1896), pp. 7–13.
2 Pp. 25–6, of the Tihrán lithographed edition of 1306/1888.
3 See vol. ii of my *Traveller’s Narrative*, pp. 197–8 and 310–12.
Shaykhīs and their doctrines, sufficient for the ordinary student of Persian thought, is given in Note E (pp. 234-44) at the end of the second volume of my Traveller's Narrative. Shaykh Ahmad was the author of numerous works, all, I think, in Arabic, of which the titles are given in the Rawdātul Jannāt (p. 25), which asserts amongst other things that he held the Sūfis in great detestation, notwithstanding his own unorthodox views on the Resurrection. Naturally the pantheistic and latitudinarian opinions of these mystics are distasteful to dogmatic theologians of every kind, whether orthodox Shi'a or Sunnī, Shaykhī, Bābī and Bahā'ī, or Christian. Henry Martyn evidently felt that he had far more in common with the ordinary fanatical mullā of Shīrāz than with the elusive and eclectic Sūfī. The later Shaykhīs and Bābis, though both derive from a common source, hold one another in the utmost detestation; and at least one of the doctors of theology who examined and condemned the Bāb at Tabrīz towards the end of the year A.D. 1847, Mullā Muhammad Māmaqānī, belonged to the Shaykhī school.

The Bābī-Bahā'ī movement, of which the effects have now extended far beyond the Persian frontiers even to America, has naturally given rise to a far more extensive literature, which forms a study in itself, and which I have discussed elsewhere. Of the Bāb's own writings the Persian Bayān and the Dalā'il-i-sab'a ("Seven Proofs") are the most important of those composed in Persian. Bahā'u'lláh's Iqān ("Assurance")

1 See also A.-L.-M. Nicolas, Essai sur le Cheikhisme (Paris, 1910), pp. 72. A list of Shaykh Ahmad's writings is given.
4 French translations of both have been published by the learned and impartial A.-L.-M. Nicolas.
is the earliest reasoned apology, and was written before he advanced his claim to be "He whom God shall manifest." His later "Tablets" (Alwāḥ), many of which are in Persian, are innumerable; amongst them the "Epistles to the Kings" (Alwāḥ-i-Salāṭīn) are the most interesting and important. There is also an abundant Azalī literature; and each dichotomous schism has given rise to a fresh crop of controversial pamphlets. Of systematic refutations of the Bābī and Bahā'ī doctrines in Persian the most elaborate are the Ihqāqul-Haqq ("Verification of the Truth") of Āqā Muhammad Taqī of Hamadān, composed about 1326/1908; and the Minhājut-Talībīn of Ḥājjī Husaynquli, an Armenian convert to Islam, lithographed at Bombay in 1320/1902. The Bábís and Bahá'ís have developed a somewhat distinctive style of their own in Persian which possesses considerable merits. Some of Bahá'u'lláh's "Tablets" (Alwāḥ) addressed to Zoroastrian enquirers are even written in pure Persian without admixture of Arabic. Their most important works, like the Kitáb-i-Aqdas ("Most Holy Book"), are, however, written in Arabic. From the point of view of style, both in Persian and Arabic, an immense improvement was effected by Bahá'u'lláh, for the style of Mírzá 'Alí Muhammad the Báb was, as Gobineau says, "terne, raide, et sans éclat," "dull, stiff, and devoid of brilliance."

2. PHILOSOPHY.

Philosophy (Hikmat, Filsafa) is defined by the Muslims as "a knowledge of the true essence of things, as they really are, so far as is possible to human capacity." It is divided into two branches, the theoretical (nazārī), and the practical (ʿamālī). The former comprises Mathematics (Riyyāḍīyyat), Natural Science (ʿIlmuʿ-Tabīʿat), and Metaphysics (Mā warāʾbayd or fawq

1 Materials, pp. 189-90.  
2 Ibid., pp. 196-7.
at-Tabi‘at); the latter Ethics (Tahdhibul-Akhlq), Economics (Tadbirul-Manzil), and Politics (Siyasatul-Mudun).

The three best-known Persian treatises on Practical Philosophy, namely the Akhlq-i-Naṣirī, Akhlq-i-Jalālī, and Akhlq-i-Muhsini, all belong to the period preceding that which we are now discussing, and I do not recollect any important Persian work on the subject which has appeared since. We may therefore confine our attention here to the first, or theoretical, branch of Philosophy, and in this section to Metaphysics, which on the one hand borders on Theology, and on the other on Science. It is generally admitted that a very close connection existed between the Shī‘a and the Mu‘tazila; in early ‘Abbāsid times, and it is well known that the latter were the most enlightened and philosophic of the theological schools of Islām, and that in particular they were the champions of Free Will against the rigid Determinism which subsequently triumphed, to the great detriment of the intellectual development of the Muhammadan world. Those sections of Shī‘ite theological works which treat of the Nature and Attributes of God are, therefore, of a more philosophical character than is commonly the case in Sunnī books of a similar type.

Muslim Philosophy, like Muslim Science, admittedly and avowedly owes almost everything to the Greeks. Its development from the middle of the eighth century of the Christian era, when under the early ‘Abbāsid Caliphs the work of translating into Arabic the works of the most eminent and celebrated Greek thinkers began, down to the deadly blow inflicted on Islamic civilization by the Mongol Invasion and the destruction of

1 See my Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion, pp. 442–4.
Baghdãd and the 'Abbãsid Caliphate in the middle of the thirteenth century, has been repeatedly traced by European scholars. For a broad general view, characterizing the chief exponents of the different schools of Islamic thought, Dr T. J. de Boer's *History of Philosophy in Islam*, translated into English by E. R. Jones, may be recommended to the general reader. It will be observed that only one of the thinkers mentioned in that book, Ibn Khaldûn (b. A.D. 1332 at Tunis, d. A.D. 1406 at Cairo), flourished after the fall of the 'Abbãsid Caliphate, and he was a unique and isolated phenomenon, "without forerunners and without successors".\(^1\)

The question we have to answer here is, has Persia, which in earlier times produced so large a proportion of the so-called "Arabian Philosophers\(^2\)," produced any metaphysician of note since the beginning of the sixteenth century? To answer this question one would need to combine with a competent knowledge of Arabic and Persian a grasp of the history and subject-matter not only of "Arabian" but of Greek Philosophy (and, indeed, of Philosophy in general) to which I cannot lay claim. This, indeed, constitutes the difficulty of judging the value of the scientific literature of Islãm. How many of those who admire the Persian quatrains of 'Umar Khayyám can follow M. Woepcke in the appreciation of his Arabic algebraical treatises? A knowledge of Arabic does not suffice to enable us to decide whether ar-Rází or Ibn Sînã (Avicenna) was the greater physician. Much valuable work of this technical character has been done in Germany, by Dr E. Wiedemann of Erlangen (Optics, Physics, etc.), Dr Julius Hirschberg of Berlin (Ophthalmology), Dr Max Simon (Anatomy), and others, but very much remains to

\(^1\) De Boer, *op. laud.*, p. 208.

\(^2\) So-called merely because they wrote in Arabic, at that time exclusively, and even now to a considerable extent, the learned language of Islãm, as Latin was of Christendom.
be done, and few scholars are competent to undertake it. As regards Philosophy in Persia during the last three or four centuries, all one can say is that half a dozen thinkers have established a great reputation amongst their countrymen, but how far this reputation is deserved is a question which has not yet received a satisfactory answer. These thinkers are, in chronological order, as follows: (1) Shaykh Bahá’u’dd-Dín al-Ámilí (d. 1031/1622); (2) Mír Dámád (d. 1041/1631–2); (3) Mullá Shádí (d. 1050/1640–1); (4) Mullá Muhsín-i-Faydí (d. after 1091/1680); (5) Mullá ‘Abdu’r-Razzáq al-Láhijí; and, in quite modern times, (6) Hájí Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár (d. 1295/1878).

Now Muslim philosophers are of two sorts, those whose philosophy is conditioned by and subordinated to revealed Religion, and those whose speculations are not so limited. The former are the Mutakallimún or Ahl-i-Kalám, the Schoolmen or Dialecticians¹; the latter the Hukamá (pl. of Ḥakím) or Falásífa (pl. of Faylasúf), the Philosophers proper. Of the six persons mentioned above, Mullá Shádí certainly and Hájí Mullá Hádí possibly belong to the second class, but the four others to the first. These four, however, if less important from the point of view of Philosophy, were in other ways notable men of letters. Biographies of all of them except Mullá Hádí, who is too modern, are given in the Rawdátu’l-Jannát, or the Qiṣaṣu’l-Ulamá, from which, unless otherwise stated, the following particulars are taken.

The first five were more or less contemporary, and are, to a certain extent, interrelated. Shaykh Bahá’u’dd-Dín and Mír Dámád both enjoyed considerable influence and stood in high favour at the court of Sháh ‘Abbás the Great, yet there was no jealousy between them, if we may believe the pleasing anecdote about them and the Sháh related by Sir

¹ See de Boer, op. cit., pp. 42–3.
CH. IX] SHAYKH-I-BAHÁ’Í

John Malcolm. Mulla Sadrá was the pupil of both of them, while Mullá Muhsin-i-Fayd and Mullá ‘Abdu’r-Razzáq al-Láhiji were both his pupils and his sons-in-law.

I. Shaykh Bahá’u’d-Dín al-‘Ámilí.

Shaykh Bahá’u’d-Dín Muhammad ibn Husayn ibn ‘Abdu’s-Šamad al-Ḥárithí al-‘Ámilí al-Hamdání al-Jabí was one of the numerous Shi’a doctors who came to Persia from Jabal Ámil in Syria, whence he derived the nisba by which he is commonly known, though by the Persians he is most often spoken of as “Shaykh-i-Bahá’í.” His father Shaykh Ḥusayn, a disciple of Shaykh Zaynu’d-Dín “the Second Martyr” (Shahid-i-Tháni), came to Persia after his master had been put to death by the Turks for his Shī‘ite proclivities, bringing with him the young Bahá’u’d-Dín, who applied himself diligently to the study of Theology in all its branches, Mathematics and Medicine. His teachers included, besides his father, Mullá ‘Abdu’lláh of Yazd, a pupil of Jalálu’d-Dín-i-Dawání, the author of the Akhláq-i-Jaláti, who was in turn a pupil of the celebrated Sayyid-i-Sharif-i-Jurjání. In Mathematics he studied with Mullá Alí Mu‘daláhird (“the Gilder”) and Mullá Afjal of Qá’in, while in Medicine he was the pupil of ‘Alá’u’d-Dín Mahmúd. In due course he attained great celebrity as a theologian and jurist, and became Šadr or Shaykhul-Islám of Isfahán. After a while he was possessed with the desire to make the pilgrimage to Mecca, and on his homeward journey visited, in the guise of a darwísh, Mesopotamia, Egypt, the Hijáz.

1 Hist. of Persia (ed. 1815), vol. i, pp. 558–9. The anecdote occurs in the Qiṣaṣu’l-Ulamá and in the Rawḍatu’l-Jannát, p. 115.
2 Rawḍatu’l-Jannát, p. 331.
3 Some account of him is given in vol. i of the Tarikh-i-‘Alam-árá-yi-Abbást amongst the notices of eminent men of the reign of Shah ‘Abbás, whence some of the particulars here given concerning Shaykh-i-Bahá’í and Mír Dámád are also derived.
and Palestine, and made the acquaintance of many learned men and eminent doctors and mystics.

Shaykh-i-Bahá’í was born at Ba’labakk in Syria on Muḥarram 17, 953 (March 20, 1546), and died on Shawwáł 12, 1031 (August 20, 1622). His principal works are the Jámí-i-‘Abbášt, containing legal decisions (fatáwá); the Zubda; the Miftáhu’l-Faláh; the Tashríh-i-Afrik (“Anatomy of the Heavens”); the Khulásatu’l-Hisâb on Arithmetic; the Kashkál (“Beggars’ Bowl”), a large miscellany of stories and verses, the latter partly in Persian; a similar work called the Mikhliát; also a Persian mathnawí poem entitled Nán u Halvá (“Bread and Sweetmeats”) describing his adventures during the pilgrimage to Mecca, and another entitled Shír u Shíkár (“Milk and Sugar”). Extracts from these poems, as well as from his ghasals, are given in the Majma’u’l-Fusahá (vol. ii, pp. 8–10).


Mír Muhammad Báqír of Astarábád, with the pen-name of Ishráq, commonly known as Dámad (“son-in-law”), a title properly belonging to his father Sayyid Muḥammad, whose wife was the daughter of the celebrated theologian Shaykh ‘Alí ibn ‘Abdu’ll-‘Álí, pursued his earlier studies at Mashhad, but spent the greater part of his life at Isfahán, where, as we have seen, he stood in high favour with Sháh ‘Abbáṣ the Great, and where he was still living when the author of the Tárikh-i-‘Alam-árá-yi-‘Abbášt wrote in 1025/1616. He died in 1041/1631–2. Most of his writings were in Arabic, but he wrote poetry in Persian under the takhallús of Ishráq. He seems to have had a taste for Natural History as well as Philosophy, for, according to the Qisasu’l-Ulama, he made an observation hive of glass in

1 These Persian verses are omitted in the Cairo ed. of 1305/1887–8, but are contained in the Tihrán lithographed ed. of 1321/1903–4.
Autograph of Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín-i-'Ámilí

Or. 4936 (Brit. Mus.), 15
order to study the habits of bees. It is stated in the same work that after his death his pupil and son-in-law Mullá Šadrá saw him in a dream and said, "My views do not differ from yours, yet I am denounced as an infidel and you are not. Why is this?" "Because," replied Mír Dámad's spirit, "I have written on Philosophy in such wise that the theologians are unable to understand my meaning, but only the philosophers; while you write about philosophical questions in such a manner that every dominie and hedge-priest who sees your books understands what you mean and dubs you an unbeliever."


Šadrud-Dín Muḥammad ibn Ikrámír of Shíráz, commonly known as Mullá Šadrá, was the only son of an aged and otherwise childless father. On his father's death he left Shíráz and went to Isfahán, where, as we have seen, he studied with Shaykh-i-Bahá'í and Mír Dámad, from both of whom he held ijázas, or authorizations to expound their works. He subsequently retired to a village near Qum, where he lived a secluded and austere life, engaged in profound meditations on Philosophy. He is said to have made the Pilgrimage to Mecca on foot seven times, and to have died at Basra on his return from his seventh journey in 1050/1640-1, leaving a son named Ikrámír who did not follow his father's doctrine but denounced and controverted it, boasting that "his belief was that of the common people." To these meagre particulars of Mullá Šadrá's life, derived from the Rawdátul-Jannát (pp. 331-2) and the Qisāṣul-'Ulamá, I can only add that it is clear from some expressions in the Preface to his Asfár that he suffered a good deal at the hands of the orthodox divines, and that Shaykh Ahmad Ahsá'í, the founder of the Shaykhí school, wrote commentaries on two of his works, the Hik-
matul'-Arshiyya and the Mash'ir. Shaykh Muhammad Iqbal is therefore probably right when he says\(^1\) that “the Philosophy of Sadra is the source of the metaphysics of early Babiism,” and that\(^2\) “the origin of the philosophy of this wonderful sect must be sought in the Shi'a sect of the Shaykhis, the founder of which, Shaykh Ahmad, was an enthusiastic student of Mullá Sadra’s philosophy, on which he had written several commentaries.”

The two most celebrated of Mullá Sadra’s works, all of which, so far as I know, are in Arabic, are the Asfár-i-
Arba’a, or “Four Books,” and the Shawaikhuddin-i-
Rububiyya, or “Evidences of Divinity.” Both have been lithographed at Tehran, the first in two folio volumes in 1282/1865, the second, accompanied by the commentary of Hájji Mullá Hadi of Sabzawár, without indication of date or place of publication. Amongst his other works which I have not seen the Rawdátul-Jannat (p. 331) enumerates a Commentary on the Usulul-Kásf, the Kitábul-Hidáya, notes on the metaphysical portion of Avicenna’s Shifa, a Commentary on the Hikmatul-Ishráq (presumably that of the celebrated and unfortunate Shaykh Shihábu’d-Dín-Suhrawardí, known, on account of his execution for heresy, as al-Maqtul), the Kitábul-Wáridátul-Qalbiyya, the Kasru Ašnámí’l-Sáhiliyya, or “Breaking of the Idols of Ignorance,” several commentaries on various portions of the Qur’an, etc.

Of Mullá Sadra’s philosophical doctrines, in spite of their

\(^1\) Development of Metaphysics in Persia (Luzac, London, 1908), p. 175.
\(^2\) Ibid., p. 187.
\(^3\) Gobineau has misunderstood Asfar (which is the plural of Sifr, “a book,” not of Safar, “a journey”) when he writes (Rel. et Philos., 1866, p. 81), “Il a écrit de plus quatre livres de voyages.” In the same way he mistranslates the title of one of the Báb’s earlier works, the Ziyárat-náma (“Book of Visitation”) as “un journal de son pèlerinage.”
high reputation in Persia, I know of only two brief and necessarily superficial accounts in any European language. The Comte de Gobineau devotes several pages\(^1\) to them, but his information was probably entirely derived orally from his Persian teachers, who were very likely but ill-informed on this matter, since he concludes his notice with the words “la vraie doctrine de Moulla-Sadra, c’est-à-dire d’Avicenne,” while the Rawḍátul-Jannát\(^2\) explicitly states that he was an Ishrāqī (“Illuminatus” or Platonist) and strongly condemned the Aristotelians or Peripatetics (Mashshā’un), of whom Avicenna was the great representative.

The other shorter but more serious account of Mullá Ṣadrá’s doctrine is given by Shaykh Muḥammad Iqbál, formerly a pupil of Dr McTaggart in this University of Cambridge, and now himself a notable and original thinker in India, in his excellent little book entitled Development of Metaphysics in Persia: a contribution to the History of Muslim Philosophy\(^3\), p. 175, but he devotes much more space (pp. 175–95) to the modern Ḥájjí Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár, whom he regards as Mullá Ṣadrá’s spiritual successor, and who, unlike his master, condescended, as we shall presently see, to expound his ideas in Persian instead of in Arabic. It may be added

\(^1\) Les Religions et les Philosophies, etc. (1866), pp. 80–92.

\(^2\) P. 331. The passage runs in the original:

\[\text{کناان...منتقاً اساس ال‌اشراق بما لا مزيد عليه و منتقاً أبواب الفضحة على طريقه الیسناه و ال‌روائق}

\(^3\) London, Luzac and Co., 1908. Muhammad Iqbál has set forth his own doctrines (which, as I understand them, are in the main an Oriental adaptation of Nietzsche’s philosophy) in a short Persian mathnawī poem entitled Asrār-i-Khudi, lithographed at the University Press, Lahore, and translated into English with an Introduction and Notes by my friend and colleague Dr R. A. Nicholson (The Secrets of the Self, London, Macmillan & Co., 1920).
that Mullá Šadrá speaks with great respect of that eminent Maghribí Shaykh Muḥyí’d-Dín ibn’l-‘Arabí, whose influence, non-Persian though he was, was probably greater than that of any other thinker on the development of the extreme forms of Persian philosophical-mystical speculation.


Muḥammad ibn Murtādá of Káshán, commonly called Muḥsin with the poetical pen-name of Fayd, was a native of Káshán, and, as already said, the favourite pupil and son-in-law of Mullá Šadrá. In the Rawdátul-Jannát (pp. 542–9) and the Qīṣāsu’l-‘Ulamá much fuller notices of him are given than of his master, and, since he was not only a theologian and a philosopher but likewise a poet of some note, he is also mentioned in the Riyāḍu’l-‘Arifín (pp. 225–6) and the Majmá’ul-Fuṣahá (ii, 25–6). His literary activity was enormous: according to the Qīṣāsu’l-‘Ulamá he wrote nearly two hundred books and treatises, and was surpassed in productivity by hardly any of his contemporaries or predecessors except Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlísí. Sixty-nine of these works, of which the last, entitled Sharḥu’s-Sadrí, is autobiographical, are enumerated in the Qīṣás, but fuller details of them are given in the Rawdát (pp. 545–6), where the dates of composition (which range between 1029/1620 and 1090/1680) are in most cases recorded. His age at this latter date, which is also notified as the year of his death, is stated as eighty-four, so that he must have been born about 1006/1597–8. Of one of his works, the Mafáthi’š Shahríyín, I possess

1 It was written in 1065/1654–5. See Rawdátul-Jannát, p. 546. It is wrongly entitled Sharḥ-i-Šuswar in the Indian lithograph of the Qīṣás.
2 Rawdátul-Jannát, pp. 542 and 549.
what appears to be an autograph copy, made in 1042/1632-3, now bearing the class-mark C. 18.

When Mulla Muhsin wished to leave his home in Kashan and go to Shiraz to study under the celebrated theologian Sayyid Majid of Bahrain, his father opposed this project, and it was finally agreed to take an augury (tafa'ul) from the Qur'an, and from the poems ascribed to the first Imam 'Ali ibn Abi Talib. The former yielded the verse (ix, 123) "if a part of every band of them go not forth, it is that they may diligently instruct themselves in Religion’; the latter the following lines rendered particularly apposite by the words suhbatu Majidi, "the society of some noble one," which might in this case be taken as referring particularly to the above-mentioned Sayyid Majid:

"Go abroad from the home-lands in search of eminence, and travel, for in travel are five advantages:
The dissipation of anxiety, the acquisition of a livelihood, knowledge, culture, and the society of some noble one (majid). And if it be said, 'In travels are humiliation and trouble, the traversing of deserts and the encountering of hardships,' Yet the death of a brave man is better for him than his continuance in the mansion of abasement, between humiliation and an envious rival."
After these clear indications, Mullá Muḥsin’s father no longer opposed his desire to go to Shíráz, where he pursued his studies not only with the aforesaid Sayyid Mājīd, but also with Mullá Šadrá. It is difficult to accept the statement of the Qiṣaṣ that this took place in 1065/1654–5, for this would make him nearly sixty years of age before he began his serious studies with Mullá Šadrá or married his daughter.

Mullá Muḥsin is described in the Qiṣaṣ as a “pure Akhbári” (Akhbári-yi-Šīrō), a Şūfi, and an admirer of Shaykh Muḥyī’dd-Dīn Ḥabīl-‘Arabī. Shaykh Ḥabīl-‘Arabī, Ahmed Ahsá’i, who, as we have seen, wrote commentaries on two of the books of his master Mullá Šadrá, detested him, and used to call him Ṭust (“the ill-doer”) instead of Muḥsin (“the well-doer”), and to speak of the great Shaykh as Muminudd-Dīn (“the Slayer of Religion”) instead of Muḥyī’dd-Dīn (“the Quickener of Religion”). According to an absurd story in the Qiṣaṣ, Mullá Muḥsin was chosen by Sháh ‘Abbás to confute a Christian missionary sent by the “King of the Franks” to convert the Persians. The sign offered by this missionary was that he would specify any article held in the closed hand of his opponent. Mullá Muḥsin chose a rosary (tashbik) made of clay taken from the tomb of the Imám Ḥusayn. The Christian hesitated to speak, but, when pressed, said, “It is not that I cannot say, but, according to the rule I observe, I see that in thy hand is a portion of the earth of Paradise, and I am wondering how this can have come into thy possession.” “Thou speakest truly,” replied Mullá Muḥsin, and then informed him what he held, and bade him abandon his own faith and accept Islám, which,

2 This is called khāby, and thought-reading damīr. See my translation of the Chīhar Maqāla, p. 64 and n. 2 ad calc., and pp. 130–1.
according to the narrator, he was constrained to do. Though extremely pious in most respects, Mullá Muhsin scandalized the orthodox by his approval and sanction of singing. His best-known Persian compilation is probably the *Abūdūl-Janān* ("Gates of Paradise") composed in 1055/1645, on prayer and its necessity\(^1\), but few of his numerous writings have been published or are now read, and at the present day, at any rate, his name is more familiar than his works.


The subject of this notice resembled Mullá Muhsin in being a pupil and son-in-law of Mullá Şadrá and a poet, who wrote under the pen-name of Fayyād, but his writings, though much fewer in number, are more read at the present day. The best known are, perhaps, the philosophical treatise in Persian entitled *Gawhar-i-Murād* ("the Pearl of Desire"), and the *Sar-māya-i-Īmān* ("Substance of Faith"), also in Persian, both of which have been lithographed. The notices of him in the *Rawdātul-Jannāt* (pp. 352–3) and the *Qiṣasul-‘Ulamā* are short and unsatisfactory. The latter grudgingly admits that his writings were fairly orthodox, but evidently doubts how far they express his real convictions and how far they were designed from prudential motives to disguise them, thus bearing out to some extent the opinion expressed by Gobineau\(^2\).

I have been obliged to omit any further notice than that already given\(^3\) of the somewhat elusive figure of Mír Abúl-Qásim-i-Findariskí, mentioned by Gobineau\(^4\) as one of the three teachers of Mullá Şadrá, because, apart from the brief notices of him

---

1. Not to be confounded with a later homonymous work on Ethics.
3. See pp. 257–8 and 408 *supra*.
PROSE WRITERS UNTIL A.D. 1850

contained in the Riyádú'l-Árifin and the Majma'ul-Fuṣahá, in both of which the same poem is cited, and the passing reference in the Dabistán to his association with the disciples of Kaywán and adoption of sun-worship, I have been unable to discover any particulars about his life or doctrines. He appears to have been more of a qalandar than a philosopher, and probably felt ill at ease in the atmosphere of Shi'a orthodoxy which prevailed at Isfahán, and hence felt impelled to undertake the journey to India. He must, however, have subsequently returned to Persia if the statement in the Riyádú'l-Árifin that his tomb is well known in Isfahán be correct.

Gobineau (op. laud., pp. 91-110) enumerates a number of philosophers who succeeded Mullá Šadrá down to the time of his own sojourn in Persia, but most of them have little importance or originality, and we need only mention one more, who was still living when Gobineau wrote, and whom he describes as "personnage absolument incomparable."

6. Hájji Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár.

It is not, however, necessary to say much about this celebrated modern thinker, since his philosophical ideas are somewhat fully discussed by Shaykh Muḥammad Iqｂāl at the end of his Development of Metaphysics in Persia, while I obtained from one of his pupils with whom I studied in Tihrán during the winter of 1887-8 an authentic account of his life, of which I published an English translation in my Year amongst the Persians. According to this account, partly derived from one of his sons, Hájji Mullá Hádí the son of Hájjī Mahdí was born in 1212/1797-8, studied first in his native town of Sabzawár, then at Mashhad, then at Isfahán.

1 Pp. 165-6.
3 Pp. 175-95.
4 Pp. 131-4.
with Mullá 'Ali Núrí. Having made the pilgrimage to Mecca, he visited Kirmán, where he married a wife, and then returned to Sabzawár, where the remainder of his life was chiefly spent until his death in 1295/1878. His best-known works, written in Persian, are the

His works: *Asrārul-Ḥikam* ("Secrets of Philosophy") and a commentary on difficult words and passages in the *Mathnawí*; in Arabic he has a versified treatise (*Manzúma*) on Logic; another on Philosophy; commentaries on the Morning Prayer and the *Jawshan-i-Kahír*; and numerous notes on the *Shawdhidwr-Rubúbiyya* and other works of Mullá Šadrá. He also wrote poetry under the pen-name of Asrár, and a notice of him is given in the *Riyāḍal-'Aríst* (pp. 241–2), where he is spoken of as still living and in the sixty-third year of his age in 1278/1861–2, the date of composition. Most of his works have been published in Persia in lithographed editions.

3. THE SCIENCES—MATHEMATICAL, NATURAL AND OCCULT.

As stated above¹, Mathematics (*Riyāḍiyát*) "the Disciplinary" and *Ṭabí‘iyát* the Natural Sciences, in conjunction with Metaphysics (*Má wará* or *Má ba‘da‘-Ṭabí‘at*), constitute the subject-matter of the theoretical or speculative branch of Philosophy, of which, therefore, they form a part. It is probable that to this manner of regarding them is partly due the unfortunate tendency noticeable in most Muslim thinkers to take an *a priori* view of all natural phenomena instead of submitting them to direct critical observation. The so-called "Arabian," *i.e.* Islamic, Science was in the main inherited from the Greeks; its Golden Age was the first century of the 'Abbásid Caliphate (A.D. 750–

¹ Pp. 423–4 supra.
850), when so much trouble and expense was incurred by the Caliphs, especially al-Mansur, Hárúnur-Rashíd and al-Ma'mún, to procure good and faithful Arabic translations of the great Greek philosophers, naturalists and physicians; and the great service it rendered to mankind was to carry on the Greek tradition of learning through the Dark Ages of Europe down to the Renaissance.

So much is generally admitted, but there remains the more difficult and still unsolved question whether the Arabs were mere transmitters of Greek learning, or whether they modified or added to it, and, in this case, whether these modifications or additions were or were not improvements on the original. This question I have endeavoured to answer in the case of medical science in my Arabian Medicine, but I was greatly hampered by insufficient acquaintance with the original Greek sources. For such investigation, whether in the Medicine, Mathematics, Physics, Astronomy or Chemistry of the Muslims, three qualifications not often combined are required in the investigator, to wit, knowledge of the science or art in question, knowledge of Arabic (and, for later writers, of Persian and even Turkish), and knowledge of Greek. In the case of the "Arabian" (i.e. Muslim) physicians the conclusion at which I arrived (already reached by Dr Max Neuburger in his monumental Geschichte der Medizin) was that Rhazes (Abú Bakr Muḥammad ibn Zakariyyá ar-Rázi, i.e. a native of Ray in Persia) was, as a physician, far superior to the more celebrated and popular Avicenna (Ibn Síná), and was, indeed, probably the greatest clinical observer who ever existed amongst the Muslims. The notes of actual cases which came under his observation, as recorded in parts of his great "Continens"

(al-Ḥāwt), have an actual and not merely a historical or literary value; and even from his methods of treatment it is possible that here and there a hint might be obtained. Avicenna was more logical, more systematic, and more philosophical, but he lacked the Hippocratic insight possessed by his great predecessor.

In my Arabian Medicine I sketched the history of the art amongst the Muslims from its beginnings in the eighth century of our era down to the twelfth, but made no attempt to follow it down to the period which we are now considering. The Mongol Invasion of the thirteenth century, as I have repeatedly and emphatically stated, dealt a death-blow to Muslim learning from which it has not yet recovered. Medical and other quasi-scientific books continued, of course, to be written, but it is doubtful if they ever approached the level attained under the early ʿAbbāsid Caliphs and maintained until the eleventh, and, to some extent, until the thirteenth century of our era. That they added anything which was both new and true is in the highest degree improbable, though I cannot claim to have carefully investigated the matter. A long list of these books is given by Dr Adolf Fonahn in his most useful work entitled Zur Quellenkunde der Persischen Medizin, which has pointed the way for future investigators. Of these later works the most celebrated is probably the Tuhfatu-Muʿminin, compiled for Sháh Sulaymán the Šafawí by Muḥammad Muʿmin-i-Husaynî in A.D. 1669. It deals chiefly with Materia Medica, and there are numerous editions and manuscripts, besides translations into Turkish and Arabic.

What has been said about Medicine holds good also of Zoology, Botany, Chemistry, etc., and in a lesser degree of Mathematics, Astronomy and Mineralogy. Fine work

1 Leipzig, 1910, pp. v+152.
has been done in some of these subjects by experts who also possessed an adequate knowledge of Arabic. I will only instance Woepcke in Algebra, Wiedemann in Mechanics, Hirschberg in Ophthalmology, and, amongst younger men, Holmyard in Chemistry. All these, I think, have come to the conclusion that the standard attained by the best Muslim investigators surpassed rather than fell short of what is generally supposed. Yet it is often difficult to assure oneself that direct observation, which is the foundation of true science, has played its proper part in ascertaining the phenomena recorded. Dr Badhlu'r-Rahmán, now Professor of Arabic in the Oriental College at Lahore, when he was a Research Student in this University, took as the subject of his studies the works of al-Jáhiz, who, on the strength of his great book on animals, the *Kitābul-Hayawān*, is often regarded as one of the leading naturalists of the Arabs. At my request this able and industrious young scholar devoted especial attention to the question whether the writings of this author afforded any proof that he had himself observed the habits of any of the animals about which he wrote. A passage was ultimately found which seemed conclusive. In speaking of instinct al-Jáhiz says that when the ant stores corn for food it mutilates each grain in such a way as to prevent it from germinating. After numerous fruitless enquiries as to the truth of this statement, I finally ascertained from Mr Horace Donisthorpe, one of the chief British authorities on ants, that it was correct, and I began to hope that here at last was proof that this old Muslim scholar had himself observed

---

a fact of Natural History apparently unknown to many modern Zoologists. Unhappily I subsequently discovered the same statement in Pliny, and I am afraid it is much more likely that it reached al-Jāḥiz by tradition rather than by direct observation.

In each of the "Arabian" sciences the same question arises and demands an answer which only one thoroughly versed in the scientific literature of the ancients can give. Does Ibnu'l-Baytār's great Arabic work on medicinal plants, for example, contain any information not to be found in Dioscorides? Be the answer what it may, it is doubtful whether the later Muslim writers on these various sciences ever surpassed, or even equalled, their predecessors. In quite recent times, especially since the foundation of the Dārul-Funān, or Polytechnic College, at Tihrān early in the reign of Nāširu’d-Dīn Shāh, numerous Persian translations or adaptations of European scientific works have been made, but these are entirely exotic, and can hardly claim to be noticed in a work on Persian Literature. A number of them are mentioned in my Press and Poetry of Modern Persia, pp. 154–66, under the heading "Modernising Influences in the Persian Press other than Magazines and Journals." But of those Persians who since the middle of the nineteenth century have successfully graduated in the European schools of science, I know of none who has hitherto made a reputation for original research.

In conclusion a few words must be said about the Occult Sciences, excluding Astrology and Alchemy, which are in the East hardly to be separated from Astronomy and Chemistry. Alchemy is called in Arabic and Persian Khimya, and the names of four other Occult Sciences, dealing with Talismans, Necromancy, and the like, are formed on the same model, Limiya, Himiya, Simiya, and Rimiya, the initial letters
being derived from the words *Kullahu Sirr* (كن له سر), “All of it is a Mystery.” The book entitled *Aṣrār-i-Qāsim* (“Secrets of Qāsim”)¹ in Persian, and the *Shamsul-Ma‘ārif* (“Sun of Knowledges”)² of the celebrated Shaykh al-Būnī in Arabic, may be regarded as typical of this class of literature, but to the uninitiated they make but arid and unprofitable reading. Ibn Khaldūn is the only Muslim writer I know of who has sought to discover a philosophical and rational basis for these so-called sciences, and his ideas have been collated with the theories of modern Psychological Research in a most masterly manner by Professor Duncan Black Macdonald in his interesting and suggestive book entitled *The Religious Attitude and Life in Islam*³. I have always kept an open mind as to the reality of the powers claimed by Occultists, and, when opportunity offered, have always gone out of my way to investigate such manifestations. Disappointment has invariably been my portion, save in two cases: a “magician” whom I met in Kirmān in the summer of 1888, who, amidst much vain boasting, did accomplish one feat which baffled my comprehension⁴; and the late Shaykh Ḥāfīz Ahmad, author of an astonishing work in English entitled *The Mysteries of Sound and Number*⁵, who, if nothing more, was an amazingly skilful thought-reader.

4. HISTORY—GENERAL, SPECIAL AND LOCAL.

It must be admitted, with whatever unwillingness and regret, that in the art of historical compilation the Persians

---

¹ Lithographed at Bombay in 1885 and 1894.
² I possess the lithographed edition of 1318/1900, but others have appeared in India and Egypt.
⁴ See my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 453–5.
fall far short of the Arabs, who, indeed, excel in this branch of literature. The earlier Muslim annalists like Ṭabarī, with their verbatim narratives by eye-witnesses of the events recorded transmitted orally through carefully scrutinized chains of traditionists, are not only singularly graphic but furnish us, even at this distance of time, with materials for history of which, thanks to these isnāds, it is still possible to estimate the authenticity, even if our judgement as to the strength of the respective links in the chain does not always agree with that of Muslim critics. The later Arab historians selected, condensed, and discarded these somewhat wearisome if valuable isnāds, but their narrative, as a rule, continues to be crisp, concise, graphic and convincing. The best of the earlier Persian historians, down to the thirteenth century, though lacking the charm of the Arabian chroniclers, are meritorious and trustworthy. (The bad taste of their Tartar and Turkish rulers and patrons gradually brought about a deterioration both of style and substance, very noticeable between Juwaynī’s Taʾrikh-i-Jahān-gushāv (completed about 658/1260) and its continuation, the Taʾrikh-i-Wassād (completed in 712/1312), which, as already observed1, exercised an enduring evil influence on subsequent historians in Persia. Of later Persian histories I have met with few equal to a history of the Caliphate by Hindūshāh ibn Sanjar ibn Ṭabīʿullāh as-Ṣāhibī al-Kirānī, composed in 724/1324 for Ṯuṣratuʿd-Dīn Ahmad the Atābak of Luristān, and entitled Tajāribuʿs-Salaf (“Experiences of Yore”). This, however, is entirely and avowedly based on the delightful Arabic history of Ṣafīyyuʿd-Dīn Muḥammad ibn ʿAlī al-ʿAlawī at-Ṭiqtaqī, composed in 701/1302, commonly known

1 P. 413 supra.
as the Kitābu’l-Fakhfrī, but here entitled Munyatul-Fuṣūlatā fi Tawārikhīl-Khulafā waal-Wusurā (“the Desire of Scholars on the History of the Caliphs and their Ministers”). That it never appealed to the debased taste which we are here deploring is sufficiently shown by the fact that not only has it never been published, but, so far as I know, it is represented only by my manuscript, G. 3 (copied in 1286/1870), and one other (dated 1304/1886–7) in the Bibliothèque Nationale in Paris.

It would be a wearisome and unprofitable task to enumerate the many Persian historical works composed during the last four centuries. Of the histories of special periods the most important have been not only described but freely quoted in the first part of this volume, notably the Ṣafwatu’l-Ṣafā for the life of Shaykh Ṣafiyu’l-Dīn from whom the Ṣafawī kings were descended; the monograph on Shāh Isma’īl described by Sir E. Denison Ross in the J. R. A. S. for 1896, pp. 264–83; the Aḥsanu’t-Tawārikh, completed in 985/1577–8 by Ḥasan-i-Rūmlū; and the Ta’rikh-i-ʿAlamārā-yi-ʿAbbāsī of Iskandar Munshi, composed in 1025/1616. There are other monographs on the later Ṣafawī period, such as the Fawwād-i-Ṣafawiyya (1211/1796–7) and the Tadhkira-i-ʿAl-i-Ṭāwūs (1218/1803–4), which I would fain have consulted had they been accessible to me. For the post-Ṣafawī period we have several excellent European accounts which render us less dependent on the native historians, some of whose works moreover (e.g. the Ta’rikh-

1 Originally edited by Ahlwardt from the Paris ms. 895 (now 2441) and published at Gotha in 1860. A revised text was published by H. Derenbourg at Paris in 1895, and there are at least two cheap and good Egyptian editions. A French translation by Emil Amar has been published by the Société des Études Marocaines (Paris, 1910).
i-Zandiyya\(^1\) and the *Mujmal\('t-Tārīkh\)-i-Ba\('d-Nādiriyya\(^2\)* have been published in Europe, while others, such as the *Durra-i-Nādir* of Mīrzā Mahdī Khán of Astarābād, are easily accessible in Oriental lithographed editions. These monographs contain valuable material and are indispensable to the student of this period, but they are generally badly arranged and dully written, and further marred by the florid and verbose style of which we have just been complaining.

For the general histories of our present period, from Khwāndamīr's *Habību\('s-Sīyar* (929/1523) at the beginning to Riddā-qulī Khán's Supplement to the *Rawdāt\(-\)Safā* and Lisānu\('l-Mulk\)'s *Nāsikh\('t\)-Tawārīkh* at the end, with the very rare *Khuld\(-\)i-Barīn* (1071/1660–1) in the middle, there is even less to be said, since, though for events contemporary with their authors they have the same value as the monographs just mentioned, for the earlier periods they are not even good or judicious abstracts of the carelessly selected authorities from whom they derive their information. They are, moreover, histories not of the Persian people but of the kings, princes and nobles who tyrannized over them and contended with one another for the spoils; wearisome records of bloodshed, violence and rapine from which it is hard to derive any general concepts of value\(^3\). Only by diligent and patient study can we extract from them facts capable of throwing any real light on the religious, political and social problems which a historian like Ibn Khaldūn would have handled in so masterly a manner.

There are, however, hopeful signs of improvement in

---

1 Ed. Ernst Beer, Leyden, 1888.
2 Ed. Oskar Mann, Leyden, 1891.
3 Compare Mr Vincent Smith's judicious remarks on this subject in his monograph on *Akbar*, pp. 386–7.
recent times. Poor Mírzá Jání of Káshán, though a merchant without much literary training, wrote his *Nugatul-Kádí* on the history of the Bábí sect, of which in 1852 he was one of the proto-martyrs, with violence and passion indeed, but with knowledge, in plain and simple language without that florid rhetoric which we find so intolerable; while the unfinished "History of the Awakening of the Persians" (*Tá'rikh-i-Bidári-yi-Irán-yán*) of the Názimu'll-Islám of Kirmán, with its ample documentation and endeavour to estimate personal characteristics and influence on political events, seems to me to stand on an altogether higher level than any preceding Persian historical work composed during the last six or seven centuries.

5. BIOGRAPHY, AUTOBIOGRAPHY AND TRAVEL.

Muslim writers have always evinced a great partiality for biography, which may be general, dealing with the lives of eminent men of all sorts, like Ibn Khallikán's *Wafayatul-A'ýán* ("Obituaries of Notable Men") and the *Rawdátul-Jannát*, of which I have made such extensive use in the latter part of this volume, the former composed in the thirteenth, the latter in the late nineteenth century, and both in Arabic; and the ambitious but unfinished modern Persian *Náma-i-Dánishwarán* ("Book of Learned Men") compiled by a committee

1 Published in 1910 as vol. xv of the "E. J. W. Gibb Memorial" Series.

2 This work was published in lithographed fasciculi, and, so far as it has reached me, comprises the Introduction (*Muqaddama*) of 273 pp.; vol. i, completed on the 20th of Dhu'l-Qa'da, 1328 (Nov. 23, 1910), which carries the narrative down to what is called the *Hijrat-i-Ṣughra* (December, 1905), and comprises 256 pp.; and vol. ii, completed at the end of Šafar, 1330 (Feb. 18, 1912), comprising 240 pp. Whether there is any likelihood of the work being completed I do not know.
of some half a dozen scholars, of which the first volume was lithographed at Tihrán in 1296/1879 and the second in 1312/1904–5. More often such works treat of the biographies of some particular class of men, such as Ministers, Physicians, Poets or Theologians; or they follow a geographical or a chronological arrangement, merging on the one hand into geography and on the other into history. Khwándámír’s Dastúrí’l-Wuzárá (“Models for Ministers”), composed, according to the chronogram implicit in the title, in 915/1509–10, affords us a Persian example of the first type falling at the beginning of the period reviewed in this volume. For the Physicians and Philosophers no Persian work approaches the level of al-Qiftí’s Tārítkhú’l-Hukamá and Ibn Abí Usáybi’a’s ‘Uyúnu’l-Anbá fi Ṭabaqátí’l-Allabá, both composed in the thirteenth century of our era, a period so rich in Arabic biographical works. Biographies of poets, on the other hand, abound in Persian, especially in the later period, since Sháh Isma’íl’s son Sám Mírzá set the fashion with his Tuhfa-i-Sámí (a continuation of Dawlatsháh’s “Memoirs of the Poets”) compiled in 957/1550. Eminent representatives of the Shi’a sect, both Arabs and Persians of every category from kings to poets, form the subject-matter of the very useful Majálísu’l-Muíminin (“Assemblies of Believers”), the author of which, Sayyid Núru’lláh of Shúshtár, was flogged to death in 1019/1610–11 by order of Jahángír at the instigation of the Sunnis, and who is therefore called by his fellow-believers the “Third Martyr” (Shahíd-i-Thálith).

1 See my Press and Poetry in Modern Persia, pp. 165–6.
2 Compare Rieu (B.M.P.C.), p. 335. I have a good modern Ms. professedly collated with the original in 1268/1851–2, now marked J. II.
3 Edited by Professor Julius Lippert (Leipzig, 1903).
4 Printed in Cairo in two volumes in 1299/1882.
Of the older geographically-biographical works the Ṭḥārūl-Bilād ("Monuments of the Lands") of Zakariyyā ibn Muḥammad ibn Mahmuṭ al-Qazwīnī, and the Persian Haft Iqlīm ("Seven Climes"), composed in 1028/1619 by Amin Ahmad-i-Rāżī, are typical specimens. Monographs on different provinces or cities of Persia are also fairly common, and generally include notices of the more eminent natives of the region discussed. Of modern biographical works produced in Persia I have made extensive use, especially in the chapter on the Theologians, of the Arabic Rawḍatull-Jannāt fi Ahwālīl-Ulamā wa-s-Sādāt ("Gardens of Paradise, on the circumstances of Men of Learning and Leading"). This comprehensive work, which deserves to be better known, contains some 742 notices of eminent Muslim scholars, saints and poets, ancient and modern, and was compiled by Muḥammad Bāqir ibn Ḥājji Amīr Zaynu'll-ʿAbidīn al-Mūsawī of Khvānsār in the latter half of the nineteenth century. A good lithographed edition (except that, as usual, it has no Index) appeared at Tihrān in 1306/1888. The notices are arranged in alphabetical order, not very strictly observed, under personal names, such as ʿAḥmad, ʿAlī, Muḥammad, etc., which, of course, are seldom the names by which those who bear them are commonly known. Thus the Muḥammads, who fill the greater part of the fourth and last volume and comprise a hundred and forty-three articles, include the great Shiʿa theologians generally referred to as al-Kulaynī, Ibn Bābawayhi and

---

1 Edited in the original Arabic by F. Wüsttenfeld (Göttingen, 1848), and followed in the succeeding year by the same author's "Wonders of Creation" (ʿAjāʾīb al-Makhlūqāt).

2 In the Haft Iqlīm the biographical element preponderates. Unfortunately it remains unpublished, though a critical edition was begun by Mawlawī Ṭabaṭābāʾī Muqtadīr, of which, so far as I know, only the first fasciculus (pp. x+114) has been printed at Calcutta in 1918.
Shaykh-i-Mufid; the historians Tabarî and Shahristânî; the scientists Râzî and Bîrûnî; the thinkers Fârâbî, Ghazâlî and Muhyî’d-Dîn ibnu’l-‘Arabî; and the Persian poets Sanâ’î, Faridu’îd-Dîn ‘Âttâr and Jalâlu’d-Dîn Rûmî, nor is any subordinate plan, chronological or other, discernible within these sections, so that the owner of the book who wishes to consult it regularly is compelled to make his own Index or Table of Contents.

The other book which I have constantly consulted as to the lives of the theologians is the Persian Qiṣaṣu’l-‘Ulamâ (“Stories of the Doctors”) of Muhammad ibn Sulaymân of Tanakábun, who wrote it in 1290/1873. It contains about a hundred and fifty biographies of Shi’â divines, and is more readable, if less accurate, than the work previously mentioned. Another useful Persian book on the same subject is the Nujumî’s-Samâ (“Stars of Heaven”) composed by Mîrzâ Muhammad ‘Ali in 1286/1869–70, dealing with the Shi’â doctors of the eleventh, twelfth and thirteenth centuries of the hijra (seventeenth, eighteenth and nineteenth of the Christian era). There exist also two special monographs in Arabic on the Shi’â divines of Bahrayn and Jabal ‘Âmil, the Lâlî’atul-Bahrayn (“Pearl of Bahrayn”) of Shaykh Yûsuf ibn Aḥmad al-Bahrâni, who flourished in the eighteenth century; and the Amalu’l-Âmil fi Ulamâ’i Jabal-‘Âmil (“the Hoper’s Hope, on the Doctors of Mount ‘Âmil”), by Muhammad ibn Ḥasan ibn ‘Alî . . . al-Ḥurr al-‘Âmilî, who belongs to the previous century.

Mention must also be made of another modern biographical work of a somewhat special character, which,

---

1 I possess two lithographed editions, one, the second Tîhrán edition, published in 1304/1886; the other, apparently at Lucknow, in 1306/1888–9

2 Lithographed at Lucknow in 1303/1885–6.

B. P. L.
though the work of a Persian, is written in Turkish. This is the *Khaṭṭ u Khaṭṭātān* ("Writing and Writers"), a history of the art of Calligraphy and its votaries by the learned Mīrzā Ḥabīb of Isfahān, who spent the latter period of his life in Constantinople, where he was a member of the *Anjuman-i-Ma'drif*, or Turkish Academy.

These are but a selection of the more useful or less known biographical works, of which many more will be found described in Rieu's, Ethé's, and other catalogues of Persian manuscripts. Of autobiographies the most notable is that of Shaykh 'Alī Ḥāzīn, which contains one of the few first-hand Persian accounts of the Afghān Invasion and fall of Isfahān in A.D. 1722. Travels are a special form of autobiography, in which His late Majesty Nāṣiru'd-Dīn Shāh indulged freely.

An account of the mission of Farrukh Khān Aminu'l-Mulk to London and Paris at the close of the Anglo-Persian War in 1857–8 was written by one of his staff, Mīrzā Husayn ibn 'Abdu'llah, but has never been published. It concludes with a description of the French Departments of State and Public Institutions. More valuable and varied in its contents is the *Bustān u Siyāh* ("Garden of Travel") of Ḥājjī Zaynu'l-'Ābidin of Shīrwān, who wrote it in 1247/1831–2. In a brief autobiography under the heading Shamākhī he tells us that he was born in mid-

1 A very nicely printed edition of this book was published at Constantinople in 1305/1887–8.
Sha‘bán, 1194 (August 15, 1780), and was taken to Kar-balá, where he thenceforth made his home, when only five years old. He travelled extensively in ‘Iráq, Gílán, the Caucasus, Ádharbáyján, Khurásán, Afghánistán, India, Kashmír, Badakhshán, Turkistán, Transoxiana, the Persian Gulf, Yaman, the Hijáz, Egypt, Syria, Turkey in Asia and Armenia, and in Persia also visited Tíhrán, Hamadán, Isfahán, Shíráz and Kírmán. He was a Shí‘íte and a darvísch of the Order of Sháh Ni‘matu’lláh, and in this double capacity made the acquaintance and enjoyed the friendship of many eminent doctors (‘ulamá) and “gnostics” (‘urafá). The author, a man of intelligence and a keen observer, does not give a continuous narrative of his travels, but arranges his materials under the following heads:

Chapter I. Account of the Prophet, his daughter Fátima, and the Twelve Imáms.

Chapter II. Account of certain doctors, gnostics, philosophers, poets and learned men.

Chapter III. On sundry sects and doctrines.

Chapter IV. Geographical account of towns and villages visited by the author in Persia, Turkistán, Afghánistán, India, parts of Europe and China, Turkey, Syria and Egypt, the names of these places being arranged alphabetically.

Promenade (Sayr). Prolegomena on the arrangement of this Garden, and on certain matters connected therewith.

Rose-bed (Gulshan). Countries and persons to describe which is the ultimate object of the book, arranged alphabetically in twenty-eight sections, corresponding with the letters of the Arabic alphabet.

Spring (Bahár), containing four Rose-bowers (Gulzár):

(i) On the interpretation of dreams;
(ii) Names of certain halting-places of the author on his travels;
(iii) Various anecdotes;
(iv) Conclusion.
The book contains a great deal of miscellaneous biographical and geographical information, which, owing to the alphabetical arrangement generally observed, and the very full table of contents prefixed, is fairly accessible to the reader. The author was full of curiosity, and, though unable to visit Europe, lost no opportunity of cultivating the society of European travellers and acquainting himself with the peculiarities of their countries by hearsay. Under the article *Firang* (pp. 385–7) he discusses the general characteristics of the chief European nations, amongst whom he puts the French first, the Austrians second, and the English third; and he gives a long account of his conversations with an Englishman whom he calls “Mr Wilklís” (مستقبل وكليس)\(^1\) and with whom he became acquainted at ‘Azîmábâd. He also cultivated the society of the Austrian ambassador at Constantinople, who invited him to visit his country, “but,” he concludes, “since there was no great spiritual advantage to be gained by travelling in that country, I declined.” More valuable is his account of the various religions and sects of Asia, in which he treats, amongst other matters, of the Zoroastrians, Mazdakites, Jews, Christians, Hindús, Šúfís and Ghulát (extreme Shi‘a).

It would be impossible to notice here the many excellent books of reference, historical, biographical and geographical, which have been produced in Persia since the middle of the nineteenth century. Many of them, it is true, are for the most part compiled and condensed from older works, both Arabic and Persian, but some contain valuable new matter, not to be found elsewhere. Something must, however, be said as to certain peculiarities connected with this later literature and with the world of books in modern Persia. European students of Persian are, as a rule, unless they have lived in that country, accustomed to think in terms of

\(^1\) Perhaps a corruption of Wilkins (ويلكنس).
manuscripts, and to turn to Dr Rieu's admirable catalogues of the British Museum MSS. for information as to literary history. But since the introduction into Persia of printing and lithography, especially since about 1880, the importance of the manuscript literature has steadily diminished, the more important books written being either transferred to stone or set up in type from the original copy. This printed and lithographed literature has not hitherto received nearly so much attention as the older manuscript literature, and it is often impossible to obtain ready and trustworthy information as to the authors and contents of these modern books. The recent publication of Mr Edwards's *Catalogue of the Persian printed books in the British Museum*1 marks a great step in advance of anything previously accomplished, but the notices are necessarily very brief, and contain, as a rule, no particulars about the authors and only the most general indication of the character of their works. What is needed is a *catalogue raisonné* of Persian books composed during the last century and lithographed or printed in Persia, for it is much easier, for reasons which will be stated immediately, to ascertain what has been published in Persian in Turkey, Egypt and India.

The fact is that the Persian book trade is in the most chaotic condition. There are no publishers or booksellers of substance, and no book-catalogues are issued. Most books have no fixed price or place of sale; many have no pagination; hardly any have indexes or tables of contents. Often books comprising several volumes change their size and shape, their plan, and even their nature, as they proceed, while the author not unfrequently changes his title. Let us take as an illustration a few of the numerous works of reference published under the name of Mírzá Muhammad Hasan Khán, who successively bore the titles of Şanfū'd-

---

1 London, 1922: 968 columns. The works are arranged under their authors, but there is a General Index of Titles and a Subject Index.
Dawla, Mü'tamanu's-Sultán, and I'tima'du'd-Dawla, and was the son of Hájji 'Ali Khán of Marágha, originally entitled Hájjib'u'd-Dawla and later I'tima'du's-Sultán. Now first of all it is very doubtful whether these books were really written by Şanfu'd-Dawla at all; at any rate it is commonly asserted that he coerced various poor scholars to write them, and ascribed the authorship to himself, proceedings of which the latter must be regarded as wholly reprehensible, whatever may be said in extenuation of the former. In 1293/1876 he published the first volume of the *Mírátul-Buldán* ("Mirror of the Lands"), a geographical dictionary of Persian towns and villages, largely based on Yáqút's well-known Arabic *Mu'jamul-Buldán*, containing the first four letters of the alphabet (١ to ١٠). Of this volume, however, there appear to have been two editions, the first ending with the notice of Tabríz and containing 388 pages, the second, published a year later (1294/1877), extending to Tihrán, and containing 606 pages. Having reached Tihrán, however, the author, growing tired, apparently, of geography, decided to continue his work as a history of the reigning king Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh, and to add at the end of each remaining volume a Calendar and Court Directory for the current year. Vol. ii, therefore, comprises the first fifteen years of the Sháh's reign (298 pp.) and the Calendar (45 pp.) for the year of publication (1295/1878). Vol. iii continues on the same lines, and contains the years xvi—xxiii of the current reign (264 pp.) and the Calendar (50 pp.). At this point, however, the author seems to have remembered his original plan, and in vol. iv he continues the geographical dictionary with the next two letters of the alphabet (١١ and ١٢), at which point he reverts to history, and gives an account of the events of the year of publication (1296/1879), followed by the annual Calendar. More-

1 See my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*, pp. 156 and 164-6.
over, in order to celebrate this reconciliation of geography and history, the size of this fourth volume is suddenly enlarged from $10\frac{1}{2} \times 6\frac{3}{4}$ inches to $13\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{4}$ inches.

By this time the author appears to have grown weary of the "Mirror of the Lands," for after a year's rest he began the publication of a new book entitled *Muntaṣam-i-Nāṣirī*, of which also three volumes appeared in the years 1298–1300/1881–3. Of these three volumes I possess only the first and the third. The first contains an outline of Islamic history from A.H. 1–656 (A.D. 622–1258), that is, of the history of the Caliphate (pp. 3–239), followed by an account of the chief events of the solar year beginning in March, 1880, both in Persia and Europe (pp. 239–57), and the usual Calendar and Court Directory (42 pp.). The third volume contains a history of the reigning Qājār dynasty from 1194/1779 to 1300/1882 (pp. 32–387), followed again by the Calendar for the last mentioned year.

Next year the author began the publication of a new work in three volumes entitled *Maṭlaʾuʾsh-Shams* ("the Dawning-place of the Sun"). This opens with a perfunctory apology for the incomplete condition in which the "Mirror of the Lands" was left. However, says he, since the next two letters of the alphabet are ḥā (ح) and kḥā (خ), and since Khurāsān is the most important province beginning with the latter, and since His Majesty Nāṣiru’d-Dīn Shāh, whose faithful servant he is, and to whom this and his other works are dedicated, had recently made the journey thither in order to visit the holy shrine of the Imām ʿAlī Riḍā at Mashhad, he has decided to devote this book to an account of that province, which, since it lies to the East, is hinted at in the title. In the first volume (published in 1301/1884) he accordingly describes the route to Mashhad by way of Damāwand, Fīrūzkūh, Bīstām, Bujnūrūd and Qūchān, giving a full account of each of these places and the intervening stations.
The second volume (published in 1302/1885) contains a detailed description of Mashhad, its monuments, its history from 428/1036 to 1302/1885, the most notable men to whom it has given birth, a monograph on the eighth Imam ‘Alí Ridá, and in conclusion (pp. 469–500) a valuable list of the books contained in the Mosque library. In the midst of all this topographical matter is inserted (pp. 165–216) the text of Sháh Ṭahmásp’s diary, of which such free use was made in a previous chapter. The third volume (published in 1303/1886) contains an account of the Sháh’s return journey by the ordinary Pilgrim route through Níshápúr, Sabzawár, Sháhrúíd, Dámhán and Samnán, with full descriptions of these and the intervening stations, and biographical notices of eminent men connected with each. A Sál-náma, or Calendar and Court Directory for the current year, completes each volume, and it is only fair to add that the price of each is stated on the last page as twelve gráns, at that time about seven shillings.

Henceforward most of Muhammad Hasan Khán’s numerous works included a Sál-náma, or “Year Book” for the current year, placed at the end of each volume and having a separate pagination. His biographies of eminent Muslim women, entitled Khayrámun Hisánun, published in three volumes in the years 1304–7/1887–90, lacks this addition, which is, however, found in the Kitábul-Madáthir wa’l-Áthár (published in 1306/1888–9), on the Memorabilia of forty years of the reign of Násiru’d-Dín Sháh, an invaluable book of reference for students of the history, biography and evolution of modern Persia down to the date of publication. The plan of a geographical dictionary was taken up by another writer, Muḥammad Taqí Khán called Ḥakím, who in 1305/1887–8 published, under the title of Ganj-i-Dánish (“the Treasure of Learning”), a com-

1 See pp. 84 et seqq. supra.
complete Encyclopaedia of Persian place-names comprising 574 large pages. One welcome feature of this book is that the author prefixes a long list of the authorities and books of which he made use in his compilation. This includes a number of European (including ancient Greek) works.

These Persian lithographed books, notwithstanding their shortcomings, are, as a rule, pleasant to handle, well written, well bound, and printed on good paper. Some of them, like the Khaṭṭ u Khattātān ("Calligraphy and Calligraphists") of Mīrzā-yi-Sanglākh, and the excellent edition of the Mathnawī with Concordance of Verses (Kashfu’l-Abyāt) associated with the name of ‘Alá’u’d-Dawla, are really beautiful books, while almost all are far superior to the Indian lithographs. They are, however, hard to obtain in Europe, and indeed anywhere outside Ţihrán, Tabrīz and perhaps Isfahān. Even the British Museum collection is very far from complete, while my own collection, originally formed by purchase in Persia\(^1\), owes much to the fact that I was able to add to it a number of volumes from two very notable Persian libraries, those of the late M. Charles Schefer and of the late Sir A. Houtum-Schindler. As has been already said, few greater services could be rendered to Persian scholarship than the proper cataloguing and describing of these lithographs, and the devising of means to place them on the European book-market. Since lithography can be carried on with simple apparatus and without any great technical skill or outlay of money, it is often practised by comparatively poor scholars and bibliophiles, who print very small editions which are soon exhausted, so that many books of this class rank rather with manuscripts than with printed books in rarity and desirability\(^2\).

\(^1\) For a list of the books I bought in Persia in the autumn of 1888, see my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 554-7.

\(^2\) Compare p. 551 of the book mentioned in the preceding footnote.
CHAPTER X.

THE MOST MODERN DEVELOPMENTS
(A.D. 1850 ONWARDS).

I have endeavoured to show that under the Qájár Dynasty, especially since the middle of the nineteenth century, the old forms of literature, both prose and verse, took on a fresh lease of life, and, so far from deteriorating, rose to a higher level than they had hitherto reached during the four centuries (roughly speaking A.D. 1500–1900) with which we are dealing in this volume. We must now consider three or four quite recent developments due in the first instance to what Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí Khán "Tarbiyat," the real author of my Press and Poetry in Modern Persia (pp. 154–66), calls "Modernizing Influences in the Persian Press other than Magazines and Journals." Amongst these he assigns an important place to the various scientific text-books compiled by, or under the supervision of, the numerous Europeans appointed as teachers in the Dáru'l-Funún and the Military and Political Colleges in Ţihrán from A.D. 1851 onwards, and the Persian translations of European (especially French) books of a more general character, such as some of Molière's plays and Jules Verne's novels, which resulted from an increased interest in Europe and knowledge of European languages. Of such books, and of others originally written in Persian in this atmosphere, he gives a list containing one hundred and sixty-two entries, which should be consulted by those who are interested in this matter. (The Revolution of A.D. 1906, with the remarkable development of journalism which it brought about, and the increase of facilities for printing resulting from this, gave a fresh
impulse to this movement, which, checked by the difficulties and miseries imposed on Persia by the Great War, seems now again to be gathering fresh impetus. What we have to say falls under three heads, the Drama, Fiction and the Press, of which the first two need not detain us long.

The Drama.

The only indigenous form of drama is that connected with the Muharram mournings, the so-called "Passion Plays" discussed in a previous chapter, and even in their case it is not certain that they owe nothing to European influence. Three at least of Molière's plays (Le Médecin malgré lui, Le Misanthrope, and another entitled The Ass, which I think must be intended for L'Étouffé) have appeared in Persian translations, but are seldom met with, and seem never to have attained any great popularity. I possess only Le Misanthrope, printed at Constantinople in the Tašwirê-Aslâşr Press in 1286/1869-70. The title is rendered as Gusârîsh-i-Mardum-gurlz ("the Adventure of him who fled from mankind"), the characters are Persianized, and the text is in verse and follows the original very closely, though occasionally Persian idioms or proverbs are substituted for French. Here, for instance, is the rendering—in this case a paraphrase—of the "Vieille chanson" in Act I, Scene 2:

"Si le roi m'avait donné
    Paris, sa grand' ville,
    Et qu'il me fallût quitter
    L'amour de ma mie,
    Je dirais au roi Henri
    'Reprennez votre Paris,
    J'aime mieux ma mie, o gai!
    J'aime mieux ma mie!'"

1 Pp. 172-94 supra.
گر بیک موی تُرک شیرازی،
بدهد پاده بین شیراز،
گویار ای پادشاه گریه پُرود;
شهر شیراز شیری بی انباز;
ترک شیراز کافی است مرا;
شهر شیراز خوشیش بستن پاز;

The following Persian version of Act II, Scene 7, if compared with the original, will give a fair idea of the translator's method. The characters are Mū'nis (Alceste), Fatīna (Célèmènè), Laylá (Éliante), Naṣīk (Acaste), Naʿīm Beg (Philinte) and Farrāš (un garde de la Maréchaussée):

مخصوص (به پیش درواش می‌برود)...چه هست فرمایش؟

پیا به پیتا!
فراش دارم دو حرف با سرکار;
مخصوص توان دو حرف خودت را کنی بند اظهار;
فراخ رئیس دیوان آنرا که بندام فرخاش;
مرای بست بدادست حکم حاضر باش;

بتو...

مخصوص بکه؟ بین?

آری بتو;
فراخ برای چه‌خار;
مخصوص بحرف مفت (امیدی) و حضرت سرکار;
فتینه بانصح: چسان؟

ناصحت او او کشته‌اند دست و بغل;
بنچند شعر که تاذاده‌است وقع و محل;
امیدی و اوکشته‌اند دست و بغل;

کنون ز پیش بخواهند بست وارده گدار.
من و مداهنده هرگز نمی‌کنیم اقیان
و لیک حکر پنین رفته هیچ بجنپ ازجا
مؤسس میان ما چه بخواهند داد صلح و صفا
بنا به‌پاره‌ای به‌دست‌گان مکرو بود تنسئ
که شعرهای بد می‌بردمن چنی تصدیق
از آن‌چه گفتتم انگار نیست زان مرجو
بتد است هرچه بخواهی
و لیک مضمون نو

مؤسس نمی‌توان گذرم شعرها پر و یپچ است
قبول رای تو خواهند و چاگ خواهش هست
بی‌بی!
میرم اما نمی‌توان ابداً
ز راپ خویش بگردم
بی‌بی تو خوهد بنمای
مؤسس مکرو بحکر شیخ خاص گردود و منسوب
که شعرهای سبز‌یده یافت باید خوب
و گوزه فاش بگویم که شعرهای بندند
بی‌بی این‌که چنین شاعران بدار کشند
(به نعمان بنک و نعیم بنک همین که دید می‌خندند)
حقیقت که چنین سنگره هر ییود کبان
که بوده با‌شیر و هستی‌بان!

روان شو هان!

فتن‌ه
کجا شمارا باید
روم وی در درم
پیاپی اینجا تا خش مکش برم از هم
No indication of the translator's identity appears on the title-page of my edition, nor is there any prefatory matter. Curiously enough, in the very same year in which this Persian version of *Le Misanthrope* was published (1286/1869–70) Ahmed Vefiq (Ahmad Wafiq) Pasha printed his Turkish translations of *George Dandin, Le Médecin malgré lui*, and *Le Mariage Forcé*, while Tartufe appeared in Turkish somewhat later.

In 1291/1874 there was lithographed in Tihrân a volume containing seven Persian plays with an Introduction on the educational value of the stage by Mirzá Ja'far Qarája-dághí's plays. These plays were originally written in Ádharbáyjání Turkish by Mirzá Fath-‘Alí Darbandí, and were published in Tiflis about A.D. 1861. Five of them have been republished in Europe, with glossaries, notes and in some cases translations. These are (1) the *Wazir of Lankurán*, text, translation, vocabulary and notes, by W. H. D. Haggard and G. le Strange (London, 1882); (2) *Trois Comédies traduites du dialecte Turc Azeri en Persan et publiées... avec un glossaire et des notes* par C. Barbier de Meynard et S. Guyard (Paris, 1886); (3) *Monsieur Jourdan*, with translation, notes, etc. edited by A. Wahrmund (Vienna and Leipzig, 1889). The three comedies contained in No. 2 are the “Thief-catching Bear” (*Khirs-i-guldúr-básán*), “the Advocates” (*Wukalá-yi-Muráfa‘a*), and “the Alchemist” (*Mullá Ibráhím Khalil-i-Kiniyá-gar*). The two remaining plays, hitherto unpublished in Europe, are “the Miser” (*Mard-i-Khasát*) and “Yúsuf Sháh the Saddler.”

2 Ibid., p. 59 and n. 1 ad calc.
3 “The Alchemist” was translated by G. le Strange in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1886 (pp. 103–26); “Yúsuf Sháh” in the same *Journal* for 1895 (pp. 537–59) by Colonel Sir E. Ross; and the text of the same was published in 1889 at Madras by E. Sell. See E. Edwards's *Catalogue of the Persian printed books in the British Museum*, 1922, col. 207–8.
Three more plays, written at a date unknown to me, by the late Prince Malkom Khán, formerly Persian Minister in London, were partly published as a feuilleton (*pá-waraq*) in the Tabríz newspaper *Ittiḥād* ("Union") in 1326/1908. A complete edition, from a copy in the library of Dr. F. Rosen, the well-known scholarly German diplomatist, was published in 1340/1921–2 by the "Kaviani" Press in Berlin. These plays are (1) the "Adventures of Ashraf Khán, Governor of 'Arabistán, during his sojourn in Tihrán in 1232/1817"; (2) the "Methods of Government of Zamán Khán of Burújird," placed in the year 1236/1820–1; and (3) "Sháh-qulí Mírzá goes to Karbalá and spends some days at Kirmánsháh with the Governor Sháh Murád Mírzá."

Finally in 1326/1908 there appeared at Tihrán a bi-weekly newspaper called "the Theatre" (*Tiyáṭr*) which published plays satirizing the autocratic régime. I possess only a few numbers, containing part of a play entitled "Shaykh 'Alí Mírzá, Governor of Maláyir and Túysirkán, and his marriage with the daughter of the King of the Fairies."

These are all the Persian plays I have met with¹. All are comedies, and all are satires on the administrative or social conditions of Persia. In the "Wazír of Lankurán" a rather weak and common-place love-story is combined with the satire, but generally speaking this element is lacking, and the object of the writer is simply to arouse dislike and contempt for the old-fashioned methods of government. In other words, these productions, like the "Travels of Ibráhím Beg," of which we shall shortly have

¹ Since this was written I have come across a little comedy entitled "Ja'far Khán comes from Europe" (جوْطور خان از فرآینگ آمده) by Ḥasan Muqaddam, printed at Tihrán and actually performed there about two years ago.
to speak, are primarily political pamphlets rather than plays. Hardly one of them has ever been acted on the stage, and none has produced an effect comparable to Kemál Bey's Turkish play *Wašan, yakhod Silistra*. In short the drama has not succeeded in establishing itself in Persia even to the extent which it has done in Turkey.

**The Novel.**

Of stories after the style of the "Arabian Nights" or the more popular and indigenous "Husayn the Kurd" there is in Persia no end, but of the novel properly so called there is even less to be said than of the drama. Two rather ambitious attempts in this direction have recently come under my notice, and it is characteristic of recent tendencies to glorify Zoroastrian Persia that both of them deal with pre-Islamic times, the one with Cyrus, the other with Qubád and his son and successor Anúsharwán (Núshírwán) and the heresiarch Mazdak.

The former (or rather the first volume of it, which, to judge by the colophon, was intended to be followed by two more volumes) was completed in 1334/1916, and printed at Hamadán in 1337/1919. It is entitled "Love and Lordship" (*Išq u Šáṭānát*), and was written by a certain Shaykh Músá, Director of the "Nušrat" Government College at Hamadán, who was good enough to send me a copy in January, 1920. It is described in the colophon as "the first novel (roman) composed in Persia in the Western fashion":

\[
\text{و می توان گفت اوایین زمانی است که در ایران با اسلوب مغربی}
\]

\[
\text{زمین تأليف شده}
\]

---

1 Gibb (op. *laud.*, vol. v, p. 15) alludes very briefly to the outbreak of patriotic enthusiasm aroused by this play "Fatherland" when it was first acted in the theatre of Gedik Pasha. Sultan ‘Abdu’ll-‘Azíz was highly displeased and alarmed, and banished Kemál Bey to Famagusta in Cyprus.
It aims at being a historical novel, but the proper names generally have their French, not their Old Persian, forms, e.g. "Mitrâdât" (correctly explained as Mihr-dâd), "Akbâtân" (Ecbatana, instead of Hagmatâna, for Hamadân), "Agrâdât," "Ispákû (Spako)" and "Siyákzar" (Cyaxares, for Huvakhshatara), though Cambyses (Kambûjiya) takes the intermediate form "Kâmbûziyâ." The lengthy descriptions of the scenes and persons introduced into the story, and the numerous dialogues are evidently copied from European models. The story itself, into which an element of love as well as of war is introduced, is readable if not very thrilling, but is overloaded with dates, archaeological and mythological notes, and prolix historical dissertations ultimately based for the most part on the statements of Herodotus mixed with information derived from the Avesta. There is no attempt to make use of archaic language or to eschew the use of Arabic words, but the author has at any rate avoided glaring anachronisms. The following short extract (p. 247) from the description of the preparations for the marriage of Cyrus will suffice to show how far removed is the style of this book from that of the type of story hitherto current in Persia:

"Yes! These preparations are the preparations for a wedding, and I do not think that it can be the wedding of anyone else than Cyrus, the mighty King of Persia and Media, for today none but he commands in so great a measure the affection of the people of Ecbatana, so that they regard his wedding as a great festival, and have decorated the bazaars, and from the bottom of their hearts make manifest their joy and gladness."

B. P. L.
I do not know what measure of success this "historical novel" has achieved in Persia, nor did I ever meet with more than the one copy sent me by the author, accompanied by a letter dated 4 Safar, 1338 (Oct. 30, 1919), in which he requested me to review it in the *Times*. I hope he will accept this brief notice as the best I can do to make his book known in Europe as a praiseworthy attempt to instruct while entertaining his countrymen, and to introduce a literary form hitherto unknown in Persia.

The second of the two historical novels mentioned above was printed at Bombay in 1339/1920–1, was written by San'atī-żāda of Kirmān, and is entitled "the Ensnarers: or the Avengers of Mazdak." Like the last it is incomplete, for it ends (on p. 110) with the words "here ends the first volume," though how many more the author intended to add does not appear, nor do I know whether any further instalment was actually published. In general style it much resembles "Love and Lordship," but presents more archaeological errors, as, for instance, where (p. 10) a portrait of the Sasanian king Bahrām Gūr is described as bearing a label written in the cuneiform character (*khāṭt-i-mikhī*).

Before leaving this subject I must at least mention a Persian translation of three episodes in the career of the immortal Sherlock Holmes, translated from a Russian version by Mīr Isma'īl 'Abdu'llāh-żāda, and printed at the Khurshid Press in Ţihrān in 1323/1905–6. They are entitled respectively the "Episode of the Gold Spectacles," the "Account of Charles Augustus Milverton," and "the Village Lords." Holmes in passing through a Russian medium has been transmuted into "Khums" (خممس) or "Khūmis" (خممس): Dr Watson

1 دام گسترند یاد اتقام خواهان مزرعک
2 The original is entitled "the Adventure of Appledore Towers."
has been more fortunate. The adventures are narrated in the simplest possible style, and would form an admirable reading-book for beginners in Persian, if the book were obtainable in any quantity, which is unlikely. In Turkey Sherlock Holmes had an enormous success, and I remember a news-vendor on one of the Bosphorus steamers offering me a Turkish version of the "Engineer's Thumb," while the late Sultan 'Abdu'l-Ḥamid was said to entertain the greatest admiration for Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, and to desire above all things to put him in charge of his Secret Police.

It is hard to say whether Ḥājjī Zaynu'l-ʿĀbidīn of Marāgha's fictitious "Travels (Siyāḥat-nāma) of Ibrāhīm Beg," which, according to Mirzā MuhammadʿAlī Khān "Tarbiyat," had an appreciable effect in precipitating the Persian Revolution of A.D. 1905–6, should be reckoned as a novel or not. The hero and his adventures are, of course, fictitious, but there is little exaggeration, and they might well be actual. The book is a bitter satire on Persian methods of government and social conditions, which are depicted in the most sombre colours, with the definite object of arousing discontent in order to bring about reform. The Persians are very sensitive to ridicule, but on the whole bear it much better than most European nations, and most Persian reformers have made extensive use of satire as a means of promoting their objects. This Siyāḥat-nāma is well and powerfully written in a simple yet forcible style, and I know of no better

---

1 See my Press and Poetry of Modern Persia, pp. 22 and 164. The Persian text was printed in three volumes, the first at Cairo without date; the second at Calcutta in 1323/1905, though publication was apparently delayed until 1907; the third at Constantinople in 1327/1909. The name of the author appears only on the title-page of vol. iii. A German version of the first volume by Dr Walter Schulz was published at Leipzig in 1903 with the title Zustände im heutigen Persien wie sie das Reisebuch Ibrahīm Begs enthüllt.

30—2
reading-book for the student who wishes to obtain a good knowledge of the current speech and a general, if somewhat lurid, idea of the country.

In this connection mention should also be made of the Persian translation made by the talented and unfortunate Hájjí Shaykh Ahmad "Rúhí" of Kirmán of Morier's Hájjí Bábá, published by Colonel D. C. Phillott at Calcutta in 1905¹. This book, like the last, is a clever satire on the Persians, the more remarkable as being the work of a foreigner; but it belongs rather to the domain of English than Persian literature. All that I had to say about it is contained in the Introduction (pp. ix–xxiii) which I contributed to the edition published by Messrs Methuen in 1895, and all that need be said about the Persian translator and his work has been well said by Colonel Phillott in his Introduction to the Persian text.

The Press.

Of Persian Journalism, which has been the most powerful modernizing influence in Persia, I have treated so fully in a previous monograph on the subject² that little need be said here, save by way of summary. Printing was introduced into Persia about a century ago by ʿAbbás Mirzá, and the first Persian newspaper appeared about A.D. 1851, in the third year of Náṣiru’d-Dín Sháh’s reign. It was soon followed by others, but these early news-sheets, issued by the Government, were entirely colourless, and even when I was in Persia in 1887–8 the only Persian newspaper worth reading was the Akhtár ("Star"), published weekly at Constantinople. It was founded in 1875, and lasted about twenty years. Prince Malkom Kháñ’s Qánún ("Law")

¹ See pp. vii–viii of the English Introduction to this work, and also my Persian Revolution, pp. 93–6.
appeared in 1890 and was printed and published in London, but in consequence of its violent attacks on the Persian Government, the Sháh, and his Ministers, its circulation in Persia was prohibited. The Calcutta *Hablu’l-Matin* first appeared in 1893, the *Thurayyá* ("Pleiades") in Cairo in 1898, and the *Parwarish*, which replaced it, in 1900. These were the most important Persian papers published outside Persia, and it was not until 1907, when the Revolution was an accomplished fact, and the conflict between King and Parliament was at its height, that independent and influential newspapers began to appear in Persia itself. Amongst the most interesting of these from a literary point of view I should place the *Súr-i-Isráfil* ("Trumpet of Isráfil"—the Angel of the Resurrection), the *Nastín-i-Shimál* ("Breeze of the North"), the *Mušáwát* ("Equality"), and the *Naw Bahár* ("Early Spring").

The first, second, and fourth of these supplied me with many fine poems from the pens of Dakhaw, Sayyid Ashraf of Gilán, and Bahá’í of Mashhad, for my *Press and Poetry in Modern Persia*, but the *Charand-parand* ("Charivari") column of the *Súr-i-Isráfil* also contained some excellent and original prose writing of which I shall now give two specimens, since they are unlike anything else which I have met with in Persian. Both are by Dakhaw: the first appeared in No. 1 of the *Súr-i-Isráfil* (May 30, 1907); the second in No. 2 (June 6, 1907).

بعد از چندین سال مسافرت هندوستان و دیدن ابدال و اوتاد و مبارز در کیمیا و لیبیا و سیمای الحمد لله بتجربه بزرگی نائل شدم و آن دوا و ترک تریاک است؛ اگر این دوا دارا در هر یک از مبالک خارجه کنی یک پیگ میکرد ناچار صاحب امتیاز میشد؛
انعامات می‌کردند در همه روزنامه‌ها نامش بیبرزگی درج می‌شد.

اما چکنگی که در ایران قدردانی بوده‌ایستاده است.

عادت طبیعت ثانویه است همینکه خود بکاری عادت ضرر دیگر
باوند آسانیه‌ها نیز واند ترک می‌کند؛ علاقه مندی به مصرف باین است که
بتورتیب مخصصی برور زمان شد ونزن کند تا وقتهن کشی به‌کلی از سرش
به‌پیش‌د،

حالا من بحث برادران مسلمان غیر تریاکی خود اعلان می‌کنار
که ترک تریاک می‌کنیم است باونکه اول‌ا در امر ترک جزام و مصمم
باشدند، ثانیاً مثلای یک نفر که رویتی دو مثال تریاک می‌خوردی روزی
یک گنده از تریاک خود کردی دو گنده مرفی نبایی آن زیاد کنند;
و کسی که در مثال تریاک می‌کشد روزی یک نخود کنر
دو نخود حشیش اضافه نمایید و همین طور مداومت کند تا وقتهنی
دو مثال تریاک خوورندی به چهار مثال مرفی نه و دو مثال تریاک
کشیدنی به بیست مثال حشیش برسد، بعد از آن تبدیل خوردین
مرفین به آب دزدی مرفین و تبدیل حشیش خروردین روغ وحمد
بسیار آسان است، برادران غیر تریاکی می‌نر در صورتیه خدا
کارهارا این طور آسان خرده چرا خودتان از زحمت حرفه‌ای
مفت مردم و تلف کردن این همه مال و وقت نیب رهایید;
ترک عادت در صورتیه باین قسر بشود موجب مرط نیست و کار
خیلی آسان است;

و همیشه برترگان و مشخص‌های هر که می‌خواهند عادت زشتی
در سر مردم بی‌برزند همین طور می‌کرده مثلاب بی‌برزید واقعاً شاعر
خوب کمپتسته عقل و دوت قربن یکدیگرگردست، مثلاه وقته‌ن
برترگان ما فکر می‌کردن که مردم فقیرند و استطاعت نان گنهر
خوردن ندارند و رعایت همه عمیرشرا باید بزرگارت گنهر صرف
کند و خودش همیشه کرسته باشد به بییند چه می‌کنند?
روز اول سال نانرا با گندم خالص می پزند، روز دوم در هر خوروار یک من تلخه، جو، سیاه دانه، خالک آره، یونجه، شن، مثلا مختصر عرض میکنیم. کلوخ، چارمه، گلوله، هشت مثنوی میزنند. معلوم است در یک خوروار گندم که صد من است یک من ازین چیزها همچ معلوم نیشود، رزدرور دو من میزنند، روز سوم سه من، و بعد ازسند روز که سه ماه و ده روز بیشتر صد من گندم صد من تلخه، جو، سیاه دانه، خالک آره، کاه، بونجه، شن، شده است در صورتی که همچ دست مفتت نشده و عادت نان گندم خوردن هر از سرموف افتاده است،

واقعاً همه عقل و دولت قربن یکدیگر است.

برادوین غیرب تابعی یک دانه میدانند که انسان عالم صغير است و شناخت یکبار بعلام کبیر دارد یعنی مثلا هرچه چیزی که برای انسان دست میدهد میکن است برای حیوان، درخت، سنگ، کلوخ، در، دیوا، کو، درد هم یافته بیفتند و هرچه چیزی هم برای اینها دست میدهد برای انسان هم دست میدهد چرا که انسان عالم صغير است و آنها جزو عالم کبیر، مثلا این زا مایکوست بگویید همان طور که میکن است عادتی را از سر موم انداخت همان طور هم میکن است عادتی را از سر سنگ و کلوخ و اجر انداخت چرا که میان عالم صغير و عالم کبیر مشابهت تیبار است، پس چه انسانی باشد که از سنگ و کلوخ هم کبیر باشد.

مثلا یک مربی‌خانه، حاجی شیخ هادی مجتبی مرحم ساخت موقوفاتی هم برای آن معین صرفا که همیشه بازده نفر مربی در آنجا باشد، تا حاجی شیخ هادی حیات داشت مربی‌خانه بیاورد نفر مربی عادت کرده، همینکه حاجی شیخ هادی مرحم شد طلب مرد به بهر ارتش گفتند. ما وقتی تورا آذا میدانیم که
Translation.

"After several years travelling in India, seeing the invisible saints, and acquiring skill in Alchemy, Talismans and Necromancy, thank God, I have succeeded in a great experiment; no less than a method for curing the opium-habit! If any one in any foreign country had made such a discovery, he would certainly have received decorations and rich rewards, and his name would have been mentioned with honour in all the newspapers. But what can one do, since in Persia no one recognizes merit?

"Custom is a second nature, and as soon as one becomes habituated to any act, one cannot easily abandon it. The only curative method is to reduce it gradually by some special procedure, until it is entirely forgotten.

"To all my zealous, opium-eating, Muslim brethren I now proclaim the possibility of breaking the opium-habit, thus. First, they must be firmly determined and resolved on abandoning it. Secondly, one who, for example, eats two mithgáls of opium daily should every day diminish this dose by a grain (nukhúd) and add two grains of morphine.

1 The Abdál ("Substitutes") and Awtád ("Pegs") are two classes of the Rijálu'l-Ghayb, or "Men of the Unseen World," who play an important part in the cosmogony of the Mystics.

2 Concerning these Occult Sciences, see pp. 441-2 supra.

3 The mithgál = 460 grammes, and is divided into 24 nukhúd ("peas"), each of which consists of 4 grains or barley-corns (gandum)."
in its stead. One who smokes ten mithqâls of opium should daily reduce the amount by one grain, adding instead two grains of hashish (Indian hemp). Thus he should persevere until such time as the two mithqâls of opium which he eats are replaced by four mithqâls of morphine, or the ten mithqâls of opium which he smokes by twenty mithqâls of hashish. After this it is very easy to substitute for morphine pills hypodermic injections of the same, and for hashish ‘curds of Unity’. O my zealous, opium-eating brethren, seeing that God has made matters so easy, why do you not save yourselves from the annoyance of men’s foolish chatter, and the waste of all this time and money? Change of habit, if it be effected in this way, does not cause illness and is a very easy matter.

“Moreover great and eminent men who wish to make people forget some evil habit act in precisely this way. See, for example, how well indeed the poet says that intelligence and fortune are closely connected with one another. For example, when our great men consider that the people are poor and cannot eat wheaten bread, and that the peasant must spend all his life in cultivating wheat, yet must himself remain hungry, see what they do.

“On the first day of the year they bake the bread with pure wheat-flour. On the second day in every hundredweight (kharwâr) they put a maund of bitter apricot stones, barley, fennel-flower, sawdust, lucerne, sand—I put it shortly as an illustration—clods, brick-bats and bullets of eight mithqâls. It is evident that in a hundredweight of corn, which is a hundred maunds, one maund of these things will not be noticed. On the second day they put in two maunds, on the third three, and after a hundred days, which is three months and ten days, a hundred maunds of wheat-flour have become a hundred maunds of bitter apricot stones, barley, fennel-flower, sawdust, chaff, lucerne and sand, and that in such fashion that no one has noticed it, while the wheaten bread habit has entirely passed out of men’s minds.

“In truth intelligence and fortune are closely connected with one another!

“O my zealous, opium-eating brethren! Assuredly you know that man is a little world, and has the closest resemblance to the great world; that is to say, for example, that whatever is possible for man may happen also in the case of animals, trees, stones, clods, doors,

1 Dugh-i-Wahdat, or Banjâb, is a mixture of hashish and curdled milk similar to asrâr, habb-i-nashâf, etc. Bûg-i-Wahdat (“the trumpet of unity”) is the name given by hashish-smokers to a paper funnel through which the smoke of the drug is inhaled.
walls, mountains and seas; and that whatever is possible for these is possible also for men, because man is the microcosm, while these form part of the macrocosm. For example, I wanted to say this, that just as it is possible to put a habit out of men's minds, even so is it possible to put a habit out of the minds of stones, cloths, and bricks, because the closest resemblance exists between the microcosm and the macrocosm. What sort of a man, then, is he who is less than even a stone or a clod?

"For example, the late muṣṭaḥīl Ḥājji Shaykh Ḫāḍī built a hospital and settled on it certain endowments so that eleven sick persons might always be there. So long as Ḥājji Shaykh Ḫāḍī was alive the hospital was accustomed to receive eleven patients. But as soon as Ḥājji Shaykh Ḫāḍī departed this life, the students of the college said to his eldest son, 'We will recognize you as the Master only when you spend the hospital endowments on us!' See now what this worthy eldest son did by dint of knowledge. In the first month he reduced the number of patients by one, in the second by two, in the third by three, in the fourth by four; and so in like fashion until the present time, when the number of patients has been reduced to five, and gradually, by this excellent device, these few also will disappear in the course of the next five months. See then how by wise management it is possible to expel habit from the minds of every one and every thing, so that a hospital which was accustomed to eleven patients has entirely forgotten this habit without falling ill. Why? Because it also forms part of the macrocosm, so that it is possible to drive a habit out of its mind, just as in the case of man, who is the microcosm."

"Dakhwā."

1 See my Persian Revolution, pp. 406-7.
پیدا کرده، در هر حال اگر سؤالی در حیث تو بردهام بايد خیلی خیلی به بخشی عدد میخواهی، باز الحمد لله بسلامت آمدي جای شکری بانی است چرا که خوب سر وقت وسیده، برای اینکه کارها خیلی شلوغ پلوق است.

خدا رفتگان هیهرا بیاموزد خالک خبر نبود. در قاذازان ما یک مال اینکه‌ی داشتی روضه خوان خیلی شوخ بود، حالا نداشتی باشد با من هر خیلی میانه‌ی داشت وقتی که میرفت روضه به‌خواند اوال یک مقدّم‌ه دور و درازی دم، چید، هرچند بی ادبی است می‌گفت مطلب این طور خریشت می‌شود (در یک‌تیلا مناقش‌نیست) بنظرم می آید برای شا هم‌محس اینکه درست بمطلب یک بی‌برید یک مقدّم‌ه بچینه‌ی بد نیست.

در قدیم الایام در دنیا یک دولت ایران بود در همسایگی ایران هی در دولت یونان بود، دولت ایران آن وقت دماغت تُر بی‌بود از خوش‌خیلی رایی بود، یعنی بی‌پدایی می‌شود لول‌نش خیلی آب می‌گرفت، خبادّ ملک البلوکی دنیارا می‌کشد، بله آن وقت در ایران معشوق السلطنه، محروم‌الدوله، عزیز الایاله، خوش‌خیل‌خلوت، قشنک حضرت، ملوس ملک‌بن‌بود، در قصرها همزمانی نشسته‌بودند، ملاهای آن وقت هر بی‌چمای شریعت‌ه حلبب الشریعه، پارک الشریعه نداشتند، خلاصه آن وقت کالسکه‌الإسلام، میز و صندلی‌الیذهب، است روی‌الدین وجود نداشتن، خوش آن روزها واقع‌که درست عید پادشاه وژوزک بود، مخلص طریم‌بیک روز دولت ایران لشکرهای خوش‌خیلی گروه کرده، بوش پوشان رفت تا پشت‌دیوار یونان، برای داخل شدن یونان بک راه بی‌بین‌ند، بِین یک راه هم‌پیکر، چشمه‌ای است، بُن‌مجد آقا سید عزیز الله
بعنی یک راه پاریک دیگر بود ولی لشکر ایران آن راه‌ها بلد نبوده؛ همین‌گونه لشکر ایران پشت دیوار یونان رسید دید این یونان‌ها و بعداز هفت خاطه قشن نگله راه‌ها گرفته‌اند؛ خوب حالا ایران چه خاک بسی رشد ؟ برود چطور برود؛ بر گذارد چطور بر گورد؛ مانده سفیل و سرگردان؛ خدا رهیت کند شاعراً خوب گفت‌مانت (ع) نه در غربت دلم شاد و نه روثی در وطن دارم آنگ؛ از آن‌جا که باید خاک راست بی‌پایید یک دفعه لشکر ایران دیدن یواشکی یک نفر از آن جعفر قلی آقاهای بسی یک ماهر آقاهای قرآنی، به یک نفر غربب نواز یک نفر نوع پرست یک نفر می‌ماند دوست از لشکر یونان جدا شد، و همه جا یا ورچین یا ورچین آمد تا اروی ایران‌ها و گفت سلام علیکم خیر مقدمه خوش یکم می‌فرود؛ سفر به خطر ضمنی آهسته با انشت شادت آن که چه؛ یکم شان‌ها با ایران‌ها نشان داد؛ گفت ما یونان‌ها آن‌جا لشکر نداری‌ها اگر شیما از آن راه بروید می‌توانید مبکارت مارا بگیرید؛ ایران‌ها هم قبول کردند و از آن راه رفتند داخل خاک یونان شدند.

حالا مطلب اینجا نیست، راستی تا یاد نرفته‌های آن غرب نوازرا هم عرض نکنی، هرچند قدری بزبان ما سنین است اما چه می‌شود چکر؛ امش (افلاتس) بود، خدا لعنت کنن شطان را نیست دانی چرا هر وقت من این اسمرا می‌شنوم بعضی سفرای ایران یاده می‌آید؛ باری برویر سر مطلب، در آن وقت هب جناب خطب‌هی غیرت نتيجة علم و سباست معلم مدرسه قراره‌خانه جناب میرزا عبدالله خان مهنده بعد از سه ماه پیادً روش نخستی جنگی را به فرمان‌داران یا برای روسا یک‌شقدم می‌کردند ما دوستان گفت‌مانت چنان آمده با وجود می‌خیفی است که لقب نداشت باشد.
بیست نفر سه شانه روز هم نشسته فکر کرده و چه لقب برای ایشان بگیریم چیزی بعقیمان نرسید! حالا از هی به بدرخ خوشرنگی هم هستند، می‌گویند لقبی که برای من می‌گیرید بايد بگر باشد یعنی پیش از من کس دیگر نگرفته باشد، از مستوفی‌ها پرسردم گفتند و یک لقب بگر نیست، کتاب‌ها یا لغت‌را باید کرده‌بود.
در زبان فارسی عربی ترکی ترکی از الف تا یا یک خاله نیست که اقلام ده دفعه لقب نشره باشد، خوب حالا چه کنیم؟ یعنی خدارا خوش می‌آید این آدم همین طور بی لقب بماند.
از آنجا که کارها بايد راست بی‌بیٍید یک روز من در کمال اوقات تلخی کتاب تاربخی که جلو دستم بود بر داشتم که خودم را مشغول کنم همینکه کتاب‌ها بار بر نگه دارم در صفه؛ دست راست سطر اوّل دیدم نوشته است (از آن روز بعد یونانیها یا کاتالان‌ خائن گفتند و خوش‌را هدر کردن) ای لعنت بشما یونانیها مکر افیاتس بشما چه کرده بود که شما او را خائن بگوئید، مکر می‌ماند نوازی در من‌های شما طرف بود؛ مکر که گویبد پرستی شها اعتقاد نداشتید؟ خلاصه همینکه این اسرار دیدم که تمیه ببترا از این نیست که این اسرار بجوی جناب میرزا عبد الرزاق خان لقب بگیریم چرا که هم بگر بود هم این دو نفر شاهد کامل ببه‌داستند این غرب نواز او هم بود این می‌مانند بست بود او هم بود این می‌دانند اگر از این کارا نمی کردی دیکری می‌کردی او هم می‌دانند تنبی یک فرق در میانه بود که تکمیلمان سرداری افیاتس از چوب جنگل وطن نیز، خور نباشد این جزئیات قابل ملاحظه نیست، مخلص کلمه، ما دوستان جمع شدیدی‌بک می‌ماندی دادی‌با ساکری‌فاک تلگراف‌هه به‌کاشان زوده‌بک چنه شیشه کلاپ قم‌مست و دوگوجه جوزفرن‌زود بفرستند که به‌هیل لقب‌را بگیریم، در همین حیص و بص جناب
Translation.

Charand-parand. City letter.

"Kablāfī! Dakhaw!

"In old days you used sometimes to be a help to people: if any difficulty befel your friends, you used to solve it. Latterly, there being no sign or sound of you, I kept telling myself that perhaps you too had taken to opium and were lolling at the foot of the brazier in the corner of the room. Now don't tell me that you, you queer mug, quietly, without any one's knowledge (I do not know whether in order to study Alchemy, Talismans and Necromancy, as you have written in the Sūr-i-Isrāfīl) have cut and run to India. Surely then you have found the key to a treasure also! At any rate, if I have entertained an unworthy suspicion of you, you must

1 For the half slang use of "Kablāfī" (=Karbalā'fī), see my Press and Poetry of Modern Persia, pp. 179–82.
2 Lam dādan (slang), "to loll, lounge."
3 Equivalent to baliki, "perhaps."
4 Nāqūlāy huqqā, explained as equivalent to the French "drôle de type."
forgive me: I ask your pardon! Anyhow, praise be to God, you have got safely back, a lasting cause of thankfulness, for you have come at just the right moment, seeing that affairs are all topsy-turvy.

"May God forgive everybody's departed friends! May the earth not whisper it to him! In Qâqâzân we had a certain Mullâ Ínak-'Alî, a rawda-khwân and a very impudent fellow. Whatever may be the case now, he was at that time very thick with me. When he went to recite a rawda, he used first of all to put forward a long-winded prologue. He used to say (saving your presence), 'In this way the matter will be more ass-plain' (no need to quarrel over a mere illustration). It occurs to me that it would not be a bad thing if I too were to begin with a prologue for you, simply in order that you may get the hang of the matter.

"In olden days there was in the world one great Persian Empire with the State of Greece as its neighbour. At that time the Persian Empire was puffed up with pride. It was very well pleased with itself, and, if you will pardon the expression, its pipe took a lot of filling. Its ambition was the King-of-Kingship of the world. Yes, there was then in Persia no 'King's Darling,' 'State's Sweetheart,' 'Pet of the Province,' 'Beauty of the Privy Chamber,' 'Charmer of the Presence,' or 'Minion of the Kingdom.' Nor had they yet made 'slides' in their palaces. Nor did the Mullâs of that time include a 'Club of the Canon Law,' 'Chamberlain of the Canon Law,' or 'Park of the Canon Law.' At that time, in short, there did not exist a 'Carriage of Islam,' 'Table

---

1 This formula is common amongst the Zoroastrians. See my Year amongst the Persians, p. 375. Here it implies that the Mullâ was dead.
2 Ínak is the Turkish for a cow. The name is, of course, meant to be ridiculous. Qâqâzân may be a misprint for Qázân.
3 See pp. 181-2 supra.
4 Hâr chand bi-adâbist, "Although it be an incivility" to use such an expression. Khar-fahm ("ass-plain") means comprehensible to the greatest fool.
5 "To have wind in the brain," a common expression for conceit.
6 Lulâhingâsh khayli dâ mi-girist, "Its jug held a lot of water," said of one who has a great capacity for self-esteem.
7 The innumerable titles conferred by the Persian Government form a constant subject of mockery. The fictitious titles here mentioned are, of course, intended to be both barbarous in form and degrading in meaning.
8 The reference is to the sursurak in the Nigâristân Palace at Tîhrân. See my Year amongst the Persians, p. 96.
and Chair of the Faith,' or 'Russian Horse of Religion.' Fine days were those indeed, which were in truth the time of King Wizwizak! 

"But to be brief. One day the Persian Government collected its armies and quietly advanced to the back of the wall of Greece. Now to enter Greece there was only one way, by which way the Persian army must needs pass. Yes, but behind that way there was a lane like the Āshṭi-kunān ² of the Mosque of Āqā Sayyid 'Azizullāh, that is to say, there was another narrow lane, but the Persian army did not know about it. As soon as the Persian army arrived behind the wall of Greece, they saw that these seven-fold rascals of Greeks had blocked the road with troops. Well, what dust must Persia now scatter on her head? How, if she would advance, should she advance, or how, if she would retreat, could she retreat? She was left abased and confounded. God have mercy on the poet who so well says, 'Neither does my heart rejoice in exile, nor have I any honour in my native land,' etc. But, since things must somehow come right, suddenly the Persian army saw one of those Ja′far-quši Āqās³, a son of the Begler-Āqā of Cossacks, in other words a certain friend of the foreigner and hospitable humanitarian, gently detach himself from the Greek army, and, stepping softly⁴, approach the Persian host. 'Peace be upon you,' said he; 'Your arrival is fortunate! You are welcome! Your visit is a pleasure! May your journey be without danger!' All the while he was quietly pointing out to the Persians with his forefinger that Āshṭi-kunān lane. 'We Greeks,' said he, 'have no troops there. If you go that way, you can take our country.' The Persians agreed, and by that road entered the Greek land.

"This, however, is not the point... By the bye, while I remember, let me mention the name of this foreigner's friend, though it comes a trifle heavy on our tongues; but what is to be done? His name was Ephialtes...God curse the Devil⁵! I don't know why it is that whenever I hear this name I think of some of our Persian Ministers...But let us return to the point.

"When His Excellency, that double-distilled essence of zeal and

1 An imaginary "good time" in the remote past, as we might say "in the days of good King Cole."
2 I understand that this is the name of a narrow lane, or passage, in Ţibrán. It means "Reconciliation Street."
3 The name of a Persian officer in the Cossack Brigade.
4 Pā-war-chin, "picking up the feet."
5 An expression used when some ill-natured or inappropriate idea occurs to the mind, as though it had been suggested by Satan.
sum of science and political acumen, Mírzá 'Abdu'r-Razzáq Khán, engineer, and lecturer in the School of the Cossack barracks, after a three months' pedestrian tour drew for the Russians a military map of the road through Mázandarán, we his friends said, 'It is a pity that such a man of spirit should not have a title.' So some twenty of us sat for three days and nights considering what title we should obtain for him, but nothing occurred to our minds. Worst of all, he was a man of taste. 'Any title obtained for me,' says he, 'must be virgin; that is to say, no one else must have borne it before me.' We enquired of the State Accountants, who said there was no 'virgin title' left. We opened our dictionaries, and found that neither in the languages of the Persians, Arabs, Turks, or Franks from A to Z was there one single word left which had not been employed as a title at least ten times over. Well, what were we to do? Would it be pleasing to God that this man should thus remain untitled?

"However, since such things must come right, one day, being in a state of extreme dejection, I picked up a history book which was at hand in order to distract my mind. No sooner had I opened the book than I read in the first line of the right-hand page: 'Ever afterwards the Greeks stigmatized Ephialtes as a traitor whose blood might lawfully be shed.' O you cursed Greeks, what had poor Ephialtes done to you that you should call him a traitor? Is hospitality to strangers blasphemy in your creed? Do you not believe in kindness to foreigners?

"In short as soon as I saw this name I said, 'Nothing could be better than that we should adopt this name as a title for Mírzá 'Abdu'r-Razzáq Khán, both because it is "virgin," and because these two persons have the closest resemblance to one another. This one was kind to strangers and so was that one. This one was hospitable to guests and so was that one. This one said, "Had I not acted thus, another would have done so," and so did that one. There was only one difference between them, namely, that the buttons of Ephialtes's coat were not made of native forest-wood. Well, supposing they were not, such trifles are unworthy of consideration."

"In short, we friends assembled and gave an entertainment and made great rejoicings. We also instantly despatched a telegram to Káshán bidding them send quickly five bottles of Qamšar rose-water and two boxes of sugared walnuts, so that we might present them [to the Sháh] and secure the title. In the midst of these proceedings Hájji Maliku't-Tujjár conceded the Astárá road to the Russians.

1 This title, "King of the Merchants," was at this time borne by Hájji Muhammad Kázim, whose accomplishments were reputed greater than his honesty.
I don't know what scoundrel told him the history of this title, but he put his two feet in one shoe\(^1\) and declared that he was a heaven-sent genius, and that this title was his rightful property. Now for some months you don't know what a hullabaloo is going on, with Mirzá 'Abdu'r-Razzáq Kháň on the one hand, supported by his science of Geometry, and Hájji Maliku't-Tujjár on the other with his persuasive eloquence and his quotations from the poems of Imru'u'l-Qays and Nášir-i-Khusraw-i-'Alawí. O Kabláfi Dakhaw, you don't know in what toil and moil we are caught! If you can deliver us from this calamity it would be as though you had freed a slave for God's sake, and may God, if He will, forgive your sons!

"May God make one day of your life a hundred years! Today is a day for zealous endeavour. For the rest, you are the best judge. I have nothing more to submit.

"Your faithful servant, Gadfly."

It is difficult in a translation to do justice to these articles, which mark an absolutely new departure in Persian satire, and are written in a style at once idiomatic and forcible. Though they appeared under various pseudonyms, I fancy they were all written by Dakhaw, who, little as he wrote, on the strength of them and a few of his poems\(^2\) deserves, in my opinion, to occupy the first rank amongst contemporary Persian men of letters. It is to be regretted that, though a comparatively young man, he has apparently produced nothing during the last ten or twelve years.

Of the last twelve years I have little to say. The beginning of 1912 saw the culmination of Russian violence and oppression in Persia, and, for the time being, the end alike of liberty and literary effort. Then came the War, when Persia became the passive victim of three contending foreign armies,

---

\(^{1}\) This means to stand firm, be obstinate.

with little profit to expect from the success of any one of them, while there was scarcity everywhere and famine and devastation in the western provinces. To Persia at least the Russian Revolution came as a godsend, while the subsequent withdrawal of Great Britain after the failure of the Anglo-Persian Agreement left her at last more or less mistress in her own house. How far she will be able to make use of the breathing-space thus accorded her remains to be seen.

Surprise has sometimes been expressed that during the War there should have existed in Persia a considerable pro-German party, largely composed of prominent Democrats and Reformers. The explanation is simple enough. Imperial Russia was hated and feared, and with good reason, and any Power which diverted her attention from her victim and threatened her supremacy was sure of a large measure of popularity, while Persia had no reason to fear or dislike Germany, which lay remote from her borders and had at no time threatened her independence. Germany, of course, took advantage of this sentiment, and carried on an active propaganda, of which the curious history remains to be written.

One of the chief organs of the propaganda was the Kāvā (Kavek) newspaper published at Berlin, nominally once a fortnight, from January 24, 1916, to August 15, 1919. There was a long gap between the combined Nos. 29 and 30, July 15, 1918, and Nos. 31 and 32, October 15, 1918; between No. 33, Nov. 15, 1918, and No. 34, March 1, 1919; and between this last and the final number of the old series mentioned above, which appeared five months and a half later. On January 22, 1920, appeared the first number of the New Series (Dawra-i-Sudid), which definitely renounced politics in favour of literature and science, while keeping the same external form and high
standard of style and typography. In this form the paper, now appearing only once a month, endured for two years more, the last number (No. 12, Jahrg. 2, Neue Folge) being dated December 1, 1921, and containing no less than 33 large pages, closely printed in double columns.

During its propagandist days the contents of the Kāwa were, of course, chiefly political, and, though valuable for the light they threw on events in Persia, and especially on the doings of the Nationalist “Committee of Defence,” have little bearing on literary matters until after the armistice, though here and there exceptions to this rule occur. Thus No. 4 (March 14, 1916) contains a Kurdish poem; No. 20 an obituary notice of that eminent man of letters Sayyid Muhammad Šādīq “Qā’im-maqāmī”, better known by his title of Adībūl-Mamālik, who died on the 28th of Rabī’ ii, 1335 (Feb. 21, 1917); No. 21 an account of some of the scientific results obtained by Captain Niedermayer’s mission to Afghānistān; No. 23 an article by Professor Mittwoch on the artist Riḍā-yi-‘Abbāśī; No. 26 an account of Persian students in Germany; No. 33 (Nov. 15, 1918), à propos of a new publication, which, though bearing the Persian title Rāh-i-Naw (the “New Road”), was written in German, a brief sketch of various attempts to reform or replace the Persian alphabet; No. 34 (March 1, 1919) an account of the foundation in Berlin of a Persian Literary Society, and a letter from Mīrāz Muḥammad of Qazwīn on a point of Persian orthography; and No. 35 (August 15, 1919) a long and very interesting article by the writer last named on the

---

1 Reprinted from the Persian newspaper Rastakhīz (“the Resurrection”).
2 So called on account of his descent from the celebrated Mīrāz Abū’l-Qāsim Qā’im-maqām. See pp. 311–16 supra.
3 Translated from the Neue Orient, Nos. 4 and 5, May, 1917.
4 Translated from No. 7 of Die Islamische Welt.
oldest recorded Persian verses subsequent to the Arab conquest in the seventh century after Christ. The \textit{Kāwa} of the New Series, which began on Jan. 22, 1920, is, on the other hand, almost entirely literary, and contains numerous articles of the greatest value and interest. The Persian colony in Berlin, though comparatively small, included several men of great intellectual distinction, and, though ardent patriots, keenly alive to the national faults, and eager to absorb what was best of European learning. The special characteristic of the best German scholarship is its sobriety, thoroughness, painstaking accuracy, and exhaustive examination of relevant material from all available sources. This steadying influence is exactly what the Persians, with their tendency to ingenious but rash conjectures and premature theories, most need. In the leading article which opened the New Series the editor, Sayyid Ḥasan Taqī-záda, thus defined his aims:

"The \textit{Kāwa} newspaper was born of the War, and therefore its conduct was correlated with the situations arising from the War. Now that the War is ended and International Peace has supervened, the \textit{Kāwa} considers its War period as concluded, and now enters on a Peace period. It therefore adopts, as from the beginning of the Christian year 1920, corresponding with the 9th of Rabīʿ ii, A.H. 1338, a new basis and line of conduct. It has nothing to do with the former \textit{Kāwa}, and is, indeed, a new paper, the contents of which will for the most part consist of scientific, literary, and historical articles. Above all else, its object will be to promote European civilization in Persia, to combat fanaticism, to help to preserve the national feeling and unity of Persia, to endeavour to purify and safeguard the Persian language and literature from the disorders and dangers which threaten them, and, so far as possible, to support internal and external freedom... In the opinion of the writer of

\footnote{Two such early attempts are discussed, both taken from Arabic books of authority, such as Ibn Qutayba’s \textit{Kitābu’sh-Shīr wa’sh-Shu’ārī}, the \textit{Kitābu’l-Aghānī}, and Ṭabarī’s great history. The earliest goes back to the reign of Yazid ibn Mu’awiya (A.H. 60–4 = A.D. 680–4).}
these lines, that which is today in the highest degree necessary for Persia, which all patriotic Persians should exert themselves to promote, literally, with all their strength, and should place before everything else, is threefold.

"First, the adoption and promotion, without condition or reservation, of European civilization, absolute submission to Europe, and the assimilation of the culture, customs, practices, organization, sciences, arts, life, and the whole attitude of Europe, without any exception save language; and the putting aside of every kind of self-satisfaction, and such senseless objections as arise from a mistaken, or, as we prefer to call it, a false patriotism.

"Secondly, a sedulous attention to the preservation of the Persian language and literature, and the development, extension, and popularization thereof.

"Thirdly, the diffusion of European sciences, and a general advance in founding colleges, promoting public instruction, and utilizing all the sources of material and spiritual power...in this way...

"Such is the belief of the writer of these lines as to the way to serve Persia, and likewise the opinion of those who, by virtue of much cultural and political experience, share his belief.

"Outwardly and inwardly, in body and in spirit, Persia must become Europeanized.

"In concluding this explanation of fundamental beliefs, I must add that in the writer's opinion perhaps the greatest and most effective service of this sort which one could render would be the publication in Persia of translations of a whole series of the most important European books in plain and simple language."

In pursuance of this programme, there are a certain number of articles on the German system of education, the proceedings of the Perso-German Society¹, and the arrangements for facilitating the studies of Persian students in Germany; but matters connected with the language and literature of Persia supply the subject-matter of most of the articles. Thus we find in the year 1920 a series of admirable articles by Taqízáda (signed Muhassil) on the most notable Persian poets of early times²; an original article written in Persian by

¹ Deutsch-Persische Gesellschaft.
² Kdwa, Nos. 1, pp. 2-6; 4, pp. 15-24; 8, pp. 10-14; and 10, pp. 9-14.
Dr Arthur Christensen of Copenhagen on the existence of verse in Pahlawi; a discussion on the evolution of the Persian language during the last century; articles entitled "Bolshevism in ancient Persia" on Mazdak; comparisons between Eastern and Western research and its results (greatly in favour of the latter), entitled Munāṣara-i-Shab u Rūz ("Dispute between Night and Day"); the four periods of the Persian language since the Arab conquest; "a Touchstone of Taste," on good modern Persian verse and what the writer calls "Karbalā'ī verse"; Pahlawi, Arabic and Persian sources of the Shāh-nāma; ancient and modern translations from Arabic into Persian; and a very interesting article on the "Sources of eloquent Persian and 'Khān-i-Wālida Persian'" in which the writer ridicules and condemns the slavish imitation of Turkish idiom and style practised by certain young Persians resident in Constantinople. These articles, in most cases, display a wealth of knowledge, critical ability, and originality which I have nowhere else encountered in Persian, and deserve a fuller analysis than can be accorded to them in this volume.

During the last year of its existence (1921) the Kāwa maintained the same high standard, publishing many articles, both historical and literary, which were fully up to the level of the best European scholarship. A series of important historical articles on "the Relations of Russia and Persia during the period of the Āq-Qoyūnlū and Ṣafawī dynasties, down to the beginning of the reign of Áqá Muḥammad Khān

1 Nos. 4–5, pp. 24–6.
2 Nos. 3, pp. 3–5; and 4–5, pp. 3–4.
3 Nos. 3; pp. 5–11, and 4–5, pp. 8–15.
4 Nos. 4–5, pp. 7–8; 6, pp. 3–6; 8, pp. 5–10.
5 No. 7, pp. 5–8.
6 No. 7, p. 4.
7 Nos. 11, pp. 7–12; 12, pp. 7–12.
8 No. 9, pp. 4–5.
9 No. 12, pp. 3–5. The Khān-i-Wālida is where most of the Persian merchants in Constantinople live or have their offices.
Qájár," written by Sayyid Muhammad 'Alí Jamál-záda, also appeared as a monthly supplement, and showed very wide and judicious use of all available sources, both Eastern and Western. The sudden cessation of the paper after December, 1921, was a great loss to Persian learning and scholarship.

In June, 1922, there appeared at Berlin a new Persian literary and scientific review entitled Irán-shahr, edited by Húsayn Kázim-záda, which, though described as a "Revue...bimensuelle," actually appeared only once a month. It is of a lighter and more popular character than was the Káva, and shows a more marked preference for matters connected either with pre-Islamic Persia, or with the problems with which the progressive Persians of today are confronted. No. 7 (December, 1922) contains a long article on the sending of Persian students to Europe, in the third section of which, "on the place and manner of study" (pp. 162–4), the writer argues that such students should go to England or Germany rather than to France, for the following reasons:

"We Persians (with the exception of the people of Ádharbáyján, whose nature and character agree better with those of the Anglo-Saxons), in respect to character, nature, capacity and mental tendencies, more closely resemble and approach the French, that is to say the Latin races, since quick and piercing intelligence, self-confidence, versatility of thought, wit and acuteness of perception, sociability and amiability in intercourse on the one hand, and inconstancy, fickleness of character, quickly-developed weariness and want of perseverance, recklessness, and lack of moderation in action on the other, are characteristic of the nature and disposition both of ourselves and of the French."

This view seems to have commended itself to the Persians generally, for while in August, 1922, there were seventy
Persian students in Germany, in the following December the number had increased to over 120. In Persia itself the Press, paralysed for a time after the Russian aggressions of 1912, has resumed its activities, especially since the conclusion of the War; but owing to the badness of the communications and the irregularity of the posts one has to be content with somewhat fragmentary information about it. No. 4 of the Kāwa for 1921 (pp. 15–16) contained a brief list of Persian papers and magazines which had come into being since the beginning of A.H. 1334 (November, 1915). These, forty-seven in number, were arranged alphabetically, the place of publication, name of the editor, and date of inauguration, being recorded in each case. Tīhrān heads the list with eighteen papers, next comes Shīrāz with seven, Tabrīz and Rasht with four each, and Iṣfahān, Mashhad, Kirmān, Kirmānshāh, Khūy, Bushire, Bākū, Herāt, Kābul and Jalālābād (the last three in Afgānistān) with one or two each. More than half of these papers (twenty-five) first appeared in A.H. 1338 (began on Sept. 26, 1919). That the list is far from exhaustive is shown by the fact that of nine Persian magazines of which copies were sent me by their editors or by friends, only two, the Alam-i-Niswān (“Women’s World”) and the Armaghān (“Gift”), appear in the above list. The latter is one of the best, containing many poems, including some by the late Adilbū’l-Mamālik, and accounts of the proceedings of the “Literary Society” (Anjuman-i-Adabī) of Tīhrān. The others are the Bahār (“Spring”), very modern and European in tone, but including some interesting poems; the Furūgh-i-Tarbiyat (“Lustre of Education”); the Dānīsh (“Knowledge”), published at Mashhad; the Mimāt u Ḥayāt (“Death and Life”), entirely devoted to European inventions and material progress; the Firdawsī, edited and written by diplomats of the American College at Tīhrān; the Pārs, written half in

Persian and half in French, which first appeared at Constantinople on April 15, 1921; and the Ganjina-i-Ma'ārif ("Treasury of Sciences"), of which the first number appeared at Tabrīz on October 24, 1922. None of these approach the Īrān-shahr, still less the Kāwa, in excellence of matter or form. An exception should perhaps be made in favour of the Gul-i-Zard ("Yellow Rose"), which appeared in Ṭihrān about the end of August, 1920, and in which the editor, Mīrzā Yaḥyā Khán, used to publish the poems he composed under the nom de guerre of Rayḥānī.

The establishment in Berlin of the "Kaviani" Printing-press (Chāp-khāna-i-Kāwayānt) owned and managed by Mīrzā ʻAbduš-Shukūr and other Persians anxious to meet the growing demand for cheap, correct, and well-printed Persian books, marks another very important stage in the Persian literary revival; and at the present time there exists no other Press which can rival it in these respects. Besides modern plays and treatises on Music, Agriculture and the like, and tasteful editions of such well-known classics as the Gulistān of Saʿdī and the "Cat and Mouse" (Mūsh u Gurbā) of ʻUbaydi-Zākānī, the managers have had the spirit and enterprise to print such rare works of the great writers of old as the Žādū’l-Musāfīrīn ("Travellers' Provision") of Nāṣir-i-Khusraw, a book of which only two manuscripts (those of Paris and King's College, Cambridge) are known to exist; and are now (November, 1923) printing the Waqīh-i-Dīn ("Way of Religion") of which the unique manuscript has recently been discovered at Petrograd, though books of this sort, recondite in character, costly to print, and unlikely to command a large sale, must almost inevitably be published at a loss. In Mīrzā Mahmūd Ghanī-Zāda the Press possesses a most competent scholar, who carries on the high traditions of criticism and accuracy established by Mīrzā Muḥammad Khán of Qazwīn.
INDEX

In the following Index where many reference-numbers occur under one heading the more important are printed in Clarendon type, which is also used for the first entry under each letter of the alphabet. To save needless repetition, all references to any name common to several persons mentioned in the text are brought together under one heading, the individuals bearing this name being arranged either in chronological order, or in order of persons, importance, or in classes (rulers, men of letters, poets, etc.). The letter b. between two names stands for Ibn ("Son of...") and n. after the number of a page indicates a footnote. The addition in brackets of a Roman number after a name or book indicates the century of the Christian era in which the man lived or the book was written. Prefixes like Abū ("Father of...") and Ibn ("Son of...") in Muhammadan, and de, le, von in European names are disregarded in the alphabetical arrangement, so that names like Abū Sa'īd, Ibn Sinā, le Strange, de Slane, etc., must be sought under S, not under A, I, L or D. Titles of books and foreign words are printed in italic. A hyphen preceding a word indicates that the Arabic definite article al- should be prefixed to it.

Aaron (Hadīrīn), 207, 217
Abārūḥ, 55, 56
Abūb, uncle of the Prophet Muhammad and ancestor of the 'Abbasid Caliphs (A.D. 750-1252), 23, 24, 41 n., 54 n., 127, 394, 424-5, 437-9; Abū b. 'Ali b. Abī Tālib (perished with the Imām Husayn, his half-brother, at Karbalā), 190, 192, 340; Shāh — I Safawī (A.D. 1557-1629), 4, 5, 6-8, 9, 25, 28, 96, 100, 101, 102-112, 118, 119, 256, 258, 266, 364 n., 368, 369, 406, 407, 408, 436, 437 n., 438, 434; Shāh — II Safawī (A.D. 1629-42), 411, 412, 264, 267; Shāh — III Safawī (A.D. 1731-9), 113, 134-5; — Mīrzā (eldest and favourite son of Fath-Alla Sháh Qajar, d. A.D. 1631), 146, 155, 311, 313, 314 n., 315, 468; — Efendī ('Abdul-Bahā, q.v.), 217 n., 218 n., 220; — of Bistām (poet, better known as Furūghī and Miskīn, q.v.), 328, 336; Hájī — ( fictitious), 183, 185
Abūsābād (near Isfahān), 266
Abdāl (a class of the Rijāl-Ghayr, or "Men of the Unseen"), 469, 472 n.

Abdāl Beg (renegade Christian painter), 283
Abdāl Afghāns, 125, 138
Abdul-'Aziz Khān (Afghan envoy to Constantinople, A.D. 1726-7), 131-2
Abdul-'Bahā (Abūs Efendi, g.v.), 207, 217 n., 218 n., 220
Abdul-Baqī (descendant of Sayyid Mīnatullāh, killed at Chaldīrān, A.D. 1514), 76; Sayyid — Tabīb (poet, xviii), 283
Abdul-Hamīd, Sultan — (xix-xx), 12 n., 467
Abdul-Jabbār (artist at the court of Shāh 'Abbas I), 120
Abdulllāh b. Husayn, b. 'Ali b. Abī Tālib, 393; — Aftāb (son of the Imām Ja'far-Sādiq), 391; — I-Shirāzī (saint, xiii), 37; — Khān Uzbek (xvi), 105; — I-Yazdī, Mullā (xvi), 427; — I-Tūnī, Mullā (xvii), 368; — Afghān (brother of Mīr Wāys, xviii), 125; Mīrzā —, physician (xviii), 283
Abdul-Majīd Bēshāh (d. A.D. 1923), 366 n.
Abdul-Muhammad-Maḥallātī (xix), 149
Abdul-Mu'min Khan Uzbek (xvi), 104, 105
Africa, North — 59
Afshar, 52 n., 137 n.
Afşâb (newspaper), 347
Afşahiyya sect, 391
Agâh (poet of Shîrâz, d. A.D. 1828-9), 225 n., 311
Aghâ (or Aqâ), title given to eunuchs, 141
Aghayeff, Ahmad Bey — (xix-xx), 346
Agra, 255, 265, 266, 267
Agradates, 465
Ahâr, 50
Ahl (poet of Turshis, d. A.D. 1527-8), 233-4; — (poet of Shîrâz, d. A.D. 1555-6), 233-4
Ahmed-ı Buşyâdât, 209 n.
Ahluward, 358 n., 444 n.
Ahamd-ı Arrâbi, Sayyid — (ancestor of the Şafâvis), 33 n.; — b. 'Ali
-Najâshî (d. A.D. 1663), 355, 358, 405; — (son of Rashkû'd-Din
Paşâ'llâh (xiv), 33; — Mirzâ
(brother of Shâh Ismâ'îl I Şâfâvi), 59; — Mirzâ
(another Şafâvi prince, put to death by Shâh
Ismâ'îl II in A.D. 1577), 99; —
Khân (ruler of Gilân, circa A.D.
1467), 96; — Beg Aq-qoyûnlû, 58 n.; — Jân (envoy to Sultan
Salim, A.D. 1514), 75; — b. Mu-
hammad-Ardabîlî, Mullâ—, known
as Muqaddas-i-Ardabîlî ("the
Saint of Ardabil," d. A.D. 1385),
369, 406; — b. Afûl-î-Fath (author
of the Ahsanullâh-Qisas), 30; — i-
Râzî (author of the Haft Iglâm,
composed in A.D. 1619), 448; —
b. Zaynu'l-Abîdin-Alawi (oppo-
nent of Xavier, xvii), 421; —
Qazwîni (musician at Court of
Shâh 'Abbas I, xvii), 110; —
Hâtîf, Sayyid — (poet of Isfahân,
xvii-xviii), 283-297, 305; — Pâshâ
of Baghdâd (circa A.D. 1733), 134; —
Khân Abdallâ, afterwards
Shâh Durrânî (A.D. 1747-73), 138; — b. Zaynu'd-Din-Ahsâ'î,
Shaykh — (d. A.D. 1827), 407,
410-411, 421-2, 429, 434; —
Nirâqî, Mullâ — (d. A.D. 1828-9),
411; Wafiq (Veîq) Pasha (Turkish
scholar and man of letters, xix),
462; — Şâfâtî (son of the poet
Yaghmâ'î), 338; — i- Rûhi-i-
Kirmânî (put to death in A.D.
1896), 468; — Bey Aghayeff (xix-
INDEX

Ahmad Sháh Qájár, Sultan — (regnant), 158
Ahmadábad (Gujerát), 253
Ahmadnagar, 169 n.

Aáruddá', 364
Ahsá'í. See under Ahmad b. Zaynu'd-Dín (d. A.D. 1827) and Sháikhí Ashnálu'l-Qisár, 30 n.

Ashnálu'l-Tawáriríkh (composed in A.D. 1577), 5, 14, 20, 28 n., 32 n., 43, 48 n., 54–56, 58 n., 64 n., 71, 72, 77 n., 78, 80–83, 85, 87, 88, 89, 92, 94, 98, 100, 168–172, 231 n., 413–415, 444
Á'ísha (wife of the Prophet Muhammad), 392
Átna'i-Ikq-numá (by Xavier), 421
'Ajdhúbí'l-Makhlúqát (of -Qazwín), 448 n.

'Ajamí, Shrine of, 46 n.

Akbar (Moghl Emperor of India, A.D. 1556–1605), 92, 137, 165, 245, 249, 250

Akbar-námá (poem by Fáydí), 244

Akhrári Sect, 374-6, 402-3, 407.

Akhlíq-i-Joláhí, 424, 427; — i-Muhsírin, 424; — i-Nádsírin, 405.

Akhlát, 58

Akhtar (newspaper), 157, 468; — Press, 344

Ákká (Acre in Syria), 151 n., 154, 187 n.

Áktrán (a black brocade), 209 n.

Álam-i-Niswán (periodical), 489

Álam-Sháh Begum (daughter of Uzún Hasan, xvi), 47

Álamúl-Hudá (d. A.D. 1044), 405.

Alamút, 89, 102

Álá'ud-Dawlá Samání (xiii), 37; — Dhul-Qádár (cireá A.D. 1510): the “Áulí” of the Venetian travellers, 58, 61, 77 n.; — edition of Mathnasí named after, 457

Álá'ud-Dín Mahmúd (physician to Sháh 'Abbás I), 427

Alchemist (Kinsyáj-gar, a Persian comedy) 462 and n.

D'Aléssandri, Vincentio — (A.D. 1571), 50 n., 85.

Alexander the Great (Iskándár-i-Rájm), 13–14, 52, 80 n., 199, 209, 211 n., 246, 247, 270, 391.

Álpyya of Ibn Málík, 303, 304

Algeria (of Umar Khayyám), 425

Álí b. Ábú Táláb (First Imam of the Shi'i, cousin and son-in-law of the Prophet Muhammad, vii), 16, 17, 19, 28, 29, 32, 33 n., 43, 44, 45, 52, 54, 58, 86, 87, 174-6, 178, 180, 192 n., 230, 235, 236, 248, 254, 356, 369, 385, 390, 391, 392, 418, 433; — b. Husayn b. Álí, entitled Zaynu'l-Ábídín (Fourth Imam, vii–viii), 18, 179, 181 n., 347, 393; the Third Imam — Husayn had three sons named Álí, distinguished according to their ages by the titles -Akbar, -Áwson and -Áshgáhar, -Ákbar, 191, 193, 393; — Áwson (identical with -Zaynu'l-Ábídín just mentioned) and Áshgáhar, 393; — Rídá (Eighth Imam, vii–ix), 36, 65, 87, 109, 394, 455, 456; — Naqí (Tenth Imam, ix), 394; Khwája (grandson of Shákh Sa'ífeyd-Dín, d. A.D. 1427), 19, 45-6; doubtful identifications of him with Sayyid — 'Ájami, or — b. 'Álawi, buried in Palestine, 45-6 and footnote; — Mirzá, or Sultan — (brother of Sháh Isma'il I Safawí), 27, 28 n., 49; Mir — Shír Nawáí (d. A.D. 1501), 83, 108, 227, 234; — Beg Aq-qoyúniča 58 n.; — Beg Chákari (Turkmán Sultán, cireá A.D. 1500, possibly identical with preceding), 51; Sídá — Ra’ís (Turkish naval officer, A.D. 1554-6), 10 n.; — b. 'Abdu'l-Ál’-Ámíll, Shákh Núrúd-Dín, called Múhaqqíq-í-Thání (d. A.D. 1533), 256, 406, 428; Sultán — Mirzá (Safawí prince, murdered by Sháh Isma’il II in A.D. 1577), 99; — Páshá or Aghá (envoy to Sháh Táhmasp in A.D. 1562), 90-1; — Páshá (minister of Sultán Bâyazid II), 70 and note; Mullá — Múdhabíb (teacher of Shákh-i-Bahá’í), 427; — Sháh (early xvii), 284; — Amdán Khan (cireá A.D. 1750), 139; Shákh Khan (general of Karín Khan-i-Zand, cireá A.D. 1760), 140; — Murád nephew of Karín Khan-i-Zand, d. A.D. 1785), 142; — Rídá (historian of Zand dynasty), 140 n.; Mir Sayyid — of Isfahán, poetically surnamed Múshtaq, 283, 248...
INDEX

Mullá—Núrî (early xviii.), 376, 437;—Akbar (poet of Shiráz, surnamed Bismil, author of the Tadhkira-i-Dilgushá, circá A.D. 1821), 304;—Ashraf (brother of the preceding, poetically surnamed Ágáh), 311;—Muhammad of Shiráz, called the Báb, q.v. (put to death in A.D. 1585), 136; Hájíi—Khán-i-Máraghá’i Hájíbú’d-Dawla, 153, 454;—Áshgáh b.—Akbar (lithographer, xix), 381

‘Ali-áli Salím (poet at Akbar’s Court), 166; Shámilú (servant of Sháh Ismá’íl II-Safáwí, xvi), 99;—Khán (general of Sháh ‘Abdál Is VII), 103;—Khán (nephew and successor of Nádír Sháh, A.D. 1747–8), 138; see also ‘Ádil Sháh, supra

“Alidólí,” or “Álidúlí” (an Italian corruption of “Alá’ú’d-Dawla, q.v.), 58, 61

“Állámá-á-Hillí (“the Sage of Hilla”), whose proper name was Hásan b. Yúsuf b. ‘Áli b. Múthahhar (q.v.), and who died in A.D. 1325, 358, 406

Alma Qúlághí, Battle of—; 82

Álqás Mirzá (brother of Sháh Támahasp, put to death in A.D. 1576–7), 81, 89, 93

“Álmut” (an Italian corruption of Álwánd, q.v.), 62

Álwa’d (“Tablets,” plural of Áwáh), 423

Álwánd (prince of the “White Sheep” Dynasty, defeated by Sháh Ismá’íl I in A.D. 1503), 52, 55, 58, 61, 62, 68, 82

Amálií’-Ámilíí “Ulamá’i Jabal’-Ámil (xvii), 356, 359, 360, 449

Amáni (poet of Mázandanír, d. A.D. 1651), 251, 258.

Amánu’lláh Khán (Afghán general, A.D. 1732), 130

Amár, Emil—(translator of Kitábu’l-Fáhhrí), 444 n.

Amásiáyá, 76

Américas, 12, 150, 422, 489

Ámil, Jabal—in (in Syria), 360, 449

Ámilí (poet, xvi), 81

Áminu’d-Dín Jibríll (father of Shaykh Safíyyu’d-Dín, xiii), 32 n., 37

Amírí, 393, 347. See above, Ádilbú’d-Mandálik

Amír-i-Kabír, or Amír Nizám (Mírzá Taqí Khán, d. A.D. 1852), 152–3

Amír Nizám, Hasan ‘Alí Khán-i-Garrúsí (circular A.D. 1890), 347

‘Amr and Zayd, 380 and n.

Anatólia, 48, 70. See also Asia Minor

Anatomy, 425

Andakúhdí, 109

‘Andalúb (Mírzá Husayn Khán, poet, xix), 309

Angels, 384, 390, 394–8

Angioletto (Venetian traveller in Persia, xv–xvi), 23, 47, 49, 60–61

Anglo-French rivalry in Persia, 146

Anglo-Persian War (A.D. 1856–7), 154, 450;—Agreement (A.D. 1919), 157, 483

Anglo-Russian rivalry in Persia, 147

Anglo-Saxon character, 488

Angora, 15

‘Anjuman-i-Adábi (“Literary Society” of Tibrán), 489;—‘Alf Khadjín (biographies of poets), 298;—‘Alf Mádárf (Turkish Academy), 450

‘Ángál (mythical bird), 263

Anthropomorphism (tashkíh), 17, 382

Anti-christ (Dzayjál), 399

Antinomianism (súbil-i-ibédádat), 382

Aants, instinct in—, 440–1

Amúshávarán (Khusraw—Sásánían king, vi), 52, 391, 401, 454. See also Náshárvarán

Amsár (poet, xii), 246, 284, 299, 348

Amsár-i-Súkayíl, 83, 412

Amsár-i-Súkayíl (by Sayyid Nú’matulláh Jázárírí, A.D. 1678), 361 n., 366

Apostates, persecution of—, 401

Apostles of Christ (Habibíyyáín), 207, 218

Apostolosis (Ittihádí), 382

Aqá Khán, 148–9

‘Áqá’-á-tu’l-Shí’á, 381–403

Aq-goyúnúl Turkmán dynasty. See White Sheep

Arabia, Arabs, 18 (democratic tendencies), 77, 125, 388 (Prophets of—), 401 (idolatrous—): Arab conquest of Persia, 3, 14 n., 32, 122, 128, 485, 487

Arabian Medicine, Philosophy and Science, 424–5, 437–440


Ibnul’-Arabí, Shaykh Muhýí’d-Din—, 37
INDEX

Barbier de Meynard, 462
Barāhūn (the seven great noble families of Ancient Persia), 209 n.
Bārik Farnāk (ruler of 'Iraq-l'-Arab about A.D. 1500), 55
Barkhiyā (father of 'Asaf, Solomon's Prime Minister), 310 and note
Barniql. Shamshu-d-Din — , 44
St Bartholomew, Massacre of — , 72
Barzakh (the "World of the Barrier"), 395, 397
-Basāsīrī (xi), 54 and note
Baṣra, 200, 210, 279, 363, 429
"Bassā" (i.e. Pasha), 70
Ibn Baṭūta (traveller, xiv), 27
Baydān, Persian — (by the Bāb), 150, 197, 472
Bayyandārī, 67 and note, another name for the "White Sheep" (Aq-Qoyānlī) dynasty, q.v.
Bāyazīd of Bistām (saint and mystic), 336, 357; — II (Ottoman Sultan, A.D. 1482-1512), 9, 57, 65, 67-9,
70, 71, 72; — son of Sulaymān I (Ottoman Prince, A.D. 1562), 89—91
Bayburt, 76
Bayram Beg (Humáyūn's envoy), 57; — Khán-Khánān (murdered in A.D. 1561), 165, 245
Baysunghur, or Baysunqur, (of the "White Sheep" dynasty), 49-50, 58 n.
Bayt Mahār (Hebron), 46 n.
Ibn-ul-Baytār (botanist), 441
Basmi-Wisād, 317
Ibn-ul-Bazzāz (author of Šafwatu-š-
Šafi, xiv), 34
Bear, the Thief-catching — (Khīrūr-
Qādūr-bādūn, Persian comedy), 452
Beir ed-Din der Sohn des Richters von Simāw by F. Babinger, 44 n., 48 n.
Beer, Ernst — , 140 n., 445 n.
Bees, Habits of — observed by Mir Dāmād, 448-9
Belcourt, F. C. — , 115, 277
Benares, 115
Bengal, Asiatic Society of — , 358
Berlin, 13 n., 425, 463-9
Bethune, Sir Henry Lindsay — , 147
Bibi Fatima (wife of Shaykh Šafīyyu’d-Din, xiii), 42
-Budd (doctrine of — ), 385
Biddāb (quarter of Iṣṭahān), 410
Bi-dil (poet), 178, 269

Bhirūr-i-Anwar (by Mullā Muham-
mad Bāqir-i-Majlīs), 359, 366 n.,
409, 417
Biḥibīnān, Muhammad Ṭaf — , 420
Bihzād (artist, circa A.D. 1500), 25
-Bīrūnī, Abū Rayhān — (xi), 357, 449
Bišb bād, kām ma-bād (a curse), 54
Bismil, Mirzā 'Alī Akbar of Shirāz (poet, circa A.D. 1821), 304-5, 311,
317; Murgh-i — , 166 n.
Bistām, 328, 336, 455
Bitlis, 58
"Blasi," 62
Blochet, E. — , 444 n.
Blochmann, 210 n., 249 n.
Blunt, Wilfrid Scawen — , 196
de Boer, Dr T. J. — , 424 n., 425,
426 n.
Bolsheviks, Bolshevism, 371, 487
Bombay, 149
Bosphorus, 467
British Legation at Tihrān, 370; —
Museum, 437; See Edwards, Rieu.
Brockelmann's Gesch. d. Arab. Litt.,
57 n., 440 n.
Brydges, Sir Harford Jones — , 142-4,
146
Būdāq Sultan (father of Shaybak or Shaybānī Khān), 64 n.
Buddhists, 258
Buhtūl (the "Wise fool"), 387
Bušnūrd, 455
Buḵhārā, 51, 64, 136, 250, 258, 265,
269, 282 n.
Bulāq, 253
Bulghāy (descendant of Chingīz Khān), 64 n.
-Būnī, Shaykh — (occultist), 442
Bunker, Mr — (Lunatic at Large), 321
Buq-i-Wahdat, 473 n.
Buqrat (Hippocrates), 201
Buq'ul-Iṣḥāq (poet, xvi), 97
Burhān (Nizām Shāh, A.D. 1508—
1553), 169 n.; — (descendant of Shīrwan-shāh, circa A.D. 1549),
96; — u’d-Din, Qādī — (circa A.D. 1384), 406
Bury, Professor J. B. — , 186 n.
Busbecq, 11, 93
Bushaq (poet of Shirāz), 241
Bushire (Abū Shahr), 489
Bustānūn’s Siyaḥat (A.D. 1831-2), 450-2
Buwayhid (or Daylamite) dynasty, 3,
8, 30-31, 54 n.
INDEX

“Chasan Chelife,” 70. See Hasan Khalifa

Chelsea, 221

Chighala-žáda Sinán Páshá (Turkish general, cired A.D. 1603), 106

China (Chin, Sin), 128, 202, 205, 211 n., 212, 215, 451

Chingiz Khán, 3, 64 and note, 94, 322

Christopherse Persane (by M. Ch. Schefer), 9 n.

Christ, 187, 420. See Jesus (Is'h)

Christensen, Dr Arthur —, 487

Christians, 6, 7, 9, 112, 113, 123, 137, 187, 188-9, 203-4, 314 n., 401, 421, 422, 423, 452. See also Georgians, Missionaries

Cicada, 106

Circassians, 101

Clavijo, 41 n., 57

Clément Markham, 41 n.

Clive, Lord —, 186

Clouston, J. Storer —, 322 n.

“Committee of Defence,” 484

Communism (Is'háq), 382 and note

Communists, 47

Constantinople, 11, 65, 66 n., 76, 77 n., 89, 93 n., 94, 104, 130, 131, 133, 157, 158, 164 n., 173 n., 344, 450, 452, 468, 487, 490

Contarini, Ambrosio —, 10

Continents of Rhazes (Ibáwi of Rází, x), 438-9

Controversial Tracts, etc., by Professor Samuel Lee, 421

Copenhagen, 487

Cossacks, 480 n., 481

Court Directory, Persian —, 454-6

Cowley, Lord —, 154

Creasy’s History of the Ottoman Turks, 11 n., 75, 90 n., 93

Crimea, 76, 103

Croses, 209 n.

de la Croix, Péris —, 10

“Cudi de Lac,” 101 n.

Cuneiform writing (khatt-i-mikhí), 466

Curds, 58 n. See Kurds

Cureton, 15 n.

Curzon, Hon. Robert —, 152; Lord — of Kedleston, 92 n., 109, 132 n.

Cyaxares, 465

Cynic (Kalbí), 200, 201

Cyprus, 154, 464 n.

Cyrus, 464, 465

Dabistán, 258, 436

Daghíshtán, 269

Buzghush, Shaykh — of Shíráz, 42

Byron, 227

Byzantine Empire, 80 n.

Caesarea, 23, 76

Cain (Qádhi), 207, 217

Cairo (Qáhira), 425, 469

Calcutta, 469

Caliph (Khalifa), Caliphate (Khilífat), 3, 11, 13, 15, 16, 17, 24, 58, 104, 126-7, 131-2, 348, 363, 391; Cursing of first three Caliphs, 53- 54, 58, 74, 104, 135, 363

Calligraphy, History of (Khatt u Khalífat), 450 (by Mirzá Habíb), 457 (by Mirzá-yi-Sangílák)

Cambridge University Library, 15 n., 49 n., 51 n., 52 n., 53 n., 55 n., 56 n., 59 n., 63 n., 65 n., 77 n., 194 n., 431

Cambyses (Kambíjíya), 465

Canaan (Kamán), 207, 217 and note

Canopus (Suhás), 184, 185

Capuchin Mission (Isfahán), 9

Carabas (corruption of Qarí-bağh), 49

Caramania (Qaramán), 48

Carmel, Mount —, 204, 214

Carterwright (xv), 10

Cashmere (Kashmír), 110, 245, 451

Caspian Sea, 6, 42, 51, 65, 118, 130, 139

Catholicism, Persian converts to —, 6

Caucasus, 347, 451

Cawnpore (Kánpóór), 281 n.

Cellini, Benvenuto —, 303

Chaghatáy Turks, 234

Chahár Maqdiyyá ("the Four Discourses," xii), 196-7, 209 n., 412, 434 n.

Chahár-sýq (cross-roads), 95 n.

Chahárdáší (player on four-stringed lute), 110 and note

Chálil Safí (palace at Isfahán), 92

Chákárli, "Ali Beg — (Turkmán ruler, xv), 51

Chákhma va shakvír (boots and breeches), 320, 322

Chálaí, Husayn Kiyá-yi — (ruler of Sámnán about A.D. 1500), 55, 56

Cháldírán, Battle of — (Aug. 23, 1514), 9, 24, 57, 73, 75-7, 82

Chání (harper), 110 and note

Charándí-párand ("Charivari"), 469- 482

Chárdín (the Chevalier —), 10, 20, 113, 115

INDEX
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dabāk, I.4</td>
<td>499</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dā‘ī (court-poet of Shāh ‘Abbās, xvi), 110; — (poet, d. A.D. 1742-3), 282</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dajjal (Antichrist), 399</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dakhaw (contemporary poet and writer), 223, 234, 469-482</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dald'il-i-Sab'a (&quot;Seven Proofs&quot; of the Bāb), 422</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dāmād, Mir Muhammad Bāqir — (philosopher and theologian, d. A.D. 1630), 110, 120, 252, 256-7, 372, 406-7, 408, 426-9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damascus, 179, 406</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damavand, 455</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damghān, 133, 456</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damir (thought-reading), 434 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dāmir (poet, xvii), 110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dandin, George —, 462</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel (the Prophet), 204, 214</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dānish (newspaper), 489</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dārā, Dārāb, 13, 14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darāb [jīrda], 59, 218 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darband, 48, 60, 109, 130, 134, 135</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darreṣte, James —, 122</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dārre-i-Funun (College at Tihrān), 155, 441, 458</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dārre-i-Salām, 204. See Baghādād</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dārre-i-Tarjuma (Translation Bureau), 347</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darwinian theory, 211 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dastān, Mīrāz Ibrāhīm — (son of the poet Yaghmā), 338</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dastur-i-INshā (by Sārī ‘Abdu'llāh, d. A.D. 1668), 9 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dastur-i-Wusār (by Khwāndamīr, A.D. 1510), 447</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Davies, John —, 114</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dāwārī (poet, xix), 163, 300-301, 319-324</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dāwlati (wife of Amīnu'd-Dīn Jāhrā'īl and mother of Shaykh Sabiyyu'd-Dīn), 37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dawlatshāh (author of &quot;Memoirs of the Poets,&quot; A.D. 1550), 447</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dawlat Shāykh, 64 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death slain, 401</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deccan, 168, 169, 253, 259, 266, 267, 269, 365</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delhi. See Dīhil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Democracy, Arabian —, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dengiz Beg Shāmū (envoy of Shāh 'Abbās, put to death A.D. 1013-4), 6 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derenbourg, M. Hartwig —, 444 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Despina Khātūn (&quot;Despinacaton&quot;), 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determinism (Jahr). See Fatalism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deutsch-Persische Gesellschaft, 436 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development of Metaphysics in Persia (by Shaykh Muhammad Iqbal), 430 n., 431, 436</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devīl, 384</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Dharr, 208, 218</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharrā u Khursād (poem by Zulāfīqār, d. A.D. 1715-5), 252</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhul-Fiqār Khān of Sannān (patron of Yaghmā), 337</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhul-Qaḍar (Turkish tribe), 52 n., 58, 77, 104, 474</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhul-Qarnayn, 80 n. See Alexander the Great</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhūn-Nūn, Amīr — (ruler of Qandahār about A.D. 1500), 55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhūr-Rumma (Arabian poet), 357</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diego, Don — of Persia (about A.D. 1600), 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dīlī (Delhi), 28, 91, 92, 136, 168, 169, 266, 281</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Djīla (the Tigris), 321</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dilgrushā, Garden of — at Shirāz, 221</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dīnār, 410 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Din Muhammad Sultan Uzbek (xvi), 92</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divine Right of Kings, 18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diyā (Ziyā) Pāshā (xix), 164 n., 173, 242</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diyār Bakr, 47, 55, 58, 69, 82, 106</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dīzūr, 45, 49, 279</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doc, John —, 380</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Dog of the Threshold of 'Ali,&quot; or &quot;of the Immaculate Imāms,&quot; 354, 369</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donisthorpe, Horace —, 440</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorn, Bernard —, 30, 450 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doyle, Sir Arthur Conan —, 467</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dreams, Šāh Tahmāsp's —, 86-88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Droit Musulman by M. Amédée Querry, 377-8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dugh-i-Wahdat, 473 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dunlop's Persia, 10, 129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durra-i-Nādirī (by Mīrāz Mahdī Khān of Astarābād), 445</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch, 10, 129, 280</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecbatana (Hagmatana, Hamadān), 465</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edom, 204, 214</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt, 11, 14 n., 24, 69, 77, 416, 427, 451, 453</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elephant, Year of the —, 391</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

Elias, Ney —, 64 n.
Elizabeth, Queen —, 85, 92, 412
Ellis, A. G. —, 5, 14 n., 34, 35, 43 n.,
54 n., 55 n., 58 n., 71 n., 414
Engineer's Thumb (by Sir A. Conan
Doyle), 407
England, 5, 105, 107, 146, 147, 154,
156, 452, 488
Enoch (Idris), 390
Envoiement, 375
Ephialtes, 476–7, 480–1
Epirus, 72
"Epistles to the Kings" (Altwad-i-
Salatin), 423
Ervan, 100, 133, 135, 137
Erlangen, 425
Erskine, W. —, 57 n., 64, 85, 91,
170 n.
Erzeroum, 135, 152; Treaty of —, 146
Erznján, 22. See Arayinán
"Essential meanings of words," 409
Estat de la Perse en 1660, 9, 20 n.,
115, 116
Eth, Professor Hermann —, 25, 168,
233 n., 234, 264 n., 265
F'Estourdi (Molière), 459
Eucosid, 201, 212
Euruchas, 141
Euphrates (Furdé), 341
Euphuesis, 412
Europeans, Persian view of —, 452;
— as instructors in Persia, 458; —,
their ships highly esteemed, 280
Evil not created by the Devil, 384
Evil Eye (Aymt-i-Kamdi), 117 n.,
216 n., 274 n.
Executions, compulsory attendance at
—, 108
Abu'l-Faḍl (Akbar's Minister), 242,
249, 252; — b. Idris of Bitlis, 72
Fairchild, Blair —, 222
Fakhri, Kitabul' —, 127, 180 n.,
443–4
Fakhru'l-Muhogqgin, 406
Famagusta (Cyprus), 464 n.
Farrabi, Abu Nasr — (philosopher),
257, 449
Farahabad (near Isfahán), 128, 129,
132
Farahán, 303, 311
Abulfaraj-i-Rú'ní (poet), 246, 299
Faras-náma (by Shaykh 'Ali Hazin),
278
Farazdaq (Arabic poet), 357
Farghána, 64
Farhad Mirzá (uncle of Nasiru'd-
Din Shah), 157, 313; — Pásha
(Turkish General, xvi), 104 — u
Shirin (romantic poem by Wahshi
and Wissal), 238, 317, 319
Farhang (Mirzá Abul-Qásim, poet,
of Shiráz, xix), 300, 319, 322–5
Ibnul-Farid (Egyptian mystic and
poet), 357
Faridu'd-Din 'Aṭṭár (mythical poet,
xiii), 357, 449; — Ahmad Tafra-
zaní (d. A.D. 1510), 63, 69
Farmán-farmá (grandson of Fath-Allá
Sháh), 146
Fargádín ("Guard-stars"), 295 and
note
Farrukh Khan (Persian plenipotenti-
ary at Paris in A.D. 1847), 154,
450; — Yasar (Shirwán-sháh, killed
in A.D. 1500), 22, 52, 60, 82
Farrukhi (poet, xi), 265, 299
Fars (province), 49, 56, 57, 59, 60,
82, 134, 225, 283
Fasih (poet, xvi), 243
Fatalism (jabr), 382, 384 n., 385,
386–7, 442
Fath-Allá Shah Qájár (A.D. 1797–
1834), 115, 145–5, 298, 303, 304,
305, 309, 311, 314 n., 315, 368,
374–5, 411; — Khán Qájár (circa
A.D. 1728), 132, 139; — Khan of
Kashán (poetically surnamed Sabd,
q.v.), 309–310; — i-Darbandi
(xix), 462
Abul-Fath Beg Báyandari (ruler of
Kirmán, circa A.D. 1500), 55; —
Husayni (xvi), 34–5; — son of
Karim Khan-i-Zand, (xviii), 142;
— of Gilán (Hakím, xvi), 245
Fathi (rhapsodist at Court of Shah
'Abbás the Great), 110; — (Indian
poet), 267
Fátima (daughter of the Prophet
Muhammad, wife of 'Ali, and
mother of the Imáms al-Hasan and
al-Husayn), vii, 17, 18, 29,
32, 33 n., 176 n., 178, 180, 182,
185, 190, 192, 391, 392, 400 n.,
457; — Kúbra and Nushrú
(daughters of the Imam-Husayn),
181, 393
Fátimid Caliphs, 54 n., 98
Fatwá (legal decision), 372
Fawwúd-i-Sáfawitiyya (composed A.D.
1796–7), 444
INDEX

Fudul (Furul), poet of Baghdad (d. A.D. 1502–3), 236–7
Fulád-Oghlán, (descendant of Chingiz Khan), 64 n.
Furát (Euphrates), 340
Furúghi of Qazwin (court-poet of Sháh Abbas, xvii), 110; — of Bistám (xix), 26, 168, 225, 307 n., 326, 328, 336–7
Furúghi-í-Tarbíyát (magazine), 489
Furúghí-í-Dawla (son of Hasan ‘Ali Mírzá Shíyád-í-Saltana), 328

Gabr (guebra). 80 n., 95, 126, 179.
See also Magian, Zoroastrian
Gabriel (Jíbríl), the Archangel, 175, 177, 229, 291, 294 n., 297, 388, 389, 390
Ganja, 99, 104, 109, 134, 229
Ganj-í-Dániíl ("the Treasure of Learning," published in 1887–8), 456–7
Gawinda of Nasháh (d. A.D. 1328–9); — í-Má’dírîf (magazine), 490
Gardanne, General, 146
"Gates" (Abádí), 150. See Báb
Gawhar-í-Murád ("the Pearl of Desire," by Abdur-’Razzaq-í-Láhíjí), 408, 435
Gedik Pashá, Theatre of — at Constantinople, 464 n.
Genoa, 6
Georgia, Georgians, 37, 44, 52, 95, 103, 104, 107, 123, 134, 137, 140, 144, 298, 375 n.
Germany, 5, 6, 13 n., 128, 153, 483–9; people of —, 425, 423; language of —, 10, 12
Geschichte der Arabischen Ärzte (by Wüstenfeld), 440 n.; — der Chalif en (by Weil), 54 n.; — der Medicin (Max Neuberger), 438
Ghálib, Sayyid Muhammad Husayn (poet, xvii), 283
Ghaní-záda, Mírzá Mahmúd —, 490
Ghaybat ("Occultation" of the Twelfth Imám), 150, 381, 398–9
Ghazála, 393. See Shahrínábí
Gházálí, 449
Gházán Khán (xiv), 18, 41
Abúl-Ghází Husayn b. Bayqará, Sultan — (Timúrid, xv–xvi), 63, 64, 69, 77, 83
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Name/Title</th>
<th>Notes/Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>228</td>
<td>Ghazna</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3, 18</td>
<td>House of Yoga</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Ghujduwán, Battle of — (A.D. 1512), 66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17, 58, 385</td>
<td>Ghulšt (extreme Shi'a)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>395, 452</td>
<td>Ghurí, Sultán (of Egypt, xvi), 69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>Ghúriyání, Khwája Khálán (xvi), 97</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>Ghuž Türkis, 348</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>186</td>
<td>Gibbon (Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19, 36, 50, 96, 104, 130, 134, 135, 223, 237, 238, 277, 279, 280, 451, 469; dialect of — (Gilkhik)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Gilkhwárán, 36 n. See Kálkhalráni</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>Giustini, Nicolò (A.D. 1514),</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147 n.</td>
<td>Gobineau, M. le Comte de</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153, 425, 423, 430 n., 431, 435, 436</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 and note, 400</td>
<td>Gog and Magog (Yajjuw wa Majjih)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Goldscheider, Prof. Ignaz —, 424 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Good and Evil, Problem of —, 384-5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>435</td>
<td>Gospels (Infi, Ingilijn), 137, 204, 214, 388</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>222</td>
<td>di Govea, Antonio —, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>462</td>
<td>Grahame, George —, 190, 198, 222</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>154</td>
<td>Erland Maitre des Assassins, un —</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149 n.</td>
<td>S. Guyard, 149 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146, 312</td>
<td>Grebaidoff (Russian Minister murdered at Tihán, Feb. 11, 1829)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>312</td>
<td>Grecks, 47, 475-481; Philosophy and Science of the —, 219, 424-5, 427-8, 457</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>395, 397</td>
<td>Green birds of Paradise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49 n.</td>
<td>Grey, Charles —, 48 n., 49 n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 n.</td>
<td>&quot;Guard-stars&quot; (Fargaddán), 295 and n.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>252</td>
<td>Guebre, 80 n. See Gabr, Magian, Zoroastrian</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>168, 169, 252</td>
<td>Gujerat, 168, 169, 252</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52, 146; (book)</td>
<td>Gulistán (place), 52, 146; (book)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>490</td>
<td>269, 326, 335, 490</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>459</td>
<td>Gal-sard (magazine), 490</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>272, 126-8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>298; — i-Ráz, 37; — &quot;i-Sáhab, 309</td>
<td>Gulshan-i-Mahmúd, 298; — i-Ráz, 37; — &quot;i-Sáhab, 309</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>234</td>
<td>Gurgán (Jorján), 130, 234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>459</td>
<td>Gurgín Khán, 133-4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>459</td>
<td>Guváhrísh-i-Mardum-gúris (Persian version of le Misanthrope), 459</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

von Hammer, 66 n., 71 n., 72, 73.

Hamza, Abu'l-Qâsim — (son of the Seventh Imam Musa Kazim), 33 n., 35; (="White Sheep" dynasty), 58 n.; (= son of the Safawî Shah Muhammad Khudâ-banda, d. A.D. 1586), 101, 102.


Hanauer, Rev. Canon J. E., — 46 n.

Ibn Hanbîl (Ahmad b. Muhammad —, A.D. 855), 353.

Abû Hanifa (d. A.D. 767), 353, 387.


Haqqî-'l-Yaqqîn (by Mullâ Muhammad Bâqîr-i-Maghîli), 381, 417, 418.

Haram. See Holy Cities, Mecca, Madîna.

Harîrâ (a kind of ballad), 222.

Harîf (poet of Isfahân), 237.

Harford Jones Brydges, Sir, — 142-6.

Hârîmu'r-Rashîd, 394, 438.

Harîrâ, 412.

Hârîth (slayer of Muslim's children), 191, 193.

Hasan b. 'Ali (the Second Imam), 16 n., 173, 175, 176 n., 193 n., 392-3; — 'Askari (the Eleventh Imam), 394; — b. Muhammad (ancestor of the Safawîs), 33 n.; — Basrî, 384; — b. Yûsuf b. 'Ali b. Mu'tahhar-Hillî (called 'Alla'ma-i-Hillî, g. v., d. A.D. 1326), 356, 406; — (of the Aq-oyunlu dynasty, A.D. 1466-1478), see Uzûn Hasan; — Khalifa (xv), 70; — Beg (Turkish governor of Morea, killed in A.D. 1514), 76; — Beg Rûmî (author of Ahsanu'l-Tawârîkh), A.D. 1577-8, g. v., 85, 100, 444; — Beg (galer of Alãqû Mirzâ, xvi), 89; — Aqâ (Turkish officer, xvi), 91; — Beg (favourite of Isma'il II, xvi), 99-100; — Páshá (beglerbegi of Rumelia, killed in A.D. 1514), 76; — Mirzâ, Sultan — Safawî (xvi), 99; — of Yazd, Mulla — (defies Fat'h- 'Ali Shah), 388-9; — of Shirzâ, Hâjî Mirzâ —, and of Ashatyân (opponents of Tobacco concession in A.D. 1890-1), 370-1; — Mu'azzam (author of a play), 403 n.

Hasan 'Ali Khân-i-Garrûsî (A.D. 1890), 347; — Khân-i-Nawwâb (xix), 301-2, 319; — Mirzâ Shujâ'u'-Sultana (early patron of Qâ'ârî and Furûghî, xix), 328.

Abû'l-Hasan-Jandaqî, 337. See Yagâ- mâ'î; Sayyid — Khân (head of Isma'îl sect, xviii), 148; — Mirzâ, called Hâjî Shâykhulu'r-Ra'îs (xix-x xx), 303, 420.

Hâshim-i-Qazwînî, Hâfîz — (time of Shah 'Abbâs I), 110.

Hashish (Indian hemp), 87 n., 470, 473 and note.

Hâshi Bihishtî, 151.

Hâtîf of Isfahân (poet, xviii), 221, 227, 283-297, 305, 309.


Hâtîm of Tâyy, 401; — of Kâshân (poet of the time of Shah 'Abbâs I), 110.

— Hâwi ("Continens") of Ražî (Rhazes), 438-9.

— Hâwiyya (the lowest Hell), 400-401.

Hayâtî (poet), 167.

Haydâtul-Quilîb ("the Life of Hearts"), by Mullâ Muhammad Bâqîr-i-Maghîli (xvii), 409, 417.

Haydar, Shâykh — (father of Shah Isma'il I, xv), 19, 21, 47-9, 60, 67, 70; — i-Mu'ammâl (poet of the time of Shah 'Abbâs I), 110; — (rhapsodist, contemporary with the preceding), 110; — Mirzâ (son of Shah Tahmâsp I, xvi), 98; — Mirzâ (nephew of Shah 'Abbâs I), 104; — 'Ali Khân Nawwâb (xix), 328.

Haydarbâd (Deccan), 269, 365.

Haydar and Nîmatî (faction), 119 n.

Hayrat (pen-name of Abu'l-Hasan Mîrzâ, g.v.), 303.

Hayratî (poet, d. A.D. 1553), 97, 170.

Hayyâ ilâ khayrâ'l-îman, 54.

Hâzâr-jarîb, 283.


Heaven and Hell described, 395-401, 418.

Hebron, 46 n.

Hells, the Seven —, 400-401.

Heracleius, Prince of Georgia (xviii), 140.

Herât, 25, 44, 63, 69, 83, 86, 94, 95, 97, 99, 100, 125, 133, 147, 154, 229, 234, 384 n., 489.
Húlágú Khán (Mongol, xiiıı), 37, 41 n., 148, 405
Huíh (Incar nation), 382
Huíyín (Mogul Emperor of India, xviı), 28 n., 57, 91-2, 165, 169-170
Hunar, Mirzá Isma‘ıl — (son of the poet Yaghma‘), 338
Hunayn b. Ishāq (“Johanitus”), 357
Húris (of Paradise), 190, 192 and note
Hurmuz, Island of —, 107
Hurr-‘Ammī, Shaykh —, 28
Hurr b. Yazid-Riyāḍī, 190
Mullá — Rafīq (poet of Isfahán, xviiı), 282; — Husayn of Yazd (turbulent ecclesiastic, A.D. 1817), 148; — Sayyid — i-Tabātábā’ (of Ardístán (poetically surnamed Mījmar, g.v., d. A.D. 1810), 307-8; — Khán, poetically surnamed ‘Andalib (xiiı), 309; Mirzá — b. ‘Abdu’l-Áhad (A.D. 1857-8), 450; — qu’(author of Minháj-i-Tálibín, q.v.), 423; — Dánish Bey (contemporary man of letters), 8 n., 29; — i-Kurd (fictitious hero of popular romance), 464
Huṣn-i-ta’lîf (“poetical aetiology”), 164
—-Hutama (the sixth of the Seven Hells), 400-401
Huwwarqiyá, Jism-i —, Ardi —, 397 and note; 403
Huwayza, 58, 352, 367
Hŭlăí (poet, put to death in A.D. 1528), 25, 83, 94, 227, 234-5
— Hillí, 378, 405 (see - Muhajjig-Akwa‘); 54 and note, 406 (see *Alláma-i-Hillí*).
Hilláy-i-Multagh “(the Ornament of the Pious,” by Mullá Muhammad Báqir-i-Majlisí), 409, 417
Himmat (poet, xix), 300
Hind (wife of Abú Sufyán, viıı), 178, 180 and note
Hindi language, 259 n.
Hindús, 179, 181, 238, 452
Hinduśah b. Sanjar—Kírání (author of Tájárízh’s-Saláf), xiv), 443
Hindustán, 282. See *India*
Hippocrates (Buqrf), 212, 439
Hirschberg, Dr Julius —, 425, 440
Kisībī (poet of the time of Sháh ‘Abbās I), 110
Hisnám b. ‘Abdu’l-Malik (Umayyad, viıı), 393
*Històire de la Médecine Arabe* (by Dr L. Leclerc), 440 n., 455, 322
Holmåyrd, 440
Holstein, Frederick Duke of —, 114
Holy Cities, 11, 24, 59, 280. See *Karbála’, Mecca, -Madína, Najaf*, etc.
Hoopoc (Hudhud), 190, 192
Horn, Dr Paul —, 13 n., 84 n., 86 n., 87 n., 88 n., 90
Houtsma, 18 n.
Houtum-Scheidler, Sir Albert —, 5, 33 n., 48 n., 223, 305, 450 n., 457
Huwart, M. Clément —, 35, 40
Húd (the Prophet), 388
Husayn-i-Islám (Hájíyá Sayyid Muham- mad Báqir so entitled), 368
Husayn-ellâh (title of the Imám Mahdî), 394
INDEX

Ibáihat, 382. See Communism
Ibráhim, the Patriarch, see Abrá- ham; — (son of the Prophet Muhammad), 391; — b. Adham (saint, viii), 36, 357; — b. Ja'far (ancestor of the Safawis), 33 n.; —, commonly called Shaykh Sháh (av), 47; — (brother of Sháh Isma'il I), 48 n.; — Mirzá (son of Sháh Tahmásb I), 98; — (nephew of Nádir Sháh, c. A.D. 1750), 138; — Sháh (xviii), 284; — (son of Mullá Sadrá, xvii), 376, 408 n., 429; — Khán (custodian of Alqás Mirzá, xvi), 89; Hájjí — (betrayor of Lutf-’Alí Khán-i-Zand), 143 n., 145 and note, 146; Mirzá — (opponent of Henry Martyn), 421; — Dastán (son of the poet Yaghma), 338; — Khayrulláh (Bahá’í propagandist in America), 214 n.; Siryáhat-námá-i — Beg, 453-4; 467-8

‘Ibrat-námá of Sáháb (xix), 309
Iráb-i-Ishkiteáb (of -Hilli, xiii-xiv), 356
Idolatry, 386, 401
Idris (Enoch), 388; — of Bitlis (historian, vii), 72
Ishqáqí-’Haqq (Refutation of the Bábís), 423
Ijáz Husayn, Sayyid — (d. A.D. 1870), 357
Itkáhad (doctrine of —), 353, 382. See also Mutilahid
‘Imámu-r-Rúfd (Biography of Traditi- tionists), 355
Ittú-oghlaán (descendant of Chingh Khán), 64 n.
‘Imádúl-Kuttáb (contemporary poet and calligraphist), 303
Imámi Sect, 18. See Shí’á and Twelvethe, Sect of the —
Imámi (poet of Herát, xiii), 334 n.
Imám-quíd Mirzá (Safawi prince murdered in A.D. 1577), 99
Imán and Islám, 401-2
‘Imrán (father of Moses), 292
Imru’u’l-Qays (old Arabian poet), 478, 482
Ínak-’Alí, Mullá —, 475, 479
Incarnation (Hulúl), 382
Insáf (fairness, a Persian character- istic), 160 n.
"Inspector’s head," 375
Intelecual Life (by Hamerton), 226
Intercession (Doctrine of — in Islám), 179, 186-7, 390
Iqán (Bábi apology), 422-3
Irán and Tdrán, 13; — (newspaper), 157
Irán-shahr (magazine), 488-9, 490
'Íráq, 47, 55, 57, 59, 82, 191, 192, 234, 255, 347, 366, 410, 451
Irdg-‘Ajam (newspaper), 346, 347
Irish language, 85 n., 233
Irdu’l-mathal ("Proverbial Com- mission"), 164
Irshád (newspaper), 346, 347
‘Isá, see Jesus; Mirzá — of Farahán. Qd’in-magám, 147 n., 393, 311, 347
Isháh, 204, 214
‘Isáwíyya (N. African order of der- vishés), 59
Ishfánán (in Gilán), 36
Isháq Beg ‘Udhr (poet, died A.D. 1771-2), 283
Ishmael, 388. See Isma’il
Ishpukhtar (Inspector), 375
Ishy u Sulţanat ("Love and Lord- ship," a novel), 454
Ishrú (pen-name of Mullá Muham- mad Báqir-i-Dámdád, q.v.), 257, 407, 428
Ishráqiyá ("Illuminati," Platonists), 431
Iškandar (Alexander the Great, q.v.), 13, 14; — Munshi (author of the Tarikh-i-’Alam-dr-dy- r, q.v.), 99, 108, 109, 444
INDEX

Islam Shâh b. Shîr Shâh (the Afghân ruler of Dihli, d. A.D. 1553-4), 168
Islamische Welt, Die —, 484 n.
Isma'il b. Ja'far-Sâdiq (Seventh Imam of the Isma'îliyya), 391;
— b. Muhammad (ancestor of the Safawis), 33 n.; — b. Amînu'd-Din Jibrîl (ancestor of the Safawis, xiii), 37; Shâh — I (A.D. 1502-1524), 5, 9, 12-15, 19-24,
25 n., 49-53 passim, 92, 101 n., 112, 158, 172, 224, 229, 360, 444,
447; his character and appearance, 22-23, 60-63; Shâh — II (A.D. 1576-7), 98-100, 101, 102; Shâh
(xvii), 284; — Khan Sârbâz (poet), 188; — son of Yaghmâ
poetically surnamed Hunar, 338;
— Naṣîrî Qârâja-Dâghî (A.D. 1890),
344; — 'Abdu'llâh-zâda (A.D. 1905), 466
Isma'il Sect, 17, 18, 147-9, 391
Ishâd, 443
Israel, Children of —, 207, 388
Isrâfîl (Angel of the Resurrection),
400
Iṣṭâkhîr, 49
Iṣtâbâr (of -Tûsî, d. A.D. 1067), 359,
361
Iṣtâdîlîyya (Bahâî controversy),
214 n.
Italy, Italians, 6, 88 n., 60; — lan-
guage, 10
I'timâdu'd-Dawlâ (Muhammad Hasan
Khan, x), 84 n., 454
I'timâdu's-Sâltana (Hâjî 'Ali Khan
Hâjîbîn-d-Dawlâ, father of the above),
454
Ittihâd (ApotHEOSIS), 382; — (Tabriz
newspaper), 423; — u'lu'l-Islâm
(“Union of Islam,” by Hâjî
Shaykh '-Râ'îs), 420 n.
I'ttîlid' (newspaper), 157
Jabal 'Amîl (Syria), 360, 427
Jabâni, Battle of — (A.D. 1500), 82
Jâbr (Fatalism, q.v.), 382
“Jâchîa,” (i.e. Yâhîyâ Fâshâ), 70
Jacob (Ya'qîb), 207
Ja’dâ bint-Ash'ath (vii), 392
Ja'far-Sâdiq (the Sixth Imam, viii),
391, 394; — b. Husayn b. 'Ali (vii), 393; — b. Muhammad (an-
ccestor of the Safawis), 33 n.; —
Bey (Turkish officer, A.D. 1514),
76; Shaykh — -Bahrânî (xvii),
364-5; — b. Sâdiq-i-Zand (A.D.
1785), 42; — of Isfahân, poe-
tically surnamed Sâfî (xvii); Mîrzâ
— Qârâja-dâghî (xix), 462;
— qull Aqâ (officer of Persian Cos-
sacks, A.D. 1907), 476, 480; —
Khân e Fîrang amâs (Persian
comedy), 463 n.
Ja'farî, Ishâd-âshâryâ ("Sect of the
Tewelde") why so called, 394
Jaffa, 46 n.
Jahân, Qâdî-i — (contemporary of
Shâh Tahmâsp I), 92
Jahânîr Mîrzâ ("White Sheep"
dynasty), 58 n.; — (Mohgul
Emperor of India, A.D. 1605-
1628), 253, 255, 447; Mîrzâ
— Khân of Shîrâz (editor of the
Shi'r-i-Isrâ'îlî, put to death in
A.D. 1908), 302, 345, 482 n.
Jahânshâh (Turkman ruler of Adhar-
bâyân, xv), 47
Jahîm (the fourth of the Seven Hells),
400-401
Jâhîz (Arab philologist and poly-
graph, ix), 440-441
Jalâjîl-l-Bâkharzî (musician at Court
of Shâh 'Abbâs), 110
Jalâl (or Jalâ, Turkish heresiarch,
A.D. 1519), 106; — (chief astro-
loger of Shâh 'Abbâs the Great,
A.D. 1593), 7; — i-Asîr (poet,
A.D. 1640), 251, 258, 268-9
Jalâlîbâd (Afghânistân), 489
Jâlalud-dîn Rûmî (xii), 35 n., 37;
38, 220, 357, 411, 449; — Dawânî
(philosopher, circa A.D. 1500), 69,
83, 231, 427
Jalâ'ull-Uyûn (by Mullâ Muhammad
Bâqîr-i-Majlisî, d. A.D. 1700), 410,
417
Jamâ'î, Ibn —, Qâdî (A.D. 1384),
406
Jamâl, Âqâ — Isfahânî, 373
Jâlalud-dîn, Sayyid — (Spiritual
director of Shaykh Zâhid of Gflân,
xiii), 43; — b. Mutahhir-Hillî,
Shaykh —, 54; — Muhammad
— Bâdu'r-dîn, 245, see ‘Urîf;
— Muhammad b. Husayn-Khvânsârî (theologian and jurisconsul),
373; Sayyîd — Afgân (xix), 155,
371
Jâmâl-zâda, Mîrzâ Muhammad ‘Ali
— (contemporary writer), 488
INDEX

Kashfi (wife of the Prophet Muhammad), 391, 392; — (sister of Úzûn Hasan, xv), 47
Khádím (Ali Páshá, xvi), 71
Ibn Khálid (historian, xiv-xv), 163, 425, 442, 445
Khálid b. -Wádi, 170, 171; — Bey (killed in a.d. 1514), 76
Khálífá, 16, see CâÌìâph, Caliphate; — Sultán (xvii), 264
Khálif ShírínwáshÁ (xv), 52; — Áq-Qoyúnlí (xv), 58 n.; — Kháh AfsÁr (xvi), 101; — u'llÁh, SháÁ — (head of the Isma'Ili sect until a.d. 1817), 148
Khálkhlí, 51
Ibn KhálilÍán (biographer, xii), 446
Khánzda ("Quintet" of Nizámi and Faydá), 229, 244
Khaníkoff, 35 n.
Khánish Khánum (daughter of SháÁ Isma'l I), 81 n.
"Khán-i-Wálída Persiana," 487
 Khá-n KhánÁn (Bayram Khá-n and his son 'Abdu'ir-Ráhím, xvi), 166, 245
Khán Malik-i-Husayn-i-Sásání, 346, 348
KhâqÁn (title of Emperor of the Turks), 14 and note, 52; — (pen-name of Fath'-Áli SháÁ), 146, 298
Kháqání (poet, xii), 52, 246, 299
Khârábát (anthology compiled by Diýá Páshá, xix), 164 and note, 173, 242, 248, 270
Khárák (island in Persian Gulf), 154
Khâríjí (pl. Khawârij), 392
Khârjír (in Khârásán), 227
KhášÁ (pen-name of SháÁ Isma'l I), 13
KhâjÁr, MuhammAd 'Áli, son of the poet YaghmÁ, 338
KhÁtt u KháttÁdÁn ("Calligraphy and Calligraphists," by Mirzá HabÍb of IsfahÁn), 450, 457
KhâwâdirghÁ: 'ÁdÁt (thaumaturgy), 40 n.
Khaybar, 392
Abú'l-Khayr Khá-n (descendant of Chingíz Khá-n), 64 n.
KháyrÁdm HisdÁm (biographies of eminent women), 456
KháyÁm, 'UmrÁ — (astronomer and poet), 425
KhiÁr, 270
Khíva (KhiwÁq), 136, 347. See also Khóváram
INDEX

Khudá-afarín ("Creator of Gods"), 151
Khudá-banda (Ulîjáytú, Mongol, xiv), 18; Shah Muhammad —
(Safawi, A.D. 1577-1587), 98,
100-103; — (son of Shah 'Abbás the Great), 111
Khudá-verdî (barber), 101, 103
Khudawand-nimá (of Šabá, d. A.D.
1822), 309
Khulâsatu'l-Hisâb (by Shaykh-i-
Bahá'i, d. A.D. 1622), 428; —
-Istighlāl (of Yaghmá), 339
Khuld-i-Barīn (poem by Wáshí, d.
A.D. 1583), 238; — (history,
A.D. 1660), 100, 445
Khinâkd (title of Ottoman Sultán,
90 n.
Kührásán, 25, 55, 63, 64, 65, 66,
78 n., 82, 95, 99, 101, 104, 105,
133, 138, 140, 151, 157, 227, 229,
230, 233, 234, 238, 399, 451, 455
Khurrám (Russian wife of Sultán
Sulaymán I), 89
Khurrám-ábd (Luristán), 104, 279
Khurshid Press (Tíhrán), 466
Khusraw Parviz (Sássánian king,
221; — Amir — of Díhilí (poet, xiii),
164, 167, 242 n.; — Khán (cîrcd
A.D. 1713), 124; — Mirzá (son of
'Abbás Mirzá, A.D. 1829), 313,
314 and note
Khusraw wa Shírín (poem by
Nizámí), 448; — (poem by Sayyid
Muhammad Šádíq), 283
Khutan, 321
Khúy, 76, 130, 489
Khúsistán, 82
Khwája Mawlâna-yi-Ishâhání (poet,
A.D. 1521), 78-80
Khvándamír (historian, xvi), 445, 447
Khvánásár, 251, 252
Khwâr, 55
Khvárázam, 78 n., 347. See also
Khiva
Khvárázamshâhís, 3
King, Sir Lucas White —, 64 n.
King's College, Cambridge, 229 n.,
495
Kirámí Sect, 384
Kirmán, 55, 64, 76, 82, 104, 118,
126, 128 n., 131, 133, 137, 148,
149, 151, 157, 164, 186, 238, 280,
328, 413, 440, 451, 466, 489
Kirmánscháh, 131, 134, 151, 184, 186,
279, 347, 410, 463, 489
Kitáb al-Aghádī, 485; — Ahmad
(by Yaghmá), 339; — Aqdas
("the Most Holy Book" of the
Bahá'ís), 423; — Fakhri, 444;
— Hayawadn (of 'Ahsán), 440; —
Hídîya (of Maybûd), 57 n., 430;
— Ma'lûthr wâl-Áthkér, 456; —
Mílâl (of Shahristání), 15 n., 16-
17; — Shí'r (of Ibn Qutayba),
485; — Sufrá, 182-6; — Şâkdî-
ku'd-Dâldî (of Yaghmá), 339;
— Wâridâtul-Qubbiyya (by Mullá
Sadra), 430
Knolles, Richard —, 70, 72, 90 n.
Korah, 209 n. See Qáhir
Krusinskí, 4, 10, 21 n., 111, 112,
114 n., 115, 116, 119, 129
Kúta, 174, 176, 190, 191, 192,
193, 200, 210
Kufr (poet, xvi), 168
Kulaynî, Muhammad b. Ya'qúb (d.
A.D. 941), 358, 404 n., 405, 448
Kulthún, 179, 181; Umm —, 392
Kurdish poem, 484
Kurdistán, Kûrsî, 27, 46, 58, 76,
125, 151, 279, 347
Kútâhiya, 89
Kutub—Arba'â ("the Four Books"),
359; — Riyád, 355, 495
Láhíján, 21, 50, 277
Lahore, 136, 266, 267, 281 n., 440
Lámí'i (poet), 299
Lanc-Poole, Stanley —, 169 n.
Langlés, 115
Lár, 149, 279, 283
Latakia, 76
Latin, 10, 359, 435 n.; — races, 488
Law, Muhammad —, 377-8
Lawh-i-Mahfús ("Preserved Tablet"),
388. See also Atwadh
Lawlí (poet), 194
Laylá wa Majnún, 206, 216, 229,
283
Laylat-ul-Qadr ("Night of Worth;",
on which the Qur'án was revealed),
388
Lazgís, 125, 137
— Lazgí (the fifth of the Seven Hells),
400-1
Leclerc, Dr L. —, 440 n.
Lee, Samuel —, 421
Leroux, E. —, 9 n.
Lion in the Husayn-legend, 189; —
killed by Sháh Ismá'il, 62
Lippert, Prof. Július —, 447 n.
INDEX

Lisání (poet of Shíráz, d. A.D. 5533), 235-5
Lisánúl-Mulk (historian, xix), 325, 413, 445. See also Sípíhr
London, 450, 469
Louis Philippe, 325
Lucknow (Lakhnáw), 281
Lú'ábatu'l-Bahráyn, 356, 360, 406n., 408, 449
Lunatic at Large (by J. Storer Clouston), 322 n.
Luqmániyya College (Tábríz), 347
Lur, Luristán, 59, 76, 104, 279, 443
Lutf 'Áli Beg (poetically surnamed Adhar, author of the Akash-káda, q.v.), 277, 282-4, 309; — Khán (Persian General, A.D. 1720), 125, 129; — Khán-i-Zand (A.D. 1789-1794), 121, 142-4
Ma'álímu'l-'Ulamá (by Muhammad b. 'Áli b. Sháhr-áshúb, d. A.D. 1193), 386
Ma'dhír-i-Sultáníyá (History of the Qájár dynasty to A.D. 1826), 144 n.
Macaulay, Lord —, 186
Macdonald, Professor Duncan Black —, 40, 442
Macedonia, 72
McNeill, Sir John (British Minister in Persia, A.D. 1838-1841), 147
McTaggart, Dr. J. E. —, 431
-Madína, 24, 174, 175, 391, 392
Madras, 462 n.
Májídthu'sh-Shárdíyí (by Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fáydr, d. A.D. 1680), 432
Magians (Májiús), 179, 181, 202, 203, 297, 401. See also Gádr, Zo-rústrian
Magic, Lawful — (Síhr-i-Ḥalád), poetry so called, 196
Mahállát of Qum, 448
Mahdi-i-'Ulyá ("the Supreme Cradle," title of the Queen-mother in Persia), 151, 332
Mahdí, the Imám — (Twelfth Imám, Qá'im), 150, 151, 197, 394; — Khán of Astárafáb (author of the Durrá-i-Nádir), 445; Hájjí — (father of Hájjí Mullá Ḥádfí of Sábzavár), 436
Mahmud of Ghazna, Súltán — (xxi), 228; — III of Gujérád (d. A.D. 1553), 168-9; Mír — Afgán (murdered in A.D. 1725), 116, 118, 125-131; — Aqá Cháwish-báshí (envoy of Súltán Báyázíd II, A.D. 1501), 68; Súltán — Mírzá (Ṣafáwí prince, murdered in A.D. 1577), 99; — i-Shábizári (author of the Gulshan-e-Rúz, d. A.D. 1320), 37, 220; — Qárí of Yazd (author of the Díván-i-Álbisá, d. A.D. 1585), 241; Mírzá — (physician, poetically surnamed Hákim, son of Wísád, d. A.D. 1851), 300, 319
Máhmid u Ayd (poem by Zu'allá, d. A.D. 1614), 252
Májdisu'll-Máminin (by Sayyid Núrulláh Mar'áshí of Shústíár, put to death in A.D. 1610), 54 n., 230, 234, 235, 236, 249, 358, 358a, 447
Májíd, Sayyid — of Bahráyn (xvii), 433-4
Májlís (newspaper), 346-7
Májlisí family, 28, 120, 253, 416. See under Muhammad Báqír and Muhammad Taqí
Májmúu'l-Báyán (by Shaykh Tábar-sí), 409
Májnún, 206, 216. See also under Laylá
Májús, 179, 181. See above under Magians
Mákhshánúl-Ásrár (of Nizámí of Ganja, xii), 248
Máktúb, 151
Mályír, 463
Malíha (poisons the Twelfth Imám), 399
Málik b. Anas (d. A.D. 795), 353; Ibn — (Arab grammarians), 363-364
Málik (poet of Qum, xvii), 110, 253, 259, 257; — ut-Táujír (Hájjí Muhammad Kázím, xix-x), 478, 481, 482
Málikom Khán Názímú'd-Dawlá, Prince (xix), 463, 468
INDEX

Mameluke (Mamülé) dynasty, 14 n.
Mamún (‘Abbásid Caliph, ix), 349, 438
Mān b. Zā‘ida, 207, 217
Māmāqībūl‘-Ārifīn (by Aflākī, A.D. 1318), 35, 49
“Manifestation” of the Bāb (Zuhāt, May 23, 1844), 150
Mān lā Yahdūrwhul‘-Faqīh (by Ibn Bābawayhi, d. A.D. 991), 359, 405
Mann, Oskar —, 137 n, 445 n.
Mānsūr (‘Abbásid Caliph, viii), 394, 438; — Beg Farnák (xv), 49
Mānsūriyya College (Shirāz), 360-1, 363, 364
Māqāmât (of -Hārīrī), 412; — (of Adībūl-Mamālīk), 349
Marāgha, 44, 131, 467
Marand, 70
Marash, 69; — l Sayyids, 102
Mardīn, 414-415
Mariage force, le (— Molière), 462
Mārāqīn (“Rebels,” i.e. the Khārījites), 302
Mariya, Plain of — (Karbalā so called), 178, 180
Marjāna (mother of Ibn Ziyād), 178, 180
Markas-i-Advār (by Faydī), 244
Markham, Sir Clements —, 4
Marta (daughter of Uṣūl Ḥasan, xv), 47
Martin, Dr R. F. —, 63 n.
Martyr, Henry — (missionary), 421-2
Martyrdom, Passion for —, 195-8
Marwān (Umayyad Caliph, A.D. 683-5), 23, 343
Mary (Maryam) the Copt (wife of the Prophet), 391
Masʿhārī (of Mulla Ṣadrā), 408 n., 430
Masḥhad ‘Allī, 30
Masḥḥدار (‘“Peripatetics,” Aristotelians), 431
Masūf, Mīrzā (Mujaddid, A.D. 1819), 315
Masuli (Turkish poet), 237
Masʿūd-i-Ṣa‘di-Salman (poet, d. A.D. 1131), 299; Mawlānā — (cited A.D. 1500 ruled in Kāshān), 55
Masʿūm, Mīr — (poet, xvii), 259, 368; — Kamānchālī (musician at the Court of Shāh ‘Abbās the Great), 110; — (darwīsh and mystic, xviii), 420
Masʿūnī’s-Ṣâflya (by Muḥammad Rāfī′, A.D. 1806), 420
Materials for the Study of the Bābī Religion (by E. G. Browne), 150, 154 n, 197 n, 198, 422 n.
Māthnawī (of Jalālud-Din Rūmī, xiii), 35 n, 411, 457
Māṭla‘-sh-Shams (by Muḥammad Ḥasan Khān, xix), 84 n, 455
Māwšil (Mosul), 137
Māwšil u (tribe), 14
Mawzūn (poet), 104
Maybūl, Mīr Ḥusayn — (xvi), 57
Maydān-i-Shāh (Fās), 368
Mayyākhā (poem by Zulālī, xvi-xvii), 252
Māzdārān, 65, 102, 109, 130, 132, 140, 141, 151, 153, 197, 251, 258, 284, 355, 476, 481
Mazdak (heresiarclist and communist, vi), 382 n, 452, 464, 466, 487
Māzhari (poet of Cashmere at Court of Shāh ‘Abbās), 110
Mecca, 24, 45, 123, 134, 149, 177 n, 192 n, 252, 258, 279, 284, 374 n, 386, 391, 399, 427. See also Holy Cities
Médecin malgré lui, Le — (Molière), 459, 462
Media, 465
Medina. See Madīna
Mejd ed-Dīn (Maṣ‘ul ed-Dīn, historian), 46 n.
Mélanges Asiatiques, 30, 35 n.
Merchants, European — in Persia, 107
Merv (Marw), 82, 109
Mesopotamia, 24, 27, 427. See also ʿIrāq
Metempsychosis (Tanāsukhul‘-Arwāh), 382
Methuen, Messrs —, 468
Mistahīn-Falāh (by Shaykhi-Bahā′ī, xvi-xvii), 428
Mīstahīn-Labīb (by Sayyid Ni-matu-līlāh-Jazā‘ī), 304
Mihinbānū Sultānum (daughter of Shāh Isma’il, xvi), 81 n.
Mījmar (poet of Ardīstān, d. 1810), 225, 307-8
Mikhlīt (of Shaykh-i-Bahā′ī), 407, 428
INDEX

Abú Mikhnaf Lúṭ b. Yahyá, 188

*Mimád u Hayát* ("Death and Life," newspaper), 489

*Minháj-ut-Tádhíb* (Refutation of the Báb), 423

Minorsky, V., 35 n., 36 n., 153 n., 375 n.

Minúchíhí (poet, xi), 265, 299

*Mujábání-Majédíh* (by Mullá Muḥammad Báqír-i-Majlisí), 417

*Miráj* (Ascension of the Prophet), 390

Miracle Plays, 28–9. See also Muḥarrám, *Tu'áiyá*

Miracles of the Prophet, 40 n., 389–390

*Mirdášt* (by Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán, xix), 454–5

*Mirdášt-Mamálik* (by Sídī 'Ali Ra'ís, xvi), 10 n.

Mirkhání (historian, xv), 5, 83, 250, 304, 413. See also Rawdatu'll-Sáfá

*Mirzá Buzurg* (Mirzá 'Īsá of Faráhán, the elder Qá'im-magád, d. A.D. 1831), 311; — of Núr, 316

Mirzá Kúchák, 317. See *Wáisát*

Misánthrops, Le — (Molière), 459

Miser, The — (Mard-i-Kháṣís, a Persian comedy), 452

*Mishkádí-Awádí* (by Mullá Muḥammad Báqír-i-Majlisí), 409

Míškín, Mirzá 'Abbás of Bistán (poet, d. A.D. 1858), 328, 336. See also *Furúghí*

Missionaries in Persia, 107, 195, 421–2

Mithradates, 465

Mítláq ("the great Divorcier"), the Imám Ḥasan so named, 393

Mittwoch, Professor E., 484

*Mockyn du* ("the Black Pig," Welsh song), 233

Moghul Emperors of India (A.D. 1525–1857), 25, 28, 92, 123, 164. See also *Abókar, Bábur, Humáyún, Jahángír and Sháh Jáhán*

Molière, 458–462

Mongols, 3, 14 n., 37, 41, 122, 127, 128, 147, 299, 322, 348, 405, 412, 439

Moon, Cleaving of the — (Shaqqú'l-qamar), 389

Moore, Thomas —, 80 n.

Morier's *Hajji Bábá*, 195, 468

Moscow, 6

Moses (Múṣá), 207, 254 n., 292, 297 n., 388

Mosul, 137. See *Mu'áṣir*

*Mu'áṣir* (Amír Husayn — (d. A.D. 1498), 83; Mír Haydar — (poet at Court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110

Mu'tawiya (Umayyad Caliph, A.D. 661–680), 16 n., 46, 175 n., 392

Mubárák, Sháykh — (father of the poet Faydí, xvi), 245

*Mu'udátu'll-'Umr* (by Sháykh 'Alí Hazín, xviii), 278

*Mufid, Sháykh* — (Muḥammad b. Muḥammad...-Hárití, d. A.D. 1022), 405, 449


Amongst the ancestors of the Safawís and descendants of the Imám Músá-Kázím mention is made (in the footnote on pp. 32–3) of six persons named Muḥammad, viz. Nos. 6, 9, 11, 13, 16, 18, and one, No. 20, named Abú Muḥammad; and, on p. 37, of a son of Aminud-Dín Jibrá’il and brother of Sháykh Ṣafíyyu’d-Dín likewise so named. — (Kings and Princes named Muḥammad):— Mirzá or Beg of the "White Sheep" dynasty, early sixteenth century, probably identical, 58 n., 74; — Khudá-banda (Safawi, A.D. 1578–1587), 98, 100–103; — III (Ottoman Sultan, A.D. 1595–1603), 106; — Sháh (Moghul Emperor of Dihá, A.D. 1739), 136; — Sayyid — (grandson of Sháh Sulaymán II the Safawi, xviii), 138; — Aqá — Khán Qájár (assassinated in A.D. 1797), 139–145, 156, 298, 487; — Sháh Qájár (A.D. 1834–1848), 149, 151, 311, 329, 391; Sultan — Sháh, contemporary pontiff of the Isma'íliyya, commonly known as the Aqá Khán, q.v., 149 n. (Muḥammad ibn — — b. 'Abdu'll-Wahháb-Qazwíní (Mirzá Muḥammad Khán, contemporary scholar),
INDEX 513

26, 372, 484, 490; — b. 'Ali b. Musa', 358, see Ibn Babawayhi; — b. 'Ali b. Shahir-ashhâb (d. A.D. 1192), 355–6; — b. Hasan b. 'Ali...-Hurr-Amili (d. A.D. 1686), 356, 359, 449; — b. Hasan b. 'Ali-Tusi, 355, 358, see -Tusi; — b. Makkî-Amili (put to death in A.D. 1384), 406, see Shahid-i-Awwal; — b. Nu'mân -Hârithi, 405, see Shaykh-Mufid; — b. Murta'dâ, 359, see Muhsin-i-Fayd; — b. Sâdîq b. Mahdi, 357, see under Nujâmî's-Samâ ('"Stars of Heaven"'), of which he was the author; — Sulaymân-Tanukânî, author of the Qiṣâṣu'l-Ulamâ, q.v., 354–5 and 449; — b. 'Abî Talib of Gilân, 277, see under 'Ali Hazin supra; — b. Ya'qûb, 358, see -Kulaynî. — (Muhammad Beg) — (envoy of Sulân Salim I, A.D. 1514), 73; — Hâjî — (uncle of Lutf-'Ali Beg, xvii), 283. — (Muhammad Khan) — Ustâjilu (A.D. 1509), 414–15; Khan — (killed at Châldîrân, A.D. 1514), 76; — Qâjîr (assassin of Nâdir Shah, A.D. 1747), 137 n.; Mirzâ — Qawwâlin (contemporary scholars), 261, 372, 484, 490. — (Muhammad distinguished only by profession, native place, or pen-name.) Qâdî — i-Kâshi (circa A.D. 1500), 55, 59; Ra'is — Karra (circa A.D. 1500), 55–6; Sayyid — Kamûna-i-Najafi (killed at Châldîrân, A.D. 1514), 76; four Muhammadans are mentioned on p. 110 amongst the musicians and rhapsodists of the court of Shah 'Abbâs the Great, a harper (Changi), a drummer (Jambhârî), a violinist (Kamûna), and a Shahnâma-khwân, surnamed Khursand; Aqâ — 'Ashiq, poet of Isfâhân (d. A.D. 1767), 283, 325; Sayyid — Shu'la (xvii), poet of Isfâhân, 282; Sayyid — Sahâb, poet of Isfâhân (d. A.D. 1857), 305–6; — qulî Afsâr Ulfat, poet (d. 1824), 311; — Akhbarî of Bahrayn (circa A.D. 1825), 374–6; Mullâ — Mâmâqânî (circa A.D. 1850), 422; Sayyid — (father of Mir Dâmâd, xvi), 428

Muhammad 'Abduh, Shaykh — (Grand Mufti of Egypt and Chancellor of the University of Al-Azhar, died A.D. 1905), 377, 416

Muhammad 'Ali Shâh Qâjîr (succeeded to the throne of Persia in A.D. 1907; deposed in A.D. 1909), 158; — son of Karîm Khân-i-Zand (circa A.D. 1782), 142; — Mirzâ (buys a mansion in Paradise), 370, 411; Mullâ — "Sûfi-khâs" (circa A.D. 1750), 368; Aqâ — Bihâbînî (another great antagonist of the Sûfis), 420; Mirzâ — (son of Bahâ'ullâh, contemporary), 218 n. 1; Mirzâ — (author of Nujâmî's-Sand, q.v., circa A.D. 1870), 449; Mirzâ — Lâhîji, see Shaykh 'Ali Hazin; — Beg son of Abdâl Beg (xviii), 283; — poet of Yazd (xix), 325, see Jayhûn; — Khâtîr, son of the poet Yaghmâ, 338; — Gulshan (father of the poet Qâ'âni), 328; Mirzâ —, see Şâ'b; — Şubûh, q.v., of Isfâhân, 282; — Surush, q.v., of Si-dîh (d. A.D. 1868), 375

Muhammad Amin M. Muhammad Sharif of Astarâbâd (d. A.D. 1673), founder of the Akhbarî school (q.v.), 374


Muhammad Hasan Khan Qâjîr (killed in A.D. 1757), 139–41; — called Zargar (poet of Isfâhân, d. A.D. 1853), 325; — Khan I'timadu's-Saltana (d. A.D. 1896), 84 n., 453–6

B. P. L.
INDEX

Muhammad Husayn Mirzâ (nephew of Shah Isâ'âl, II, murdered by his uncle in A.D. 1577), 90; — of Tabriz, calligraphist (xvii), 100; — Ghâlib (poet, xviii), 283; — Hidâyat (contemporary), 357

Muhammad Iqâbî, Shaykh — (author of Development of Metaphysics in Persia and Astarâ'âli-Khâdi, q.v., contemporary thinker), 430, 431, 435; — Professor —, Ph.D. (contemporary scholar), 56 n.

Muhammad Karim Khân of Kirmân, Hayji — (head of the later Sháykh- kis and rival of the Báb, xix), 421

Muhammad Kâzîm of Khurasân, Mullá — (patriotic mujâhid, d. Dec. 12, 1911), 371

Muhammad Mahdî, Sayyid — of Burjirîd, entitled Bahânî'l-Ulûm ("the Ocean of Learning") (d. cîrîd A.D. 1824), 379, 410

Muhammad Muhsin Mirzâ (son of Sultan Husayn Mirzâ the Timúrid, A.D. 1504), 56

Muhammad Mú'mîn (musician at the court of Shah 'Abbâs the Great), 110; —, poetically surnamed Dâ'î (d. A.D. 1742), 282; — Husayni (author of the Tuhfatu'l-Mû'mînin, q.v., A.D. 1660), 439

Muhammad Rafî' b. Muhammad Shâfi'i of Tabriz (author of the Matâ'iru's-Sâfîyya, A.D. 1806), 420

Muhammad Rahîm (court-physician to Sultan Husayn, cîrîd A.D. 1700), 283

Muhammad Sâdiq (poet of Tabrîsh, xviii), 282, 283; — Qâ'im-maqâimî, better known as Adîbû'l-Mamâlik, q.v. (d. Feb. 21, 1917), 346-9, 484; — Tabâtabâ'î (editor of the newspaper Majtî in A.D. 1906), 437

Muhammad Şâlih (cruelly put to death about A.D. 1574), 97; — Khân (one of the assassins of Wâdîr Shâh in A.D. 1747), 137 n.

Muhammad Shâfi'i, Professor — (contemporary scholar), 281 n.

Muhammad Tâhir Wahîd (poet, d. A.D. 1706), 258, 264-5

Muhammad Taqî, the ninth Imâm (ix), 46, 394; Mullâ — i-Majlîsî (d. A.D. 1660), 253, 403-4, 409, 417; — of Kâshân, state-historian and poet, entitled Lisânu'l-Mulk and Sipihr (xix), 326, 344, 445; Mullâ — of Qazvin (assassinated by Bábîs about A.D. 1847, and hence entitled Shahîd-i-Thâlîth, "the Third Martyr", q.v.), 411, 412; — Khân, called Hakîm (author of the Ganj-i-Damish, A.D. 1887), 456; — of Hamadân (author of the Jâhânu'l-Hasq), A.D. 1908), 423

"Muhammad" — "the Three" — (i.e. -Kulaynî, Ibn Bâbawayhi and -Túsî g.v.), all before A.D. 1067; and, in a later age (between A.D. 1600 and 1700), Mullâ Muhsin-i-Fayd, Mullâ Muhammad Bâqir-i-Majlîsî, and the author of the Amâlu-l-Amîl, q.v., 358-9, 366 n., 405

Muḥaqqiq-i-Awval ("the First Verifier," xiii), 378, 409-6; — i-Thânî ("the Second Verifier," xvii), 28, 379, 406, 409; — i-Tüsî (Naṣiru’d-Dîn-i-Tûsî, d. A.D. 1274), 405; — i-Ardâbîlî (xvii), 370

Muḥarrâm (month of mourning), 28-31, 162, 194. See Rawda-khwân, Ta‘âiyya

Muḥâsscîn (son of ‘Ali b. Abî Tâlib), viii, 392

Muḥsîn, Mîr Sultan — (d. cîrîd A.D. 1508), 59; Mullâ — i-Fayd (philosopher and poet, d. A.D. 1680), 250, 359, 377, 407-8, 411, 426-7, 432-6

Muḥtashâm (poet of Kâshân, d. A.D. 1587), 28, 110, 162, 172, 173-7, 178, 193, 241

Muḥîyû’d-Dîn ibn’ull-‘Arâbî, Shaykh — (d. A.D. 1240), 37, 433, 434, 449; — of Barīdâ’â, Qâdî — (xv), 45

Mu’izzî, Amir — (poet, d. A.D. 1148), 168, 290

Mu’izzî-Kâshî, Mîr — (calligraphist, xvii), 110

Mu’izzû’d-Dawla (Buwayhid, x), 30-1

Mu’jamul-Buldân (of Yaqût, xiii), 397 n., 454

Mu’jizzî (Miracles, q.v.), 40 n.

Muḥtabâ (title of the Imâm ʿHasan), 393
INDEX

Mujtahids, 353-4, 367-380
Mujtahidi'sh-Shu'tarād, 307. See Mījmar
Mukhlīṣ (poet), 194
Mukhtārī (poet, xii), 299
Ibn Mūljam (the murder of 'Āli b. Abl Tālib), 392
Mulids, 353-4. See Mujtahids above
Munṣūţ-d-'Dīn ("the Slayer of Religion"), Shaykh Muhīyīd-Dīn so called, 434
Munajjīm-bāshī ("Chief Astrologer," author of a history entitled Šahā'-i-fu'tul-Akhdār, q.v.), 106 n.
Mundīgar-i-Shāh u Rūs ("Dispute of Night and Day," title of an article in the Kāwa newspaper), 487
Munkir and Nakir (the Angels who conduct the "Questioning of the Tomb"), 370, 396
Munsād i-i-Kashfī (xiii-xiv), 35-4
Munsād i-i-Sadīqī (Turkish State Papers collected and arranged about A.D. 1583 by Firudūn Bey, q.v.), 8 n., 69 n.
Muntakhabu't-Tawārīkh (by 'Abdu'l-Qādir-i-Badā'ī, 165 n., 242 n., 243 n., 245 n., 249
Muntazam-i-Mā'sīrī (by Muḥammad Hasan Khān Pītimādu's-Saltāna, A.D. 1881-3), 455
Munyeru'l-Fuqahā (title ascribed to the Kūddu'l-Fakhri), 444
Mūqānān, Plain of, 144 n.
Mūqīlī (poet), 194
Mūrād Beg Bāyandarī (ruler of Yazd, circl A.D. 1500), 55; Sultān—Aqq-goyyūmī (ruler of Irāq, circl A.D. 1500), 55, 58, 69, 76, 82; Sultān—III (A.D. 1574-1696), 92; Sultān—IV (A.D. 1623-1649), 107
Mūrākhihr (near Iṣfahān), 133, 142
Mur'd (disciple), 20
Murshīd (spiritual director), 19-20
Murshid-qi Khān Ĉustājū (tutor of Shah 'Abbās the Great, A.D. 1586), 101, 104
Murtada (title of 'Āli b. Abl Tālib, q.v.); Sayyid — entitled 'A-lamu'l-Hudā, q.v.
Mūsā (the Prophet Moses, q.v.); Kāzīm (the seventh Imām, viii), 19, 33 n., 36, 87 n., 391, 394, 405; — Beg Afshār (one of the murderers of Nādīr Shāh, A.D. 1747), 137 n.; — of Bistām, father of the poet Furūghī (xviii-xix), 335; Shaykh — of Hamadān (author of 'Iṣq u Salṭana, "Love and Lordship," A.D. 1929), 464
Musammāt (a kind of poem), 163 and note
Musawwī (newspaper), 469
Muscat, 280
Must u Gurbā ("the Mouse and the Cat," a poem by 'Ubayd-i-Zakānī, xiv), 490
Musha'ashi Sayyids of Huwayza (chastised by Shāh Isma'il I in A.D. 1508), 58
Mushtaq (poet of Iṣfahān, xviii), 283, 284
Mushtaq 'Ali (Ṣaffi killed by fanatics about A.D. 1756), 420
Music, Persian, 222-3
Muslim b. 'Aqlī, martyrdom of — (vii), 190-3
Abū Muslim ('Abbāsid propagandist, vii), 23
Mustafā (title of the Prophet Muḥammad, q.v.), 178, 180; — Mirzā (son of Shāh Ṭahmāsp, murdered by his brother Shāh Isma'il II in A.D. 1577), 98
Mustanṣir bīllāh (Fāṭimid Caliph, A.D. 1035-1099), 54 n., 98
Musta'sim (the last 'Abbāsid Caliph, A.D. 1242-1258), 41 n.
Mutahhar-Hillī, 356
Mutakallimīn (Schoolmen), 376, 402, 426
Mutamansu's-Sultān (earlier title of Muḥammad Hasan Khān, q.v.), 454
Mutamedu'd-Dawla (title conferred on the poet Nashāf by Fath-All Shāh), 311
-Mu'tamīd ('Abbāsid Caliph, A.D. 870-892), 394
-Mutanabbī (Arab poet, d. A.D. 965), 357
-Mu'taṣim ('Abbāsid Caliph, A.D. 833-842), 394
Mutawallī (pl. Matkawīla, Shi'a so called in Syria), 16
Mutāzila (sect), 17, 384, 424
-Mu'tazz ('Abbāsid Caliph, A.D. 866-9), 394
Mut'i (poet, xvii), 267
Mutiny, Indian —, 154
Mutaffar Sultan (governor of Rasht, 33-2
barbarously put to death about A.D. 1574). 96; — "All' (artist at court of Shāh 'Abbās the Great), and Ḥāfiz — of Qum (musician at the same, about A.D. 1600), 110; — u'd-Dīn Shāh Qājār (A.D. 1896–1907), 157–8

Mysteries of Sound and Number (by Shaykh Ḥabīb Āhmād), 442

Nābil (numerically equivalent to Muḥammad), of Zarand, Bahā'ī poet (d. A.D. 1892), 151 n., 187 n.

Nādir-qulī, 116, 132, afterwards Nādir Shāh (A.D. 1736–1747), 11, 52 n., 113, 116, 121, 122, 128, 132–8, 139, 141, 144 n., 158, 280, 281, 283, 284, 420

Nafahāṭū'l-Uns (by Jāmī, xy), 40 n., 42 n.

Nafīṣiyā (prose work by 'Urīf on Ṣūfīsm, xvi), 248

Na'īm (Bahā'ī poet, xix), 163 n., 198–220

Najaf, 58, 59, 76, 251, 370, 372, 376

-Najāshī, Ahmad b. 'Ali — (author of the Asnāmār-Rijāl, d. A.D. 1053), 355, 358, 405

Najib'd-Dīn Buzghūsh. See below under Najmu'd-Dīn

-Najīr (heretical views of —), 384

Najmu'd-Dīn Kubrā (xiii), 37; — Buzghūsh (d. A.D. 1279), 37, 42 and note; — Mas'ud of Rasht (called Najm-i-awwal, "the First Star," d. A.D. 1510), 59, 74 n.; he was succeeded by Najm-i-thānī, "the Second Star," Amīr Yūsuf-ih-Khudzānī (killed in A.D. 1512), 59, 66, 74, 83, 231; — Ja'far b. Yahyā, entitled Muḥaffleq-i-awwal, q.v. (d. A.D. 1325), 378, 405–6

Nakhjuwān, 76, 93, 104, 109, 130

Nākūṭhūn ("troth-breakers," 'Ilīsha, Taḥfa and Zubayr), 392

Nallīno, Professor —, 13 n.

Na'īm Dāman (poem by Fayūlī, xvi), 244

Nāmā-varshāvar (xix), 446

Namak'dān (by Jāhīnūn of Yazd), 326; — i-Hagigat (by Shaftī, d. A.D. 1627), 256

Nāmī (poet, xvi), 231

Nān' u Ḥalwa ("Bread and Sweetmeats," by Shaykh-i-Bahā'ī, xvii), 253, 407, 428


Nasir'u'd-Dīn-i-Tūsī (called Muḥaffleq-i-Tūsī, d. A.D. 1274), 405

Nāṣir b. 'Abdu'llāh, Mirzā — (poet, d. A.D. 1778), 283

Naṣru'd-Dīn Efendī, Khocha (Khwāja), Turkish wit, 416

Naṣrullāh Zaytūnī, Qâdī — (circuit A.D. 1500), 54; — (Zoroastrian general of Afghān, A.D. 1722), 126, 130

Abū Naṣr Fathi'llah Khān Shaybānī (poet of Kāshān, xix), 326, 344

Nassau Lee, 40 n.

Nationalism, ancient and modern, 12–14

Nawā'ī, Mir 'Ali Shīr — (xv), 83, 163, 227

Naw Bahār (newspaper), 345, 469

Nawʾī (poet, xvii), 168, 267

Nāwāt (Persian New Year's Day), 125, 333–4

Nawwāb Mirzā Hasan 'Ali Khān (xix), 301–2, 319

Nayrīz, 153, 218 n.

Nāzim'u-l-Islām of Kirmān (xx), 413, 446

Napoleon, 128, 199, 209, 325

Nāqīṣīn ("Covenant-breakers," a name applied by the followers of 'Abbās Efendī 'Abdu'll-Bahā' to the partisans of his half-brother Muḥammad 'Ali), 220

Nārijīs Khātūn (mother of the Imām Mahdī, A.D. 869), 394

Nāsāb-nāmā-i-Sīslāta-i-Saḥāviyyā (or Sīslātān-Nāsāb, q.v., xvii), 4, 5, 13 n., 35 and note, 36, 40

Nashāt (poet of Isfahān, d. A.D. 1828), 225, 307, 311

Nāshīku't-Tawārīkh (general history by Lisānū'l-Mulk, q.v., xix), 145 n., 148, 326, 413, 445

Nasīm (poet), 194; — i-Shimāl (newspaper), 345, 469

Nasima't-Sahar ft-man tashāyya'ya 'wa shā'ar (biography of Shi'a poets who wrote in Arabic), 358


Nasīru'd-Dīn-i-Tūsī (called Maḥaffleq-i-Tūsī, d. A.D. 1274), 405

Nāṣir b. 'Abdu'llāh, Mirzā — (poet, d. A.D. 1778), 283

Naṣru'd-Dīn Efendī, Khocha (Khwāja), Turkish wit, 416

Naṣrullāh Zaytūnī, Qâdī — (circuit A.D. 1500), 54; — (Zoroastrian general of Afghān, A.D. 1722), 126, 130

Abū Naṣr Fathi'llah Khān Shaybānī (poet of Kāshān, xix), 326, 344

Nassau Lee, 40 n.

Nationalism, ancient and modern, 12–14

Nawā'ī, Mir 'Ali Shīr — (xv), 83, 163, 227

Naw Bahār (newspaper), 345, 469

Nawʾī (poet, xvii), 168, 267

Nāwātī (Persian New Year's Day), 125, 333–4

Nawwāb Mirzā Hasan 'Ali Khān (xix), 301–2, 319

Nayrīz, 153, 218 n.

Nāzim'u-l-Islām of Kirmān (xx), 413, 446
INDEX

Parvarish (newspaper, A.D. 1900), 469
Passion Plays, 29, 186–194. See Muhammad, Pelly, Sir Lewis —, and Ta’iyya
Pelenk and Pelenk, 119
Pelly, Sir Lewis —, 29, 186, 187 n., 188 n., 190 n., 193 n.
Peloponnese, 72
Pentateuch (Tawrüt), 204, 214, 388
“Perfection,” “the Blessed —” (Jamāl-i-Mubārak, title of Bahā’-u’llāh, q.v.), 214 n.
Persecution, 69, 77, 92, 94–5, 120, 147, 227. See Bābīs, Shī’ā, Sūfīs, Sunnis
Persicopolis, 133
Persian belief in Divine Right of Kings, 18; — Gulf, 107, 154, 451; — language, 13; — Revolution (by E. G. Browne), 371
Peshawar, 136
Peter the Great, 131
Petrograd, 490
Pharaoh (Fir’awn, pl. Farā’īn), 14, 336
Phillipe, Don — of Persia, 6
Phillott, Col. D. C. —, 468
Philosophy, 422–437
Pir (spiritual director), 19, 20; — Bada (family name), 42
Plato (Aphistōn), 201, 202, 212
Platts (ed. of Gultsidn), 269 n.
Pliny, 441
Point (Naqta, q.v.), 150
Poland, 5
Polytheism (Shirk), 385–6
Popa, the, —, 5, 7
Portugal, Portuguese, 4, 10, 92, 107
Pote Collection of MSS. (Éton and King’s Colleges), 35, 220 n.
Predestination (Fābr), 15, 384–5. See also Fatalism
Priests, Christian —, 4–6, 9–10. See also Missionaries
Printing introduced into Persia, 155, 468
Prophetic Office, 387–8
Prose, Varieties of, 412
Psalms (Zubīr, Mazāmin), 388
Psychical Research, 40
Ptolemy, 201, 212
Purchas’s Pilgrims, 105
Pushčā (Afghan) language, 122
Qa’dan, 14 n. See also Khāqān
Qābil (Cain), 207, 217
Qābūs-nāma (xi), 412
Qādisiyya, Battle of — (vii), 126–7
Qahqaha, Castle of —, 89, 96, 98
Qānim-i-Āl-i-Muhammad (the Twelfth Imam or Imam Mahdi, q.v.), 150, 394, 419; — (Abbāsid Caliph, A.D. 1031–1075), 54 n.; — magām (Mirzá ‘Isā of Farāhān, d. A.D. 1831, and his son Mirzá Abu’l-Qāsim, put to death in A.D. 1835), 147 and note, 152, 303, 311–316, 346, 347, 484 n.
Qājurā, 10, 26, 29, 52 n., 115, 121, 122, 128, 132, 139, 140–150, 161, 224, 298, 309, 309, 375, 455, 487–8. See also under the names of the individual kings of this dynasty
Qamšar (near Kāshān), 477, 481
Qanbar-i-Rawās-khwānī, Sayyid — (saturated by Yaghma), 339
Qandahār, 55, 112, 118 n., 123–4, 156
Qanām (newspaper), 468–9
Qānimī (“the Law-giver,” title of Sultan Sulaymān I), 81
Qāqāzān (?Qazān), 475, 479
Qara-bagh, 49, 346
Qaramān (Caramania), 48
Qāren, 199, 200 and note
Qārīn (Corah, amongst the Muslims proverbial for his wealth, like Croesus in Europe), 199, 207, 209, 217
Qārš, 104
Qarshi, Massacre of Sunnis at — in A.D. 1512, 63, 84, 94, 227
Qārūyāl (or Qurūyāl, or Qurūyān), 47
Qāsīm (son of the Prophet Muhammad, died in infancy), 391; — Beg ibn Jahāngir Beg ibn ‘Ali Beg (ruler of Djīyār Bakr about A.D. 1500), 55; Mawlānā — (poet, cfr. A.D. 1554), 169–170
Abu’l-Qāsim Ḥamza (son of the seventh Imam Mūsā Kāzim, and ancestor of the Safawids), 33 n.; — Findariski (xvi–xvii), 250, 257–8, 408, 435; Mirzā — Qā’im-
INDEX

magâm (q.v.), 147, 311-316, 484 n.; (poet of Shfráz, xix), 225 n.
qâsimî (poet to Shâh Isma'il, xvi), 83, 229 n.
qâsimî 'l-Anwâr (poet, xiv-xv), 44
qâsimî 'l-Arazâq ("The Assigner of Daily Bread," Ali so called), 385
qâsitîn ("Wrong-doers," Mu'âwiyâ and the Unayyads so called), 392
qâsr-i-Zar (in Fârs), 59
qâssîbiyya (by the poet Yaghmâ), 339
qâtrân (poet, xi), 209
Qawwâl 'l-Islâm (Shi'a theological work by -Hilli), 54 and note
qâyîn (in Khurásân), 417
qâyyîr-i-Râm, 80 n.
qâysâriyya (Caesarea), 71
qâzînî, 4, 10 n., 26, 85, 90, 97, 98, 100, 104, 105, 109, 110, 129, 130, 131, 132, 170-172 (Hayratî's satire on the people of -), 223, 264, 282 n., 245
-qâzînî, Zakarîyâ b. Mu'âmmad b. Mâhûmd (geographer, xiii), 397 n., 448
-qifî (author of the Ta'rîkh-i-Hukamî, xviii), 447
qîparâq, Dastîh-i- — 45
qishrî (formalist, externalist), 376, 402
qâwâmûd-Dîn Nûr-bakshî (A.D. 1519), 231 and note
qiyâds (analogy), 374
qızîl-bâkî (also called Qızîl-bûrûk and Surkh-sar, "Red-heads"), 12, 13, 14, 48 (why so called), 68-9, 74, 76, 80 n. (Qızîl-bûrûk), 93, 102, 104, 106, 236 and note
qoja Beg Gûnduzî (one of the assassins of Nâdir Shâh), 137 n.
qubââ (Sâsâniân king), 464
qûchân, 455
qûdsî (poet of Mashhad, A.D. 1646), 251, 258
-qûds wa'l-Khalîl (Jerusalem and Hebron), 46 ad calc.
Quellenbände der Persichen Medizin (by Dr A. Fonaîn), 439

Quarry, M. Amédeé — 377, 378 "Questioning of the Tomb" (Swâl-i-Qâbr), 396
Quhrîd, 109 "Quintet," 229. See Khamsâ
Quim, 30, 56, 100, 130, 148, 149, 237, 253, 258, 283, 309, 429
Qâtîyân (Qaryâl, or Quryâl), 47
Quratu'l-'Ayn (the Bâbi heroine, put to death in A.D. 1852), 154, 197, 421
Ibn Qutayba, 485 n.
Qûtbî-dîn Ahmad (great-grandfather of Shaykh Shâfiyyûd-Dîn), 32 n., 36-7
Rabînî, H. L. — 30
Râbî 'd-l-Asâbî (by Mullâ Muhammad Bâqîr-i-Majlisî, A.D. 1700), 417
Râfîdî, 234. See Shi'a
Rafîq, Mullâ Husayn — (poet, xviii), 282
Rafîsinjân, 126
Râhât-i-Sudîr (history of the Saljuqş by -Râwandi), 18 n., 56 n., 222 and note
-Râhim, -Malik — (Buwayhid, x), 54 n.
Râh-i-Nau (newspaper), 394
Rajât ("Return," doctrine of —), 197, 398-400
Rangân (in Gîlân), 26
Raphael du Mans, Pére — (xvii), 9, 20, 115, 116
Râqîm (poet, xvii), 267
Râshîh-î-Sâhâb (by Sahâb of Isfâhân, A.D. 1807), 395
Râshîdûd-Dîn Fa’llûlî'dhâf (xiv), 19, 33
Rashî, 50, 50, 96, 135, 184, 186, 222, 410, 489
Rasîm (poet, xvii), 166
Radâkîhîz ("The Resurrection," newspaper), 484 n.
-Râwandi, Abû Bakr Najmu'd-Dîn Muhammad — (author of the Râhât-i-Sudîr, xii-xiii), 222
Râwû-da-khânîn, 29, 181 (why so called); 181-194
Râwûtîl-fannât (Biographies of eminent Muslims, compiled in A.D. 1879), 251, 257, 355-6, 358
INDEX

Ravdatu't-Safi (vols. i-vii by Mirkhâwand, xv; supplementary vols. vii-x by Ridâ-qulî Kháán Hîdîyât, xix), 5, 7, 8, 102, 250-251, 304, 317, 413, 445

Ravdatu'sh-Shuhâdâ ("Guardian of the Martyrs," by Husayn Wâ'iz-i-Kâshîfî, xv), 29, 181, 237

Ray, 232, 233, 438

Rayhânî, Yahyâ Kháán (contemporary poet), 490

- Râzî (Abû Bakr Muḥammad b. Zakariyyâ, physician, x), 425, 438-9, 449

Recording Angels (named Sd'iq and Shahîd), 398, 400

"Red-heads." See Qâzîl-bîsh

Redhouse, Sir James —, 35

"Reign of Terror at Tabriz" (by E. G. Browne), 371 n.

Religions et Philosophies dans l'Asie Centrale (by the Comte de Gobineau). See Gobineau

Religious and Political Life in Islam (by D. B. Macdonald), 40

Renaissance, 438

Resurrection (Qiyâmat), 382, 399, 399-401, 422

Return (Raj'at, q.v.), 419

Revolution of 1906 in Persia, 121, 122, 155-6, 162, 302, 303, 349, 344, 345, 467; Persian Revolution of 1905-1909 (by E. G. Browne, 1910), 155, 302, 468 n.

Rhodes, 81


Ridâ-yi-'Âkhâsî (portrait-painter, xvii), 25, 484; Shaykh — yi-Kurd (poet, date unknown), 29; Sayyid — b. Mahdî, 370; — of Kirmân (assassin of Nasîrû'd-Dîn Shâh, A.D. 1896), 155; — Kháán (Commander-in-Chief and practically Dictator of Persia, A.D. 1923-4), 15; — Kháán, Mirzâ. — See Arsfâ'î'd-Dawla

Rieu, Dr Charles (author of the British Museum Catalogues of Arabic, Persian and Turkish MSS.), 35 n., 54 n., 57 n., 66 n., 83 n., 229 n., 231 n., 233, 238 n., 237 n., 238, 241 n., 243 n., 251, 253, 255, 257, 259, 255, 276, 278 n., 281 n., 298, 408 n., 420 n., 447 n., 453

Riđûl'-Ghayb ("Men of the Unseen World"), 472 and note

Risâla-i-Khayrîyyâ (by Aqâ Muḥammad 'Alî Bihâbîlî), 420

Riyâdû'll-Ma'ârîf (mortification, discipline), 382

Riyâdû'll-Ma'ârîf (the exact or mathematical sciences), 437

Riyâdû'll-Ma'ârîf 'Arifîn (by Ridâ-qulî Kháán, xix), 230, 251, 265, 304, 305, 309 n., 319, 326 n., 436, 437

Riđûl'-Shuhâr'd (by Wâliîh, A.D. 1748), 229

Roe, Richard —, 380

Rome, 5, 6; Church of, 359

Rosen, Dr F. —, 463

Rosensweig-Schwannau (ed. of Háfnî), 216 n.

Ross, Col. Sir E. —, 462 n.

Ross, Sir E. Denison —, 15 n., 50 n., 64 n., 358, 444

Roxburghe Club, 105 n.

Rûđagrî, or Rûdakî (poet, x), 221, 209

Rûhî, Hâjjî Shaykh Ahmad — of Kirmân (put to death in A.D. 1896), 468

Ruknî (poet, xvii), 268

Ruknu'd-Dîn Mas'ûdî of Kâzarûn (burned to death about A.D. 1574), 97

Rûm, 166-7. See Asia Minor

Rumelia, 76

Rûmî, 14, 52 n.

Rugayya (daughter of the Prophet Muhammad), 392

Rûs-i-Man'hîs (the "sinister Russians"), 316

Russia, 4, 5, 114, 128, 130, 131, 134, 146, 147, 155, 156, 157, 312-316, 371, 374-5, 476, 478, 480-483, 480; Russian wife of Sultan Sulaymân, 89-90; — Mission massacred at Tîbrîz in A.D. 1819, 146, 312-316; — cruelties in Tâbrib, 371; — general's death compassed by Persian theologian, 374-5; — aggression in Persia, poem on —, 348
INDEX

Rustam Aq-qoyunjü, grandson of Üzün Hasan (xv), 49, 50, 58 n.; — Beg the Kurid, Haji — (A.D. 1502), 68-69; — Rüz-aizün (ruler of Mazandaran, A.D. 1510), 65; Şah — of Luristan (A.D. 1508), 59, 70; — Khan (general, A.D. 1713), 124; —'s-Sadiq (Sayyid Qanbar, satirized by Yaghamá), 339; Kamán-i — (the Rainbow), 414

Rûzbihání, Sabri — (poet at court of Sháh 'Abbás I), 110

Rúz-i-‘Oatl (the "Day of Slaughter," i.e. the ‘Aššúrd or 10th of Muharram), 29, 188. See also Muharram, Passion Play, Tahšíya, etc.

Rúznámá-i Ird-i-Sultání (newspaper), 346, 347

Şadb (Fath-‘Ali Khan of Káshán, poet, d. A.D. 1822), 307 n., 309-310

Şadb (Sheba), 190, 192

Şa’dhi (Haji Sulaymán, poet of Káshán, d. A.D. 1791), 142, 178, 283, 309

Sabzawár, 105, 136, 236, 436-7, 456

Ibn Sa’d (‘Umar b. Abi Waqqás, vii), 178, 180, 188

Sdti (of Shiraz, xiii), 37, 42, 246, 290, 348, 490

Sadiq Beg (artist at court of Sháh ‘Abbás I), 110; — Khan (brother of Karim Khan-i-Zand, killed in A.D. 1782), 149, 147; — Khan-i-Qá'im-maqamí (d. A.D. 1917), 346-9. See Adibun Ma’mút

Şadr, Office of —, 59, 427

Şadrá, Mullá — of Shiraz (philosopher, d. A.D. 1640), 257, 376, 407, 408, 411, 426, 427, 428-432, 434-7

Şadru’d-Dín, Shaykh — (son of Shaykh Safiyuy’d-Din, whom he succeeded in A.D. 1334 and died in A.D. 1392), 19, 34, 35, 39, 42-46; — Muhammad (calligraphist at court of Sháh ‘Abbás I), 110. See also under Şadré above

Şadru’d-Dín-Taftázání, 63; — (Turkish historian), 72; — ‘Ináyatulláh Khúzání, Amir — (burned to death, xvii), 97

Sa’dí, title of Ibn Bábawuyhi, q.v.

Safá, 225, 307 n., an error for Şád, q.v.

Safa-I, Mullá Ahmad-i-Niráqi (d. A.D. 1828), 411; Mirzá Ahmad —, son of the poet Yaghmá, 338

Safar-námá (of Naṣīr-i-Khusraw, xi), 412

Safi-i-Mahmúd (anthology of Fath-‘Ali Shah’s poets, xix), 298

Şafi-quli Khan (Persian general, xviii), 135

Şaffiyuy’d-Din, Shaykh Abúl-Fath İsháq — (born A.D. 1252, d. A.D. 1334), 4, 19, 32-44, 46 n., 88, 115; pedigree, 32-3 ad calc., 87 n., 444

Sayfât-i-Sâfî (biography of the above-mentioned Shaykh Şafiyuy’d-Din), 4, 19, 32 n., 38-42, 444

Şâgharchi, Kamálud-Dín — (xvi), 65-6

Şahbí (poet, of Astarábád, d. A.D. 1601), 251

Şahd ‘Isa-i-Akhbád (Turkish version of Munajjím-báshí’s history), 106 n.

Şabá, Aqa Taqí — (poet, of Qum, xviii), 283

Şahib-Diwán (A.D. 1888), 221

Şahib-Qídín, 108

Şahlán (near Tabriz), 76

Sahl ‘Alí, Imám-zádá — (near Hama-dán), 57

Şawkh’-Lúsíd ("Lapsus Linguæ," Sharíf’s compilation of Lisání’s poems so called), 236

Şáib (poet of Tabriz, d. A.D. 1670), 25, 163-5, 242, 250, 251, 258-261, 265-276, 299
INDEX

Sa'id (‘Umar b. Sa'd, q.v., appears to be intended), 170, 171
Abú Sa'id (Timúrid, A.D., 1453–1467), 100
Sá'íq (Recording Angel), 400
Sa'îr (the second of the Seven Hells), 400-401
Sajjád (title of the Fourth Imám ‘Ali b. Ḥusayn, better known as Zaynul-‘Abidîn, q.v.), 179, 181 and note, 393
Sakínâ (daughter of the Imám Husayn, vii), 179, 181, 393
Sakísâ (minstrel of Khusraw Parwîz), 221
Sakkáki (earlier pen-name of Fîghdî, q.v.), 230 n.
Sâlãhu’d-Dîn Rashîd b. Muhammad Hâfîz (ancestor of the Sâfawîs), 32 n., 36-7
Salâma, 393. See Shahrbâdî
Sale’s Qur’ân, 209 n.
Sâlih (Prophet sent to ancient Arabs), 388; — b. Qutbâ’u’d-Dîn Ahmad (ancestor of the Sâfawîs), 32 n.; — Beg (ancestor of Nâdir Shâh), 137-8
Salîm I (Ottoman Sultan, A.D. 1512–1520), 9, 11-14, 20, 23-4, 65 n., 67, 71 n., 72, 73-80, 93; — II (Ottoman Sultan, called “the Sot,” A.D. 1566–1574), 90-92; — poet of Tîhrân, d. A.D. 1647), 251, 258
Saljûq Dynasty, 3, 18, 54, 222
Salâmân-i-Asadî (Persian student), 345 n.
Salmâs, 106
Sâl-nâmâ (Year Book), 456
Salsâbil (river in Paradise), 175, 177, 228 n., 229
Sâm Mîrzâ (son of Shâh Ismâ’il I, xvi), 25 n., 81, 88, 89, 231 n., 237, 238, 447; — (grandson of Shâh ‘Abdâs the Great, who succeeded him in A.D. 1629 under the title of Shâh Șâfi’î I, q.v.), 111
Sâmânîd Dynasty, 221
Samargand, 64, 348
Sâmârâbî, 346
Samânân, 55, 337, 347, 456
Sanâ‘î (poet, xii), 220, 299, 357, 449
San‘at-i-zâda of Kirmân (contemporary writer), 466
Sanglâkh, Mîrzá-yi—, 457
Şanî‘u’d-Dawla (early title of Muhammad Hasan Khán, better known by his later title of ‘Timâd-dîl-Şâfi’î, q.v.), 453-6
Sanskrit, 244
Sâşar (the third of the Seven Hells), 400-401
Sâqi-nâma (of Umidî, xvi), 231; — (of Zühûrî, xvii), 253
Sar-áfrâz Khán, Nawwâb — (xviii), 283
Sarbâz (Isma‘îl Khán, poet), 188
Sâdârîyya (of Yaghmâ), 337, 338
Sârî (in Mâzandârân), 65
Sârî ‘Abd’l-Şâh Efîndî (d. A.D. 1668), 9 n.
Sar-tdyâ-i-Imâm (by ‘Abdu’r-Razâq-i-Lâhîjîl), 408, 435
Sâsânîan Dynasty (iii-vii), 3, 4, 18, 29, 32, 57, 60, 126, 209 n., 221, 382 n., 393, 466
Sawdâtî-u’l-îslâm (Fayyîl’s Commentary on the Qur’ân), 244 n.
Sayyîda (wife of Shâh Khudâ-bandâ, xvi), 103
Sayyîda’sh-Shukhâdî (“the Chief of Martyrs,” i.e. the Imâm Husayn, q.v.), 393
“Schach Cult.” 70. See Shah-quit Schefer, M. Charles —, 9, 10, 20 n., 115, 116, 304, 457
Schemann, Ludwig —, 153 ad calc.
Schindler, Sir Albert Houtam—, 5, 450 n. See also Houtum-Schindler
Schultz, Dr Walter —, 467 n.
Scotland, 5
Sean Bhean Bheoch, 223
Don Sebastião of Portugal (xvi), 92
“Seehaidar,” 47. See Iyâdar, Shâykh
Sell, E. —, 462 n.
Seniory of Venice, 5
Seth (Prophet), 388
“Seven,” “Sect of the —” (Sa‘bîyya), 17. See Ismâ‘îlîs
“Seven Martyrs” of the Bâbîs (Shukhâdî-i-Sab’a), 196
“Seventy-two Sects” (Hafidâd u du Millad), 15
Shaftâ’î Athâr (poet of Shîrâz, xviii), 282 n.
Shaftî (poet), 194
—Shaftîya, 362
Shâh ‘Abd’l-Azîm, Shrine of —, 151, 155
Shâhid-i-shawâl (“the First Martyr,”
put to death in A.D. 1384), 406; — *i-thādīf* ("the Second Martyr"), 379, 427; — *i-thādīkh* ("the Third Martyr"), assassinated by a Bábí in A.D. 1847), 411, 421; but on P. 447 this title is given to Sayyid Núrú'lláh of Shúshartí, q.t., who was put to death by Jahángír in A.D. 1610

"Sháh-i-Dín-panáh" (Qáhásp so entitled), 84

Sháhínsháh-náma (by Satá, xix), 309

Sháh Jahan (A.D. 1628-1659), 259, 260, 408

Sháh-náma (of Firdawsí, xi), 13, 14 n., 228 n., 229, 309, 339, 487; — *khváns* (rhapsodists), 110; —

-i-Isma’il (by Hátífí, A.D. 1512), 83, 229

Sháh-qual (xvi), 60, 70, 71, 75

Sháh-angíš and Sháh-báshád (a kind of topical ballad), 237, 238

Sháh-ásib (name of a Shi’a divine), 355

Sháhrába (daughter of Vazídír and wife of the Imám Husáyn, vii), 393

Sháhir-áBábak, 149

-Sháhristání (author of the *Káthíb-i-Milal*, xii), 15 n., 16-17, 449

Sháhrúd, 104, 456

Sháhrukh (Timúrid, xv), 44; — Shíráwásháh (killed by Sháh Tahmásb in A.D. 1540), 96; — Dhú‘l-Qádar (A.D. 1508), 414; — (grandson of Nádír Sháh, xviii), 138, 140

Sháh-seen ("King-lovers," a coalition of tribes created by Sháh ‘Abbábs the Great), 106, 119

Sháh Shujá (infant son of Sháh Ismá‘íl II killed by his successor, A.D. 1577), 101

Sháhsuwár-i-Cháhárá-tári (musician at the court of Sháh ‘Abbábs the Great), 110

Sháh u Darwísh or Sháh u Gadá ("the King and the Beggar" by Hílífí, xvi), 234

Sháki, 104

Shákití (poet, xvi), 167

Sháldúq-i-Síphád (chronogram yielding A.H. 909 = A.D. 1503–4), 56

Shámmákhí, 104, 125, 139, 450

Shámmásh (near Arádábí), 50

Shámkhál Kháán (put to death by Sháh Khuddá-bandá about A.D. 1577), 101

Shámlú (one of the Seven Tribes), 14, 52 n.

Sháms-i-Shápurghá’í (musician at court of Sháh ‘Abbábs the Great), 110

Sháms-i-Tábríz (xii), 37

Shámsu’d-Dín Baránqí of Arádábí, 44; — Kúhistání (poet, xvi), 235

Shámsu’d-Mu’dríf (by the Sháykh al-Bání), 442

Shámsu’sh-Shá’árí, 325. See Súrásh Shápurí (poet, xvii), 267

Shárashásh (ancestor of the Súzarí), 32 n.

Shárafu’d-Dín Hásan, 256. See Shájífí

Shárayí-r-Iláhí (by Nájmí’d-Dín-Hillí, xiii), 54 n., 378, 405–6

Shárbu’d-Farídí and — *‘Izýhrati-i-Khýra* (by Sháykh Ahmad-Ahsá’, xviii–xix), 411; — *Sádr* (by Múllá Muhsín-í-Páydí, A.D. 1654), 432 and note

Sharif, Sayyíd-i: — (killed at Cháídoán, A.D. 1514), 59, 76; — of Tabriż (compiler of Lísfáni’s poems, xvii), 236

Sharí (poet of Qazwín at court of Sháh ‘Abbábs), 110

Shawíhíd-i-Kúhúbíyá (by Múllá Shádrá, xvii), 430, 437

Shawkat (poet of Bukhárá, d. 1695), 250, 258, 265, 269, 283 n., 299

Shawqí (poet, xvii), 267

Sháyábak, 93, 74. See Sháyábání

Sháyábání, or Sháyábak, Muhammad Kháán — Uzbek (killed in battle with Sháh Ismá‘íl at Tháhrábd in A.D. 1510), 63, 64–6, 74, 78 and note, 82, 94; —, Abu’n-Násr Fathu’lláh Kháán — of Káshán (poet, xix), 326, 344

Sháykh Sháh (Sháykh Ibráhím, grandson of Sádru’d-Din and great-grandfather of Sháh Ismá‘íl I, d. A.D. 1447)), 47; — son of Farrúkh Yásár Shíráwáshání, 60, 96


Sháykhír ‘Ra’ís. See Avasicca and Abu’n-Hasan Mirzá

Sháykhír ‘Tá’if. See ‘Tá’if

Sháypúrgá’í (trumpeter), 110 and note
Shaytán-qul, 70. See Sháh-qull
Abá Sha’yún, 208, 218
Sheba (Sábá), 190, 192
Sherley brothers (Sir Anthony and Sir Robert, xvi–xvii), 5, 6, 10, 105
Sherlock Holmes, 466–7
Shi’a (Ithnud-‘ashariyya, “Sect of the Twelve”), 16–19, 20, 22, 23, 26, 32, 43, 46, 52–4, 56, 58, 64, 65, 66, 70–73, 83, 92, 94–5, 122, 132, 135, 239, 244, 254, 264, 353–404, 409, 415–423, 424; the doctrine of the Perfect, — 150. See also Ghulát
Shibli (Súfí saint), 357; — Nu’ámání (Indian scholar, author of the Shi’rá’ul-‘Ajam, q.v.), 164, 165, 229, 241, 242, 244, 246, 248, 250, 251, 252, 254, 258, 259, 260, 262, 265, 266 n., 268, 269, 299
Shífi (of Avicenna), 430
Shífá’i (Sharaufud-Dín Hasan, physician and poet, d. A.D. 1627), 250, 256, 268
Shihábu’ud-Dín Suhrawardi, Shaykh, — 88; — Mustaqil, 430
Shílún (Solon), 201, 212 and note
Shimr, 178, 180
Shírín u Khúsraw (by Hátífi, d. A.D. 1520–1), 229
Shirley. See Sherley, above
Shír Sárim (Kurdish chief, killed in battle in A.D. 1510), 58
Shírál-‘Ajam (“Poetry of the Persians,” by Shibli Nu’mání), 164, 165, 166 n., 220, 241, 244, 246, 250, 251, 258, 259, 265 n., 266 n., 299 n.
Shír u Shákbár (by Shaykh Bahá’u’ud-Dín-‘Amíl, xvi–xvii), 253, 428
Shírwán, 22, 2, 60, 82, 106, 134, 135, 137, 450
Shírwánsháh, 41, 47, 48, 52, 96
Shu’áyb (Jethro), 388
Shu’ájú’s-Sáltana, Hasan ‘Ali Mirzá — 328
Shu’la (poet of Isfahán, xviii), 282
Shurúr, Battle of — (A.D. 1501), 52, 82
Shúhshír, 59, 184, 186, 279, 356, 366, 447
Siáratul-Muntahá (“Lote-tree of the Limit”), 401
Si-dih (near Isfahán), 198, 325
Siáfát (Attributes of God), 382–6
Siáfitul-‘Ashíqín (by Hiláli, d. A.D. 1528), 234
Sikandar or Iskandar, Alexander the Great, q.v., 13–14; — náma (of Nizámí of Ganja, xii), 229
Sílsílátu’n-Nasáb-i-Safawíyya, 4, 5, 13 n., 20, 32 n., 35, 36, 37, 40, 42, 44, 45, 46
Similitudes, World of — (“Alam-i-Mitháf), 397
Simon, Dr Max, — 420
Simon Peter, 207, 218
Stírmugh (mythical bird), 263 n.
Ibn Siná. See Avicenna
Sináí, Mount — (Jabal Tur), 392
Sinán Páshá Chigála-záda (“Cicara,” A.D. 1605), 106
Sion (Sásán), 204, 214
Sipír (Mirzá Muhammad Taqi of Káshán, Lisínmú’l-Mulk, q.v., xix), 326, 344, 413
Siráj, Bridgeof —, 401; — Mustaqíím (by Múr Dámadí), 407
Sirján, 149
Sírrul-lád ("God’s Secret"), 217 n.
See ‘Abbás Efendi, ‘Abdu’l-Báhá
Sístán, 125
Síwás, 71, 76, 106 n.
Siyáhat-náma-i-Ábráhim Beg (about A.D. 1700), 463–4, 467–8
Siyámak (“Siyád-marg”) son of Shírwánsháh, 41
Síyásat-náma (of the Nizáinul-Mulk, xi), 18 n., 412
Síyáwusháni, Mawlání Isáq — (calligraphist at the court of Sháh ‘Abbás), 110
Sítsíhád bánd (of Shífá’, d. A.D. 1627), 226
Smart, W. A. — (Consul), 196, 302
Smith, Vincent, — 249, 445 n.
Socrates (Súragrós), 201, 212
Soláq-záda (Turkish historian), 72
Solomon (Sulaymán), 190, 192, 310 n.; — a legend of —, 111
Solón (Sóliún), 212
"Sophi," "the Great —," 20, 21, 23, 61, 112; — sect, 48, 50. See Šífi
INDEX

Spain, Spanish, 4, 5, 6, 7, 10, 101 n.
   See also Don Juan de Persia
Spirit (Ruh), Five grades of —, 389
Sprenger, Dr A. —, 165, 234, 281 n.,
   355
Squeezing of the Tomb, 396–7
Stewart, Major Charles —, 91
le Strange, Guy —, 390 n., 462
Strettell, Alma — ("Twelve Persian
   Folk-Songs"), 222
Style, good and bad —, 412–415
Su'di u fauxûb (by Hâjji Sayyûd)
   Muhammed Bâqîr, circ. A.D.
   1820), 376–381
Subh (poet of Isfahân, xviii), 282
   "Suffavean," 48, 51. See Suffâveon
Sûfi-kush ("the Sûfi-slayer," title
   given to Aqa Muhammed Abî 'Ali,
   xviii), 368
Sûfis, 19–21, 26–7, 47, 50–51, 56,
   120, 220–221, 254 n., 354, 376,
   385, 403–4, 409, 411, 420–1, 422,
   452
Abû Sufyân (father of Mu'awiyâ, the
   first Umayyad Caliph, vii), 180 n.
Sufyânî (appearance with Antichrist
   in the last days), 399
Sûhûf (Book revealed to Abraham),
   388
Sulaymân, Sultân — I (A.D. 1520–
   1566), 9, 11, 13 n., 67, 76, 80, 81,
   87, 89, 92, 93, 236; — Mirzá
   (murdered by his brother Shah
   Isma'il II in A.D. 1577), 98; —
   Pâshá (great-grandson of the
   Timûrid Abû Šâ'îd, xvi), 100;
   Shah — I -i-Safawî (originally
   named Safi, A.D. 1669–1664), 111,
   112–113, 439; Shâh — II (xviii),
   138, 284; — Efendi (Turkish
   envoy to Persia, A.D. 1738), 133;
   — Sabkhi (poet of Kâshân, circled
   A.D. 1701) q.v.; — Khán (promin-
   ent Bâbî put to death in A.D.
   1852), 196, 213 n.; — u Bilqis
   (poem by Fâydlî, xvi), 244
Sulaymaniya, 27
Sultânîya, 88
Sulqânî-I-Fugard (poet at the court
   of Shah 'Abbâs), 110
Sultânâm Khânum (sister of Shah
   Tâhmasp I, xvi), 92
Sunduq (Turkîman envoy to Con-
   stantinople, A.D. 1553), 94
Sunnis, 16–19, 22, 43–4, 45, 53, 55, 57,
   63–4, 66, 74, 78, 93–5, 97, 113,
   132, 137, 170–2, 174, 175–4, 363,
   391, 402, 420, 447
Sugnî-Î. 'Îdâdût (Antinomianism,
   neglect of religious duties), 382
Shâr-î-Isrâ'îlî (newspaper), 302, 345,
   456–458
Sukk-h-sar ("Red-head"). See Qisîl-
   bâsh
Sursurak ("the Slide"), 221, 479
Surûsh (Angel), 294–5; — (poet of
   Isfahân, d. A.D. 1668), 225, 307 n.,
   325
Sûzânî (poet, xii), 348
Sykes, Sir Percy Molesworth —, 92 n.,
   144 n., 154, 156
Syria, Syrians, 16, 36, 51, 77, 360,
   388 (Prophets), 427, 428, 451
-Tabari (Muhammed b. Jarîr —,
   historian, ix–x), 188, 217 n., 412,
   445, 449, 455
Tabarsarân, 48
-Tabarsi, Shaykh —, 153, 197–8, 409
Tabîb, Sayyûd 'Abdu'-Bâqi — (poet
   and physician to Nâdîr Shâh,
   xviii), 283
Tabkhî (poet of the court of Shâh
   'Abbâs the Great), 110
Tabriz, 21, 22, 23, 44, 45, 49, 52, 53,
   61, 62, 71, 76, 77, 96, 104, 109,
   130, 131, 134, 144 n., 151, 153,
   155, 222, 230, 235, 236, 237,
   265 n., 266, 346, 347, 360, 371,
   380, 422, 454, 489, 490
Tadhkîratu'-'Umdât (by Shaykh 'Ali
   Hazîn, A.D. 1741), 277–281; —
   Al-I-Dawûd (A.D. 1803), 444; —
   Dawlatshâh (xv), 447; — Dîl-
   gushî (A.D. 1821), 304, 307, 309,
   317, 328, 337; — Mu'âsîrin (by
   Shaykh 'Ali Hazîn, A.D. 1752),
   281; — Muhammed-Shâhî (xviii–
   xix), 298
Tâfîrîsh, 282
-Tâfâzânî, Farîdud-Dîn Ahmad —
   (put to death in A.D. 1510), 63, 69
Tafqîlî, 386. See Free Will and
   Fatalism
Tahdhib (of Shaykh Bahâ'u'd-Dîn
   -'Amîlî), 364; — u'l-Ahkâm (of
   Tâhirî, xii), 349, 405
Tâhir (son of the Prophet Muhammed),
   391; — (poet of Qazwîn, xviii),
   282 ad calc.
Tâhir-âbâd, Battle of — (A.D. 1510),
   65
INDEX

Tahmasb, Sháh — I (A.D. 1524-1576), 5, 9, 10 n., 19, 28, 34, 45, 50 n., 52, 57, 81, 84-98, 100-103, 106, 172, 238, 241, 406, 456; — b. Muhammad Khudá-banda (cited A.D. 1586), 101; Sháh — II (put to death by Nádhir Sháh’s son Kídá-qlí in A.D. 1739), 129-136

Tajdýrí’s-Salaf (Persian version of the Kitáb-‘l-Fakhř made by Hindi-Sháh, q.v., in A.D. 1324), 443

Taj-i-dawuzdah tark (the scarlet cap with twelve gores worn by the Oziyl-bázíkh), 48

Tájú’d-Dín Ibrahim. See Záhid-i-Giláni, Shaykh —
Takallú (one of the Seven Tribes), 52 n., 70 n.
Takfír (denunciation as an infidel), 372

Takya-i-Humayún (the Royal Theatre, Tihrán), 194

Tahá (vii), 392

Táibí-i-Amuíl (poet, d. A.D. 1626), 164, 250, 253-256, 267

Abú Tálib (uncle of the Prophet Muhammad), 392; — Mírzá (son of Sháh Muhammad Khudá-banda, cited A.D. 1586), 101-111; — Kálim (poet, d. A.D. 1651), 164, 166, 190, 258-263, 268; Shaykh — (father of Shaykh ‘Ali Hazín, d. A.D. 1715), 278

Táliqán (in Khurasán), 399

Abú Támmám (compiler of the Hamzá, ix), 270

Tanásukh (Metempsychosis, q.v.), 382

Tanbarká (drummer), 110

Tanákabún, 355

Táqális (poem by Mullá Ahmad-i-Niráqí, d. A.D. 1828), 411

Táqi, Mírzá — (founder of a College at Isfahán, xvii), 356; Aqá — (poet of Qum, called Sáhká, q.v., xvii), 283; — Khán Ámir-i-Káhír (put to death by Náširú’d-Dín Sháh on Jan. 9, 1852), 152-3, 316, 329, 353; — záda, Sayyid Hasan — (contemporary), 29, 485

Taqiyyu’d-Dín Muhammad (prime minister, xvii), 264

Taqiyya-i-Turkmání (the Turkmán cap), 48

Taqviya (prudent concealment of opinions), 16 n., 17

Taqlid (submission to ecclesiastical authority), 382

“Tarbiyát,” Mírzá Muhammad ‘Ali Khán — (contemporary), 458, 467; See Press and Poetry of Modern Persia

Ta’rikh-i-‘Alam-ará-yi-Abbási (by Iskandar Munshi, A.D. 1619), 5, 6, 7, 8, 47, 48, 88, 99 n., 100, 101 n., 103 n., 105 n., 107-8, 172, 238, 256, 257, 427 n., 428, 444; — i-bá’d-Nádiriyá (xviii), 137 n., 445; — i-Bidúrí-yi-Iráníyán (A.D. 1019), 413, 446; — i-Gusáda (by Hamdu’lláh Mustawfi of Qazwín, xiv), 118 n.; — u’l-Hukmá (by Qiftí, xii), 447; — i-Jadd (the “New History,” xix), 197 n.; — i-Juhán-gusáda (by Juvayni, xiii), 443; — i-Wáṣáfí, 443; — i-Zandáryá (xviii), 140 n., 141 n., 142 n., 444-5

Tartars (more correctly Tatárs), 3; See Mongols

Tartuf (by Molière, translated into Turkish), 452

Tárúm, 22, 51

Tashbih (Anthropomorphism), 17, 382

Táshkand, 64

Táshkent-i-Afdáb (by Shaykh Bahá’u’d-Dín’-Amil, xvii), 428

Taşnif (ballad), 165, 221-3

Taşwir-i-Afdár (Press in Constantinople), 459

Tauris, 61. See Tabrís

Tá’díí sect, 391

Tavernier, 10, 112

Tawakkul (or Túklí) b. Isma’íl, 34; See Inmu’l-Bazzás and Sáfíwátu’l-Šáfá

Tawhid (Doctrine of the Divine Unity), 382-6

Táyíf (poet at the court of Sháh ‘Abbás the Great), 110

Táyýib (son of the Prophet Muhammád), 391

Táza Bahár (newspaper), 345

Táza-gerá (originality of expression), 163

Táṣíya (“mourning”), 28, 29, 162, 172-174, 459

“Teckellis” (Tekellú, Takallú), 70-72

“Teckel Schachocula” (Tekellú Sháh-qlí), 7o and note

Teki, 10.
Telegraph, Indo-European —, 154-5
Tennyson, 227
Thabit b. Qurra, 357
Thales, 201, 212
Thana'i (poet, xvi), 242; — pen-name of Mirzá Abú'l-Qásim Qás im-magān, q.v.
Theologians, Rise of the Great Shi'a —, 86-8, 83, 114
Thevenot, 10
Thibet, 128
Thiqat'ul-Islām (put to death by the Russians at Tabriz on Jan. 1, 1912), 371
Thorayyād ("Pleiades," newspaper), 469
Tiflis, 104, 109, 120, 134, 298, 452
Tigris (Dišla), 198, 321
Tibrān, 105, 137, 146, 149, 151, 155, 194, 198, 223, 231, 251, 258, 270, 301, 303, 312, 319, 328, 346-8, 368, 371, 374, 378, 441, 451, 454, 458, 459, 469, 499
Times, 460
Tímūr, 9, 25, 46, 57, 348; House of —, 3, 25, 63-4, 77, 83, 229; — nāma (of Hāftīfī), 229
Tiqtāqī, Saḥyūn’d-Dīn Muḥammad — (author of the Kitāb’ul-Fakhṛ), 443
Tiyātīr ("the Theatre," newspaper), 463
Tobacco concession (A.D. 1890-1), 156, 370-1
Tolerance, Growth of — in modern Persia, 420
"Tom, Dick and Harry" (English equivalent of 'Amr and Zayd), 380 n.
Tom, State of the Dead in the —, 386-7
Topál 'Osmán (or 'Uthmān, Turkish general, killed in October, 1733), 134
Transmigration of Souls (tanásukh), 382
Transoxiana (Mā wardæ-an-Nahr), 4, 24, 63, 92, 125, 451
Travel, Five Advantages of —, 433
Traveller's Narrative (ed. and transl. by E. G. Browne), 150, 154 n., 294 n., 329, 381, 397 n., 399 n., 420 n., 422 n.
Trebizond, 47, 48
Trinity, The —, 293-4
Trots Ans à la Cour de Perse (by Dr Fcuvrier), 371
Trois Cométies Persanes (ed. and transl. by C. Barbier de Meynard and S. Guyard), 462
Tzar of Russia, Murder of — by Bolsheviks, 371
Tsitsianoff (Russian general called by the Persians Isbūlktar), 374, 375
Tsita (tree in Paradise), 401
Tufān (poet of Hazāz-jarib, d. A.D. 1776), 283; — u'l-Bukhā (the "Deluge of Weeping"), 182
Tughri (the Saljūq, A.D. 1037-1063), 31, 54
Tujfatul-Mi'minīn (on Materia Medica, composed by Muhammad Md'min-i-Hasayni in A.D. 1669), 439; — 'z-Zā'dirīn (the "Pilgrims' Present," by Mullā Muhammad Bāquir-Majlisī, d. A.D. 1700), 410, 417
Tufa'i-Sāmūl (biographies of contemporary poets compiled by Sām Mirzā in A.D. 1550), 25, 88 n., 230, 237, 447
Tukīl (or Tawakkul), 34 and note. See Inīul-Bāzdzī and Ṣafwatu'ī-Ṣafā
Tūmān, value of the —, 410 n.
Tunis, 425
Abū Turāb, Mīr — (Turkman envoy to Constantinople, A.D. 1553), 94
Tūrān, 13, 282
Turkey, 4, 10, 92, 130, 134, 135, 137, 146, 164, 241, 246, 250, 260, 295, 451, 453, 467; Turks, 10, 135, 140, 280, 427, 450; Turkish dy

INDEX

527

nsties, 3; Turkish language, 14-15, 250, 375 n.; Turkish literary taste, 226, 227, 265, 300, 412, 443; 487; "Turkish Şüffs," 46; See also Ottomans
Turk (poet of Shīrāz), 182 n.
Turkistan, 451
Turkman-chay, Treaty of — (A.D. 1826), 140
Turkmans, 47, 50, 93, 137, 230. See also White Sheep
Turner Macan (ed. of Shāhīnāma), 228
Turnshīz, 233, 234, 253
Tūs, 94
Tuṣ, Muḥammad b. Ḥasan b. 'Ali (d. A.D. 1067), 355, 358, 405
Tuṣi, Mīr — (Turkman envoy to Constantinople in A.D. 1553), 94
Twelve, Sect of the — (Ikhnā-‘ashariyya), 17, 391. See Shī‘a

‘Ubayd-ı-Zākānī (poet and satirist, xiv), 241, 490; — ʾullāh Khan-ı-Uzbek (d. A.D. 1549), 43, 73-4, 77, 92, 94-5, 97, 227, 234-5
‘Udhri (poet, d. A.D. 1771), 283
‘Ulamā (doctors of theology), 353 et seqq. See Muftahists, Mullids
Ulfat (poet of Kāshān, d. A.D. 1824), 225 n., 311
Uljaytu (Khudá-banda, Mongol ruler of Persia, xiv), 18, 413
Ulūl-ʾAzm (the Five Great Prophets), 388
‘Umar b.-Khattāb (the second Caliph, assassinated in A.D. 644), 17, 22, 29, 53, 54, 74, 80 n., 95 n., 104, 391, 392, 418; — b. Sa’d b. Abī Waqqās (vi), 178, 180
Umayyad Caliphs, 16 n., 180 n., 397-4
Umīd (or Ummīd, poet of Kirmānshāh, xiv), 225 n.
Umīdī (or Ummīdī, poet of Tbrān, d. A.D. 1519 or 1524), 59, 230-233
Umm ʾAbdīllāh (wife and cousin of ‘Ali Zaynul-ʾAbidīn, the fourth Imām), 393
Umm Kuluṭhum (daughter of ‘Ali and Fāṭima), 392
Ummī (“illiterate,” an attribute of the Prophet Muhammad), 389
‘Uṣūrī (poet, xii), 299
Urdu (or Hindustānī) language, 164, 300
Urū (poet of Shīfārūz, d. A.D. 1590), 25, 163, 164, 167 n., 241-9, 265, 268, 299
Ibn Abī Usaybi’a (author of the well-known biographies of Physicians, xiii), 447
“Ussein Alībeg” (A.D. 1599-1600), 5 n.
Usṭā (fortress of —), 56
Usṭādī (one of the Seven Tribes), 52 n.
Usūlī school, 374, 376, 402
Usūlīt-ʾKāfī (Mullā Šādīr’s commentary on the —), 430
Uthmān (the third Caliph, assassinated in A.D. 656), 17, 22, 53, 54, 80 n., 94, 95, 104, 391, 392, 418; Qaṣrā (of the ʾAg-ʾquṣūnī or “White Sheep” dynasty), 58 n.

‘Uyānu’l-Anbā fi Tabayyāt ʾAlī Abī Bakr (Lives of notable Physicians, by Ibn Abī Usaybi’a), 447
Uzbek, 19, 43, 45, 60, 63-6, 73, 74 n., 77, 78, 83, 86-7, 92, 93, 94, 97, 103, 104, 105, 107, 109
Uzūn (Regent), 139. See Karim Khān-Ẓand
Wall (poet of the court of Shāh ʿAbbās), 110
Wālh (of Qum, poet at the court of Shāh ʿAbbās the Great), 110; —
of Daghistán (author of the Rūyda'ish-Shurārād), 229, 269
Wānim u 'Adhir (romantic poem), 283
Wāqif sect, 391
Waś-d'il (of Muhammad b. Hasan b. Hurr-Amil'ı), 359
Wāsita ("Means" or "Channel of Grace"), 150
Wassaf (historian of Mongols, xiv), 413
Wəfı̄n, yəkhd Silistra (Turkish patriotic play by Kemal Bey), 404
Watson, R. G. — (author of the History of Persia), 3, 139 n., 144 n., 145 n., 146 and note, 147, 148 n., 151 n., 152 n., 311 n., 312 n., 314 n., 316 n., 450 n.; Dr — (in Sherlock Holmes), 456
Ways, Mir — (Afghan), 118 n., 123-5
Wasif of Lankurán, 452, 453
Weil's Geschichten der Chatifyen, 54 n.
Welsh song (Mochyn du), 223
"White Hand" (Yad-i-Bayq̄a' of Moses, 254 n.
"White Sheep" (Ag-goyünūni) Turkman dynasty (A.D. 1378-1502), 21, 47, 51, 54, 58 and note, 63, 67-9, 76, 230, 487
Who's Who, 149 n.
"Why-less" (Bi-chán), God so called, 212 and note, 218
Wiedemann, Dr Eilhard —, 425, 440
"Wiklis" (PWilkins), Mr —, 452
Wine-drinking, 114
Wiqār (poet, son of Wīsāl, xix), 178, 225, 300, 397 n., 319
Wīsāl (poet of Shīrāz, d. A.D. 1860), 168, 178, 225, 300, 397 n., 316-319
Wīzwizak, King —, 475, 480
Woepcke, 425, 440
Wood-worm and Solomon, Legend of the —, 111
Wüstenfeld, 440 n., 448 n.
Xavier, 421
Yadullāh ("the Hand of God," 'Ali so called), 385
Yaghma (poet of Jandaq, xix), 26, 168, 326, 337-344
Yahya, Sayyid — of Darāb (Wahid-i-Awang), and Mirza — Subh-i-Aaisal (Wahid-i-Thani), two notable followers of the Bāb, 218 n.; Mājī
Mīrzā — Dawlatābādī (contemporary scholar), 225, 307; Mīrzā — Khan Raykhānī (contemporary poet and editor of the Gul-i-Za'd, or "Yellow Rose"), 490
Yājūj (Gog), 201, 211 and note
Yaman, 279, 451
Ya'qub b. Aminu'd-Din Jibrā'il (younger brother of Shaykh Sa'īyyu'd-Dīn, xiii), 37 n.; Sultān — Aq-goyünūni (son of Uzūn Hasan, xv), 49, 58 n.; — Khan Dhu'l-Qadar (xvi), 104
Ya'qūb (historian, ix), 18, 36
Ya'qūt (geographer and biographer, xiii), 397 n., 454
Yār Ahmad-i-Khuzānī, Amir — (entitled Najm-ı-Thani, g.v.), 59
Yasā'dil, Darwish Muhammad — (A.D. 1510), 65
Yā-Sin, A'r'i — (the Prophet's family so called), 343
Yazd, 55, 59, 118, 126, 130, 133, 148, 151, 153, 184-6, 195, 238, 325, 348, 368, 410, 427
Yazdānī (son of the poet Wīsāl, xix), 300, 319
Yazdīgird (last Sassanian king of Persia, vii), 18, 393
Yazdikhwāst, 89
Yazdīd b. Mu'āwiyya (Umayyad Caliph, A.D. 680-683), 178, 180, 188
Yazdī sect (so-called "Devil-worshippers"), 46, 58
Year amongst the Persians (by E. G. Browne), 109 n., 147 n., 156 n., 198 n., 213 n., 321 n., 300 n., 326 n., 335 n., 411 n., 436 n., 442 n., 457 n., 479 n.
"Young Persians," 15
Yūnus Pāshā (executed A.D. 1517), 71 n.
Yūsuf (Joseph), 239-340; Romance of — and Zulaykhā (Potiphar's wife) by Lutf-'Ali Beg Adhar (xviii), 284; Fakhrul-Dīn — b. Aminu'd-Dīn Jibrā'il (younger brother of Shaykh Sa'īyyu'd-Dīn), 37 n.; — Ahmad b. Ibrahim-Bahrānī (d. A.D. 1773), 359, 449; — b. Yahyā-Yamani-San'ānī (author of the Nasimatu'd-Sahār), 358; — the Saddler (Persian comedy), 462
Yūsuf (heretic put to death by Shah 'Abbās the Great in A.D. 1593), 8
INDEX

Táysirkán, 463
Twelve, Sect of the — (Ikhná-’ashariyya), 17, 391. See Shi’á

‘Ubayd-i-Zákání (poet and satirist, xiv), 241, 490; — ʿulláh Khán-i-Uzbek (d. A.D. 1540), 43, 73-4, 77, 92, 94-5, 97, 237, 234-5
‘Udhrí (poet, d. A.D. 1771), 283
‘Ulumá (doctors of theology), 353 et seqg. See ʿIltikáhtís, Mullaš
Ušfát (poet of Káshán, d. A.D. 1814), 225 n., 311
Úljáytú (Khudá-banda, Mongol ruler of Persia, xiv), 18, 413
Úńi‘l-ʿAṣr (the Five Great Prophets), 388
Umayyad Caliphs, 16 n., 180 n., 397-4
Umíd (or Ummid, poet of Kirmánsháh, xix), 225 n.
Umídž (or Ummidž, poet of Tíhrín, d. A.D. 1519 or 1524), 59, 230-33
Umm ʿAbdilláh (wife and cousin of ʿAll Zaynúl-ʿAbidín, the fourth Imám), 393
Urní Kalthüm (daughter of ʿAlí and Fátima), 392
Umnil (or Umnil, poet of Kirmánsháh, xix), 225 n.
Urdu (or Hindustání) language, 164, 300
Urúf (poet of Shríráz, d. A.D. 1590), 25, 163, 164, 167 n., 241-9, 265, 268, 299
Ibn Abí Usaybiʿa (author of the well-known biographies of Physicians, xiii), 447
“Usásef Alíbeg” (A.D. 1599-1600), 5 n.
Usá (fortress of —), 56
Usájílu (one of the Seven Tribes), 52 n.
Usáíí school, 374, 376, 402
Úśálí-ʿKótí (Mullaš Sádára’s commentary on the —), 430
Uthmán (the third Caliph, assassinated in A.D. 656), 17, 22, 53, 54, 80 n., 94, 95, 104, 391, 397, 418; Qará — (of ʿAg-qoyúnlá or “White Sheep” dynasty), 58 n.

“Uyínúl-ʿAnbá fi Tabaqáti? Aṭiḥá (Lives of notable Physicians, by Ibn Abí Usaybiʿa), 447
Uzbek, 19, 43, 45, 60, 63-6, 73, 74 n., 77, 78, 83, 86-7, 92, 93, 94, 97, 103, 104, 105, 107, 109, 125, 136, 137, 227, 235
“Uzen Aly Bech” (A.D. 1599-1600), 5 n.
Úznín Hasan (ʿAg-qoyúnlá, A.D. 1466-1478), 47-49, 51, 58 n.

Valladolid, 21 n.
Valle, Pietro della —, 10
Vámbéry, Árminhús —, 10 n.
Van, Lake —, 49, 106
Venice, Venetians, 5, 6, 10, 21, 22, 47, 48, 50 n., 51, 85-6
Verlaine, Paul —, 344
Verne, Jules —, 458
Victoria, Queen —, 322; “Victorian Era” of Persia (A.D. 1848-1896), 161
Vienna, 11
Virgin Mary, 398
Volga, 6

Wadíʿat (Trusts, Law of —), 379-380
Wadís-Salám (Terrestrial Paradise), 397
Wajfayátuʿl-ʿAyyín (Biographies of Ibn Khallikán, xiii), 446
-Wáfi (by Mullaš Muḥsin-i-Payd, xvii), 329
Wahdátuʿl-Wāhid (Pantheism), 382, 383, 430
Wahíd (title given by the Báb first to Sayyid Yahyá of Dáráb or Nayríz, and after his death to Mírzá Yahyá ʿṢuhb-ʿAlá), 208, 218 and note; Muḥammad Táhir — (poet, d. A.D. 1708), 258, 264-5
Wahidí (poet of Qum, xvi), 237
Wahlmund, A. —, 462
Waḥši (poet of Bág, d. A.D. 1583), 110, 238-240, 241
Waḥk-i-Dín (by Náṣír-i-Khusraw, xi), 490
Waḥkulláh (the “Face of God,” title given to ʿAlí), 385
Wakíl (Regent), 139. See Karím Khán-i-Zand
Wali (poet of the court of Sháh ʿAbbás), 110
Wálí (of Qum, poet at the court of Sháh ʿAbbás the Great), 110; —
of Dághistán (author of the <i>Riyád-ush-Shu'árard</i>), 229, 269
Wámisq u ‘Adhrá (romantic poem), 283
Wáqñi sect, 391
Wasá‘i (of Muhammad b. Hasan b. Hurr-’Amíl), 350
Wástá ("Means" or "Channel of Grace"), 150
Wasáuf (historian of Mongols, xiv), 413
Waṭān, yahbhd Sīlīstra (Turkish patriotic play by Kemál Bey), 464
Watson, R. G. — (author of the <i>History of Persia</i>), 3, 139 n., 144 n., 145 n., 146 and note, 147, 148 n., 151 n., 152 n., 311 n., 312 n., 314 n., 316 n., 450 n.; Dr (in <i>Sherlock Holmes</i>), 466
Ways, Mir — (Afghan), 118 n., 123-5
Wásh of Lankurán, 462, 463
Well's <i>Geschichte der Chalifen</i>, 54 n.
Welsh song (<i>Mockyn du</i>), 223
"White Hand" (<i>Yát-d-Baydá</i> of Moses, 254 n.
"White Sheep" (<i>Aq-goyýanú</i>) Turkmán dynasty (A.D. 1378-1502), 21, 47, 51, 54, 58 and note, 63, 67-9, 76, 230, 487
Who’s Who, 149 n.
"Why-less" (<i>Bi-chán</i>), God so called, 212 and note, 218
Wiedemann, Dr Eilhard —, 425, 440
"Wikils" (?Wilkins), Mr —, 452
Wine-drinking, 114
Wiqdr (poet, son of Wíshál, xix), 178, 225, 300, 307 n., 319
Wíshál (poet of Shíráz, d. A.D. 1846), 168, 178, 225, 300, 307 n., 316-319
Wízwizék, King —, 475, 480
Woepecke, 425, 440
Wood-worm and Solomon, Legend of the —, 111
Witésenfeld, 440 n., 448 n.
Xavier, 421
Yadu’lláh ("the Hand of God," "Ali so called), 385
Yaghmá (poet of Jandaq, xix), 26, 168, 326, 337-344
Yáhýá, Sáyyid — of Dáráb (<i>Wáhid-i-Awrúzd</i>), and Mirzá — <i>Subh-i-Asál</i> (<i>Wáhid-i-thánt</i>), two notable followers of the Báb, 218 n.; Hájí Mirzá — Dawlatábádí (contemporary scholar), 225, 307; Mirzá — Khán Rayhání (contemporary poet and editor of the <i>Gul-i-Zárd</i>, or "Yellow Rose"), 490
Yájúj (Gog), 201, 211 and note
Yaman, 279, 431
Yá’qúb b. Afnú’d-Dín Jíbrá’il (younger brother of Shaykh Šáfiyyu’d-Dín, xiii), 37 n.; Sultán — Aq-goyýanú (son of Úzún Hasan, xv), 49, 58 n.; — Khán Dhu’l-Qadar (xvi), 104
—Yá’qˇúb (historian, ix), 18, 36
Yáqú́t (geographer and biographer, xiii), 397 n., 454
Yár Aḥmad-i-Khvisorí, Amír — (entitled <i>Nájm-i-thánt</i>, g.v.), 59
Yasá’úl, Darwish Muḥammad — (A.D. 1510), 65
Yd-Sín, Ál-i — (the Prophet’s family so called), 343
Yázd, 55, 66, 118, 126, 130, 133, 148, 151, 153, 184-6, 195, 238, 325, 348, 398, 410, 427
Yázdínt (son of the poet Wíshál, xix), 300, 319
Yázdíngird (last Sásáníán king of Persia, viii), 18, 393
Yázdíkhwást, 89
Yázd b. Mu’áwwiyá (Umayyad Caliph, A.D. 680-683), 178, 180, 188-485
Yazdí sect (so-called "Devil-warshippers"), 45, 58
Year amongst the Persians (by E. G. Browne), 109 n., 147 n., 156 n., 198 n., 213 n., 221 n., 300 n., 326 n., 335 n., 411 n., 436 n., 442 n., 457 n., 479 n.
— Young Persians, 15
Yúnus Páshá (executed A.D. 1517), 71 n.
Yúsuf (Joseph), 239-240; Romance of — and Zulaykhá (Potiphar’s wife) by Lutf-’Ali Beg Adhar (xviii), 284; Fakhru’d-Dín — b. Afnú’d-Dín Jíbrá’il (younger brother of Shaykh Šáfiyyu’d-Dín), 37 n.; — b. Aḥmad b. Tbráhir Bahrání (d. A.D. 1773), 356, 449; — b. Yáhýá Vamaní San’áni (author of the <i>Násidnt-s-Sukárd</i>), 358; — the Saddler (Persian comedy), 462
Yúsufi (heretic put to death by Sháh ‘Abbás the Great in A.D. 1593), 8
INDEX

Zabardast Khán (Afghán general, A.D. 1724), 130
Zádúl-Má’add (by Mullah Muhammad Bāqir-i-Majlísí, xvii), 417; — Músájírín (of Násir-i-Khusraw, x), 490
Zafar Khán (patron of the poet Šá’íb, xvii), 266
Záhíd-i-Giláni, Shaykh — (d. ścír A.D. 1300), 38, 41-43, 115, 177
Záhíd-i-Fárábí (poet, xiii), 284
Záhirud-Dín b. Buzghásh (xiii), 42
-Záhirá (i.e. Fámátí, q.v.), 343
Zakariyá b. Muhammad b. Mahmúd -Qazvíní (author of the Āṭhárú’l-Bílída and Ājá’íbú’l-Makhlúqíát, xiii), 448
-Zamákhshári (philologist, xii), 317
Zand dynasty (A.D. 1750-1794), 121, 139-144, 148, 282, 283
Zánján, 153
-Zánjání (Arab grammarian), 361
"Zan-gáábá", the poet Yaghmá, q.v., so called, 337-9
Zarand, 151 n.
Zargar ("Goldsmith," pen-name of Aqá Muhammad Hasan of Isfahán, d. A.D. 1853), 325
Zárrín-Kúlík ("Golden-cap"), Fírúzsháh — (ancestor of Shaykh Sáfiyú’l-Dín), 32 n., 36; — Tíj ("Golden-crown"). See Qurratú’l-Ayn
Záydu b. ‘Ali b. Husayn (d. A.D. 712), 392; — b. Hasan, whom the Záydir sect (pp. 17, 391) recognizes as Imám, 391; ‘Amr and Záydu (equivalent to John Doe and Richard Roe in Muslim law-books), 380 and note
Záyínab (daughter of the Prophet Muhammad), 392; — (daughter of ‘Ali and Fámátía and sister of the Imám-Husayn), 179, 181, 191,

193, 392; — Khánnum (daughter of Sháh Isma’íl I, xvi), 81 n.
Záynu’l-Abídín, ‘Ali b. -Husayn, the fourth Imám, q.v., 393; — (artist at the court of Sháh ‘Abbás the Great), 110; — (printer of Tabriz, circa A.D. 1820), 378; — of Shirwán (author of the Bútán-ní’-Siyáhkat, circa A.D. 1831), 450; — (praised by Qá’ání), 332; — of Marághá (author of the Siyáh-ní’-Ibráhím Beg), 467
Záynu’d-Dín, called "the second Martyr" (Sháhid-i-šáhí), 427
Záytúní, Qádí Našrí’l-láh — (circa A.D. 1500), 54
Zéno (Zínán), 201, 212; Catarino — (Venetian traveller in Persia, xv), 10, 22, 60
Zír-i-Ilkhaní (by Našíru’d-Dín-Túsi, xiii), 405
Zillu’s-Súltán (son of Fath-‘Ali Sháh, A.D. 1833), 146
Zíratú’l-Madárí (Biography of Poets of Fath-‘Ali Sháh’s reign), 298
Ziýá (Dá’í) Páshá (circa A.D. 1784), 164 n., 173, 228 n., 242
Ibn Ziyád (vii), 178, 180
Ziyárat-níma (of the Báb), 430 n.
See also Gábr or Guébré, Magian
Zotenberg, H. —, 217 n.
Zubáyri (vii), 392
Zubádá (by Shaykh Baha’ú’d-Dín-‘Amíl, xvii), 428
Zuhrá (the "Manifestation" of the Báb on May 23, 1844), 150
Zuháirí (poet of Túshítz, d. A.D. 1615), 234, 250, 253, 268
Zulálí (poet of Khwánsár, d. A.D. 1618), 251, 252
Zustände im heutigen Persien (by Dr Walter Schulz), 467 n.
OTHER WORKS, INCLUDING TRANSLATIONS,
BY THE AUTHOR OF THIS BOOK


A Year amongst the Persians: Impressions as to the Life, Character and Thought of the People of Persia, received during twelve months' residence in that country in the years 1887-8. Pp. x + 594. Published at 215. London: A. and C. Black, 1893. (Out of print.)

The Tárikh-i-Jadíd or New History of Mirzá 'Alí Muḥammad the Báb...translated from the Persian, with an Introduction, Illustrations and Appendices. Pp. liii + 459 + v, 65s. net. Cambridge University Press, 1893.


A Hand-list, arranged alphabetically under the titles, of the Turkish and other printed and lithographed books presented by Mrs E. J. W. Gibb to the Cambridge University Library. Pp. viii + 87. 75. net. Cambridge University Press, 1906.


Arabian Medicine, being the Fitzpatrick Lectures delivered at the College of Physicians in 1919 and 1920. Pp. viii + 138, with Frontispiece. 125. net. Cambridge University Press, 1921.
Central Archaeological Library,
NEW DELHI.

Call No. 891.5509 /Bro

Author—Browne, E. G

Title—A History of Persian Literature in Modern Times A.D. 1520-1924

Borrower No. Date of Issue Date of Return

“A book that is shut is but a block”

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book clean and moving.

S. 8., 148. N. DELHI.